



THE UNIVERSITY  
OF ILLINOIS  
LIBRARY

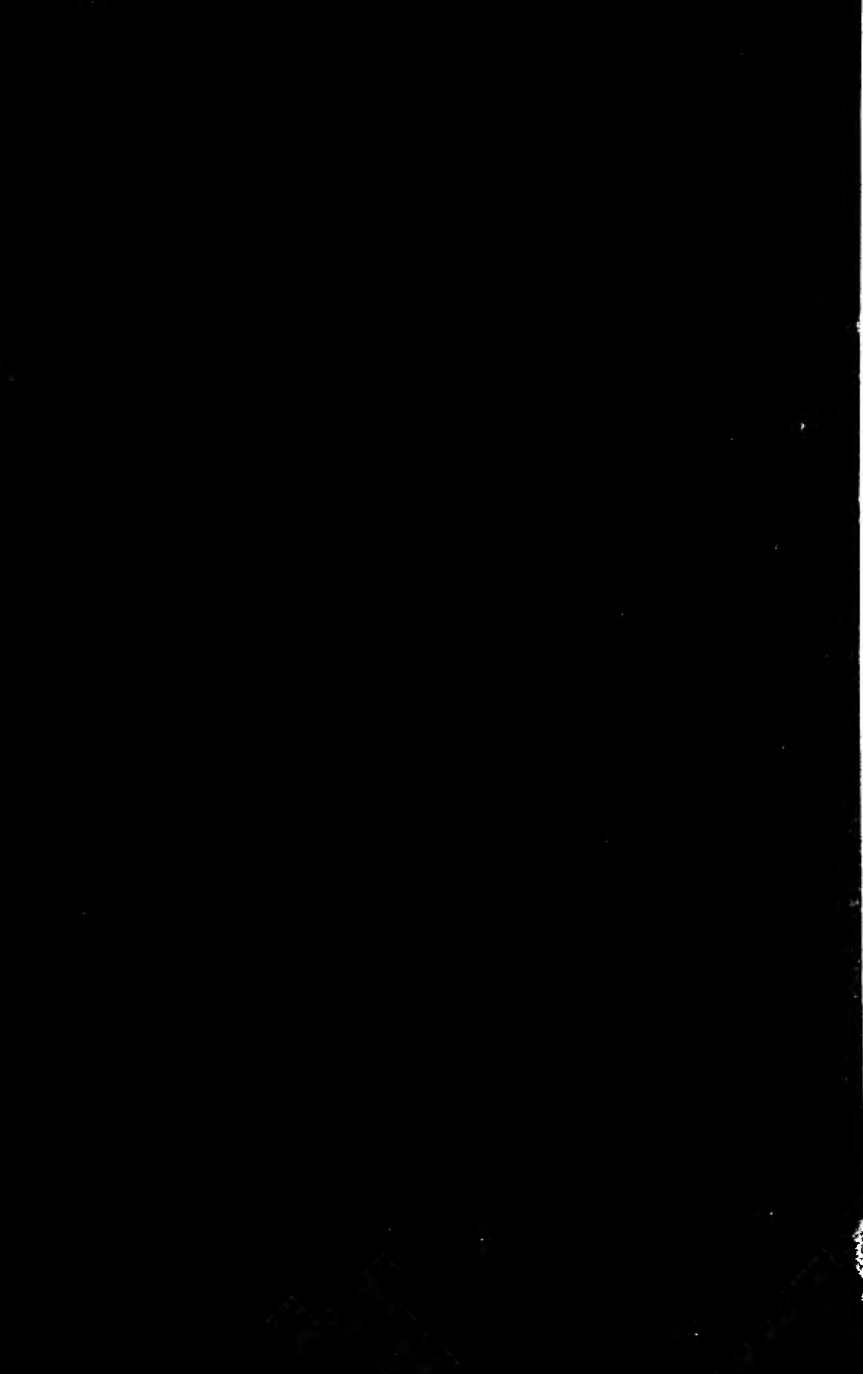
151  
T13dEh

PSYCHOLOGY

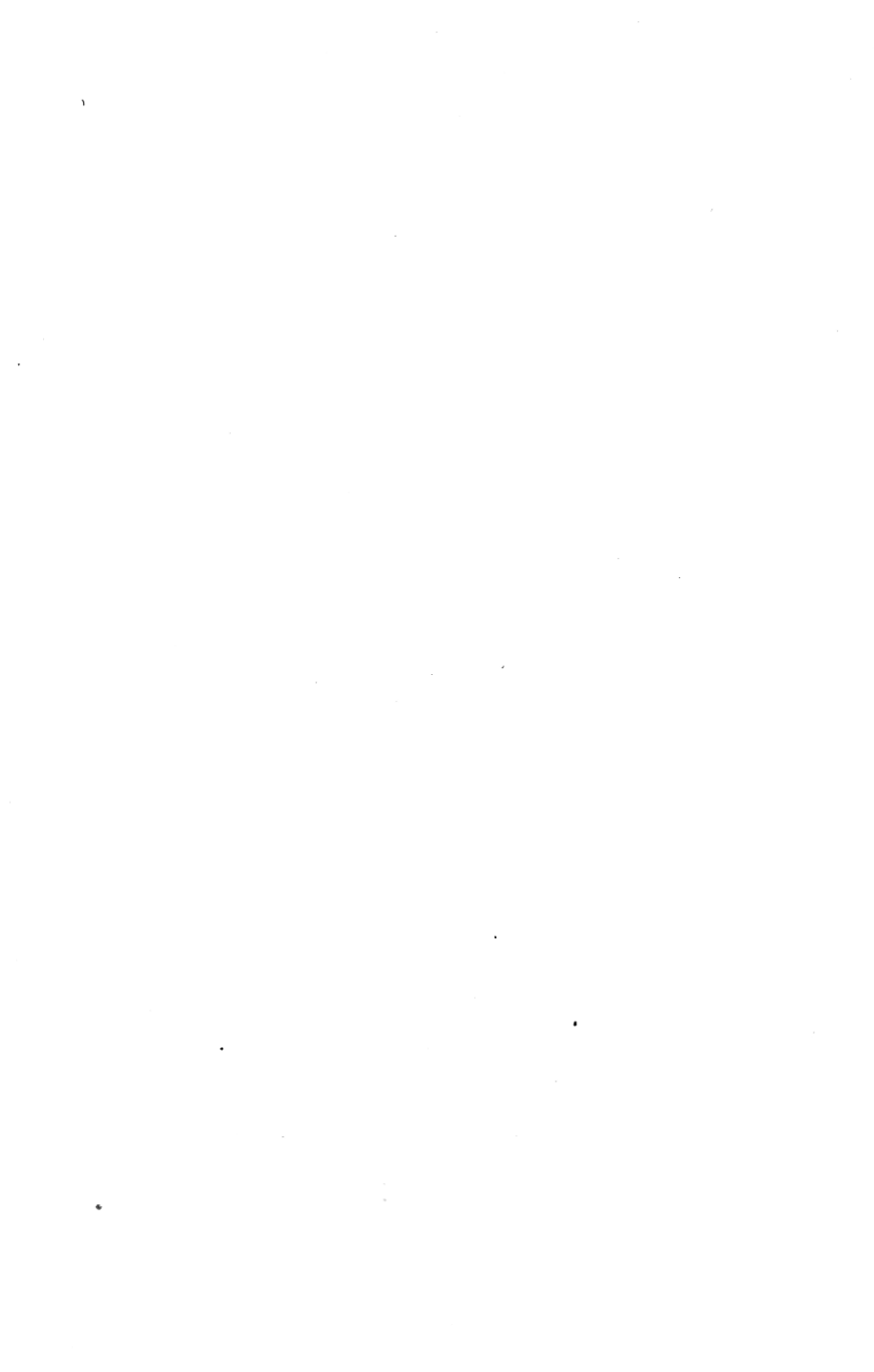
Return this book on or before the  
**Latest Date** stamped below. A  
charge is made on all overdue  
books.

University of Illinois Library

JUN 11 1964	MAR 1965	
JUL -3 1971	OCT 21 1979	
JUL 17 1971	DEC 23 1971	
	SEP 03 1971	
APR 12 1957		
+14		
MAR 29 1964		
MAR 2 1971		
		27214











ON  
INTELLIGENCE.

## TAINÉ'S WORKS.

---

- I. NOTES ON ENGLAND.*
- II. ENGLISH LITERATURE. 2 vols.*
- III. ON INTELLIGENCE.*
- IV. THE PHILOSOPHY OF GREEK ART.*
- V. THE PHILOSOPHY OF ART IN THE  
NETHERLANDS.*
- VI. THE IDEAL IN ART.*
- VII. ITALY, ROME AND NAPLES.*
- VIII. ITALY, FLORENCE AND VENICE.*

HOLT & WILLIAMS, Publishers,  
25 BOND STREET, NEW YORK.

ON  
INTELLIGENCE

BY  
H. TAINE, D.C.L. OXON.

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH BY

T. D. HAYE

AND REVISED WITH ADDITIONS BY THE AUTHOR



NEW YORK  
HOLT & WILLIAMS  
1872

---

McCrea & Co.,  
STEREOTYPERS,  
NEWBURGH, N. Y.

---

---

LANE, LITTLE & HILLMAN,  
PRINTERS,  
108 to 114 WOOSTER ST., N. Y.

---



THE Work an author has most fully meditated ought to be honored by the name of the friend whom he has most respected. I dedicate this book to the Memory of FRANZ WOEPKE, Orientalist and Mathematician, who died at Paris, in March, 1864.

H. TAINE.

2345





## P R E F A C E.

---

IF I am not mistaken, we mean nowadays by Intelligence, what was formerly called Understanding or Intellect—that is to say, the faculty of knowing; this, at least, is the sense in which I have taken the word.

At all events, I here intend to examine our knowledge, that is to say our cognitions, and nothing else. The words *faculty, capacity, power*, which have played so great a part in psychology, are only, as we shall see, convenient names by means of which we put together, in distinct compartments, all facts of a distinct kind; these names indicate a character common to all the facts under a distinct heading; they do not indicate a mysterious and profound essence, remaining constant and hidden under the flow of transient facts. This is why I have treated of cognitions only, and, if I have mentioned faculties, it has been to show that in themselves, and as distinct entities, they do not exist.

Such a precaution as this is very necessary. By means of it, psychology becomes a science of facts; for our cognitions are facts; we can speak with precision and detail of a sensation, of an idea, of a recollection, of a prevision, as well as of a vibration, or other physical movement; in the one case as in the other there is a fact in question; it may be reproduced, observed, described; it has its precedents, its accompaniments, its consequents. In little, well-selected, important, significant facts, stated with full details and minutely noted, we find at present the materials of every science; each of them is an instructive specimen, the head of a rank, a salient example, a clear type to which a whole row of analogous cases conform; our main business is to know its elements, how they arise, in what manner and under what conditions they combine, and what are the constant effects of combinations so produced.

Such is the method it has been attempted to follow in this work. In the first part, the elements of knowledge have been determined; by consecutive reductions we have arrived at the most simple elements, and have passed from these to the physiological changes which are the condition of their origin. In the second part, we have first described the mechanism and general effect of their combination; then, applying the law we have discovered, we have examined the elements, formation, certitude, and range of the principal kinds of our knowledge, from that of individual things to that of general things, from the most special perceptions, previsions, and recollections, up to the most universal judgments and axioms.

In these inquiries, Consciousness, our principal instrument, is not sufficient in its ordinary state; it is no more sufficient in psychological inquiries than the naked eye in optical inquiries. For its range is not great; its illusions are many and invincible; it is necessary continually to beware of it; to test and correct its evidence, nearly always to assist it, to present objects to it in a brighter light, to magnify them and construct for its use a kind of microscope or telescope; at all events, to arrange the surroundings of the object, to give it the necessary relief by means of contrasts, or to find beside it indications of its presence, indications plainer than it is, and indirectly pointing out its nature.

Here lies the principal difficulty of the analysis.—As far as pure ideas and their relations with names are concerned, the principal aid has been afforded by names of numbers, and, in general, by the notations of arithmetic and algebra; thus we have brought again into light a great truth guessed at by Condillac, and which has lain for a century dormant, buried, and as though lifeless, for want of satisfactory evidence.—As to images, their effacement, their revival, their antagonist reductives, the necessary magnifying is found in the singular and extreme cases observed by physiologists and medical men, in dreams, in somnambulism and hypnotism, in illusions and the hallucinations of sickness.—As to sensations, significant instances are found in the sensations of sight, and especially in those of hearing. By means of such evidence, and of the recent discoveries of physicists and physiologists, we

have attempted to construct or sketch out the whole theory of elementary sensations, to advance beyond the ordinary bounds, up to the limits of the mental world, to indicate the functions of the principal parts of the brain, to conceive the connection of molecular nervous changes with thought.—Other abnormal cases, borrowed both from students of insanity, and from physiologists, have enabled us to explain the general process of illusion and rectification, whose successive stages constitute our various kinds of knowledge.—After this, to elucidate our knowledge of bodies, and of ourselves, valuable indications have been found in the profound and closely reasoned analysis of Bain, Herbert Spencer, and Stuart Mill, in the illusions of persons who have lost limbs, in all the different illusions of the senses, in the education of the eye in persons born blind who have recovered their sight by operations, in the singular alterations which the idea of self undergoes during sleep, hypnotism, and madness.—We have then been able to enter upon the examination of the ideas and general propositions which make up the sciences, properly so called, to profit by Mr. Mill's acute and accurate inquiries respecting Induction, to establish against Kant and Mill a new theory of necessary propositions, to study by a series of examples what is termed the explanatory reason of a law, and to conclude with general views on science and nature, while pausing before the metaphysical problem which is the first and last of all.

Between psychology thus conceived and history as it is now written, the relationship is very close. For history is applied psychology, psychology applied to more complex cases. The historian notes and traces the total transformations presented by a particular human molecule, or group of human molecules; and, to explain these transformations, writes the psychology of the molecule or group; Carlyle has written that of Cromwell; Sainte-Beuve that of Port Royal; Stendhal has made twenty attempts on that of the Italians; M. Renan has given us that of the Semitic race. Every perspicacious and philosophical historian labors at that of a man, an epoch, a people, or a race; the researches of linguists, mythologists, and ethnographers have no other aim; the

task is invariably the description of a human mind, or of the characteristics common to a group of human minds; and, what historians do with respect to the past, the great novelists and dramatists do with the present. For fifteen years I have contributed to these special and concrete psychologies; I now attempt general and abstract psychology. To comprise it exhaustively, there would be required a theory of the Will in addition to the theory of the Intelligence; if I may judge of the work I do not venture to undertake by that which I have attempted to accomplish, my strength is not equal to this; all that I venture to hope is that the reader will grant me his indulgence, in consideration of the difficulty of the task and the length of the effort.

H. TAINE.

*December, 1869.*



# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

---

## PART THE FIRST

### THE ELEMENTS OF KNOWLEDGE.

---

#### BOOK I.

##### OF SIGNS.

---

#### CHAPTER I.

##### OF SIGNS IN GENERAL AND OF SUBSTITUTION.

	PAGE
I. Different examples of signs—A sign is a present experience which suggests to us the idea of a possible experience. . . . .	I
II. Names are a species of signs—Examples—Proper names—A proper name is a sensation or image of the eye or ear, which calls up in us a group of more or less definite images. . . . .	2
III. Frequently this group is not called up—Examples—The name then becomes the substitute of the group. . . . .	2
IV. Other examples of substitution—In arithmetic—In algebra—Nature and importance of substitution. . . . .	4

#### CHAPTER II.

##### OF GENERAL IDEAS AND SIMPLE SUBSTITUTION.

I. Proper and common names—Importance of common or general names—They are the first terms of couples—The second terms of such couples are general and abstract characters. . . . .	7
--	---

	PAGE
II. Consequences of this—Experience of such second terms is impossible—Reasons of this impossibility—Different examples—Difference between the vague image aroused by the name, and the precise character denoted by the name—Difference between the sensible image and pure idea. . . . .	8
III. Actual formation of a general idea—That which is evolved in us, when we have seen a series of similar objects, is a final tendency resulting in a metaphor, a sound, or an expressive gesture—Contemporary instances—Early instances—A general name is the residuum of an expressive sound—When we conceive a general quality, there is nothing more in our minds than a tendency to name, and a name—This name is the substitute of an impossible experience. . . . .	10
IV. A general Idea is nothing but a name provided with two characters—The first is the property of being called up on the perception of each individual of a class—The second, the property of calling up in us images of individuals of this class, and of this class only—By these two properties, the general name corresponds exclusively to the general quality, and becomes its mental representative—Utility of this substitution. . . . .	12
V. Formation of general names in the case of little children—The faculty of language is founded on the consecutive tendencies which survive the experiences of similar individual cases, and correspond to what there is in common to these individuals—Examples of this tendency in children—Special meanings given by them to the names we teach them—Originality and variety of their invention—Their tendencies to name finally coincide with ours—Acquisition of language—Difference between human and animal intelligence. . . . .	15
VI. Passage from abstract to collective names—The name which denoted a general quality denotes a group of general qualities—Examples—The name then becomes the substitute of several other names, and the mental representative of a group of general qualities—These substitutes are what we term Ideas. . . . .	19

### CHAPTER III.

#### OF GENERAL IDEAS AND REPEATED SUBSTITUTIONS.

I. Certain General Characters do not produce in us a distinct impression—They are therefore incapable of exciting in us a general tendency and a name—Indirect process by which we arrive at conceiving them—Example in the case of numbers—Their mental representative is a name of number—Formation of names of numbers—Series of superimposed substitutions—Our idea of a number is that of a name substituted for another name combined with unity. . . . .	22
II. Examples in Geometry—Our Idea of a circle is not the sensible figure we imagine, but a group of combined names, mental represen-	

	PAGE
tatives of certain abstract characters—Substitution of the formula for the impossible experience—We conceive the ideal object by means of its formula—Universal employment of substitution in mathematics. . . . .	25
III. Examples in the cases of Infinite Series—Time and Space—In the case of an infinite series or quantity, we do not conceive the totality of its terms, but certain of its terms, and one of their abstract characters represented in us by a name—Substitution of the formula for the impossible experience—We conceive the infinite series or quantity by means of its formula. . . . .	27
IV. Summary—Our general Ideas are names, substitutes for impossible experiences—Psychological Illusion which consists in distinguishing the idea from the name—Singular effects and general cause of this illusion—It is natural that signs should cease to be observed, and end by being considered as mere nothings—False theories on the pure spirit—The mental representative we term a pure idea, is never more than a name pronounced, understood, or imagined—Names are a class of Images—The Laws of Ideas are reduced to the Laws of Images. . . . .	29

## BOOK II.

### OF IMAGES.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### OF THE NATURE AND REDUCTION OF IMAGES.

- I. An Experience—An Image is a spontaneously reviving sensation, usually less energetic and precise than the sensation proper—The force and precision of the image varies in individuals and according to its kinds—Personal Instances—Instances of children accustomed to calculate mentally—Precocious mathematicians—Blindfolded chess-players—Painters who can draw portraits or make copies from memory—Schools of Art in which this faculty is cultivated—Other instances of the voluntary revival of visual sensations—Sensations of the other sense have their corresponding images—Images corresponding to auditory sensations—Examples. . . . . 33
- II. Circumstances increasing the precision and force of the image—In such a case it becomes more and more like the sensation—Instances in which the sensation is recent—Instances in which the sensation is immediately expected—Examples of images corresponding to sensations of hearing, of sight, of smell, of taste, of touch—Equal and similar effects of the image and the corresponding sensation—In these cases the image is taken, at least momentarily, for the sensation corresponding to it. . . . . 39

- III. How, in spite of this, it differs from the corresponding sensation—The illusion accompanying it is speedily rectified—The image invariably comprises an illusion of greater or less duration—Dugald Stewart's Law—Instance of an American preacher—Testimony of M. Flaubert—Instance of an English painter—Evidence of a chess-player—Observations of Goethe and of M. Maury—Voluntary hallucinations—Various circumstances under which the image becomes hallucinatory—These extreme cases are evidence as to the normal state—In the normal state, the illusion is at once destroyed—It is destroyed by the presence of an antagonist or reductive. . . . . 41
- IV. Cases in which the contradicting sensation is too feeble or is annulled—Hypnagogic Hallucinations—Experiments of M. Maury—Personal experience—Passage from the simple image to the hallucinatory image, and from that to the simple image—Other cases in which the contradictory sensation is annulled—Wounds in battle—Hallucinations strictly so-called—Hallucinations of sight after the prolonged use of the microscope—Partial restoration of the antagonist sensation—Pathological instances—In such cases, the hallucination is destroyed—Story of Nicolai—General means of destroying the hallucination—Case in which a sensation calls up an illusion properly so-called—Story of Dr. Lazarus—In such cases, the suppression of the exciting sensation destroys the illusion. . . . . 46
- V. Other antagonists—Reminiscences and general judgments form, by their combination, a body of auxiliary reductives—Their influence is more or less prompt and energetic—Different examples—Cases in which their influence is not sufficient—The antagonistic sensation, which is the special reductive, is then annulled—Examples in intoxication and illness—The patient then concludes the hallucination to be an hallucination—Instances in which all reductives are annulled, or of complete mental alienation—Remarkable case recorded by Dr. Lhomme. . . . . 60
- VI. General views as to the thinking being—The mind is a collection of images, like a polypus—General views as to the normal reasonable wakeful state—Mutual equilibrium of various images—Constant repression of the rising hallucination by special reductives—Necessity of sleep—Summary as to images—Their characters and relations to sensation—The image is the substitute of the sensation. . . . . 66

## CHAPTER II.

### LAWS OF THE REVIVAL AND OBLITERATION OF IMAGES.

- I. The image of a sensation may rise after a considerable interval—Examples—It may then rise without having done so during the interval—Examples—Singular, morbid instances of the revival of images which seemed obliterated—Recollection of a language learned in



childhood, and afterwards forgotten—Automatic recollection of a series of sounds heard mechanically—Probability that every sensation we experience preserves an indefinite aptitude for revival. . . . .	70
II. Different sensations have not all this aptitude for revival in an equal degree—Examples—General circumstances augmenting this aptitude—Extreme attention, voluntary or involuntary—The persistence of impressions acquired in fancy is thus explained—In what attention consists—Competition between our different images—The Law of Natural Selection is applicable to Mental Events—Another circumstance which augments the aptitude for revival—Repetition—Examples—Why these two circumstances augment the aptitude for revival. . . . .	73
III. Special circumstances calling up, at a particular moment, one image rather than another—Example—The reviving image has already, either by contiguity or by similitude commenced to revive—Why partial revival excites complete revival. . . . .	77
IV. Absence of the indicated circumstances—Want of attention—Want of repetition—Enormous number of sensations which thus lose their aptitude for revival—Cases in which two tendencies neutralize each other—Repetition and variety of experience blunt the image—Origin of general names, and of the vague images accompanying them—The majority of our sensations do not exist in our minds in the state of express images, but in the state of dull consecutive tendencies. . . .	80
V. General views as to the history of images and ideas—They are in perpetual conflict for preponderance—Effect of internal laws and external incidents in determining which preponderates—Temporary obliteration, prolonged or definitive, of a whole group of images—Partial and total paralysis of memory, excited by fatigue, loss of blood, blows, apoplexy—Examples—Forgetfulness of names—Forgetfulness of spoken names, but not of the meaning of written names—Restoration of lost faculties—Appearance of new faculties—Examples—Aptitudes and faculties are connected with the organic state—Possibility of two organic states severed from one another, and recurring periodically in the same individual—Case of an American lady—Two lives and two mental states may thus be met with in the same person—Instances—In what the moral personality consists—Two moral personalities may succeed one another in the same individual—What forms the continuity of a distinct moral person is the continuous revival of the same distinct group of images. . . . .	84

# BOOK III.

## OF SENSATIONS.

---

### CHAPTER I.

#### OF SENSATIONS OF HEARING AND THEIR ELEMENTS.

- |   | PAGE |
|---|------|
| I. Reduction of ideas to a class of images, and of images to a class of sensations—Enumeration of the principal kinds of sensations—What is meant by the word sensation—Distinction between the property of the external object which excites the sensation, and the sensation itself—Distinction between the crude sensation and the apparent position attributed to it by consciousness—Distinction between the sensation and the state of the nerves and nervous centres—Special and primitive character of sensation. . . . .   | 93   |
| II. Classification of sensations by Gerdy, Mueller, Longet, and Bain—Its practical convenience and scientific inadequacy—In what the classified sensations differ from other facts also classified—We cannot distinguish the elements of sensations—Physical and Physiological Science cannot distinguish these elements, but only the conditions of whole sensations—Sensations appear to be irreducible to other more simple data—Psychology seems, with reference to them, what Chemistry is with reference to simple bodies. . . . .  | 95   |
| III. Psychology stands with reference to them as Chemistry did with reference to Chemical compounds before the discovery of simple bodies—Analysis of the sensations of sound—Various kinds of sounds—They are, in appearance, irreducible to one another—The Wheel of Savart and the Siren of Helmholtz—Musical Sound—The continuous sensation is then composed of successive elementary sensations—Instance of very deep sounds—We can distinguish in these the successive elementary sensations—Each of them has a certain duration, and passes from a minimum to a maximum of intensity—Instance of certain musical notes—Savart's experiment—Enormous number of elementary sensations succeeding in a second to form a whole sensation of acute sound—Their number increases in proportion to the acuteness of the sound—In this case the elementary sensations cease to be distinguishable by consciousness—Appearance which the elementary sensation must therefore assume—It actually assumes this appearance—The characters of deep, acute, high, low, full, drawn-out, firm, vibrating, found in the total sensation are explained by the arrangement of the elementary sensations. . . . . | 99   |

	PAGE
IV. Continuation of the analysis of sensations of sound—Explanation of the sensation of intensity—Explanation of the sensation of tone—Discovery of Helmholtz—Explanation of the sensation of noise—Construction of the whole of the total sensations of sound by means of the elementary sensations of sound—Analysis of the elementary sensation of sound—It is composed of a maximum, a minimum, and an infinite number of intermediate states . . . . .	104

## CHAPTER II.

## SENSATIONS OF SIGHT, OF SMELL, OF TASTE, OF TOUCH, AND THEIR ELEMENTS.

I. Total sensations of sight—The spectrum—Infinite number of total sensations of color—There are at least three elementary sensations of color—It is sufficient to admit three—Theories of Young and Helmholtz—Experimental confirmation of this theory—Partial paralysis of the aptitude for experiencing sensations of color—Experience which raises to a maximum the sensation of violet and of red—The three elementary sensations are those of red, violet, and probably green. . . .	110
II. Construction of the various sensations of spectral color by the combinations of these elementary sensations—Sensation of white—Complementary colors—Law governing the mixture of spectral colors—Their saturation and their proximity to white—Sensation of black, or want of retinal sensation—It furnishes a new element for the composition of the various total sensations of color—Different examples—Summary—We cannot distinguish by consciousness the elements of the elementary sensations of color—Why—Analogy of these elementary sensations and the elementary sensations of sound—Proof that there are elements in these as in the others—Wheatstone's Experiment—Enormous number of successive elements composing an elementary sensation of color—Indications and conjectures as to the ultimate elements—Consciousness perceives aggregates only . . . . .	114
III. Total sensations of taste and smell—Increased difficulties—Reason of these difficulties—Preliminary distinctions—Smell—Sensations of smell strictly so called must be separated from those of nasal touch—Examples—And from those of the alimentary canal—Examples—And from those of the nerves of the air passages—Examples—We thus isolate sensations of pure smell—Their types—Taste—Sensations of taste strictly so called must be separated from other accompanying sensations—Accompanying sensations of smell and of nasal touch—Accompanying sensations of temperature and touch in the mouth—Sensations of taste proper, vary with the different parts of the mouth—Experiments of Guyot and Admyrault—Extreme complication of the sensations of taste and even those of pure taste—Their types—The action of the olfactory and gustatory nerves probably has, as immediate antecedent, a chemical combination, that is to say a system of molecular displace-	

	PAGE
ments—Analogy between this antecedent and the vibration of ether which excites the action of the retina—Indications as to the mode of action of the olfactory and gustatory nerves—Most probably it consists in a succession of actions, similar to one another and extremely short, each of which excites an elementary sensation of smell or taste—Theory of the four special senses—Each of them is a special idiom constructed to represent a single order of facts—General theory of the senses—They are all idioms—The sense of touch is a general idiom . . . . .	117
IV. Total sensations of touch—Increasing difficulties—Reason of these difficulties—Preliminary distinctions—First group of sensations of touch ; muscular sensations—Cases of paralysis in which they are absent—Observations of Landry—The two groups of nerves are distinct—The two groups of sensations are similar—There are three kinds of sensations for all the nerves of touch—Sensations of contact, of temperature, of pleasure and pain—Each of these three kinds may be singly preserved or abolished—Observations on sick persons—Known conditions of each kind—Experiments and observations—Opinion of Weber—These distinctions are distinct types of activity for the same nerve—Experiments of Fick—The different characters we find in the aggregate sensations of contact, temperature, pleasure, and pain, are capable of being explained by the different arrangement of the same elementary sensations . . . . .	126
V. Summary—Blanks in the theory—Researches which may supply them—The nervous action which excites a sensation is never more than a displacement of nervous molecules—To this elementary displacement corresponds an elementary sensation—The differences of total sensations are all caused by the diversities of grouping of the same elementary sensations—General process and economical method followed by nature in the construction of the mind . . . . .	137

## BOOK IV.

### OF THE PHYSICAL CONDITIONS OF MENTAL EVENTS.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### OF THE FUNCTIONS OF THE NERVOUS CENTRES.

I. Conclusion of psychological analysis—Commencement of the physiological analysis . . . . .	143
II. The external physical event is an accessory and distant condition of the sensation—It only excites the sensation through a medium ; the excitation of the nerve—Different kinds of sensitive nerves—Each has its special action—The action of each is different—Every	

nerve is capable of spontaneous action—Subjective and consecutive sensations—Altered sensations—Experiments and observations of Physiologists . . . . .	144
III. The nerve is a simple conductor—Molecular action must be propagated from its peripheral to its central extremity—Whatever may be the point of its course from which the molecular action starts, the sensation is the same—Illusions of persons who have suffered amputations—The action of the nerves only excites sensation through a medium, the action of the nervous centres—In what the molecular movement propagated in the nerve consists—It may be propagated in both directions—Experiments of Bert and Vulpian—If any nerve when irritated excites a certain sensation it is from its central extremity being in connection with some portion of the nervous centres—The simple excitation of the nervous centres is sufficient to produce sensation—Proof by hallucinations—Instances observed by writers on insanity—Hallucinations following the prolonged use of the microscope—Observations of M. Robin—Action of the nervous centres is the necessary and sufficient condition of sensation . . . . .	147
IV. The different portions of the encephalon—The rachidian bulb—When it alone is preserved, there are no longer sensations strictly so called—Experiments of Vulpian—Distinction between the reflex cry and cry of pain—The annular protuberance—Experiments of Longet and Vulpian—The action of the protuberance is the sufficient and necessary condition of sensations of touch, of hearing, and of taste—The corpora bigemina or quadrigemina—Experiments of Flourens, Longet, and Vulpian—The action of these tubercles is the sufficient and necessary condition of sensations of sight—Probable existence of another centre whose action is the necessary and sufficient condition of sensations of smell . . . . .	152
V. The action of these centres is the sufficient and necessary condition of crude sensations—Accordance of the results of Physiology and Psychology—Structure of the encephalon—The cerebral lobes or hemispheres—Their gray substance—Relation of intelligence to the volume and extent of this gray substance—The action of the cerebral lobes is the sufficient and necessary condition of images or reviving sensations, and consequently of all the mental operations which outstep the limits of crude sensation—Experiments of Flourens and Vulpian—Accordance of pathological observations . . . . .	156
VI. Internal structure of the cerebral lobes—Their white substance is conducting only—Functions of the gray substance—Physiological and pathological proofs—Gaps in physiology—The various departments of gray substance fulfil identical functions, and form a group of repeating and multiplying organs—Pathological and physiological proofs—One hemisphere supplies the place of the other—A portion of the hemispheres, if large enough, supplies the place of the rest—Application of psychological data—One element of the hemispheres repeats the action	

- of the sensory centres, and transmits it to the other elements—Why the magnitude of the hemispheres and the development of their cortical layer increases the extent of the intelligence—Mechanism of the formation, survival, and indefinite repetition of images—Physiological causes of the conflict, preponderance, and succession of images—Latent images—To what physiological state of the cerebral elements they correspond—The predominant image corresponds to a physiological action propagated through the majority of the cerebral elements—The image is so much the weaker as the cerebral elements in which the corresponding physiological action takes place are the less numerous—All we can know by consciousness are aggregates—The latent state is but the rudimentary state . . . . . 162
- VII. Summary—Beneath aggregates observable by consciousness lie their elements, which are invisible to consciousness—Characters and signs of elementary mental events—Reflex phenomena—Experiments of Vulpian, Landry, Dugès, and Claude Bernard—Indications of mental events in the inferior and secondary nervous centres—The segments of the marrow—Probable analogy of these events and elementary sensations—Successive degrees and constant correspondence of the molecular movement of a nervous centre, and the mental event . . . . 170

## CHAPTER II.

### RELATIONS OF THE FUNCTIONS OF THE NERVOUS CENTRES, AND MENTAL EVENTS.

- I. Distinction of physical and moral—The second order of facts is connected with the first—This connection seems inexplicable—Advantage of the preceding reductions and of the theory of elementary sensations . . . . . 178
- II. Situation of the difficulty—Notion of molecular movement in the cells and fibres of the nervous centres—Even if we suppose it to be completely elucidated we still find its idea and that of a sensation are irreducible to one another . . . . . 179
- III. Another method of investigation—The two ideas may be irreducible to one another without the two orders of facts being irreducible to one another—Two objects seem different to us when we acquire their ideas in different ways—Examples—This general law is applicable to the present case—Absolute difference between the process by which we acquire the idea of a sensation and the process by which we acquire the idea of the nervous centres and their molecular movements—The two ideas must be irreducible to one another . . . . . 181
- IV. Another series of reasons—The aspect of the sensation, and that of its ultimate elements must be wholly and entirely different—Hypothesis of two heterogeneous events—Hypothesis of one and the same event known under two aspects—Results of the first hypothesis—It is un-

scientific—Probability of the second—Of the two points of view that of consciousness is direct, and that of external perception is indirect—The molecular movement is but a sign of the mental event—Direct and remarkable confirmation of the second hypothesis—The sensation and its elements are the only real events of nature—Rudimentary and infinitesimal sensations—The nervous system is but an apparatus of complication and perfectionment—Presence of elementary mental events in the whole organized world—Their probable presence below this—Double scale and corresponding stages of the physical and moral world . . . . . 184

- V. The two faces of nature—Clear and obscure portions of the physical world—Clear and obscure portions of the moral world—To the clear portions of the one correspond obscure portions of the other, and reciprocally—Each of them by its bright parts lightens up the obscurities of the other—Comparison of the two aspects to an incomplete text accompanied to an incomplete translation . . . . . 188

### CHAPTER III.

#### THE HUMAN PERSON AND THE PHYSIOLOGICAL INDIVIDUAL.

- I. Usual opinion as to the human personality and its faculties—Meaning of the word faculty or power—Mechanical forces—Force of will—These words do not denote any occult being—All they denote is a character of an event, that is to say, its particularity of being constantly followed by another—Metaphysical illusion erecting forces into distinct essences . . . . . 191
- II. Metaphysical illusion forming of self a distinct substance—Meaning of the verb *to be*—Our successive events are the successive components of our *self*—In what the faculties of the *Ego* consist—Examples . . 194
- III. Progressive ruin of scholastic entities—Scientific idea of forces and beings—Its application to self and to matter—Mathematical idea of atoms—A real substance is nothing more than a distinct series of events—A force is nothing more than the property of one of these events, to be followed by one of the same series or of another series—Idea of nature . . . . . 198
- IV. The series which makes up the *Ego* is a fragment in the whole aggregate of animal functions—Physiological aspect—Order of nervous centres and nervous activities—The ganglia, the segments of the marrow, the layers of the encephalon—Psychological aspect—Order and increasing complication of the mental events indicated or proved in the different centres—In proportion as the animal descends the zoological scale, the different centres become more and more independent—Experiments and observations of Dugès, Landry, and Vulpian—Fundamental plurality of the animal—The individual, animal or human, is nothing more than a system . . . . . 200

## PART THE SECOND.

### OF THE DIFFERENT KINDS OF KNOWLEDGE.

#### BOOK I.

#### THE GENERAL MECHANISM OF KNOWLEDGE.

##### CHAPTER I.

##### OF ILLUSION.

PAGE

- I. Summary of the first part—Elements of human knowledge—Principal compounds formed by their combinations—The formation and rectification of illusions are two processes by which our various kinds of knowledge are built up in our minds . . . . . 205
- II. Examples—Illusion produced at the theatre—Optical illusions—Illusions of persons who have lost limbs—The sufficient condition of belief or affirmative judgment is the presence of the ordinary sensation—It does not matter whether the sensation be accompanied by its ordinary antecedents—Proofs—When the condition of the mental process is given, it is pursued blindly, as in the case of the vital process . . . 207
- III. Consequences of this—External perception is a true hallucination—Examples—In the normal and ordinary state, our dream within corresponds to things without—Psychological illusion as to external perception—We are tempted to take it for a simple spiritual act—Analogous psychological illusion as to other acts of cognition . . . . . 210
- IV. Part played by the image which is substituted for sensation—It excites the same hallucinatory process—Examples—Case in which this process becomes developed—Observations of M. Maury on hypnagogic hallucinations—Hypnotism and somnambulism—Braid's experiments on suggestion—Cases mentioned by Dr. Carpenter—Experiments of Dr. Tuke—Predominance of images and of the action of the hemispheres . . . . . 213
- V. Consequences—Presence of images in all sensible representations and in all pure ideas—And again, in all external perceptions, recollections,



previsions, and acts of consciousness—General tendency of the mind to hallucination—In all our mental operations, there is an hallucination, at all events in an incipient state—Examples of its development—Mental phrases which become external voices—Effaced images which, on revival, become hallucinatory—Our various mental operations are but the various stages of this hallucination . . . . . 219

## CHAPTER II.

## OF RECTIFICATION.

- I. Example of rectification—Case of reverie—Double effect of the antagonist reductives—The representation grows weak and ceases to appear a real object—Even when the representation remains distinct and colored, it ceases to appear a real object—General mechanism of this last rectification—It consists in a negation—It is accomplished by the attachment of a contradictory representation—Various points on which the contradiction may attach . . . . . 226
- II. Applications—Rectification of theatrical illusions—Rectification of optical illusions—Rectification of illusion by a person who has lost a limb—Rectification by a person under hallucination of his illusion—The illusion is checked either at its first, or at one of its subsequent stages . . . . . 227
- III. Various states and degrees of the contradictory representation—Case in which it is feeble—Case in which it is intense—Case in which it is transformed into a sensation—Physiological theory of these different states—Persisting action of the centres of sensation—Reflected action of the hemispheres on the centres of sensation . . . . . 230
- IV. Abnormal state and maximum degree of the representation—The antagonist sensation is then ineffectual and the contradictory representation is not a sufficient reductive—The contradictory representation is only effectual upon groups of images of no higher degree than its own . . . . . 233
- V. Normal state of wakefulness—Example—The first stage of rectification, recollection—The present image appears as a past sensation—Recollection, like external perception, is an illusion which results in a cognition—Our present dream corresponds to an anterior sensation—Psychological illusion respecting memory—We are tempted to take the knowledge of our past states for a simple spiritual act . . . . 235
- VI. Mechanism of memory—Examples—The present sensation negatives the surviving image of the anterior sensation—It negatives the image only as being a contemporary sensation—The ordinary hallucinatory process is checked in one point only—The surviving image appears as a sensation which is not present—Causes of its apparent recoil—Every image occupies a fragment of duration and has two extremities,

	PAGE.
one anterior and one posterior—Circumstances casting it back into the past—Circumstances projecting it into the future—Examples—Successive displacements and apparant wanderings of the image prior to situating itself at a greater or less distance in the past or future—It becomes situated by intercalation and enclosure . . . . .	238
VII. Last stage of rectification—Examples—The image then appears as a pure present image—Representations, images, conceptions, and ideas strictly so called—Cases in which they are blunted and deprived of individual peculiarities—In this case they cannot become situated either in the past, the present, or the future—Cases in which they are precise and provided with individual peculiarities—Picturesque or poetical vision—In this case, they are promptly excluded from their apparent place in the present, the past, or the future—In both cases, the complete repression is immediate or prompt—It is the common result of the present sensation, of connected recollections, and ordinary previsions . . . . .	242
VIII. Psychological illusion as to consciousness—We are inclined to take the knowledge of our present state for a simple and spiritual act of mind—The representation, conception, or idea, recognized as such, is but one and the same fact at two periods, in the state of illusion and in that of repressed illusion—Common process by which our different kinds of cognitions are built up . . . . .	247

---

## BOOK II.

### THE KNOWLEDGE OF BODIES.

---

#### CHAPTER I

##### EXTERNAL PERCEPTION AND THE IDEAS OF WHICH THE IDEA OF BODY IS COMPOSED.

- I. General character of external perception—It is a true hallucination—The proofs in detail—Its first phase is a sensation, and this sensation is in itself sufficient to excite the semblance of an external body present or absent—After perception, there is within us, together with the image of the sensation experienced, a semblance of the object perceived, and this representation tends to become hallucinatory—In many instances the apparent object differs from the real object—Three marks of the semblance—Whether confounded or not, in whole or in part, with the real object, it always follows the sensation . . . . . 250
- II. In what the semblance consists—It comprises, among other elements, the affirmative conception of a thing possessed of properties—Analysis

of this conception, notion, or idea—A thing is nothing more than the aggregate of its properties—A substance is nothing more than an aggregate of subsisting properties—A body is nothing more than a cluster of sensible properties . . . . . 253

III. Sensible properties of bodies—Bodies as odorous, sapid, sonorous, colored, hot, or cold—All we understand by these properties is the power of exciting in us some particular kind of sensation—Bodies as solid or resisting—Stuart Mill's analysis—Primitively, resistance is nothing more to us than the power of arresting a commenced series of muscular sensations—Bodies as polished, rough, pungent, smooth, hard, soft, sticky, damp—All we understand by these properties is the power of exciting some particular mode or modification of a sensation or of a series of muscular and tactile sensations . . . . . 255

IV. Geometrical and mechanical properties of bodies—Extension, figure, situation, mobility—These notions combined with that of resistance form the essential part of the notion of body—They are compounds whose elements are notions of distance—Bain's analysis—A muscular sensation more or less intense gives us the notion of resistance—A longer or shorter series of muscular sensations gives us the notion of greater or less distance—Notion of distance in one direction or notion of linear extension—Notion of distance in more than one direction, or notion of extension of surface and volume—Notion of position—Notion of form—An entire series of muscular sensations may be exhausted in a greater or less time—Notion of velocity—Double sensible measure of the amplitude of the same movement effected by the same limb—Final notion of the transit effected or of the space passed through—Mill's theory—To what the notion of empty space traversed and of continuous solid extension are reducible—All the properties of bodies are reducible to the power of exciting sensations . . . . . 257

V. Analysis of the word power—It signifies that certain sensations are possible under certain conditions and necessary under certain conditions—Every property of a body is reducible to the possibility of a certain sensation under certain conditions and to the necessity of the same sensation under the same conditions with a complementary one added—Confirmation of this paradox—These possibilities and necessities are lasting and independent—These two properties are the essential characters of substance—By degrees, they come into opposition to transient and dependent sensations, and seem to be data of a distinct kind and of a higher importance—Development of this theory by Stuart Mill . . . . . 264

VI. Addition to the theory—Bodies are not only permanent possibilities of sensation, but also permanent necessities of sensation—In this respect, they are forces—What a body is with respect to us—What a body is with respect to another body—Three groups of properties or powers in a body—These powers are otherwise never defined than by their relation to the events of the sentient subject, of the body itself,

	PAGE
or of another body—Among these powers there are some to which the others are reducible—Among these events, there is one, motion, which may be substituted for the others—Scientific Idea of body as of a movable motor—Scientific Idea of solidity, vacuum, line, surface, volume, force, defined with relation to motion—The elements of all these ideas are never anything more than sensations, and more or less elaborate extracts from sensation . . . . .	274
VII. Correction applied to theory—Bodies are not only permanent possibilities and necessities of sensation—Process by which we attribute to them motion—Analogies and differences between this process and the process by which we attribute to animated bodies sensations, images, ideas, and volitions similar to our own . . . . .	278
VIII. Summary—Materials by whose assemblage the notion or conception of a body is formed—Animal portion of this conception—Human portion of this conception—Employment of names—Intervention of metaphysical illusion—First elements of the hallucinatory semblance	282

## CHAPTER II.

### EXTERNAL PERCEPTION AND THE EDUCATION OF THE SENSES.

I. We assign a locality to our sensations—This operation is distinct from sensations and requires a certain lapse of time to accomplish—Experiments of physiologists . . . . .	285
II. Sensations of touch are not situated at the spot in which we place them—What is produced there is, in the normal state, a nervous disturbance which is one of their antecedents—Illusion of persons who have lost limbs—Observations and experiments of Mueller—Diseases and compressions of the nervous trunk—Sensations wrongly localized by paralytic persons insensible to pain—Sensations wrongly localized after autoplasmic operations—Experiments and observations of Weber—Law governing localization—We situate our sensation at the spot in which we have been accustomed to meet with its usual condition or cause . . . . .	286
III. Consequences—We situate our sensations of sound and color beyond the limit our body—Examples—Alienation of our sensations of color—They seem to us a property of the colored bodies—Mechanism of this alienation—Proof that color is nothing more than a sensation excited by a state of the retina—Subjective colors—Subjective sensation of complementary colors—Luminous figures arising from the compression of the eye—Sensation of light excited by the section of the optic nerve—Visual sensations produced by the prolonged or reflected excitation of the visual centres—Various applications of the law governing localization—Part of exploring touch—Case in which the situation of the sensation remains vague—Internal sensations—Case	

in which the places assigned to the causes of two nervous disturbances is the inverse of the places of the disturbances themselves—Images are inverted on the retina—Two stages of localizing judgment—Why it is sensations of color and sound go through these two stages—Why it is sensations of contact, pressure, and taste go through the first only—Intermediate positions of sensations of smell and of heat—Ambiguous character of sensations of smell, heat, and cold which seem to us to be partially sensations and partially properties of a body—Summary—The localizing judgment is always false—Its practical utility . . . 292

IV. Elements of the localizing judgment—Examples—It is composed of tactile and muscular images or visual images—Tactile and muscular Atlas—We can ascertain its presence in the case of persons born blind—Case in which we can ascertain its presence in ourselves—Examples—How this tactile and muscular chart performs its functions—It is primitive—Visual Atlas—It is ulterior—The localization of a sensation is effected by the adjunction of the visual or tactile and muscular images attached to the sensation—In the case of instinct, this adjunction is spontaneous—With man, it is an acquisition of experience . . . 302

V. Differences of the two Atlases—Spontaneous formation of the tactile and muscular atlas—Derived formation of the visual atlas—Primitive localization of visual sensations—Crude sensations of the retina—What is added to them by the education of the eye—Observations made on persons born blind and restored to sight by an operation—Cases recorded by Cheselden, Ware, Home, Wardrop, and Nunneley—To the retinal and muscular sensations of the eye is added the image of the muscular sensations of transport and locomotion of the limbs and whole body—This association is an effect of experience—Opinion of Helmholtz—The retinal and muscular sensations of the eye become abbreviatory signs—Analogy between these sensations and names—They are, like names, substitutes of images—Usually, these images remain in a latent state and cannot be distinguished by consciousness—Comparative process by which we estimate great distances—We then compare signs only . . . 305

VI. First notion of visible extension—A very short series of muscular and retinal sensations of the eye is the substitute of a very long series of tactile and muscular sensations of the body and limbs—Manner in which persons born blind imagine extension—How is it that we believe that we perceive by sight a great number of distant and co-existing points—The visual atlas is an abbreviatory summary of the tactile and muscular atlas—Greater convenience and almost exclusive employment of the visual atlas—Circumstances in which the tactile and muscular atlas is still employed—It remains atrophied and rudimentary, through the predominance of the other—Case in which the other cannot develop itself—Perfection of touch in blind persons—Instances . . . 319

VII. Consequences of the situation our sensations appear to have—They appear extended and continuous—Consequently, the bodies which we

know by means of them appear extended and continuous—How far this belief is misleading—The idea of extension is not innate but acquired—Idea of our body—Corporal enclosure of the Ego—Idea of an external body—We conceive it, with reference to our localized sensations, as a thing beyond it: and, with reference to our body, as a thing without it—Projection of sensations of sight and hearing into this outer world—Their definitive alienation—Completion of the internal semblance which at present constitutes for us an external perception—Why it appears as other than ourselves, and without us . . . 327

- VIII. How far this hallucination is true in the normal state—Our illusion is equivalent to a cognition—What there is of truth in the localizing judgment—At the spot in which the sensations of the first group appear situated is found situated the starting point of the nervous disturbance—At the spot in which the sensations of the second group appear situated is found situated the starting point of the undulation of air or ether—What there is of truth in the external perception—To the differences which distinguish the sensations of the second group correspond differences in the type of the undulations and in the characters of their starting points—To the corporal substance we pronounce permanent there correspond a permanent possibility and necessity of sensations, and, in general, of events—Every external perception is reduced to the assertion of a general fact conceived with its conditions—Usual accordance of the real and mental law—General adaptation of the internal order to the external order—Spontaneous establishment, progressive perfection, very simple mechanism of this adaptation . . . 331

---

## BOOK III.

### THE KNOWLEDGE OF MIND.

---

#### CHAPTER I.

##### THE KNOWLEDGE OF MIND.

- I. Part of the Idea of Self in mental life—Its almost incessant presence—The Ego compared with its events . . . 338
- II. Ideas of which the Idea of the Ego is composed—Among other ideas it comprises that of a permanent being connected with a certain organized body—What we mean by this connection—More precise ideas of which the Idea of the Ego is composed—Idea of a group of capacities or faculties . . . 339

- III. What we understand by the words capacity and faculty—They only denote the possibility of certain events under certain conditions and the necessity of the same events under the same conditions, with the addition of a complementary one—These possibilities and necessities are permanent—Capital importance which we attach to them—Metaphysical illusion which their name excites—The only real elements of our being are our events . . . . . 340
- IV. The distinctive character common to all these events is to appear as internal—Examples—Mechanism of the rectification—Every representation, conception, or idea, at its second moment, is compelled to appear as internal—Our emotions and volitions are but the affective and active side of our ideas—Hence it follows that they also must appear as internal—The sensations which we localize in our bodies appear as internal—The sensations which we localize outside our bodies appear as events foreign to us, or as properties of bodies foreign to us. 342
- V. Our past as well as our present events appear internal—The series of these events appears as a chain—Mechanism of memory which binds them together link by link—By the law of the revival of images, the image of one of our events calls up those of the preceding and following one—Abbreviatory process by which we quickly ascend or descend long distances in the whole series—Examples—Prominent points in our past life—We leap from prominence to prominence—Effect of this rapid survey—Disengagement of a character common to all the successive elements of the series—Idea of a stable *within*—This idea is the idea of Self—Completion of this idea by that of permanent faculties and capacities—Final opposition of the Ego and its events . . . 345
- VI. To what real compound the idea of Self actually corresponds—It is the product of a long and complex elaboration—Preliminary operations required to form it—It is, therefore, susceptible of error—Various classes of errors with respect to self—Case in which external events are introduced into the idea of self—Various examples—Starting point of the illusion—In novelists—In uncultivated minds—In dreams—With madmen—In hypnotism—Case in which events appertaining to self are attributed to another—Normal alienation of sensations of sound and color—Psychical hallucinations—Intellectual conversations of mystics—Story of Blake—Other examples—Starting point and progress of the illusion—Passage from the psychical to the sensorial hallucination—Case in which the whole series of our past, present, and possible events is replaced by an external series—Starting point of the illusion—Suggestions in hypnotism—Experiments of Drs. Tuke and Elliotson—Examples among monomaniacs—Patients persuaded that they are some person other than themselves, that they are changed into animals or into inanimate bodies, that they are dead—Analogous beliefs in dreams—Mechanism of the idea of self in the normal state—Mechanism of the idea of self in the abnormal state—Analogy between the mental and the vital process . . . . . 349

- VII. General veracity of recollection—Given the mechanism of recollection its play is usually sure—To the clear and circumscribed present image, there almost invariably corresponds an antecedent sensation of which the image is the remnant—To the apparent position of the driven back image there almost invariably corresponds the real position of the antecedent sensation—General veracity of the notion we have of our faculties—Incessant experience controls, rectifies, and consolidates it—Cohesion of its elements—Exceptional circumstances must occur in order to disjoin these elements or to insert foreign ones among them—General reason for the agreement of our thoughts and things . . . 360
- VIII. How, from the idea of our own mind, we form the idea of other minds—Analogy of other living bodies and our own—This analogy suggests to us by association the idea of a mind similar to our own—Various, numerous, and constant verification of this spontaneous induction. 363
- IX. General summary and connected view—In all the preceding operations, an image or group of images is consolidated with a sensation or a group of sensations, with an image or a group of images, by virtue of the laws of the revival and association of images—Increasing complication of the mental compound—Enormous complication of the compound which constitutes the idea of an individual—Every mental compound is a couple and, in this respect, a cognition—When the first term of the couple is repeated by the present sensation, the second term becomes a prevision—Mechanism of the prevision and projection of the second term into the future—In the majority of instances, our prevision agrees with the foreseen event—Usual correspondence of the mental with the real law—Two states of the mental couple—It acts before being distinguished—Opposition of animal to human thought—Passage from the first to the second—After ideas of individual things, rise ideas of general things . . . 365





BOOK IV.

THE KNOWLEDGE OF GENERAL THINGS.

CHAPTER I.

OF GENERAL CHARACTERS AND GENERAL IDEAS. PAGE

General characters — Examples — They are the object of general ideas . . . . . 371

§ 1. *General Ideas which are Copies.*

- I. Part of general characters in nature—A group of general characters common to all the moments of a series of events constitutes the individual—A group of general characters common to many individuals constitutes the class—General characters are the fixed and uniform portion of existence—They are not pure conceptions or fictions of our mind—Their effectiveness in nature—They are more or less general—The more general they are, the more abstract they are . . . . . 372
- II. To these general extracts, general and abstract ideas correspond in our minds—These ideas are names usually accompanied by a vague sensible representation—Examples— The sensible representation is a residue of many blunted and confounded recollections—The name is a significant sound, that is to say a sound connected with that which all the sensible perceptions and representations of the individuals of the class have in common, and connected with that alone—In this respect it is the mental representative of their common portion and becomes a general idea—Mechanism of this exclusive connection—Observations on children—Analogy of infantile and scientific invention—In what human intelligence is distinguished from animal intelligence—How, in the child, transmitted names become significant words—Indications furnished by its barbarisms—Observations of Dr. Lieber—The child receives words, but creates their meanings . . . 376
- III. Gradual adaptation of general ideas to things—Scientific research—To the general characters whose group constitutes a class we add others—This addition has no limit—Corrections afforded by these additions to the general idea—Instances in zoology and chemistry—Perfectionment of our classifications . . . . . 382
- IV. General characters appertaining to the elements of the classified individuals—Idea of the leaf in botany—Idea of the anatomical plan in zoology—Idea of electric action—Idea of gravitation—Disengagement

of the most universal and most stable characters—Retrenchment of accessory and transient characters—Summary—The general idea is adjusted to its object, first by addition, then by subtraction . . . 385

## § 2. *General Ideas which are Models.*

- I. General Ideas whose objects are possible only—We construct such ideas—Ideas of Arithmetic—Notion of Unity—The property of being a unit is nothing more than the aptitude of entering as an element into a collection—All facts or individuals present this property—We isolate it by means of a sign which becomes its mental representative—Successive inventions of different kinds of signs to represent the series of abstract units—First forms of calculation—The ten fingers—Pebbles—Addition and subtraction by means of the fingers and pebbles—Names of number, substitutes for fingers and pebbles—Convenience, small number and simple combinations of these new substitutes—Final substitutes, ciphers—They are the most abbreviatory of all—We thus form collections of mental units without thinking of adapting them to collections of real units—Subsequently and through experience, every collection of real units finds itself adapted to a collection of mental units—Examples—Our numbers are preliminary outlines. 383
- II. All the general ideas we construct are preliminary outlines—Ideas of geometry—Notions of the surface, the line, and the point—Their origin—The surface is the limit of the sensible body, the line is the limit of the surface, the point is the limit of the line—Convenient symbols by which we represent these general characters—Surface of the board or paper, lines and points in ink or chalk—Analogy between these substitutes and the fingers or pebbles in arithmetic—Last general idea introduced into geometry, the idea of motion—Its origin—New aspect it gives to the primary ideas of geometry—The line is the continuous series of the successive positions of the point in motion—The surface is the continuous series of the successive positions of the line in motion—The solid is the continuous series of the successive positions of the surface in motion—If for the point, line and surface, we substitute their symbols, these constructions become sensible—Other constructions—The straight line—The broken line—The curved line—The angle—The right angle—The perpendicular—The polygon—The circumference—The plane—The three solids of revolution—The sections of the cone—Indefinite number of these constructions—To the most general of these mental constructions there are real constructions which correspond—There are in nature, surfaces, lines, and points, at least so far as our senses are concerned—There are in nature, surfaces, lines, and points in motion—To the least general of these constructions there are real constructions which approximately correspond—Why this correspondence is approximate only—Examples—The real construction is more complex than the mental con-

- struction—The two constructions become mutually adjusted by the complication of the one and the simplification of the other—Utility of preliminary outlines . . . . . 393
- III. Ideas of mechanics—Notions of rest, motion, velocity, force, mass—Their origin and their formation—Lines, ciphers, and names are their symbols—Diversity and indefinite number of the compounds constructed with these elements—To the most simple of these mental constructions there are real constructions which correspond—Tendencies of bodies at rest or possessed of a uniform rectilinear motion to persevere indefinitely in their state—To such of these mental constructions as are less simple there are also certain real constructions which correspond—Hypothesis of uniformly accelerated velocity ; case of heavy bodies which fall—A movable body acted on by a uniform rectilinear movement and by another movement whose velocity is uniformly accelerated ; case of the planets—How preliminary outlines must be constructed to have a chance of agreeing with things—Three conditions—Their elements must be fashioned in accordance with the elements of things—Their elements must be the most general possible—Their elements must be combined as simply as possible. 397
- IV. Other mental constructions—We may form such for all classes of objects—Physical and Chemical hypothesis—Among these outlines there are some to which we are desirous that things should conform—Mental Construction of the Useful, the Beautiful, and the Good—These outlines, so constructed, become springs of action . . . . . 401

## CHAPTER II.

## THE COUPLES OF GENERAL CHARACTERS AND GENERAL PROPOSITIONS.

- I. General characters form couples—Two general characters coupled together form a law—To conceive a law, is mentally to enounce a general proposition . . . . . 403
- II. Examples of these coupled characters—Practical utility of their connections—These connections are of various kinds—Unilateral or simple connections—Bilateral or double connections—The two characters may be simultaneous—They may be successive—Antecedent and consequent—Frequency of this last case—The antecedent then takes the name of cause . . . . . 403
- III. In what the connection consists—Stuart Mill's analysis—The word Cause does not denote any secret and mysterious virtue comprised in the first character—Its precise meaning—Given the first character, that is enough for the second to be also given—There is nothing strange in general characters having, like particular facts, antecedents,

companions, and consequents—The difficulty is, to isolate the general characters—Two artifices of method for evading the difficulty—Two kinds of Laws . . . . .	406
---	-----

### § 1. *Laws concerning Real Things.*

- I. First general judgments of the infant—Mechanism of their formation—Passage from animal judgment to human judgment—General judgments become multiplied—They are the summary and measure of anterior experience—How subsequent experience rectifies them—Gradual adaptation of our couples of mental characters to the couples of real characters—We believe at present that every general character is connected with another—Provisional admission of this hypothesis—It is the principle of Scientific Induction . . . . . 409
- II. Various methods of Scientific Induction—When a known character is given, this is sufficient to give another character which was unknown—Search for the unknown character from this indication—Method of Agreement—Method of Difference—Method of concomitant variations—Various examples—All these methods are processes of elimination—They are efficient in proportion to the magnitude of the eliminations they effect—When the elimination is complete, the residue contains the unknown character of which we are in search—Complementary Method of Deduction—Example—Theory of Herschel and Mill—Example of these various methods in the inquiry into the antecedent of dew . . . . . 412

### § 2. *Laws concerning Possible Things.*

- I. Lengthiness of the processes described above—Laws thus discovered are probable only beyond the circle of our experience—The most general are last discovered . . . . . 426
- II. Propositions concerning possible things are different in character—Universal truth of mathematical theories—We cannot conceive an instance in which these propositions are false—The most general are formed first—Among the most general, there are some called axioms, on which the others depend, and which we admit without demonstration . . . . . 426
- III. Two kinds of proof for the theorems of the so-called Sciences of Construction—Example—Difference of the two methods of proof—Axioms are unproved theorems—They are analytical propositions—We either dispense with their demonstration because the analysis required is very easy, or evade their demonstration because the analysis required is very difficult—Axioms of identity and contradiction—Axiom of the alternative—Analysis demonstrating it—Latent ideas contained in the two members of the proposition expressing it—These undisengaged ideas determine our conviction—There are latent and proving ideas of the same kind in the terms of the other axioms . . . . . 428

- IV. Mathematical axioms—Axioms as to equal quantities augmented or diminished by equal quantities—Experimental and inductive proof—Analytical and deductive proof—Case of artificial magnitudes or collections of natural units—Two of these collections are equal when they contain the same number of units—Case of natural magnitudes or collections of artificial units—Two of these magnitudes are equal when they coincide and are confounded in one same magnitude—Disengagement of the idea of identity included and latent in the idea of equality . . . . . 432
- V. Principal geometrical axioms—Axioms concerning the straight line—Definition of the straight line—Propositions derived from it—Two straight lines having two points in common coincide in all their intermediate, and in all their ulterior extent—Axioms relating to parallel lines—Definition of parallel lines—Propositions derived from it—Two lines perpendicular to the same straight line are equi-distant throughout—Examination of Euclid's Postulate . . . . . 438
- VI. Underlying mental process which accompanies the experience of the eyes and imagination—This process consists in the silent recognition of a latent identity—The experience of the eyes and imagination is nothing more than a preliminary indication and a subsequent confirmation—Its utility—Case in which this indication and this confirmation are wanting—Axioms of mechanics—Their late discovery—Ordinary experience does not suggest them—How scientific experience discovered them—Opinion which places them among truths of experience—Many of them are, in addition to this, analytical propositions—Principle of Inertia—Exact enunciation of the axiom—The difference of place and moment is, by hypothesis, without influence or of no effect—Limits of the axiom thus extended and demonstrated—Principle of the parallelogram of velocities and of forces—Exact enunciation of the axiom—The co-existence of a second movement in the same movable body is, by hypothesis, without influence or of no effect—Passage from the idea of velocity to that of force . . . . . 446
- VII. Axioms relating to Time and Space—Mathematical Idea of Time and Space—Every determinate duration or extension has something beyond it—Analysis of this conception—Every determinate magnitude, artificial or natural, has in the same way something beyond it, and is found comprised in an infinite series—Examples—A number—A straight line—Demonstration of the axiom—It is an analytical proposition—Every addition effected implies an addition that may be effected—Discovery of the ideas of identity and indifference included and latent in the terms of the axiom—All the axioms we have examined are analytical propositions more or less disguised . . . . . 453
- VIII. Importance of the question—Origin, formation, and value of axioms and the theories derived from them—Opinion of Kant—Opinion of Stuart Mill—Conclusions of Kant and Stuart Mill on the range of the human mind and on the nature of things—Proposed theory—What it

concedes and denies in the two preceding theories—There is an intrinsic and necessary connection between the two ideas whose couple forms a theorem—There is an intrinsic and necessary connection between the two general characters which correspond to these two ideas—It remains for us to know whether these general characters are actually met with in things—They are met with wherever the theorems are applicable . . . . . 456

## CHAPTER III.

### THE CONNECTION OF GENERAL CHARACTERS, OR THE EXPLANATORY REASON OF THINGS.

#### § 1. *Nature of the Explanatory Intermediate.*

- I. In many cases the connection of two data is explained—What is asked by the word *why*—Intermediate and explanatory datum which, being connected to the first and the second, connects the second to the first—Premises, conclusion, reasoning . . . . . 462
- II. Propositions in which the first datum is an individual—Examples—In this case the intermediate is a character more general than the individual and comprised in it—Propositions in which the first datum is a general thing—This the case with laws—The intermediate is then the reason of the law—Successive discoveries which have determined the reason of the fall of bodies—Here again the explanatory intermediate is a more general and more abstract character included in the first datum of the law—Present hypothesis of physicists on the explanatory reason of gravitation—Same conclusion . . . . . 462
- III. Laws in which the explanatory intermediate is a transient character communicated to the antecedent by its surroundings—Law connecting the sensation of sound with the vibration transmitted from an external body—Same conclusion as in the preceding case—The intermediate is then a series of successive general characters . . . . . 465
- IV. Laws in which the intermediate is a sum of simultaneous general characters—Of the composition of causes—Law of the motion of a planet—Law in which the first datum is a sum of separable data—Examples in arithmetic and geometry—In this case the intermediate is a general character repeated in all the elements of the first datum—Example in zoology—Law of the connection of organs—The intermediate repeated in each organ is the property of being useful—These kinds of intermediates are the most instructive—Summary—The explanatory reason of a law is a general intermediate character, simple or multiple, included directly or indirectly in the first datum of the law . . . . . 467

- V. Of explanation and demonstration—The first datum contains the intermediate which contains the second datum—Hence three connected propositions—Order of these propositions—In what the scientific syllogism consists . . . . . 472

§ 2. *Methods of finding the Explanatory Intermediate.*

- I. The position and characters discovered in the intermediate afford the means of finding it—Method in the sciences of construction—Advantages they have over the sciences of experience—The intermediate is always included in the definition of the first datum of the law—We may always derive it thence by analysis—Example, the demonstration of axioms—Other examples—Theorem of the equality of the opposite sides of the parallelogram—How intermediates enclose one another—In what the skill and labor of the geometrician consist—Method he follows in his constructions—The more complex compounds have simpler factors—The properties of these simpler factors are the intermediates by which the more complex compounds possess their properties—The last intermediate is always a property of the primitive factors—This property is the ultimate reason of the mathematical law—Place of axioms—They enounce those properties of the factors or primitive elements which are the simplest and most general of all—Analysis must apply, then, to the primitive elements—Primitive elements of the line—Discovery of a character common to all the elements or points of a line—Definition of a line by the constant ratio of its co-ordinates—Analytical Geometry—Primitive elements of a magnitude—The infinitesimal calculus—In every law enounced by a science of construction, the ultimate reason of the law is a general character included in the elements of the first datum of the law . . . . . 474
- II. Method in the experimental Sciences—Their disadvantages—Insufficiency of analysis—Why we are compelled to employ experience and induction—Law connecting dew with cooling—Included intermediates connecting the second datum of this law to the first—The method of discovering the intermediate differs, according as it is a question of real or mental compounds, but the connection of the second datum and of the first is formed in the same way—Very advanced experimental sciences—Analogy of these sciences and of the mathematical sciences—Their most general laws correspond to axioms—They enounce, like axioms, properties of primitive factors—How far these laws still differ from axioms—They are provisionally irreducible. . . . . 482
- III. Same arrangement in the less advanced experimental Sciences—Their most general laws also enounce properties of primitive factors—Sciences in which the primitive factors may be observed—Zoology—General characters of organs—Cuvier's law—Geoffroy Saint-Hilaire's law—History—General characters of the individuals of an epoch, of a nation, or of a race—Psychology—General characters of the elements of knowledge—All these general characters are explanatory interme-

diates—They are the more explanatory in proportion as they appertain to more general and more simple primitive factors—Explanation is at an end when we arrive at primitive factors which we can neither observe nor conjecture—Present limits of physiology, physics, and chemistry—Beyond known factors the simpler unknown factors may have either different or the same properties—According as one or the other of these hypotheses is true, the explanation has or has not limits . . . . . 487

- IV. Another disadvantage of the experimental Sciences—They have to answer to questions of origin—Historical portion of every experimental science—Laplace's hypothesis—Researches of mineralogists and geologists—Darwin's Ideas—Views of historians—General Theory of Evolution—Gaps—Daily progress which fills them up—The formation of a compound is explained by the properties of its elements and by the characters of the antecedent circumstances—The explanatory intermediate is the same in this and in the preceding cases . . . . . 493

### § 3. *If every Fact or Law has its Explanatory Reason.*

- I. Convergence of all the preceding conclusions—They indicate that, in every couple of actually connected events, there is an explanatory intermediate which necessitates this connection—At all events we believe that it is so—We predict, by analogy, the characters of the intermediate in the cases in which it is still unknown to us—Examples—We extend this law by analogy to all points of space and all moments of time . . . . . 498
- II. Groundwork of this induction—From our ignorance in certain cases of the explanatory reason, we cannot conclude that it does not then exist—The cause of our ignorance is known to us—The gaps of science are explained by its conditions—Examples—To presume the absence of the explanatory reason is a gratuitous hypothesis—The presumptions are in favor of the presence of an explanatory reason of which we are ignorant—Other presumptions suggested by the example of the sciences of construction—In these sciences, every law has its known explanatory reason—The gaps of the experimental sciences are caused by their conditions and by the particular turn of their method—Proof—What geometry would be if formed by induction—The gaps of geometry would then be the same as those of physics or chemistry—The Sciences of Construction are a preliminary model of that which the experimental sciences might be—Analogy of their arrangements—Identity of the materials—The only difference between our mental and real compounds is, that the first are the more simple—Employment of mental compounds in order to understand real compounds—Consequences—The application of mathematical and mechanical laws is universal and necessary—Refutation of Stuart Mill—All numbers, forms, movements, and forces of physical nature are subject to necessary laws—Very probably, all the physical changes in the world, and



probably all the physical changes beyond our world, are reducible to movements which have movements for their conditions—Idea of the physical universe as a collection of movable motors subject to the law of the Conservation of Force . . . . . 500

- III. Recapitulation of the inductive proofs which make us believe in the principle of the Explanatory Reason—Our natural inclination to admit it—Employment made of it by scientific men for the purpose of induction—Opinion of Claude Bernard—Opinion of Helmholtz—Explanation of this belief by the innate structure of our mind—Another explanation—Analogy of this principle and of the axioms previously demonstrated—It is probable that, like them, it may be demonstrated by analysis—Demonstration—Latent identity of the terms enouncing it—Limits of the axiom so demonstrated and understood—The axiom of Cause is derived from it—Consequences of the axiom of explanatory reason—The intervention of experience is necessary in order that it may be applied—Possible application of the axiom to the problem of existence—General Summary of the present psychological theory. . . 507

END OF THE TABLE OF CONTENTS.





# ON INTELLIGENCE.

---

## PART THE FIRST.

### THE ELEMENTS OF KNOWLEDGE.

---

#### BOOK I.

##### OF SIGNS.

---

#### CHAPTER I.

##### OF SIGNS IN GENERAL AND OF SUBSTITUTION.

I. IF we ascend the Arc de l'Étoile, and look down on the Champs Elysées, we see a number of black or variously colored specks stirring about on the roadway or pavements. That is all our eyes distinguish. But we know that each of these specks is a living body, with active limbs, a wise economy of organs, and a thinking brain actuated by some project or inward desire—in short, is a human being. The presence of the specks has indicated the presence of persons. The first have been signs of the second.

Associations of this kind are continually being met with.—At night we look up to the starry sky, and say to ourselves that each of these brilliant points is an enormous mass like the sun.—When we walk in the fields on an autumn evening, we see the blue smoke rising calmly in the distance, and think at once of the slow fires with which the peasants are burning up the stubble.—We turn over sheets of music, and, while the eye follows the black and white marks with which the lines are dotted, we hear mentally the sounds they indicate.—A sharp cry of a particular tone comes from a neighboring room, and we picture to ourselves the face of a child, crying no doubt because

he has hurt himself. The greater part of our ordinary judgments are made up of connections like these. When we drink or walk, or use our limbs for any purpose, we foresee, by means of a perceived fact, a fact which we do not yet perceive; animals do the same; according to the color or smell of an object, they eat or leave it.—In all these cases a present experience suggests the idea of another possible experience; from the first we imagine the second; the perception of an event, object, or character, arouses the conception of another event, object, or character. When we touch the first link of the couple we picture to ourselves the second link, and the first is the sign of the second.

II. In this great family of signs there is one species whose properties are remarkable; these are *names*.

Let us first consider proper names, which are the easier to study from each one denoting some particular, precise thing; as, for example, the names Tuileries, Lord Palmerston, Luxembourg, Notre Dame, etc. These clearly belong to the family we have just described, and each of them is the sensible and apparent first term of a couple. When I hear the word Lord Palmerston pronounced, or read the fourteen letters of which it is made up, I form a mental image of his brisk erect figure, gesticulation, and smile, just as I have seen him in his place in Parliament. Again, when I read or hear the word Tuileries, I picture more or less vaguely, in more or less mutilated forms, a level garden, flower-beds enclosed with rails, marble statues, the rounded heads of chestnut-trees, the fall and plume of a fountain, and the rest. A short insignificant sensation, acting through our eyes or ears, has the property of calling up in us a certain image, or series of images, more or less definite, and the connection between the first and second terms of this couple is so precise, that in a hundred million instances, and for two millions of men, the first term invariably calls up the second.

III. Suppose now that instead of dwelling on the word Tuileries, and calling up the different images connected with it, I glance quickly at a phrase like this:—"There are many public gardens in Paris, both small and great, some no bigger than a drawing-room, others as large as a park, the Jardin des Plantes, the Luxembourg, the Bois de Boulogne, the Tuileries, Champs

Elysées, the squares, besides the new parks which are being laid out, all very neat and well looked after." I ask the ordinary reader who has just gone through this list with ordinary speed, if, when his eye ran over the word Tuileries, he saw mentally as before, some fragmentary image, some patch of blue sky appearing through trees, the attitude of some statue, some vaguely extending avenue, the sparkling of water in a basin?—Assuredly not, his eye ran over it too quickly; there is a notable difference between this and the preceding operation. In the first, the sign aroused pictures more or less faded of the sensation, revivals more or less enfeebled of the experience; in the second, the sign did not arouse them. In the one case, the two links of the couple appear; in the other, the first link alone appears. Between these two operations are an infinite number of intermediate states occupying the whole interval; these states connect the intense half-sight with the dry notation, by a series of degradations, rubbings out, and losses, which strip by degrees the complete and puissant image, till they leave us nothing but a simple word.

This word so reduced is not however a lifeless symbol, without trace of signification; it is more like the trunk of a tree, stripped indeed of its leaves and branches, but capable of reproducing them; we understand it as we pass it, and with whatever speed we may pass it; it does not come to us as a stranger, or strike us as an intruder; in its long association with the experience and image of the object, it has contracted certain affinities and repugnances; and in passing through us carries with it this retinue of affinities and repugnances; however briefly we retain the word, the image to which it corresponds commences to form; the image accompanies the word in a nascent state, and, though not actually formed, acts on us as if it were. Read, for instance, a sentence like this:—"London, the capital of England, has several fine gardens—Hyde Park, Regent's Park, and the Tuileries."—We experience a certain shock and surprise; we point involuntarily in two directions, towards Paris and towards a far distant city. The image of the Tuileries is aroused with the Seine and quays beside it, and we are arrested, when we try to transport them elsewhere. But before the image appeared, we experienced a resistance in the word itself,

a resistance which was strengthened and renewed when the image reappeared. Prolong and vary the experiment; you will find in the word a system of tendencies all corresponding to those of the image, all acquired by it in its connection with the experience and the image, but now spontaneous, and acting, sometimes to connect it with, sometimes to sever it from, other words or groups of words, images or groups of images, experiences or groups of experiences. In this way the simple name is enabled to take the place of the image it arouses, and consequently, of the experience it recalls; it performs their office and becomes their *substitute*.

IV. In the case we have considered, the obliteration of the image forming the second member of the couple is, as generally happens with proper names, gradual and involuntary. Let us consider another case, in which we suddenly and voluntarily suppress it; the reader will then see the operation more clearly set out.

My garden is surrounded by a hedge, and my fruit is stolen; I determine on enclosing it with a wall. I get what workmen I can in the village—four, for instance—and at the end of the day I find they have built twelve metres of wall. This is not fast enough; I send to the next village for six other workmen, and ask myself how many metres a day will be added to the wall. To find out this, I no longer picture to myself workmen with their blouses and trowels—the wall with its stones and mortar, but replace my first workmen by the figure four, the first amount of work by the figure twelve, the whole of the workmen by the figure ten, the unknown amount of work they will do by the sign  $x$ , and write down the following proportion:

$$4 : 12 :: 10 x = \frac{12 \times 10}{4} = 30.$$

Henceforth, barring accident or drunkenness, if the new men work like the old, and all continue to work together as the first four began, my ten men will build thirty metres a day. Operations of this kind occur daily, and all practical calculations are made in this way. For the real objects first imagined, figures are substituted which replace them partially; they replace them

in the only point of view in which we need consider them, that is, in point of number. This once effected, we forget the objects represented; they recede into the background; we only consider the figures, we assemble, compare, transpose, and manipulate them as more convenient equivalents, and the figure we finally arrive at indicates the object, or group of objects, at which we wish to arrive.

Substitution goes further than this, and figures substituted for things have in turn letters substituted for them. After several similar calculations, I observe that in all such cases the proportion is written in the same way, that the first figure always represents the first workmen; the second, their work; the third, the whole number of workmen; the fourth, the unknown work; and thus I pass from arithmetic to algebra. Henceforth I replace the first figure by A, the second by B, the third by C, and write down as follows:—

$$A : B :: C : x = \frac{B \times C}{A}.$$

And I see that, in every such case, if I want to know the amount of work which will be done by all the workmen, it will be sufficient to multiply their number by that representing the work done by the first lot, and then to divide the product by the number of the workmen first employed.

Instead of this simple case, let us consider the labor of an analyst who writes equations by the hour. He lays aside the figures, but indirectly he is working on them, just as an arithmetician lays aside the facts, but works indirectly on the facts. He effaces figures from his mind as the other effaces things. Each of them arranges and combines signs, and these signs are *substitutes*. The fact is, they are not like proper names, substituted for the whole of the object they represent, but merely for a portion or an aspect of such object. The letter used in algebra does not fully replace the arithmetical cipher with its precise quantity, but only as regards its function and place in the equation it enters into. The arithmetical cipher does not fully replace the thing it stands for, with all its qualities and characters, but only, as regards quantity and number. Each replaces part only of the imagined object, that is to say, a frag-

ment—an extract ; the cipher a more complex extract ; the letter a less complex one, that is to say, an extract from the first extract. But the substitution, though partial, is none the less actual. Two complete and infinitely fertile sciences depend on it, and derive their efficacy from it.—The reader must pardon me for dwelling on simple remarks like these. In the formation of *couples*, such that the first term of each suggests the second term ; and, in the aptitude of this first term to stand, wholly or partially, *in place of* the second, so as to acquire, either a definite set of its properties, or all those properties combined, we have, I think, the first germ of the higher operations which make up man's intelligence ; we shall now consider them in detail.



## CHAPTER II.

## OF GENERAL IDEAS AND SIMPLE SUBSTITUTION.

I. NAMES, as we know, are divided into proper and common; and these are correctly distinguished by saying that the first, as Cæsar, Tuileries, Cromwell, correspond to a single object; while the second, as tree, triangle, color, correspond to an indefinite group of objects. These last are the most numerous, and the most in use in every individual mind; there are thirty or forty thousand of them in a language, and they make up of themselves the whole dictionary. Further than this, they are the most important; by their aid we make classifications, judgments, and reasonings, and pass, in short, from crude, loose experience to orderly complete knowledge. Let us consider them attentively. We should attain a truth of capital importance, and infinite in its consequences, could we determine, not as grammarians and logicians, but as psychologists, their true nature and precise office.

Like all signs, and especially like all names, each one is the first term of a couple, and draws with it a second term. But this second term has remarkable characteristics, which distinguish it from all others, and give the name peculiar qualities. Logicians and grammarians tell us rightly that a common name, like tree or polygon, is a general or abstract name.—It is general because it corresponds to a class (*genus*) or group of similar objects; the name of tree to all trees, poplars, oaks, cypress, birch, etc.; the name of polygon to all polygons, triangles, quadrilaterals, pentagons, hexagons, etc.—It is abstract because it denotes an *extract*, that is, a portion, of an individual, and a portion which is found in every individual of the group; the name tree expresses the quality common to all kinds of trees, poplars, oaks, cypress, birch, etc.; that of polygons represents the quality common to all sorts of polygons, triangles,

quadrilaterals, pentagons, hexagons, etc.—We see the connection between these two characters of a name; it is general because it is abstract; it corresponds to a whole class, because the object it denotes, being but a fragment, may be found in all the individuals of the class, which, similar in this point, remain, nevertheless, dissimilar in other points. Here we have a couple of a new kind, since its second term is not an object of which we can have perception and experience, that is to say, an entire and determined fact, but a portion of a fact, a fragment forcibly and artificially severed from the natural whole to which it belongs, and without which it cannot subsist.

II. Can we have experience, perception, or sensible representation of this detached and isolated fragment? Assuredly not; for that would be a contradiction.—When I have seen on the slate triangles, quadrilaterals, pentagons, hexagons, etc.; and, in contrast, beside them, circles and ellipses, and call the first polygons, I have not mentally a sensible representation of a pure or abstract polygon; for the pure polygon is a figure with several sides, but whose sides do not make up any particular number; hence all experience and sensible representation are excluded; for since the sides are many, they make such a number as three, four, five, six, etc. In saying many, we mean a determined fixed number. To tell one to see or imagine many sides, and at the same time not to see or imagine three, four, or any definite number of sides, is, in one breath, to order and forbid the same operation.—Similarly, when having seen in the country thirty different trees, oaks, lime trees, beech, and poplars I use the word tree, I do not find in my mind a colored figure representative of a tree in general; for a tree in general has height, trunk, leaves, etc., without having any particular height, trunk, or leaves; and it is impossible to represent to one's self size and form, unless the size and form are of some kind or other—that is to say, individual and precise. In fact, at the word tree, especially if read slowly and attentively, there rises in me a vague image—so vague that I cannot for the moment say whether it is a fir or an apple tree. And so in hearing the word polygon, I trace in my mind, but very indistinctly, lines cutting each other, and tending to enclose a space, without knowing whether the figure in process of construction will turn

out quadrilateral or a pentagon. But this uncertain image is not the abstract tree, nor the abstract polygon; the softness of its outline does not hinder its having a particular outline; it is shifting and obscure, and the object denoted by the name is neither shifting nor obscure; it is a very precise extract, and can often be defined exactly. We can express with rigorous exactness what constitutes a triangle, and, almost as exactly, what constitutes an animal. The triangle is a figure enclosed by three lines, which cut each other in pairs, and not that undecided image, on a dusky or whitish ground, with angles more or less acute, which shifts continually, becoming at will scalene, or isosceles, or right angled. The animal is an organized body which is nourished, reproduces its species, feels, and moves, and not that formless and varying thing, changing from vertebrate to articulate or to mollusc, and only emerging from its indistinctness when it takes the color, size, and structure of an individual.

Thus we find a wide gulf between the vague and shifting image which the name suggests, and the precise and fixed extract which the name denotes.—The reader may convince himself of this by considering the word *myriagon* and its meaning. A *myriagon* is a polygon with ten thousand sides. It is impossible to imagine such a thing even when definite and special, much less when general and abstract. However lucid and comprehensive may be the mind's view, after five or six, twenty or thirty lines drawn out consecutively with great difficulty, the image becomes confused and indistinct; and yet my conception of a *myriagon* has nothing confused or indistinct about it. What I conceive, is not a *myriagon* like this, incomplete and tumbling to pieces, but a complete *myriagon* all whose parts co-exist simultaneously; I can hardly imagine the first, but can readily conceive the second. What I conceive then, differs from what I imagine; and my conception is not the same thing as the shifting figure which accompanies it. But, on the other hand, this conception exists; there is something in me representing the *myriagon*, and corresponding to it exactly. In what then does this internal representative—this exact correspondent—consist? and what passes within me when I hear a general name, and, by means of it, think of a quality common

to many individuals—of a general thing—in short, of an abstract character?

III. To answer this, let us consider in order several cases in which, when we have gone through a series of similar objects, we have mentally extracted from them a quality, or general character, which we denote by an abstract name. The reader has no doubt visited galleries of pictures arranged in schools; if we walk for a couple of hours among the works of Titian, Tintoret, Giorgione, and Veronese, and on leaving seat ourselves on a bench, and close our eyes, we experience reminiscences of what we have seen; we see again inwardly such and such a fair or rosy half-bending figure, some grand old man majestically draped in silken robes, strings of pearls on naked arms, chestnut hair curling over a snowy neck, colonnades of veined marble rising against a blue sky, here and there the sprightly figure of a little girl, the smile of a goddess, the ample proportions of a smooth shoulder, the blaze of red hangings against a green background; in short, a hundred partial and disorderly revivals of what we have just seen. If, at this moment, we seek for the dominant character ruling in this various world, we find nothing; we feel indeed that it is beautiful, but do not yet distinguish in what the beauty lies; we are acted on by twenty different tendencies which rise and as quickly fade; we attempt such expressions as voluptuous, rich, facile, luxuriant; they are not suitable, or but partially so. We then begin again by dividing our inquiries, we pass by turns in review landscapes, architecture, dress, types, expressions, attitudes, coloring; we find for each of these fragments some principal and striking trait, we attempt to note them in passing by a familiar or exaggerated word, then, collecting all these summaries we try to summarize them further in some abbreviative phrase which may serve as a focus for all these dispersed rays. We approach our object, and at last *a definitive, or nearly definitive, tendency is disengaged*. It appears, in words, by such expressions as expansiveness, happiness, noble pleasure; while our inner sight has at the same moment seized on some corresponding image, an opening flower, a smiling face, a bending unconstrained form, the rich and full harmony of sweet-toned instruments, the breath of perfumed air in the country; here are expressive compari-

sons and metaphors, that is to say, sensible representations, special recollections, revived sensations, all analogous in tone and character to what we have just experienced. They are effects and *expressions* of the final tendency which has been formed.—In the case of an artist, the formation, disengagement, and effects of the tendency are plainer still. The whole body speaks; often, if at a loss for a word, a gesture expresses the meaning; a grimace, a start, an imitative noise, becomes a sign in place of a name; to represent an avenue of old oaks, the stature becomes erect, the feet are planted firmly on the ground, the arms extend stiffly, or form sharp angles at the elbows; to represent a cluster of honeysuckle or ivy, the stretched-out fingers trace arabesques in the air, while the muscles of the face assume changing folds.—This mimicry is natural language, and with some habit of internal observation you guess the corresponding mental state. In fact, the experiences we undergo, and their images which recur to us, are not pure knowledge; they affect us while they teach us; they are at once a disturbance and a light. Each one of them is accompanied by one or many slight shocks, and each of them has for effect one or more slight tendencies. Beneath images and experiences, vegetation that thrives in the light, there is an obscure world of impulsions, repugnances, startling shocks, sketchy, disorderly, discordant solicitations, which we can barely distinguish, but which are nevertheless the inexhaustible and ever-springing source of our actions. These are the countless little emotions which, at the close of our prolonged examination, sum themselves up in an impression of a whole, and consequently, in a final and definite tendency, and this tendency results in an expression. Whatever this expression may be—the imitative gesture of the artist, the metaphorical half-sight of the poet, the expressive pantomime of the savage, the animated tones of the impassioned man, the dry tone and abstract language of the calm reasoner—the mental operation is always the same; and if we inquire into what passes in us when, from several perceptions, we disengage a general idea, we find—and find only—the formation, completion, and preponderance of *a tendency which urges an expression*, and, among other expressions, *a name*.

To revert to our first example.—I observe in turn pines,

ash, chestnuts, beech, oak, a whole forest ; I remark the springing trunk and spreading branches which form the two distinctive characters of a tree ; I form a general conception of a tree and use the word tree. This simply means that a certain tendency in my mind corresponding to these two characters—and to these two characters only—has at last become distinct and predominant. On fifty consecutive occasions, and without a single contradictory instance, it has in turn been aroused at the sight of fifty trees ; and it only has been aroused on each one of these fifty occasions. All other tendencies corresponding to the peculiarities of the different trees, are effaced and annulled by mutual contradiction ; it alone survives, and results, as do all tendencies, in an expression. Mentally, this result is an image, more or less vague—that of a slender, then spreading stem ; outwardly, it becomes the attitude and imitative gesture of the body ; in primitive language, among infant races, at the origin of speech, it is a poetical and figurative imitation of another kind, of which we find fragments here and there ; now-a-days, it has become a simple word, which we learn purely by way of notation, the dry remains of the little symbolical drama and living mimicry by which the first inventors, true artists, translated their impressions.

IV. The reader now sees how it is we conceive a general quality ; when we have seen a series of objects possessing a common quality, we experience a certain *tendency*, a tendency which corresponds to the common quality, and to it alone. It is this tendency which calls up the name ; and when it arises the name only is imagined or pronounced. We do not perceive qualities or the general characters of things ; we only experience in their presence such and such a distinct tendency, which, in spontaneous language, results in a certain mimicry, and, in our artificial language, in a certain name. We have, strictly speaking, no general ideas ; we have tendencies to name and names.—But a tendency is nothing distinct in itself ; it is the commencement, the rudiment, the sketch, the approximation, whether easy or difficult, to some thing, image, or name, or other determinate act, which is its full development and accomplishment ; it is the elementary form of the act which is its final state.—As to positive and definite acts, when we conceive or

— know abstract qualities, all that passes in us are names, some in process of being expressed or mentally imagined; others already expressed and imagined. What therefore we call a general idea, a comprehensive view, is only a name; not the simple sound that vibrates in the air and strikes our ear, or the collection of letters which blacken the paper and attract the eye, not even these letters perceived mentally, or this sound pronounced mentally, but this sound or these letters endued, when we experience or imagine them, with a double property, that of arousing in us images of individuals belonging to a certain class, and of these individuals only; and the property of reviving when, and only when, an individual of this same class is present to our memory or experience.—The only difference between the word *tree*, which has a meaning, and the word *eter*, which has none, is that on hearing the second we do not imagine any object or series of objects belonging to a distinct class, and there is no object or series of objects belonging to a distinct class which suggest to us such a word, whilst on hearing the first word we involuntarily picture to ourselves an oak, a poplar, a pear tree, or some other tree, and on seeing a tree, of whatever kind, we involuntarily pronounce the word *tree*. Instead of *eter* put the word *arbre*; to any one unacquainted with French, the two words are of equal value, and result in the same want of effect; to a Frenchman the word *arbre* has precisely the properties which we have just found in the word *tree*.—A name, then, which we understand is a name connected with all the individuals which we can perceive or imagine belonging to a certain class and only with the individuals of this class. In this way it corresponds to the common and distinctive quality which constitutes the class and separates it from other things, and corresponds to this quality only; wherever the quality is, there is the name; whenever this quality is absent there is no name; it is aroused by it, and by it only.—Thus it becomes its mental representative, and the substitute of an experience to which we cannot attain. It stands in place of this experience, it fulfils its office, and is equivalent to it.

Admirable and spontaneous artifice of our nature: we can neither perceive general qualities nor maintain them separate in our minds; and yet, they are the precious veins which con-

stitute the essence and are the foundation of the classification of things, and, to enable us to emerge from gross animal experience, to seize the order and internal structure of the world, we must draw them from their ore and conceive them apart.—We make a circuit, we associate with each abstract and general quality a little special complex fact, a sound, a figure easy to imagine and reproduce; we make the association so close and precise, that henceforward the quality cannot appear or be missing in things without the appearance or absence of the name in our minds, and reciprocally. The couple so formed resembles those physical and chemical instruments, which, by a trifling sensible change, the displacement of a needle, the alteration of a color, bring within the range of our senses, decompositions of substances, or variations of currents, to which our senses cannot otherwise attain. The sudden reddening of a stained paper or the greater or less twist of a suspended needle are connected with an inner change or a certain degree of hidden action, and we observe the second things to which we cannot directly attain, in the first to which we do attain.—And similarly, when we are dealing with a general quality of which we can have neither experience nor sensible representation, we substitute, and substitute legitimately, a name for the impossible representation. It has the same affinities and repugnances as the representation, the same hindrances to and conditions of existence, the same extent and limits of presence; affinities and repugnances, hindrances and conditions of being, extent and limits of presence, all we meet in the one we meet, indirectly, in the other.—Owing to this correspondence, the general characters of things are brought within range of our experience; for the names expressing them are, themselves, either small experiences of sight, the ear, the vocal muscles, or internal images, that is to say, revivals more or less clear, of these experiences. An extraordinary difficulty has been surmounted; with beings whose life is but one varied and continuous experience, special and complex impressions can alone be found; out of these special and complex impressions nature has manufactured the equivalents of others, which are neither special nor complex, and which, as they cannot be so, would seem as if they must escape forever by necessity and nature from beings constituted as we are.



V. The formation of these general names may be narrowly watched ; with little children, we take them in the act. We name to them such and such a particular determined object, and, with an instinct of imitation common to them with monkeys and parrots, they repeat the name they have just heard.—Up to this point they are but as monkeys and parrots ; but here there appears a delicacy of impression which is special to man. We pronounce the word *papa* before a child in its cradle, at the same time pointing out his father. After a little, he in his turn lisps the word, and we imagine that he understands it in the same sense that we do, or that his father's presence only will recall the word. Not at all. When another person—that is, one similar in appearance, with a long coat, a beard, and loud voice—enters the room, he calls him also *papa*. The name was an individual one ; he has made it general. In our case, it is applicable to one person only ; in his, to a class. In other words, a certain *tendency*, corresponding to what there is in common to all persons in long coats, with beards and loud voices, is aroused in him in consequence of the experiences by which he has perceived them. This tendency is not what you were attempting to excite ; it springs up spontaneously. In it we have the faculty of language. It is wholly founded on the consecutive tendencies which survive the experience of similar individuals, and corresponds precisely to what they have in common.

We see these tendencies continually at work in children, and leading to results differing from ordinary language ; so that we are obliged to correct their spontaneous and too hasty attempts.—A little girl, two years and a half old, had a blessed medal hung at her neck. She had been told, "*C'est le bon Dieu*," and she repeated, "*C'est le bo Du*." One day, on her uncle's knee, she took his eyeglass, and said, "*C'est le bo Du de mon oncle*." It is plain that she had involuntarily and naturally constructed a class of objects for which we have no name ; that of small round objects, with a handle, through which a hole is pierced, and hung around the neck by a ribbon ; that a distinct tendency, corresponding to these four general characters, and which we do not experience, was formed and acting in her.—A year afterwards, the same child, who was

being asked the names of different parts of the face, said after a little hesitation, on touching her eyelids, "These are the eye-curtains."—A little boy, a year old, had travelled a good deal by railway. The engine, with its hissing sound and smoke, and the great noise of the train, struck his attention, and the first word he learned to pronounce was *fafer* (*chemin de fer*). Henceforward, a steamboat, a coffee-pot with spirit-lamp—every thing that hissed or smoked, or made a noise, was a *fafer*. Another instrument to which children have a great objection (excuse the detail and the word—I mean a *clysopompe*) had, naturally enough, made a strong impression on him. He had termed it, from its noise, a *sizi*. Till he was two years and a half old, all long, hollow, slender objects—a scissors-sheath, a cigar-tube, a trumpet, were for him *sizi*, and he treated them all with distrust. These two reigning ideas, the *sizi* and the *fafer*, were two cardinal points of his intelligence, and from them he set out to comprehend and name other things.

In this respect the language of children is as instructive to a psychologist as the embryonic states of organized bodies are to the naturalist. Their language, unlike ours, is living, and incessantly on the change; not only are words defaced or invented, but, more than this, the sense of words is not the same as in our language. A child who pronounces a name for the first time never takes it in the precise sense which we give it. This sense is more or less extensive to him than to us; it is proportioned to his experience at the time; is enlarged or reduced daily by his new experience, and brought very slowly down to the precise dimensions which it has for us.\*—A little girl, of eighteen months old, had been heartily amused by her mother, or nurse, hiding in play behind the door or chair, and saying, "*Coucou*." Again, when her dinner was too hot; when she went too near the fire; when she put out her hand to the can-

---

\* An analogous difference appears in comparing the synonyms in two languages: *clergyman* and *ecclésiastique*, *God* and *Dieu*, *liebe* and *amour*, *brio* and *brillant*, *girl* and *jeune fille*, do not respectively mean the same things, though we translate one by the other. The two words of each couple represent two different objects, and are differently understood by the two peoples. Their senses is the same in the rough; the details of their meanings are different and untranslatable in the absence of similar objects and emotions in the two cases.

dle ; when they put on her hat in the garden, to keep off the hot sun, she was told "*Ca brûle.*" Here were two remarkable words which, to her, represented things of supreme importance ; her most painful sensation and her most pleasurable one. One day, seeing from a terrace the sun disappearing behind a hill, she said, "*A bûle coucou.*" Here we have a complete judgment, not only expressed by words which we do not employ, but also corresponding to ideas, consequently to classes of objects, to general characters, to distinct tendencies, which in our cases have disappeared. The hot soup, the fire on the hearth, the flame of the candle, the noonday heat in the garden, and last of all, the sun, make up one of these classes. The figure of the nurse or mother disappearing behind a piece of furniture, the sun disappearing behind a hill, form the other class. Both are limited to this ; the tendency consecutive to the first resulted in the words *a bûle* ; the tendency consecutive to the second in the word *coucou*.—Such a state of mind differs greatly from ours ; but, nevertheless, it consists of tendencies analogous to ours, aroused in the same way as ours, corresponding to general characters as with us, but to characters less general, in short, resulting in names similar in sound and different in sense.

In proportion as the experience of children approaches more nearly to our own, their tendencies to name coincide more exactly with ours ; they become organized by degrees like embryos. As in the fœtus, we see, in turn, the disproportionate head reduced to its proper proportions, the sutures of the skull harden, the cartilage turn into bone, the rudimentary vessels close and ramify, the communication between child and mother become obstructed ; so do we see, in the language of children, the two or three dominant words lose their absolute preponderance, the general words limit their too extensive meaning, gain precision for their vagueness of sense, acquire connections, attachments and sutures with each other, become complete by the incorporation of other tendencies, become arranged under these into names of smaller classes, form a system corresponding to the order of beings, and at last act by themselves alone, and of themselves, without the aid of assisting namegivers.—A child has watched its mother put on her white

dress for a ball ; he has remembered the word, and in future, when he meets a lady in evening dress, whether she has on red or blue, he will say in his singing, curious, happy voice, "*You have put on your white dress.*" *White* is too large a word ; he will have for the future to reduce its application to a single color.—The same child hears his mother say to him, "You swing your head too much ; it will strike the table." He says, in a curious and surprised way, "*Your head will strike the table ?*" *Your* again has received too large a sense ; he must be taught to reduce it to mean the head only of the person he is speaking to.—The process of checking goes on ; new experience will complete the tendency which produced the word *white*, and once accomplished, it will correspond not only to the presence of bright fresh color, but, more than this, to the presence of a particular color. Similarly, and by another series of experiences, the *tendency* which produced the word *your* when given definite precision, will correspond not only to possession, but also to this supplementary circumstance, that the thing, possessed belongs to the person spoken to. Such is the history of language : we experience spontaneously, after having come in contact with a series of similar objects, a tendency which corresponds to what there is in common to these objects ; that is to say, to some general character, to some abstract quality, to an extract from the objects, and this tendency results in a gesture, in some mimicry, in some distinct sign, which in maturity becomes a name.

Herein consists the superiority of the human intelligence. Very general characters arouse in it distinct tendencies, in other words, very slight resemblances between different objects are sufficient to excite in us a name or special designation ; a child succeeds here without effort, and the genius of well-endowed races, as that of great men, and notably of inventors, consists, in observing resemblances more or less delicate and novel ; that is, in feeling arise in them, at the sight of objects, certain slight and delicate tendencies, and consequently, distinct names, which correspond to shades imperceptible to ordinary minds, to the very slight characters hidden beneath a heap of the coarse, striking circumstances, alone capable, when the mind is ordinary, of leaving an impression upon it, and having a

response in it.—This aptitude once established, the rest follows. By the accumulation and contrariety of daily experiences, tendencies and names multiply, are circumscribed, and become subordinated, like the general qualities they represent; and the hierarchy of things is translated and repeated within us by the hierarchy of tendencies and names.

VI. On the other hand, if we may use the expression, names fill out. In proportion as our experiences become more numerous, we remark and consequently name a greater number of general characters in the same object. Its name, which at first denoted the single character which struck us at first sight, now denotes several others. It now corresponds, not to an abstract quality, but to a group of abstract qualities; it was only general, it becomes *collective*.

Take any animal, a cat, for instance. As all cats have points of strong resemblance, and differ a good deal from our other animals, we have no difficulty in learning their common name, and observing their common characteristics. In other words, this name corresponds to a certain distinct form, at rest or moving, sleeping in a stable, or creeping cautiously along a roof. This is the common popular sense, and the tendency which results in the name corresponds to little more than this.—But a naturalist takes me, and opening a cat, shows me the pouch we call the stomach, the little vessels we call veins and arteries, with their infinite ramifications; the collection of smooth tubes which are the intestines, and the bars, arches, frames, cavities, and hinges, which, with their connections, make up the skeleton.—I might remain for six months continually seeing new things. If I were to work with a microscope, my life would not be long enough, and, speaking accurately, no life or series of lives would suffice; beyond the observed properties, there will always remain others unobserved, the unlimited matter of an unlimited science. Henceforward the name corresponds for me, not merely to the experience of a certain external form, but also to that of a certain internal structure, that is, to an enormous number of various phenomena which I have experienced, and to an indefinite number which I might experience. If I have paid sufficient attention to the internal structure, I shall pronounce the word cat as confidently when I see the blanched

skeleton, as at the sight of the living furry body. The second experience now results in the same name as the first. Two distinct tendencies coincide therefore in the same effect. The name has become the equivalent of the characters common to the different skeletons of the kind, as of the characters common to the different living animals of the kind; its presence, which once aroused images only of certain velvety, living, bounding forms, now arouses also images of certain bony lifeless frameworks.—It may arouse many other images, those of all the mechanical, physical, chemical, anatomical, vital, moral peculiarities which naturalists and moralists can discover in the race of cats; it assembles them all in itself, together with the names we denote them by; it is the substitute of the whole band. On hearing the name cat, we can substitute for it a definition or a description—that is to say, replace it either by the two principal names which determine its rank in the classification of animals, or by the names of all the characters which our experiences have discovered in it, and consequently, recall more or less vividly to our minds, the likenesses of such experiences. Henceforth, the couple whose first term is the name, comprises, as second term, an immense list of other words, and consequently, as great a series of distinct tendencies, which correspond to general characters equally distinct, and leave room beside them for an infinite number of new tendencies which experience may excite.—Such is the power of the substitution established by couples. Two terms being the equivalents of one another, the first, which is so simple, so manageable, so easy to recall, is capable of replacing the second, even when the second is an immense army, whose lists always open, await and are continually receiving new soldiers.

The reader sees at once that in place of the name cat we might put that of dog, monkey, crab, or of any animal or plant whatever; or again, that of any group, animal or vegetable, as extensive or as narrow as we please, and, in general, of any group moral or physical. The operation would be similar; all general names acquire extensions of meaning in the same way.—Arranged in relation to one another, each with its retinue of tendencies, they make up the principal furniture of a thinking brain. By the side of continual experiences and reviving im-

ages, there are names which we term ideas ; all of them mental representatives of abstract characters and general qualities, each one called up by some distinct tendency, all incessantly extended by new tendencies, gaining precision in their application, and increased in their contents by the daily progress of discovery, which, adding to their meanings, limits their application.

## CHAPTER III.

## OF GENERAL IDEAS AND REPEATED SUBSTITUTIONS.

I. THERE are things of which we can have no experience ; now, since experiences are what, by their common character, arouse in us a distinct tendency and the name which we term an idea, it seems as if we could never attain to ideas of such things. We have, nevertheless, very clear and exact ideas of them. The operation, which consists in giving names to things, becomes complicated, and leads us by a circuit to un hoped-for successes. The same instrument is at work as before, but it works by a series of substitutions, instead of a simple substitution.

Consider the first number that comes to hand : 36, for example. When I read this sign, I thoroughly understand its sense ; that is, I clearly imagine what it replaces. 36 is by definition 35 *plus* 1. In other words, the group we call 36 is the same as that which we call 35, if to 35 we add 1. 36, then, is a collective term which replaces two others. But 35, by definition, is 34 *plus* 1 ; 34, again, is 33 *plus* 1 ; and so on. 36, then, in final analysis, is an abbreviatory expression which replaces thirty-six others. Let us go back to the elements, the better to understand this operation.

Suppose a red counter at one corner of the table, and a white one at another. I may neglect all their respective qualities, and be struck solely with the fact that a part of my impression is *repeated*, and feel that what I have just experienced in the case of the red counter is, up to a certain point, similar to what has happened in the case of the white, and after the two several experiences, may feel a distinct consecutive tendency, corresponding to their number, that is, to the property they have of being two.—This, like all other tendencies, results in a sign ; let us take for this sign the ordinary word, two. Here is a general name ; we shall be inclined to pronounce it, as



in the case of the counters, after each *repeated* experience. Similarly, too, when we read it, or hear it, we have only to dwell on it to call up inwardly, as with the word cat or birch-tree, an image of a case to which it is applicable ; we think of a counter beside a counter, a stone, a sound followed by a sound, as just now we imagined a tapering face with white or gray fur, a slender white trunk with small quivering leaves.—The same is the case with the words, three, four ; it is more difficult with the words, five, six ; the difficulty increases with the higher numbers, and there is always a figure, larger or smaller, at which the mind stops ; we cannot perceive or represent distinctly to ourselves as a whole, more than a certain number of facts or objects ; generally five or six, more often four.—To remedy this inconvenience we neglect the group corresponding to the word, and fix our whole attention on the word we have substituted for it ; after seeing four objects together we forget them, and think only of the word four, and this is allowable, since when later on we return to the word and consider it, we shall see the objects again in our minds without mistake or confusion. Here then we have four operations replaced by one only.—When a new object, similar to the foregoing ones, is met with after we have pronounced the word four, it will form, with the word, a new group, and will excite in us a tendency analogous to that which made us use the word two—a tendency similar to the first from its involving an addition, differing from the first from its being an addition, not of one object to another, but of an object to a group of four objects. This new tendency results in a new name, five. Another, excited by this previous one, will result in the word six, and so on.—We see that in this scale each new name is the substitute of the preceding one,—and consequently of the object of the preceding one—joined to unity.

Here, again, an insurmountable difficulty has been evaded. If we can imagine distinctly as a whole two, three, or even four objects, we cannot do so with respect to 36 as a whole. . The abstract and general property of being two, three, or four, may arouse in us a tendency, and consequently a corresponding name ; on the other hand, the general and abstract property of being 36, or any other considerable number, cannot do this.—Before an obstacle like this we must proceed indirectly ; we

bridge over the ditch too wide for our legs. We no longer replace at once by a word the general and abstract character of the group in question ; for experience cannot successfully attain to such a group. Thirty-six pawns on a chess-board give an impression only of a mass and a whole, without distinct numerical knowledge of the individuals.—We proceed more slowly ; we first take a very small group, proportioned to the limited range of our minds, and capable of arousing in us a tendency and a name. We next join this name, and consequently the object of the name, that is, the little group, to a new individual, and this arouses in us another tendency and another name ; and thus step by step we journey on to the final name, and this once obtained, corresponds to the abstract character which did not directly arouse a name.

In this respect the final name is very remarkable. If we look for its sense we find a name only, that of the lower figure to which we add unity ; the same thing happens with this lower figure, and so on ; it is only at the end of this retracement of our steps, when we have descended some 30, 50, 100, 1000, or 10,000 stories, that we arrive again at our experience.—And yet this name *replaces* an experience, another experience which we have not attained, which we cannot attain, which is above man's powers, but which is in itself possible, and which a more comprehensive mind might attain to : 36 denotes the quality common to all groups of 36 individuals ; a quality which, as presented to us, does not excite any precise tendency, and which a mind capable of representing before it at once 36 objects or facts in a distinct state, would alone experience. By this artifice, we attain the same results as creatures endowed with imaginations and memories far more clear and vast than our own. Here, as before, all has been effected by substitution. After having enabled us to arrive at abstract qualities, she affords us the means of counting and measuring quantities. Thanks to substitutions, we were enabled to conceive the abstract qualities of individuals. Thanks to a series of repeated substitutions, we are able to name, and consequently to conceive, certain abstract properties peculiar to groups—properties which the natural limitation of our imagination and memory seemed to hinder us from ever conceiving, that is to say, from naming.

II. The efficiency of substitution extends far beyond this.—As the reader knows, geometrical objects do not exist in nature. We do not meet, and probably can never meet, with perfect circles, cubes, and spheres. Those we see or construct are but approximately so.—Nevertheless, we conceive them as perfect; we reason about figures of absolute regularity. We know, with complete certainty, what is the obtuseness of each angle in a regular myriagon, and to how many right angles the whole of its angles taken together amount. Besides this, when for the better apprehension of a geometrical theorem we construct a diagram on paper, we trouble ourselves very little as to its perfect proportions; we admit without difficulty shaky lines in our polygon, and irregular curvature in our circle. In fact, we do not consider the circle traced on the paper; it is not the object, but the aid of our thought; by its means we conceive something differing from it, which is neither black nor traced on a white ground, nor of any particular radius, nor of unequal curvature.—What, then, is this object we conceive, and of which experience affords us no model? The definition tells us. A circle is a closed curve, all whose points are equally distant from an internal point called the centre.—But what have we in this phrase? Nothing, except a series of abstract words which denote the genus of the figure, and another series of abstract words which denote the species of the figure, the second being combined with the first, as a condition added to a condition. In other terms, an abstract character denoted by the first words has been joined to an abstract character denoted by the second words, and the total compound thus constructed denotes a new thing to which our senses cannot attain, which our experience cannot come in contact with, which our imagination cannot trace. There is no necessity for our attaining to, meeting with, or imagining this thing; we have its formula, and that is enough.

In fact, this formula would be rigorously the same if the object had fallen within our experience. We have constructed the formula before instead of after the experience, and it corresponds all the more closely to the thing, since the thing must bend to it—not it to the thing. The two then make up a couple whose second term, the definition, is equivalent to the first term, that is, to the object.—This object may remain

ideal: it may itself be situated beyond our grasp; it matters little; we have its representative. Whatever properties and relations we find in the substitute we shall safely ascribe to the thing for which it is substituted. We arrive at this indirectly, as a surveyor, who, wishing to measure an inaccessible line, measures a base and two angles, and knows the first quantity by the three second.—In this way all mathematical conceptions are formed. We take very simple abstractions, the surface which is the limit of the solid, the line which is the limit of the surface, the point which is the limit of the line, the unit or quality of being one, that is to say, distinct existence among similar things. We combine these terms together and form, first, compounds of small complexity, those of two, three, four, and the earlier numbers, those of plus and minus, of greater and less, of longer and shorter lines; then those of straight line and curve, of triangle, of circle; then, those of sphere, cone, cylinder, and the rest. The complication of compounds goes on increasing; it is unlimited. Taken together they form a kingdom apart of objects which have no real existence, but which are capable, like real objects, of being classed in families, genera, species, and properties, of which we discover by considering in their place the properties of the formulæ which we substitute for them.

By a strange continuation the process which has formed these objects is also that which establishes their relations. Arithmetic, algebra, geometry, analytical geometry, mechanics, the higher calculus, all the propositions of mathematical science, are substitutions. Any number we take is a substitute for the preceding number added to unity. To calculate, is to replace several numbers by a single one at the end of several partial replacements. To solve an equation, is to substitute terms for other terms with the object of arriving at a final substitution. To measure, is to replace an undetermined magnitude by another magnitude defined in its relation to unity. To construct a diagram for the demonstration of a theorem is to substitute certain known lines and angles for other lines and angles which it is required to know. To find the algebraic formula of a curve, is to discover mathematical relation between certain lines which are connected with the curve, and to translate quality

into quantity.—However we may reason about numbers and magnitudes, the process amounts to passing from one equivalent to another equivalent by the aid of a series of intermediate equivalents, to replacing magnitudes by numbers expressing them, a figure by a corresponding equation, a complete quantity by a quantity in process of completion, having the first as limit, movements and forces by lines representing them. We pass from each province to the other by substitutions, and, as a substitute may have substitutes, the operation has no limits.

III. Leaving for the moment this extension of our process, let us consider it once more at its outset. We have seen how, by combining abstracts, we construct the first terms of couples, the second terms of which are beyond our reach, and how, by the study of the generating formula, we discover the properties of the object engendered by it. In certain cases, we discover in it wonderful properties, and the formula makes known to us facts situated not only beyond our experience, but beyond all experience.—If we divide 2 by 3, we find an infinite decimal fraction, 0.6666, etc., and we can prove that it is infinite. It is strictly so, and without possible break; however far we may prolong the operation, the remainder will always be 2 and the quotient always 6. After a million, after a thousand million, after a million million of such divisions, new terms will present themselves, with the same remainder and the same quotient, with a total quotient always too small, too small by a fraction with 2 for numerator, and for denominator unity followed by as many zeros as there are units in the number of divisions we have made. Here is something infinite; not vague, not indefinite, but precise, which is expressly opposed to any limit, and so clearly conceived that all its elements have their distinct and express properties.—Does this mean that I perceive distinctly the infinite series of these elements? Certainly not. Here again, there is a substitute, the formula, from which the series and the properties of its elements are derived. What we perceive, is a general character of the dividend and remainder. After the first division we can see that, the remainder being 2 like the dividend, must, in becoming in its turn a dividend, give rise again to a remainder 2, which in its turn will do the same,

and so on. In other words, we discover in the dividend this property of giving rise to a similar figure, which, being similar to it, has the same property as it. This abstract quality is the cause of the whole series; it forces it to be infinite, it alone is what we perceive; when we say that we conceive an infinite series, it only means that we discover this property of inexhaustible regeneration; all we seize is the generating law; we do not embrace all the engendered terms.—But as far as we are concerned the effect is the same; for by applying the law we are able to define whatever term we please of the series, to measure exactly the increase of approximation it brings to the quotient, to calculate strictly the degree of error which the division would include were we to stop here. The perception of the law is equivalent to the perception of the series; an infinite line of distinct terms finds its substitute in an abstract character, and, in place of an experience which is by definition impossible, we have disengaged a property whose isolation has only required two experiences, and which is of equal value to us.

And so it happens, whenever we conceive and affirm some really infinite abstract magnitude, time, or space. We take a fragment, some short portion of the duration comprised in our successive sensations, some narrow portion of space comprised in our simultaneous sensations. We consider this fragment apart; we extract from it this property it has of being over-extended by a border absolutely similar to itself. We lay down, as before, a general law that the magnitude in question is continued beyond itself by another wholly similar magnitude, and this by another, and so on, without the possible intervention of a limit. Our conception of infinite time and infinite space is reduced to this.—But the result is the same as if the field of our imagination were infinitely extended and capable of setting before us at a glance the whole infinite succession we call time, or the extension, infinite in three directions, which we call space. For starting from the general character which alone is present to our minds, we are able to imagine any portion of time or space as clearly, and to affirm of it as surely, as if we had experience of it; no matter what the portion be, whether a fragment of duration preceding the solar system, or a portion of space be-

yond the furthest *nebulæ* of Herschel. It is possible, then, to represent infinite objects, series, or quantities,\* by an abstract property. It is enough if this is their generator. By it, indirectly, they become present. Here we have, I think, the most extraordinary example of substitution.—There are other cases, analogous but reversed, in mathematics; certain quantities, which go on increasing or decreasing, without the possibility of a limit, replace the limit which they necessarily approach without ever touching it. A polygon with an infinite number of sides inscribed in a circle is equivalent to the circle. The fractional number  $1 \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{4} \frac{1}{8}$ , etc., is equivalent to the number 2. Here again, as before, mathematicians do but resume, extend, or reverse a spontaneous process of the mind.—The process is explainable similarly, whether direct or reversed. Given two members of a couple, one infinite, the other limited, we can consider at will the one or the other, and if they correspond strictly, can discover in the one properties belonging also to the other, but not discoverable in it.

IV. To recapitulate. We do not conceive numbers, with the exception of the three or four earlier ones, but their equivalents, that is to say, the name of the preceding number joined to unity; we do not conceive infinite or ideal objects, but the abstract characters which generate them; we do not conceive abstract characters, but the common names which correspond to them. However far we may go, we always come back to names. Things the most removed from our experience and the most inaccessible to all experience, seem present to us; what is actually present, in such a case, is a name, the substitute of an abstract character which is itself the substitute of the thing, and this often only through many intermediate stages, till at last by a series of equivalents the chain re-touches the distant object which we cannot directly reach.

Hence arise singular illusions. We believe that, in addition to our general words, we possess general ideas; we distinguish the idea from the word; it seems to us something apart from the word, and to which the word is merely auxili-

---

\* When we speak of an infinite quantity, it is by extension; strictly speaking, a quantity is always finite, and there is nothing infinite but *series*.

ary; we compare it with the image, and pronounce them to fulfil similar offices in distinct provinces, and that ideas bring present to us general things, as images bring present individuals. We remark with Descartes, that we can readily conceive a myriagon but have great difficulty in imagining it. We set on one side the intelligible myriagon and the corresponding precise idea, and, in contrast, the actual myriagon and the corresponding confused image. We then observe that this idea is in no way similar to the image; except in its employment; it brings before us an absent thing as the image does, but that is all. It has no other properties; it is not, like the image, an *echo*; the echo of a sound, a smell, a color, a muscular impression, in short, the internal revival of some sensation; there is nothing sensible about it, and we can only define it by denying of it all sensible qualities; it seems then a pure activity stripped of all other qualities but that of bringing the myriagon present to our minds. We compare it to something intangible, unextended, incorporeal; we suppose a being as pure and ethereal as itself of which it is the manifestation; we call it mind, and say that, irrespective of images, our mind knows and deals with abstract qualities of things.

The mechanism of this illusion may now be readily detected. We have overlooked the word which is the whole substance of our operation; we have treated it as accessory and have considered the operation, omitting what it comprises; hence a blank.—This error of consciousness is of frequent occurrence and may be traced to a general law. When an impression, or group of impressions, is many times repeated, our attention ends by fixing itself entirely on the interesting and useful part; we neglect the rest, we cease to notice it, we become unconscious of it, and though present, it seems to be absent. So it is, for instance, with the slight muscular sensations occasioned by the eye adapting itself to various distances; they are the signs of these distances, and by them we determine the degree of proximity or distance of objects. We necessarily have these sensations when we judge of distances, but we cannot detect them, even if we wish to. To us, they are as if they did not exist; we appear to know directly, and without their aid, the positions which they alone denote;



if ever they strike us, it is in extreme cases, as when we attempt to read something at a distance, or inconveniently near the eye, and feel sensible fatigue in the muscles ; except in such cases they are invisible, and have, as it were, vanished.—So again, a composer who has just read some air of an opera, does not recall the crotchets, quavers, keys, staves, and all the black hieroglyphics over which his eyes have passed, but only the series of chords which he has heard mentally ; the signs are obliterated, the sounds alone survive.—When words are in question, we can trace the different degrees of this obliteration. The meaning of a page in manuscript is comprehended with far more difficulty than that of a printed one ; our attention is partly attracted by the external form of the characters, in place of attaching itself solely to the sense they bear ; we observe the individual peculiarities of the signs, as well as what they are employed to represent. But after a while, these peculiarities cease to strike us ; when they are no longer new, they are no longer singular, and no longer singular, are no longer observed ; and then, in the manuscript as in print, we seem no longer to be following words, but pure ideas.—We see now how it necessarily happens, that in our reasonings, and all the higher operations of the mind, the word, though present, is unperceived. From the train of our discoveries we conclude that we have acted, and produced a series of acts, that this series corresponds to a series of qualities, or characters of things, that our activity is effective, and therefore real. What then can we affirm of this internal activity ? Nothing, except that it is activity ; by the disappearance of words we have exhausted it of all it comprises ; we set it apart pure and simple, or as we say, spiritual ; having stripped it, we believe it to be naked ; and when, later on, we observe that to produce it we have made use of signs, we conclude that the sign is but a preliminary aid to it, and a distinct reminder of it. This separation and nudity are of our own effecting ; they do not belong to it, but are lent it by us.

This is the first of psychological illusions, and what we term consciousness swarms with such. The false theories they have given rise to are as complex as they are many, and are at present obstructing science. When they are cleared away, science

will become simple again.—Having discarded this illusion, we see the consequences. What we have in our minds when we conceive general qualities and characters of things, are signs and signs only. I mean certain images or revivals of sensations of the eye or ear, wholly similar to other images, except in their corresponding to characters and general qualities of things, and in their replacing the absent or impossible perception of these characters and qualities.—Thus when, neglecting present sensations, we observe the never-resting inmates of our mind, we find there images only, some prominent ones which strike the attention, others faded, and seemingly worn away to shadows, on account of the attention being diverted from them to their uses. Here we have an element of knowledge which seemed primitive, but which is reduced to another. We must now attempt to know that other. Since our ideas may be reduced to images, their laws may be reduced to laws of images; images then are what we must study.

## BOOK II.

## OF IMAGES.

## CHAPTER I.

## OF THE NATURE AND REDUCTION OF IMAGES.

I. YESTERDAY evening,\* about five, I was on the quay by the Arsenal, watching in front of me, across the Seine, the sky reddened by the setting sun. Fleecy clouds rose in the form of a half dome, and bent over the trees of the Jardin des Plantes. The whole of this vault seemed incrustated with scales of copper; countless indentations, some almost burning, some nearly black, extended, in rows of strange metallic lustre, up to the highest part of the sky, while, all below, a long bronze-colored band, extending along the horizon, was streaked and cut by a black fringe of branches. Here and there, rose-colored gleams of light rested on the pavements; the river shone softly through a rising mist; I could see barges floating with the stream, and two or three teams of horses on the bank, while towards the east, the slanting beams of crane stood out against the gray sky. In half an hour, all this had died out; there was but one patch of clear sky behind the Pantheon; reddish-colored smoke was wreathing about in the dying purple of the evening, and the vague colors intermingled. A blue vapor hid the arches of the bridges and the edges of the roofs. The apse of the cathedral stood alone, looking with its pinnacles and jointed buttresses, in size and shape like an empty crab-shell. Things prominent and colored but a moment ago, were now like mere sketches on a dull paper. Here and there a gas-light shone out like a lonely star, and caught the attention as other things faded away. Soon, strings of light

---

\* 24th November, 1867.

extended themselves as far as the eye could reach, and the indistinct flickering glare of crowded Paris rose in the west ; while below the arches, along the quays, and over the weirs, the rippling water kept up its nightly murmuring.

I saw this yesterday ; and now as I write I see it again—dimly, it is true, but still I see it. The colors, forms, sounds, which struck me yesterday, are now renewed, or nearly so. Yesterday, I experienced sensations excited by the immediate contact of things and immediate action of the nerves. To-day impressions analogous to those sensations, though remotely so, arise in me, notwithstanding the want of this action and contact, notwithstanding the presence of other actions and contacts. It is a semirevival of my experience ; different terms might be used to express it, we might call it an after-taste, an echo, a representation, a phantom, an *image* of the primitive sensation ; it matters little ; all these comparisons mean no more than that after a sensation excited by the outer world, and not spontaneous, we find within us a second event corresponding to it, which is spontaneous and is not excited by the outer world, which resembles the sensation, and is accompanied, though not so forcibly, with the same emotions, which is pleasurable or the reverse, but in a less degree, and is followed by some, but not all, the same mental conclusions. The sensation repeats itself, though with less distinctness and force, and deprived of many of its surroundings.

This obliteration is more or less complete according to the differences of men's minds, and this is what we mean when we say that men have more or less memory. Again, it is more or less complete in the same minds according to the different kinds of sensations, and this is what is meant by saying that such a man remembers forms, another colors, another sounds.—For example, in my own case, I have but an ordinary memory for forms and a slightly better one for colors. I can see without difficulty after several years five or six fragments of an object, but not its precise and complete outline ; I can recall more easily the whiteness of a sandy path at Fontainebleau, the hundred little spots and stripes made by the sprigs of wood strewed on it, its winding

curves, the faintly rose-colored tints of the heather by its sides, the wretched appearance of a stunted birch clinging to the side of a rock ; but I cannot trace in my mind the winding of the path or the jutting out of the rocks: if I mentally catch sight of the swelling of some vegetable muscle my half-sight stops there ; above, below, all is vague ; even involuntary revivals, which are the most vivid, are only half clear to me ; the most visible and most highly-colored fragment is dull and tame. Compared to the sensation it is as a half-heard whisper to an articulate, ringing voice. In my case, all that is reproduced uninjured and whole is the precise shade of emotion, harsh, tender, strange, sweet, or sad, which followed or accompanied the external corporeal sensation. I can thus renew my pains and pleasures, the most complex and most delicate, with extreme exactness and after considerable distances of time. In this respect, the incomplete and failing whisper has almost the same effect as the voice.—But if, instead of taking the instance of a man inclined to pay principal attention to sentiments, we look at men accustomed to observe particular colors and forms, we shall find cases of images so clear as to differ little from sensations.

For example, children accustomed to calculate in their heads, write mentally with chalk on an imaginary board the figures in question, then all their partial operations, then the final sum, so that they see internally the different lines of white figures with which they are concerned. The remarkable children who are precocious mathematicians give a similar account of themselves.\* Young Colborn, who had never been at school, and did not know how to read or write, said that when making his calculations, “he saw them clearly before him.” Another said that he “saw the numbers he was working with as if they had been written on a slate.”—So again, we find chess-players who play a game with their eyes closed, and faces turned towards the wall. They have numbered the squares and pieces ; at each move of their opponent they are told the piece moved and the new square it occupies ; they give directions themselves for the movement

---

\* Gall, “*Fonctions du Cerveau*,” tome v. 130.

of their own pieces, and go on in this way for many hours. They often win, even when opposed to skilful players. Evidently the figure of the whole chess-board, with the different pieces in order, presents itself to them at each move, as in an internal mirror, for without this they would be unable to foresee the probable consequences of their adversary's and their own moves.

An American friend of mine, who has this faculty, describes it to me in these words: "When I am in my corner, facing the wall, I see simultaneously the chess-board and all the pieces, as they were in reality after the last move. And as each piece is moved, I see the whole chess-board with the new change effected. If I am in doubt in my mind as to the exact position of a piece, I play over, mentally, the whole game from the beginning, attending carefully to the successive movements of that piece. It is far easier to deceive me when I watch the board than otherwise; in fact, when I am in my corner, I defy any one to mislead me as to the position of a piece without my afterwards detecting it. . . . I see the piece, the square, and the color, *exactly* as the workman made them—that is, I see the chess-board standing before my adversary, or at all events, I have an exact representation of it, and not that of another chess-board. So far is this the case that, before retiring to the corner, I begin by carefully looking at the chess-board and men as they stand, and to this first impression I mentally attend and revert." Usually, he does not see the table-cloth nor the shadows of the pieces, nor the minute peculiarities of their make, but can recall them if he wishes. He has often played chess with a friend who has also this faculty, while walking along the quays or in the streets.—As might be expected, so exact and intense a representation is repeated and lasts involuntarily. "I have never played a game," says he, "without having played it over again four or five times in the night in bed, with my head on the pillow. . . . When I am sleepless and have unpleasant thoughts, I set myself to play at chess, imagining a game, with all the pieces, and this occupies my mind and drives away the besetting thoughts."—The first players are not the most skilful at this artifice. La-

bourdonnais could only play two games at once, mentally; having once attempted three at a time he died from the effort. "It is not unusual to find in clubs, fourth-rate players who wake up some morning with this faculty."—Some of them attain an extent and clearness of imagination which are simply marvellous. "Paul Morphy plays eight games at a time, and Paulsens twenty. This I have seen myself."—Other images, far more irregular and with more variety of shade, and so, it would seem, more difficult to recall, present themselves with equal precision. Certain painters, draughtsmen, and sculptors, after attentively considering a figure, are able to draw it from memory. Gustave Doré has this faculty; Horace Vernet had it. Abercrombie\* mentions a painter who copied from recollection and without the aid of an engraving, a Martyrdom of Saint Peter, by Rubens, with so perfect an imitation that the two pictures, being placed beside one another, considerable attention was required to distinguish the copy from the original.

We can follow the different stages by which the ordinary image passes to this height of clearness and detail. In a school of art at Paris, the pupils were practised in copying models from memory. After four months' practice they said that "the image" had become "much more distinct, and if it disappears they can recall it almost at will."—M. Brierre de Boismont,† having studiously impressed on his mind the figure of a priest of his acquaintance, says, "At present this mental representation is visible to me, whether my eyes be shut or open." The image appeared to him "external," placed in front of him "in the direction of the visual ray. . . . It has the size and characters of the original; I can distinguish his features, the cut of his hair, the expression of his face, his dress, and all the details of his person. I see him smile, speak, preach; I mark even his habitual gestures . . . . The image is shadowy and of a different nature from the objective sensation . . . . but

---

\* "Inquiries concerning the Intellectual, Powers," p. 126; and see Brierre de Boismont, "Des Hallucinations," pp. 449 et seq., 26 et seq., where many analogous cases are collected. See also "Annales Médico-Psychologiques," 3me Série, ii. 295.

† Op. cit. 449; and De Boisbaudran, "Education de la Mémoire Pittoresque," pp. 77 and 83.

clearly outlined and colored," and, saving this distinction of nature, provided with all the characters belonging to the real person, or, more precisely, with all the characters which belong to the sensation experienced in the presence of the real person.—We may confidently assert then, that the internal event, which we call a sensation, and which is produced in us when our nerves, and consequently our brain, receive an impression from without, is reproduced in us without impression from without—in the majority of cases partially, feebly, and vaguely, but in many cases with greater clearness and force; in some cases with a precision and detail nearly equivalent to what we find in the sensation.

The sensations of hearing, of taste, of smell, of touch, and, in general, all sensations, whatever be the nerve by whose action they are excited, have their images. We can all of us hear tunes mentally, and in some cases the image is not far removed from the sensation. Just now, thinking over a representation of the "*Prophète*," I repeated silently to myself the pastorale from the overture, and followed, I venture to say almost felt, not only the order of the notes, their different height, rests, and lengths, not only the musical phrase repeated as an echo, but also the keen, piercing tone of the hautboy which plays it; its sharp drawn-out notes of so rustic a harshness that the nerves are startled, and filled with a rough pleasure, as at the taste of raw wine.—Every good musician experiences this sensation at will, when he follows the lines of music covered with their black marks. The leader of an orchestra,\* questioned by M. Buchez, told him that when he looked over a score "he heard as in his ear" not only the chords and their succession, but also the tone of the instruments. On the first reading over, he distinguished the quartet; at the second and succeeding ones, he added to the quartet the other instruments; and finally he perceived and appreciated distinctly the effect of the whole.—Great musicians have this gift of internal hearing in an eminent degree. It is well known that Mozart, having twice heard the *Miserere* of the Sistine Chapel, wrote it down entirely from memory. As

---

\* Brierre de Boismont, op. cit. 459.



it was forbidden to copy it, the fidelity of the master of the chapel was suspected, on account of the difficulty of the exploit.\* Mozart, no doubt, on his return home, found in his mind, when seated at his table, as if in a minutely exact echo, these lamentations composed of so many parts and carried over a series of notes so strange and delicate. When Beethoven composed many of his great works after he had become completely deaf, the combinations of notes and tones which we now admire in them were present to him. They were necessarily present, since he measured their effect beforehand, and measured it with rigorous precision.

II. This close resemblance of the image and sensation becomes clearer still if we consider the circumstances under which the higher degrees of intensity of the image occur.—A first excitant is the extreme nearness of the sensation. When we have heard a full striking tone, for example, the rich prolonged note of the violoncello, clarionet, or horn, if the sound suddenly ceases, we continue for some seconds to hear it mentally; and, though at the end of these seconds its image becomes feeble and obscure, we continue, if we derived any pleasure from it, to repeat it internally with remarkable fidelity, and without letting go any portion scarcely of smooth or striking sound. And so, when we shut our eyes after having regarded attentively any object, a figure in a print, the back of a book in a library, the perception, which has become internal, continues for nearly a second, then disappears, then renews itself, but softened; then is troubled and fails utterly, without leaving any other trace than a vague outline; and the losses which the image has undergone prove by their contrast the force it had to commence with. So it is after a smell, a taste, an impression of cold, of heat, of local pain, and the rest.—If the sensation, instead of preceding, is about to follow, the effect is the same. A gourmand seated before a savory dish, the steam of which is rising under his nose, and into which he has already put his fork, tastes beforehand its exquisite flavor, and the glands of his tongue become moistened; the image of the expected fla-

---

\* It is necessary to have heard this *Miserere*, to appreciate the capacity and precision of such memory for music.

vor is equivalent to the sensation of the actual flavor ; the resemblance is carried so far that the salivary glands are equally excited in either case. This is why a physiologist, who wishes to obtain a quantity of saliva to experiment with, ties up a hungry dog a few inches from a piece of meat, and collects the liquid which the flavor continually wished for and continually absent discharges from the animal's jaws. So by an analogous but contrary effect, any thing unpleasant we are obliged to take excites vomiting by the simple thought of its taste before it touches our lips. So again, a ticklish person whom we threaten to tickle, and who sees our hand approaching, imagines so strongly the coming sensation, that he has spasmodic feelings, the same feelings, in fact, as if the sensation had taken place. Many persons who are about to undergo a surgical operation, feel beforehand the shooting pain which will follow the first cut, and sweat and grow pale at the very thought, and sometimes suffer as keenly as when under the saw and knife. A lady\* who thought she was inhaling nitrous oxide, and who had simply a bottle of common atmospheric air under her nose, fell in a fainting fit. These examples show us also that the importance of the sensation is another excitant as powerful to strengthen the image as the proximity of the sensation. A traveller in Abyssinia† saw one of his men torn by a lion ; many years afterwards, when he thought of the circumstance, he could hear mentally the cries of the unhappy man, "and felt as if a hot iron were entering his ear." Numbers of mystics‡ have represented to themselves the passion of our Lord with such force, that they have believed themselves to feel in their bodies the rending and pain of the Saviour's wounds.—Every one knows the power of an image, especially when strange and terrible, upon an excited and prepared mind : it is mistaken for a sensation, and the illusion is complete. Children, and even grown men, have fallen insensible before a figure, or even a cloth, which they have believed to be a ghost. On recovering, they have asserted that they saw flaming eyes, open jaws.—In all these cases the image has in no way differed, for the time at

---

\* Mueller, "Elements of Physiology," tr. Baly, ii. 1392.

† Briere de Boismont, op. cit. 468.

‡ Maury, "La Magie et l'Astrologie, etc.," 2<sup>me</sup> partie, chap. iii. passim.

least, from the corresponding sensation, and it is only after the lapse of a longer or shorter time, when the recollection has subsided, and the circumstances have been looked into, that the deceived person has recognized his mistake.

III. Hitherto we have seen the image approximating to the sensation, acquiring the same clearness, the same abundance of minute and circumstantial detail, the same force, sometimes even the same persistence, furnishing the same foundation for higher combinations and ulterior reasonings, exciting the same impressions and same instinctive actions, organic and muscular, having in short the same properties, the same accompaniments, and same consequents as the sensation, without, however, being wholly and definitely confounded with it. In fact, there remains a character which is distinctive to the image: we soon recognize it as internal, we say to ourselves, at least after a moment, that the thing thus sent or felt is but a phantom; that our hearing, our sight, our taste, or our smell, have experienced no real sensation. We are not under the influence of hallucinations; we do not say—as sick people sometimes do\*—"I saw and heard it as plainly as I now see and hear you. . . . I assure you that what I saw was as clear as the day; and, if I doubt it, I must also doubt that I see and hear you."

To explain so important a difference, we must observe closely in what the recognition of an illusion consists. There are two moments during the presence of the image; one affirmative, the other negative; the second partially qualifying what the first began to affirm. In the case of a very precise and intense image, these two moments are very distinct: at the first it seems external, situated at such and such a distance from us, when a sound or visible object is in question; situated in our palate, nose, or limbs, when a sensation of smell, taste, local pain or pleasure is in question. "The exercise both of conception and imagination,"† says Dugald Stewart, "is always accompanied with a belief (at all events, momentary) that their object exists. . . . There are few persons who can look down from the battlements of a very high tower

---

\* Baillarger, "*Des Hallucinations*," 374.

† "*Philosophy of the Human Mind*," chap. 3, i. 150-1. Ed. Hamilton.

without fear, while their reason convinces them that they are in no more danger than when standing on the ground." In fact, when we look directly down to the ground, we imagine ourselves suddenly taken and thrown to the bottom; and this image alone is enough to make us shudder, since, for an imperceptible instant, it has the force of a belief; we draw back instinctively, as if we actually felt ourselves falling. We must admit, then, that "whenever the objects of imagination engross the attention wholly, they produce a temporary belief of their reality." This is why persons who experience very vivid images employ, to describe them, the same words as to denote the actual sensation; and, during some seconds, take their images for sensations. "I once heard," says Lieber, "a colored preacher describing the torments of future punishment. He rose, not ineloquently, from the description of one anguish to another, when at last, carried away by uncontrollable excitement, he merely uttered, for more than a minute, a succession of inarticulate sounds or cries."\* No doubt, during the minute in question, his mental vision had all the characters of physical vision. He had before him an imaginary hell resembling a real hell, and he believed in his internal phantoms as in real facts. "My imaginary persons," writes the clearest and most accurate of modern novelists, "*affect me*, pursue me, in fact, I live in them. When I was describing the poisoning of Emma Bovary I had so strong a *taste of arsenic in my mouth*, I was myself so far poisoned, that I had two consecutive fits of indigestion, and real indigestion, for I threw up my dinner."

An English painter,† whose rapidity of execution was marvellous, explained his mode of work in this way; "When a sitter came, I looked at him attentively for half an hour, sketching from time to time on the canvas. I wanted no more—I put away my canvas, and took another sitter. When I wished to resume my first portrait, *I took the man and sat him in the chair*, where I saw him as distinctly as if he had been before me in his own proper person—I may almost say more vividly. I

---

\* "Smithsonian Contributions to Knowledge," vol. ii. p. 9.

† Wigan, "A New View of Insanity. The Duality of the Mind, etc.," p. 124.

looked from time to time at the imaginary figure, then worked with my pencil, then referred to the countenance, and so on, just as I should have done had the sitter been there—*when I looked at the chair I saw the man*. Gradually I began to lose the distinction between the imaginary figure and the real person; and sometimes disputed with sitters that they had been with me the day before. At last I was sure of it; and then—all is confusion. . . . I lost my senses, and was thirty years in an asylum.” When he left the asylum he had still the power of painting a portrait from his internal image of the model, but was persuaded not to work for fear of a return of the madness.

The chess-player I have mentioned, writes again: “I never think of distinguishing between my mental chess-board and the actual one. As far as I am concerned, they are one; and I could only establish a distinction between them by an effort of reasoning, the utility of which I have never experienced.” Thus, while he is playing, his mental chess-board stands to him in place of the actual one.—In other cases, morbid or quasi-morbid, we see the image acquire complete and definite externality. “Recently,” says M. Maury,\* “my eyes were attracted by a dish of very scarlet cherries which were served at my table. Just after dinner, the weather grew stormy, and the air very close; I felt sleep coming over me, my eyes closed; I was then thinking of the cherries, and saw in a sleepy hallucination these same scarlet cherries, lying on the same green porcelain dish on which they had appeared at dessert. Here was a direct transformation of my thought into sensation.” Writers on insanity mention many instances of similar transformations.† “A young man who suffered from epilepsy, every fit of which was preceded by the apparition of an indented wheel, with a horrible figure in the middle, assured me that he had the power of producing hallucinations. He amused himself by conceiving some strange object to be present;

---

\* “Le Sommeil, et les rêves,” 240.

† “Annales Médico-Psychologiques,” 3me Série, ii. 389, 390, M. Michéa—Cases collected by Abercrombie, M. Moreau, Maisonneuve, etc.—See also, Baillarger, “Des Hallucinations,” “Mémoires de l’Académie de Médecine,” tome xiii. p. 250.

and scarcely had he formed it in imagination before it appeared accurately before his eyes. I have myself seen an instance of this kind in a monomaniac, a man of cultivated mind and perfect sincerity of character, who assured me that he had but to recall to his mind or to imagine a person or thing, for the person or thing to appear at once before him with every appearance of externality."

There is no need to be ill or half asleep to watch the metamorphosis by which the image projects itself from within to an external position. "A friend of mind," says Abercrombie,\* "had been one day looking intensely at a small print of the Virgin and Child, and had sat bending over it for some time. On raising his head he was startled by perceiving at the farther end of the apartment a female figure of the size of life, with a child in her arms. The first feeling of surprise having subsided, he instantly traced the source of the illusion, and remarked that the figure corresponded exactly with that which he had contemplated in the print. The illusion continued distinct for about two minutes."† Goethe was able to produce in himself a complete illusion at will. "When I closed my eyes," he says, "*and depressed my head*, I could cause the image of a flower to appear in the middle of the field of vision; this flower did not for a moment retain its first form, but unfolded itself, and developed from its interior new flowers, formed of colored or sometimes green leaves. These were not natural flowers, but of fantastic forms, although symmetrical as the rosettes of sculptors. I was unable to fix any one form, but the development of new flowers continued as

---

\* Op. cit. p. 63.

† Griesinger, "Traité des Malades Mentales" (translation by Doumic), p. 104 :

"Some observers are able to produce hallucinations at will; that is to say, ideas existing in their consciousness, and on which they firmly direct their attention, call into play the sensorial functions. A person who suffered from hallucinations of hearing observed that he could produce the voices himself, and said afterwards that this partly assisted him in recognizing the error. M. Sandras speaks of hallucinations he himself suffered from during an illness in which he mistook his own thoughts and wishes for voices. These voices answered his mental questions as a person present would have done, but always in accordance with his wishes.

"We consider the phenomena of imagination as among the functions of the internal sensorial apparatus, and as differing from its other functions in intensity only."

long as I desired it, without any variation in the rapidity of the changes. The same thing occurred when I figured to myself a variegated disk. The colored figures upon it underwent constant changes, which extended progressively, from the centre towards the periphery, exactly like the changes in the modern kaleidoscope."—Finally, hallucinations, that is to say, projections into the outer world of simple mental images, have been produced, not only in full health, but with the complete exercise, and, indeed, by the exercise of the will. "A German writer on insanity, Dr. Brosius, of Bendorf, mentions his having produced at will his own figure, which stood before him for some seconds, but which vanished immediately he attempted to fix his mind on his personal existence."\*

These extreme cases show by their exaggeration the nature of the normal state. Just as by dissecting an hypertrophied stomach we succeed in distinguishing dispositions of the muscular fibres which are invisible in a healthy stomach, so by examining prolonged illusions, which lasts for seconds, minutes, or more, we discover the existence of fugitive illusions, accompanying ordinary images, but so rapid, short, and instantaneous, that we cannot isolate or observe them directly. —This illusion is none the less real, and the simple analysis of the words we use to denote the image bears witness to the double operation by which it is formed. We say that such an image, a phantom of hearing or sight, of taste or smell, which seems to be situated either in some part of our organs, or without us, seems, *erroneously*, to be situated there, since it is not there or without us, but *internal*. This phrase itself indicates the recognition and correction of an error, therefore of a preliminary error; we must have been deceived, for the moment, since, a moment afterwards, we find out the mistake. The two operations, illusion and its rectification, follow so closely that they are confused into one. But suppress the rectification. the first operation, illusion, will alone

---

\* "Annales Médico-Psychologiques," *ibid.*—I have myself had, in a dream it is true, a vision of this kind (November, 1869). At the end of a dream, too long for narration, my own figure appeared seated in an arm-chair near a table, in a white dressing-gown striped with black; it turned towards me, and the shock was so great that I woke up with a start.

remain, and its unaccustomed presence, when the couple is dissolved, will show us its fugitive presence in the couple when intact.

IV. This leads us to the consideration of cases in which the rectification cannot be effected. What usually effects it is the presence of a contradictory sensation. When the chess-player imagines a black and white chess-board two paces in front of him, and a moment afterwards his open eyes give him the sensation of a gray or dark wall at the same distance, and in the same direction, the sensation and image cannot co-exist. When the novelist imagines the crushing of moistened arsenic in his mouth, and "the horrible inky taste" which the poison leaves, if, a moment afterwards, he takes a mouthful of wine or a lump of sugar, the real and imaginary sensations exclude one another, and the momentary illusion caused by the image disappears under the ascendancy of the sensation. And thus it is that in most instances the passing error, connected for a moment with the presence of the image, disappears, if not at the same instant, without any appreciable interval elapsing, by the opposing shock of the real sensation.—Let us look, then, for a case in which the sensation disappears and becomes as it were absent; we find such a case in the reverie preceding sleep.\* The sensations produced in us by the external world are then effaced by degrees; at last they seem suspended, and the images, no longer distinguished from sensations, become complete hallucinations. M. Maury succeeded, by having himself awakened at intervals, in observing a great number of them: for example, once, when suddenly roused up, "I saw my name very distinctly on a sheet of white paper, shining like the very smoothest English paper." He seated himself again in his easy-chair. "My head had scarcely sunk down before the hallucination returned; but now, instead of my name, I saw Greek letters and words which I spelt out mechanically, and almost with a movement of the lips. On several successive days I had, whether in bed or my

---

\* Maury, "*Annales Medico-Psychologiques*," 3me Série, iii. 161.—And "*Le Sommeil et les Rêves*," chap. iv. M. Maury was the first to show, by a well-connected series of experiments, the near relationship of the sensation, the recollection, the image, and the hallucination.



chair, similar hallucinations or real dreams, in which I appeared to be reading Oriental characters. This reading of a word here and there was always accompanied by a feeling of fatigue in the eyes. . . . Once, above all, I saw Sanscrit characters ranged in columns, according to the classification of grammarians, and these letters had a relief and a brilliancy which tired me. It must be observed that I had for some days been reading a number of grammars of Asiatic languages, and that the fatigue of my eyes was partly owing to this prolonged reading." Here we not only have the image which has become an hallucination,\* but we see it in process of becoming such. We can watch the progressive diminution of the sensation which would contradict it, the suppression of the rectification which would pronounce it internal, and the increase of the illusion which causes us to take the phantasm for a real object.†

I know this state from my own experience, and have many times repeated the observation, above all in the daytime, when fatigued and seated in a chair; it is then sufficient for me to close one eye with a handkerchief; by degrees the sight of the other eye becomes vague, and it closes. By degrees, all external sensations are effaced, or cease, at all events, to be remarked; the internal images, on the other hand, feeble and rapid during the state of complete wakefulness, become intense, distinct, colored, steady, and lasting; there is a sort of ecstasy, accompanied by a feeling of expansion and of comfort. Warned by frequent experience, I know that sleep is coming on, and that I must not disturb the rising vision; I remain passive; and, in a few minutes it is complete. Architecture, landscapes, moving figures, pass slowly by, and sometimes remain, with incomparable clearness of form and fulness of being; sleep comes on, and I know no more of the real world I am in. Many times, like M. Maury, I have caused myself to be gently roused at different moments of this state, and have thus been

---

\* Briere de Boismont, *op. cit.* 160. Mlle. R., after a series of hallucinations, "characterized very clearly the state she had gone through. She could best compare it, she said, to an unpleasant dream."—Many sufferers from hallucinations have said the same, on their recovery.—The analogy between dreams and hallucinations is certain. See Maury, *ibid.* chap. vi.

† Mueller, *Physiology*, tr. Baly, ii. 1394.

able to mark its characters.—The intense image which seems an external object is but a more forcible continuation of the feeble image which an instant before I recognized as internal; some scrap of a forest, some house, some person which I vaguely imagined on closing my eyes, has in a minute become present to me with full bodily details, so as to change into a complete hallucination.\* Then, waking up on a hand touching me, I feel the figure decay, lose color, and evaporate; what had appeared a substance is reduced to a shadow. I have frequently thus watched in turn the filling out by which a simple image becomes an hallucination, and the obliteration which turns the hallucination into a simple image.—In this double transition we are able to notice the differences, and perceive the conditions, of the two states.

First, when we are going to sleep. As the image becomes more intense so it becomes more absorbing and independent. On the one hand, it attracts by degrees all the attention; external noises and contacts become less and less sensible; at last they are as if they did not exist. The image, on the other hand, becomes prominent and persistent; we seem no longer actors, but spectators; its transformations are spontaneous and *automatic*.† When attention and automatism are at their height, the hallucination is complete, and it is precisely by the loss of these two characters that it is destroyed.—Next, as to waking. On the one hand, at the light touch that arouses us, a part of our attention is brought back to the outer world. On the other hand, as memory returns, reviving images and ideas surround with their train the special image, they come into conflict with it, assume ascendancy over it, depose it from its solitary position, restore it to social life, and replace it in its habitual dependency. This opposition

---

\* Maury, "Le Sommeil," 3me édition, pp. 448 and 453. Many instances are cited in support of this. "As soon as the mind rests on an idea, a corresponding hypnogogic hallucination is produced, if the eye be closed. . . . The state of hallucination is nothing more than an intensity of the image-idea, owing to the internal parts of the sensorial apparatus having become more delicate and more readily excitable, and consequently undergoing, in the operation of conception a more vigorous shock than in the healthy state—a shock, however, of the same nature as that which accompanies thought.

† An expression of M. Baillarger.

and contention cause the stupefaction of waking, and what we call being thoroughly awake is but the re-establishment of equilibrium.

The ordinary image then is not a simple, but a double fact. It is a spontaneous consecutive sensation, which, by conflicting with another sensation, primitive and not spontaneous, undergoes lessening, restriction, and correction. It comprises two momentary stages, a first in which it seems localized and external, and a second in which this externality and situation are lost. It is the result of a struggle; its tendency to appear external is opposed and overcome by the stronger and contradictory tendency of the sensation occasioned at the same moment by the action of the nerve. Under this effort it grows weak and thin, it is reduced to a shadow; we call it an image, phantasm, or appearance, and, however vivid or clear it may be, the conjunction of this negation is sufficient to deprive it of its substance; to dislodge it from its apparent position, and to distinguish it from the true sensation.

But to take the inverse case; it is allowed that not only in sleep but when awake, and for instance in a state of ecstasy or in the heat of action, though the nerve be excited, the sensation may be absent or as if absent, that is to say, not observed, annulled by the presence and preponderance of some other idea, image, or sensation. Such instances are by no means rare. At the bombardment of St. Jean d'Ulloa, the Mexicans fired a number of shot into a French vessel. A sailor called out "All right! No harm's done." The next minute he fell, fainting; a ball had broken his arm; at the moment he did not feel it.\*—So too in a calmer state, we may find sensations or fragments of sensations which are destroyed and no longer capable of contradicting the image. The image will then appear localized and external; and, though pronounced illusory by surrounding ideas, will continue to appear localized and external, since the sensation which could alone deprive it of this character is wanting, or is as if it did not exist. The hallucination is then complete, and what makes it so is the annulling the only sensation or fragment of

---

\* This fact was told me by an eye-witness.

sensation capable of reducing it.—When a man under an hallucination, with his eyes open, sees three feet from him the figure of a man where there is really a mere wall covered with gray paper with green stripes, the figure covers a portion of this wall and renders it invisible to him; the sensations which this portion ought to excite are then non-existent; but nevertheless the retina, and probably the optic centres, are excited in the ordinary manner by the gray and green stripes. In other words, the preponderating image annuls the portion of sensation which would contradict it. If, as it often happens, the figure moves, the preponderating image, as it advances and covers each portion of the wall, is continually blotting out and exposing in turn distinct fragments of sensation. Reason is not wanting in such cases; for often when in this state the mind remains sound and the patient knows that the figure is not real; it is the *special reductive*, that is to say, the contradictory sensation, which fails in the conflict, and, instead of depriving the image of its externality, becomes itself effaced.

Accidents of this kind are frequent when one of the senses has been greatly fatigued. “It is well known that persons who are in the habit of using the microscope sometimes find objects which they have been examining for a long time re-appear spontaneously some hours after they have left their work.”\* M. Baillarger having worked some hours daily for several days, at preparing specimens of brains with fine gauze, “saw all at once gauze continually covering the objects in front of him. . . . And this hallucination was repeated for several days.” Here, it is evident the special reductive was wanting; in other words, the retina having before it a green carpet, or red chair, certain lines of green or of red, while producing on it their ordinary physical effect, excited only a sensation amounting to nothing. For this reason, a German physiologist, Gruithuisen,\* who has observed his own hallucinations with great accuracy, affirms that he saw floating images *cover* the furniture of the room he was in.

Other cases show the partial re-establishment of the correct-

---

\* Baillarger, “Des Hallucinations,” 460.

† Ibid., 333, 334.

ive sensation, A person, mentioned by Sir Walter Scott,\* saw a skeleton at the foot of his bed. His doctor, wishing to convince him of his error, placed himself between the patient and the place assigned to the spectre. The patient then professed that he could not see the body of the skeleton, but that its skull was peering over the doctor's shoulder. This is why solitude, silence, obscurity, the want of attention, all circumstances, in short, which suppress or diminish the corrective sensation, facilitate or provoke the hallucination; and reciprocally, company, light, conversation, aroused attention, all circumstances giving rise to, or augmenting, the corrective sensation, destroy or weaken the hallucination.† "If we approach a patient suffering under hallucinations of hearing, and speak to him so as to fix his attention, we can convince him that his pretended invisible interlocutors are silent while the conversation lasts . . ." A patient observed by M. Lélut, at the hospital of the Bicêtre," "ceased to have hallucinations when changed into another ward and with different neighbors. But this suspension lasted only a few days; the patient soon became accustomed to the new circumstances in which he found himself, and then fell again into false perceptions . . . . With one patient there must be very keen impressions, uninterruptedly kept up, to suspend the hallucinations even for a short time. Scarcely is the sick man left to himself, scarcely have you ceased to excite him, when the phenomena recur. With others, on the contrary, the visit of the doctor to the ward is enough to cause a considerable suspension."—When M. Baillarger saw objects covered with gauze "it was principally in the dark, and when my attention was not engaged."‡ The same observer, having taken haschich, could not get rid of his hallucinations while in the dark, and was compelled to light a candle.—Many patients who see in the dark various frightful figures, dying persons, corpses, etc., are freed from their visions as soon as

---

\* "Demonology and Witchcraft," p. 27.

† Baillarger, *ibid.*, 440; and Brierre de Boismont, *op. cit.*, 388. "Those nightly apparitions, which I called silly illusions by day, became frightful realities to me in the evening," p. 388.—"It constantly happened that the entrance of the servant freed her from the presence of the phantoms," p. 242.

‡ *Ibid.*, 328, 329, 330, 444, 445.

a light is brought into the room, A lady with whom this is the case has been obliged for twenty years to have a light near her when asleep. An old servant, M. G., "as soon as she closes her eyes, sees animals, houses, meadows, etc. I have frequently myself pressed down her eyelids, and she described at once a crowd of objects which appeared to her." With some people, to enter a dark room is enough to produce hallucinations. "It is not then uncommon," says Mueller,\* "to find distinct images of landscapes and similar objects floating before the eyes. I have been very subject to this phenomenon, but have got into the habit, whenever it occurs, of opening my eyes at once, and fixing them on the wall. The images still persist, but soon grow pale. They are seen whichever way the head is turned." Here the remedy is obvious; it consists in arousing a contradictory sensation. The phantom grows pale, and loses its externality in proportion as the sensation of color excited by the wall becomes more clear and preponderant.—And the remedy is general; every shock that brings back the attention to real sensation; a cold bath, a *douche*, the arrival of an unexpected or important person, draws them from their indistinctness and nullity, re-establishes them more or less, and for a longer or shorter time, and consequently revives with them the particular sensation which is the special reductive of that illusion.

"In the summer of 1832,† a gentleman in Glasgow, of dissipated habits, was seized with cholera, from which he recovered. His recovery was unattended with any thing particular, except the presence of phantasmata—consisting of human figures about three feet high, neatly dressed in pea-green jackets, and knee-breeches of the same color. Being a person of a superior mind, and knowing the cause of the illusions, they gave him no alarm, although he was very often haunted by them. As he advanced in strength the phantoms appeared less frequently, and diminished in size, till at last they were not taller than his figure. One night, while seated alone, a multitude of these Lilliputian gentlemen made their appearance on his table, and favored him with a dance; but

---

\* Op. cit., tr. Baly, ii. 1394. † Macnish, "Philosophy of Sleep," p. 290.

being at the time otherwise engaged, and in no mood to enjoy such an amusement, he lost temper at the unwelcome intrusion of his pigmy visitors, and striking his fist violently on the table, he exclaimed, in a violent passion, ‘Get about your business, you little impertinent rascal! What the devil are you doing here?’ when the whole assembly instantly vanished, and he was never troubled with them more.” The illness was drawing to a close, and his lively feeling of anger, together with the violent sensation of the blow on the table, suddenly restored their normal preponderance to the visual sensations which the portion of the table covered by the Lilliputians ought to have given him, but had ceased to give.

Other cases show with fuller detail how it is the corrective sensation leaves the sides, and appears on the scene. Nicolai,\* the bookseller and academician of Berlin, having suffered from considerable vexations, and a periodical blood-letting to which he was accustomed having been omitted, tells his story thus:—“On the 24th of February, 1791, having had a violent altercation, I saw on a sudden, about ten paces from me, the figure of a corpse. . . . The apparition lasted eight minutes. At four in the afternoon, the same figure re-appeared. . . . At six, I distinguished several figures having no connexion with the first. . . . On the following day, the figure of the corpse disappeared; it was replaced by other figures, sometimes representing friends, but more frequently strangers. . . . These visions were as clear and distinct in solitude as in company, by day as by night, in the streets as in my own house; *only they were less frequent when in strange houses.*” They represented men and women walking as if on business, then persons on horseback, dogs, and birds. There was nothing particular in their looks, stature, or dress, “*but they were a little paler than in real life.*”† At the end of four weeks,

---

\* Brierre de Boismont, op. cit. 33, citing from *Berliner Monats-schrift*. 1799. Mai.

† M. Brierre de Boismont (op. cit. 240) gives an account of a person who, during an attack of pneumonia, had hallucinations of this kind, while preserving, like Nicolai, all his reason.

“Sometimes these figures presented themselves suddenly, but more frequently did not become distinguishable till after an interval, as though they had passed

their number increased; they began to talk to one another, and sometimes to address him, usually in pleasing language. He distinguished clearly these involuntary hallucinations from voluntary images. When certain figures he was acquainted with had thus passed before him, he determined to attempt to reproduce them mentally. "But," says he, "while seeing distinctly in my mind two or three of them, I could not succeed in making the internal image external. . . . On the other hand, some time after, I perceived them afresh when I was not thinking of them."—The special reductive was wanting in the hallucination; on the other hand, it was at work in the case of ordinary attention, and simply because the degree of attention was ordinary. In the first case, the image arising of its own accord, spontaneously, without visible connexions or antecedents, and with personal automatic power, destroyed the special reductive. In the second case, the image arising by an effort of the balanced group of ideas and desires which we term ourselves, allowed the special reductive to do its work.—After about two months, leeches were applied to the patient to make up for the omitted bleeding, and he found his normal sensations reappear, not all at once, but by portions and degrees. "During the operation," says he, "my room was filled with human figures of all kinds. This hallucination lasted uninterruptedly from eleven in the morning to half-past four, just when my digestion was commencing. I then perceived the movements of the phantoms getting *slower*. Soon afterwards they began *to grow pale*: at seven they had a *whitish look*, they moved *very slowly*, though their outlines were as distinct as before. By degrees they became *misty* and appeared *to dissolve into air*, whilst *certain portions of them remained still visible* during a considerable time. At about eight o'clock, the room was quite clear of these fantastic visitors."

When we are suddenly roused from sleep in the midst of a vivid dream, we experience an impression like this, though

---

through a mist before showing themselves distinctly. Each figure remained visible five or six seconds, then disappeared, getting feebler by degrees till nothing remained but an opaque dull cloud, from the midst of which another figure immediately appeared."



of far shorter duration. In such a case, I have often seen, for a passing moment, the image *grow pale*, waste away, and evaporate; sometimes, on opening the eyes, a fragment of landscape or the skirt of a dress appears still to float over the fire-irons or on the black hearth.—So, while Nicolai was recovering, the parts of the wall or furniture covered by the phantoms succeeded by degrees in producing their normal effect. The sensation which they would naturally excite by their action on the nerve, and through that on the brain, is no longer paralyzed. At first, this sensation recovers a portion of its strength, and contends on equal terms with the image; for the phantom, if still present, is misty, and the furniture or wall is vaguely apparent behind it. Soon, a fragment of the sensation regains all its preponderance; a leg or the head of a phantom disappears owing to the reappearance of the portion of furniture which it hid. Then, the whole sensation finds itself restored and complete, the phantoms have vanished, and all that remains of them is the internal image which enables us to describe them.

Here we see very clearly the connexion of the image and sensation; it is an *antagonism*, such as is met with between two groups of muscles in the human frame. In order that the image may produce its normal effect, that is to say, may be recognized as internal, it must undergo the counterpoise of a sensation; and if this counterpoise is absent, it will appear external. Similarly, in order that the muscles on the left of the face or tongue may produce their normal effect, the corresponding muscles on the right must be intact. In the absence of this counterpoise, the face or tongue are drawn towards the left. The paralysis of the muscles of one side produces a deformation of the other, as the weakening or extinction of the reductives of an image produces an hallucination.

As a general rule, normal sensations of any one sense, and usually those of the different senses, hold together. We have seen many proofs of this in the cases cited. When the attention is attracted by a normal sensation, that is to say, when this sensation regains its ordinary preponderance, the chances are that the other annulled sensations regain their ascendancy at the same time. The patient who is freed at once from his

illusions by the light of a candle, the unfortunate man who hears voices which cease when conversation becomes interesting the lunatic who regains his senses after a sudden dash of cold water, are cured for a longer or shorter time by the more or less durable energy restored to the special reductive. So, in facial paralysis, the face drawn on one side by the action of the left muscle, regains its ordinary form as the muscles on the right gradually regain their power under the action of electricity.

In other cases the cure follows from the same principles, but is obtained by an inverse process; I mean those in which the patient is haunted, not by hallucinations, that is to say, by images capable of annulling the normal sensation which ought to counteract them, but by illusions, that is to say, by images excited by the normal sensation, and so strong, precise, and absorbing that no actual sensation from without could have greater power. A state of excitement and expectation in the subject will often cause a sensation, which would be accompanied in a calm state by images of moderate activity, to communicate an extraordinary clearness and force to the image. "A whole ship's crew were thrown into consternation by the ghost of the cook, who had died a few days before. He was distinctly seen by them all, walking on the water with a peculiar gait by which he was distinguished, one of his legs being shorter than the other. The cook, so plainly recognized, was only a piece of old wreck."\* The superstitious sailors who had the figure of their shipmate and his gait fresh in their minds, all, without previous concert, underwent the same illusion at the sight of the uneven motion of the wreck, and their imagination found in the sensation a ground to build on.

What was here effected by credulity may be caused by disease. We see insane persons who lick the surface of a wall and imagine themselves to taste delicious oranges, or who, when given ripe fruit, find it rotten or poisoned; who, when they see one person, insist on taking him for another; who see the furniture of their room move about, grow bigger, or

---

\* Moore, "The Power of the Soul over the Body," p. 170.

take fantastic and frightful forms.\* In such cases it often happens that by suppressing the normal sensation, which is the starting point of the illusion, we suppress the illusion itself, and the special reductive is found, not in the predominance, but in the absence of that sensation.† “D. —, seventy-five years old, of sound mind, came home one day, frightened by a thousand phantoms which were following him. Whichever way he looked, *objects were transformed into spectres*, representing sometimes huge spiders which ran at him to drink his blood; sometimes soldiers with pikes. He was bled in the foot; the visions continued, accompanied by obstinate attacks of sleeplessness; a bandage was applied to his eyes; then they ceased, but returned as soon as the bandage was taken off, until the patient kept it on uninterruptedly for a night and part of a day. From that time he only saw phantoms at long intervals, and after some days they disappeared entirely. The patient has had no relapse.” Here, in place of strengthening the special reductive, the special excitant was suppressed, and the same result arrived at by different means.

In a very curious observation made by Dr. Lazarus on himself, we see no less clearly how the exciting sensation, alternately present and absent, alternately excites and suppresses the illusion. “I was on the Kaltbad terrace at Rigi, on a very clear afternoon, and attempting to make out the Waldbruder, a rock which stands out from the midst of the gigantic wall of mountains surrounding it, on whose summits we see like a crown the glaciers of Titlis, Uri-Rothsdoek, etc. I was looking alternately with the naked eye and with a spy-glass; but could not distinguish it, with the naked eye. For the space of six to ten minutes I had gazed steadfastly upon the mountains, whose color varied according to their several altitudes or declivities between violet, brown, and dark green, and I had fatigued myself to no purpose, when I ceased looking and turned away. At that moment I saw before me (I cannot recollect whether my eyes were shut or open) the figure

---

\* Brierre de Boismont, op. cit. 777. This was the case with Don Quixote; the sensation of two great whirlwinds of dust excited in him the image, and consequently the sensation of two armies.

† See Griesinger, op. cit. 103, for different instances.

of an absent friend, like a corpse.—I ought here to mention that I have been for years in the habit of noting down in writing every group of representations which has arisen, whether dreaming or awake, with special force, precision, and clearness, and has affected me vividly enough to induce the thought of the representation as a presentiment. I ought further to mention that I have never had the fortune to see one of such presentiments verified, though they have often been as sudden, clear, and apparently inexplicable, as one could wish. In addition to this, I have acquired the habit, intelligible enough in a psychologist, of tracing backwards from such incidents, and following up the whole series of antecedent representations. I have very often succeeded in explaining, by the known laws of association of ideas, how such presentiments have contrived to find place in the series of my thoughts at the time.

On this present occasion, I asked myself at once how I had come to think of my absent friend?—In a few seconds I regained the thread of my thoughts, which my looking for the Waldbruder had interrupted, and readily found that the idea of my friend had by a very simple necessity introduced itself among them. My recollecting him was thus naturally accounted for.—But in addition to this, he had appeared as a corpse. How was this?—At this moment, whether through fatigue or in order to think, I closed my eyes, and found at once the whole field of sight, over a considerable extent, covered with the same corpse-like hue, a greenish-yellow gray. I thought at once that I had here the principle of the desired explanation, and attempted to recall to memory the forms of other persons. And, in fact, these forms too appeared like corpses; standing or sitting, as I wished, all had a corpse-like tint. The persons whom I wished to see did not all appear to me as sensible phantoms; and again, when my eyes were open, I did not see phantoms, or at all events only saw them faintly, of no determined color.—I then inquired how it was that phantoms of persons were affected by and colored like the visual field surrounding them, how their outlines were traced, and if their faces and clothes were of the same color. But it was then too late, or perhaps the influence of reflection

and examination had been too powerful. All grew suddenly pale, and the subjective phenomenon, which might have lasted some minutes longer, had disappeared.—It is plain that here an inward reminiscence, arising in accordance with the laws of association, had combined with a *consecutive sensation of sight*. The excessive excitation of the periphery of the optic nerve, I mean the long-continued preceding sensation of my eyes when contemplating the color of the mountain, had indirectly provoked a subjective and durable sensation, that of the complementary color; and my reminiscence incorporating itself with this subjective sensation, became the corpse-like phantom I have described.”\* This singular case shows us the abnormal effect of sensation. When it exists, it increases the force and clearness of an ordinary vague representation till it turns it into a sensible phantom. When it ceases, the force and clearness of the sensible phantom are decreased, till it returns to its ordinary state, that is, one of vague representation.

Thus, in every process by which the exaggeration of images is combated, all we attempt is to set up an equilibrium, not that of a balance of which the two scales are on a level, but that of a balance in which one scale is lower than the other. In the normal state of wakefulness, the first scale which holds the sensations proper, is the heavier; the second and lighter scale holds images proper. The two scales in the normal state are, for the moment, on a level; but the heavier scale immediately weighs down the other, and our images are recognized as internal. Sometimes, in illness, a weight passes from the first to the second; the second then weighs down the first, and we have an hallucination proper; we are then obliged to add new weights, that is, new sensations, to the first, to destroy the preponderance. Sometimes, again, a thread attaches a weight of the second scale to a weight of the first, the first scale can no longer descend, and we have an illusion proper; the first means are no longer applicable; it would be idle to add new weights, we must remove from the first scale the weight with the thread which keeps the scales on a level,

---

\* “Zur Lehre von den Sinnestauschungen,” Berlin, 1867.

in spite of the inequality of their loads. In the first case, the normal state is re-established by adding; in the second, by taking off, weights.

V. But these are not the only means in question; for, in addition to the weights constituted by the sensations, there are others, lighter, but still usually sufficient in the healthy state to deprive the image of its externality; I mean recollections. These recollections are themselves images, but connected together and undergoing a recoil which gives them a situation in time, by a mechanism we shall inquire into hereafter. General judgments acquired by experience are associated with them, and form with them a group of elements connected among themselves, and so balanced, by their relations to one another, as to form a whole of considerable cohesion, and lending its entire force to each of its elements.—Every one may observe in his own case the reductive power of this group. A few days ago, I had a very clear and perfectly connected dream, in which I committed a ridiculous and enormous absurdity, too much so to describe; let us take something less glaring, such as quietly drawing off one's boots in company, and placing them on the mantel-piece beside the clock. It happened in a drawing-room I like very much; I saw distinctly the principal guests, their dress, their attitudes, I spoke to them, the scene was long, and the impression so clear that a quarter of an hour after I could have described it with every detail. I felt ill at ease, and was wondering how I could get out of my difficulty.—Just then I began to awake, and this state lasted two or three minutes. My eyes were still closed; but probably, through some feeling of cold or actual movement, ordinary consciousness was reviving, though feebly. In the first place, I was astonished at having shown such frightful ill-breeding; in other words, the vague recollection of my previous actions rose up, and came into opposition with my dream; this recollection became more precise, and brought on others; the lines of the past were reformed, and at the same time and in the same degree, the absurdity I had dreamed of, finding no standing-room, disappeared and evaporated. Then came this judgment, based on general ideas:—"It is a dream." The ridiculous image, at once and definitively, be-

came distinct and severed from the real recollections, and entered the region of pure phantasm. I had not yet opened my eyes; the sensation of present objects had not performed its work; at all events, it had only done so to the extent of reviving ordinary recollections and general judgments; these judgments and recollections, by the fixedness of their order and the cohesion of their group, had effected the necessary reduction, and overcome the natural tendency by which the image causes illusion.

In some cases this repression is much slower. M. Baillarger dreamed one night that a certain person had been appointed editor of a newspaper; in the morning, he believed it to be true, and mentioned it to several persons, who were interested to hear it;—the effect of the dream persisted all the forenoon, as strongly as that of a real sensation; at last, about three o'clock, as he was stepping into his carriage, the illusion passed off; he comprehended that he had been dreaming; so here the reductive group did not regain its ascendancy for half a day.—In this respect, the detail and intensity of a voluntary image have sometimes the same power as a dream. We find many examples of this in the lives of Balzac, Gérard de Nerval, Edgar Poe, and other great artists. Balzac once, at the house of Mme. Delphine Gay, was describing with animation a fine white horse he intended to present to Sandeau; some days after he imagined he had actually given it, and inquired of Sandeau about it; probably, his friend's astonishment and denial disabused him of the notion of his present.

On other occasions, the reductive group is weakened, and is not sufficient to check even an ordinary image. "An old man," says M. Maury, "who had travelled a great deal, had also read many accounts of travels over ground where he had not been. The recollections of his wanderings and of his readings had ended by becoming completely confused together; and all seemed to occur at once to his mind as he lay on his sofa, and he would gravely relate things he had read. For example, he would say that he had been in India with Tavernier, in the Sandwich Isles with Cook, and had then returned to Philadelphia, and had served there under Lafayette. This last statement was true." The notions of chronology

and order of time were effaced, and no longer performed their ordinary office.

Persons with lively imaginations are constantly forced to make reductions which this old man had ceased to make ; the general order of their recollections, fortified by the addition of some new observation, is generally sufficient for this. But when an image has acquired extraordinary intensity, and annuls the particular sensation which is its special reductive, though the order of recollections may exist and conclusions be come to, we have, nevertheless, an hallucination ; in fact, we may know that we are under an hallucination, but still the image appears external ; our other sensations and images still form a balance group, but this reductive not being the special one, is insufficient.—“ Dr. Gregory had gone to the north country by sea, to visit a lady, a near relation, in whom he felt deeply interested, and who was in an advanced state of consumption. In returning from the visit, he had taken a moderate dose of laudanum, with the view of preventing seasickness, and was lying on a couch in the cabin, when the figure of the lady appeared before him in so distinct a manner that her actual presence could not have been more vivid. He was quite awake, and fully sensible that it was a phantasm produced by the opiate, along with his intense mental feeling, but he was unable by any effort to banish the vision.”\* In fact, the sensation which ought to have been produced in him by the gray wall of the cabin was annulled as regarded the whole surface which the phantom seemed to cover ; and it is very clear that reasoning has not the force of a sensation.—Many circumstances, organic or moral, the action of haschich,† of datura, of opium, the coming on of apoplexy, different inflammatory diseases, different cerebral alterations, in short, a number of causes, more or less remote or near, are capable of thus strengthening an image or series of images so as to annul the special sensation which should repress it, and thus bring on hallucination.—But if in all these cases the illusion, circum-

---

\* Abercrombie, “ Inquiry concerning the Intellectual Powers,” p. 359.

† Brierre de Boismont, *ibid.*, 200. Accounts given by several persons who had taken haschich. *Ibid.*, 374.



scribed by secondary reductives, is at last destroyed by the special one, we meet with a still greater number in which this is not the case. Very frequently, patients, having admitted for a length of time that their phantoms were only phantoms, have ended by believing them to be real, and equally real with the persons and objects surrounding them, and this too with so absolute a conviction that no experience of their own or evidence of others can cure them of their error. In such cases the second class of reductives are annulled, as well as the special one; the preponderating image, having paralyzed the contradictory sensation, extends its dominion over the contradictory group of other normal images, and excites delirious ideas and unreasonable impulses. The person under hallucination becomes a madman; the loss of local equilibrium has gradually brought on an increasing loss of general equilibrium, as the paralysis of the muscles on the right, after causing a deformation and shrinking of the face towards the left, may affect by sympathy the adjoining functions, and produce general disease throughout the body.

Examples of this are numerous; I have chosen one, reported by Dr. Lhomme, which shows in detail the several stages of this spontaneous transformation, and throws great light on the mechanism of the mind.

In March, 1862, the gendarme S. was on duty at an execution. He was on guard with the prisoner during part of the night, assisted at the *toilette*, and was a few feet from the scaffold when the execution took place. When the head fell, he saw the executioner take it up *to put it in the basket*. . . . He says that this made a deep impression on him; he had been seized with a nervous trembling which he could not control, at the moment he saw the prisoner brought up with his outer clothes removed and neck bare; and long after the execution, *the figure of the bleeding head which he had seen thrown into the basket* was constantly before him.

Some time after, talking with the quartermaster, he said that he had no great opinion of Protestants. "He told me I was wrong; that there were many very good people among them, and even some persons of high rank, and mentioned, as an instance, the Minister of War. I kept thinking of this con-

versation, and it came into my head that the quartermaster would probably report me to the Minister of War. Some days afterwards I dreamed that I was actually condemned to death by the Minister's order, without having had a trial. I thought in my dream that I was bound with straps and was being rolled like a barrel towards the guillotine. This dream impressed me vividly. I told it to a comrade, who laughed at me, but it often recurred to my mind!"

On the 1st of August, going from Sancerre to Sancergues, he got drunk, arrived too late, and found the barracks closed. Next day the quartermaster told him that he should report him to the lieutenant for being late.—The 2d of August he was "out of spirits, but not ill." The 3d of August, he says, "I did not feel all right, though I had slept well; *I kept thinking of my dream.* . . . . When I went on duty as sentry, I thought every one was staring at me, and that I heard my comrades and other persons *whispering* that I was going to be *guillotined.*"

That evening he went to bed at eleven, having cleaned his accoutrements for next day's drill. "I had perhaps been in bed twenty minutes, and had not fallen asleep, when I heard a noise in the clock over the mantel-piece, and then a voice came from it, and said to me, "*You must die, you must die. Your head will be cut off in two days. We must have your head, we must have your head!*" He started up and looked in the clock, but there was nothing to be seen, so thinking it a joke of his comrades, he went to bed again. The voice began again, and he was looking about during part of the night. About four in the morning he rose, without having slept, and went to drill, but said nothing of the voice he had heard, as he "still thought that his comrades had been playing him a trick." Coming back he was tired, but could not eat, and cleaned his accoutrements; he felt no inclination to sleep, and did not go to bed till one in the morning. He was scarcely in bed when he heard the same voice and same words proceed from the clock. "Then I rose and walked up and down, *very certain* that they would execute me next morning, and that that was why the lieutenant had remained at Sancergues."

He rose early. "The quartermaster was surprised to see

me ready so soon, and said something in a low tone to my comrades. *I thought I heard*, 'See that your carbines are loaded; watch him that he does not escape!'"

On this he found his horse, and set off at a gallop without knowing where he was going. At last he came to a wood, got off, and hid himself in a thicket, and loaded his carbine to defend himself; then he determined to kill himself, and took off his boots that he might draw the trigger with his foot, but first knelt to say a prayer. "I was soon interrupted by a figure with a huge beard, who disappeared as soon as I took aim at him; and three times running I was stopped by the same apparition or by figures of Punch, which disappeared as I was going to fire. I saw also girls with hooped petticoats, dancing in the trees above my head."

The other gendarmes came up; he threatened to fire on them, attempted to take off his white breeches to hide himself better; then, hearing them return, he fired on the foremost of them, and attempted to escape, but was taken. "I was quite convinced that they were going to take me to execution, and called out 'Murder!' I even thought more than once that I saw a gendarme draw his knife from his pocket to stab me, and my cries increased." He was bound, and a guard put over him and did not sleep all night. "I continually heard female voices saying, *'Poor fellow! how unfortunate! He must be guillotined in two hours, and his head sent to Paris by six o'clock. The quartermaster has the basket for it.'* The whole day and night of the 6th I had the same ideas, and could not sleep for a moment or take any kind of nourishment. It was not till the 7th that I was able, during the daytime, to throw myself on my bed and sleep for a short time. When I woke I found my head completely clear, though I recollected perfectly all that had taken place. I expressed my sorrow to my comrades for what had passed, and asked at once after the one I had wounded." From that time the hallucinations ceased; the patient's reason is unaffected; he was calm and quiet during his stay in an asylum, and is replaced in the brigade of Gendarmerie, and has regularly performed his duty since.

Few examples are most instructive than this; we follow

the hallucination from its first rise to its completed state and its cure. The mental abscess begins with a terrible image, combined with extreme emotion.—The image constantly reviving besets the mind.—It attaches itself to the idea of self, and S——imagines a case in which he may well be in personal danger.—This connexion becomes defined, and in a dream he sees himself led to the guillotine. The dream returns to his mind during the day. After he has committed a fault it recurs with greater force.—The mental words by which he expresses it to himself become a whispering of his comrades, and then a voice in the clock.—The voice returns, and his conviction grows firmer.—Unconnected hallucinations of sight, then of the touch, follow.—For thirty hours the voices continue, and the hallucination of the ear is at its height.—Then he becomes suddenly freed from them, as if the mental abscess having ripened, had broken of itself.\*

VI. From these examples we can form a notion of our intellectual machinery. We must lay aside the words reason, intelligence, will, personal power, and even self, as we lay aside the words vital force, medicative virtue, vegetative soul; they are literary metaphors, capable at the most of convenient use by way of summary or abbreviation, to express general states and combined effects. All that observation detects physiologically in the living being are cells of different kinds, capable of spontaneous development, and modified in the direction of this development by the concurrence or antagonism of their neighbors. All that observation detects psychologically in the thinking being are, in addition to sensations, images of different kinds, primitive or consecutive, endued with certain tendencies, and modified in their development by the concurrence or antagonism of other simultaneous or contiguous images. Just as the living body is a polypus of mutually dependent cells, so the active mind is a polypus of mutually dependent sensations and images, and in the one case as in the other, unity is nothing more than a harmony and an effect. Every image is possessed of an automatic force, and tends spontaneously to a particular state; to hallucination, false

---

\* "*Annales Médico-Psychologiques*," 4<sup>e</sup> Série, ii. 238.

recollection, and the other illusions of madness. But it is arrested in its progress by the contradiction of a sensation, of another image, or group of images. The mutual arrest, the reciprocal clash, the repression, produce by their combined effect an equilibrium; and the effect we have just seen produced by the special corrective sensation, by the connexion of our recollections, by the order of our general judgments, is but an instance of the constant re-arrangement and incessant limitation which innumerable incompatibilities and conflicts are incessantly bringing about among our images and ideas. This equilibrium is the state of reasonable wakefulness. As soon as it is at an end by the hypertrophy or atrophy of an element, we are mad, wholly or partially. When it lasts over a certain time, the fatigue is too great, and we sleep; our images are no longer reduced and guided by antagonistic sensations coming from the outer world, by the repressive effect of combined recollections, by the dominion of well-connected judgments; so they then acquire their full development, turn into hallucinations, arrange themselves spontaneously according to new tendencies, and sleep, though crowded with intense dreams, is a rest, since, suppressing a constraint, it brings on a state of relaxation.

But in the mean while the reader has been able to ascertain the nature of the image. For this we must remain at the point at which we have provisionally placed ourselves. We do not yet enter upon physiology, but confine ourselves to pure psychology. We do not talk of nerves, spinal marrow, or brain. We leave aside the unknown excitation which the external extremity of the nerve undergoes by contact with an external object, and which transmits itself to the spinal marrow, passes thence to the surface of the brain, spreads among its circumvolutions, becomes persistent in the nervous centres, and is, later on, renewed there. We do not examine the link connecting the sensation with the image. We observe man, not with the scalpel and microscope, but with that internal view we call consciousness, and we compare directly the image and the sensation.—In this limited field, and in this precise sense, we have just seen that the image, with different physical stimulants, and a special reductive, is of the same nature

as the sensation. It is the sensation itself, but consecutive or reviving; and from whatever point we consider it, we find it coincide with the sensation.—It furnishes the same combinations of derived and superior ideas; the chess-player who plays blindfolded, the painter who copies an absent model, the musician who hears a score when he looks over the sheet of music, form the same judgments, go through the same reasonings, and experience the same emotions, as if the chess-board, the model, the symphony, were actually experienced by their senses.—It provokes the same instinctive movements and the same associated sensations: the man who has a disgusting medicine put before him, who is about to undergo a surgical operation, who recalls a melancholy or terrible accident, shudders, sweats, or is sick, in presence of the image alone, as he would if the sensation were itself present.—Though generally fragmentary, fugitive, and weak, it arrives in many cases, in the extreme concentration of excessive attention, in violent and sudden emotions, at a state bordering closely on the corresponding sensation, and attains the fulness of detail, the clearness, energy, and persistence of the sensation.—Finally, taken alone and freed from the reduction of its special corrective, it acquires apparent externality, the want of which, even at its maximum of intensity, usually distinguishes it from the sensation; it acquires this for an imperceptible moment in the majority of cases; for some seconds or minutes in certain well-authenticated instances; for several hours, days, or weeks in the states of half sleep, complete sleep, ecstasy, hypnotism, somnambulism, hallucination; in the disorders produced by opium or haschich, in various cerebral or mental maladies; and acquires it with or without lesion, or with either partial or total lesion, of the normal equilibrium which subsists between other ideas and images.—We may define it, then, as a repetition or revival of the sensation, while at the same time we distinguish it from the sensation; first, by its origin, since it has the sensation as its antecedent, while the sensation is preceded by an excitation of the nerve; and again, by its association with an antagonist, since it has several reductives, among others, the special corrective sensation, while the sensation itself has no reductive.

Arrived at this we understand its nature: in reviving the sensation, it replaces it; it is its *substitute*; that is to say, a thing differing from it in certain respects, like it in others, but so that both differences and resemblances have their advantages. What these advantages are we shall see later on. Images of a certain kind constitute recollections; that is to say, knowledge of past events. Images associated with the sensations of the different senses, especially with those of sight and touch, constitute acquired perceptions; that is to say, all such parts of our knowledge of external individual objects as extend beyond actual crude sensation. Images of a certain kind, and associated in a certain way, constitute previsions; that is to say, knowledge of future events.—Just as the knowledge of general qualities is only possible by the *substitution* of signs for perceptions and images, so knowledge, whether of events past or to come, or of the grouped properties which make up every individual external object, is only possible by the *substitution* of images for sensations.—Nature employs, in the two cases, the same process to arrive at the same effect; psychology here repeats physiology. As we see in the history of respiration or of locomotion a physiological element become, by a slight modification, the instrument of a more complicated function, then, by a second additional modification, execute a still superior function; so in the history of intelligence, we see a psychological element give rise, by a small modification, to very extended operations, then, by a second added modification, accomplish operations so complex, so delicate, and so numerous, that they seem destined to remain forever beyond our grasp.

## CHAPTER II.

## LAWS OF THE REVIVAL AND OBLITERATION OF IMAGES.

I. WHEN we see or touch an object, when we hear a sound, when we experience a sensation of taste, of smell, of cold, of pain, in short, any sensation whatever, we usually retain the image during a second or two, unless some other sensation, image or idea, comes in the way, and suppresses instantly this prolongation and echo. But in many cases, and above all when the sensation has been a prominent and important one, the image revives of itself after a longer or shorter period of suppression. This spontaneous revival is its fundamental property, and may be effected after long periods have elapsed. Many of us have recollections which go back twenty, thirty, forty years, or more. I know a person, born in a little provincial town, who can relate with the utmost exactitude all the circumstances of a visit of the Empress Marie-Louise in 1812, can describe her dress, the dresses of the ladies and young girls appointed to receive her, can hear mentally the sound of her voice, see her gestures, her face, the attitudes of the persons appointed to present her with an address, and many other things.—What renders these revivals still more remarkable is that they frequently occur without the image having reappeared during the whole interval. On returning, after many years' absence, to one's father's house, or to one's native village, numbers of forgotten objects and facts unexpectedly reappear. The mind, suddenly thronged by their stirring crowd, resembles a box of dried rotifera, which have lain inert some ten years, but when sprinkled with water, at once revive and twist about. We mount the dark staircase. we know where to find the handle of the door, we imagine ourselves seated at table in our accustomed place, we see the



water-bottle on the right, and the salt-cellar on the left, we seem to taste the flavor of some Sunday dish. We look up at the wall and are surprised not to find there some old engraving we had stared at as children. We see the gesture and stoop of some former guest, the square body and long folds of a blue dress; we almost hear the tones of voices which have long been still. We come to the well, and recall the vague terror with which as children, mounting on tiptoe, we looked on the obscure depth and the trembling reflection of the cold water at what seemed to us an infinite distance below.

Some people unconsciously preserve certain reviving shreds of long-distant impressions.—“There often recurred to my mind,” says M. Maury, “without my knowing why, three proper names, each accompanied by the name of a town in France. One day I came across an old newspaper and commenced to read it for want of any thing better to do. Among the advertisements I saw one of a *depôt* of mineral waters, with the names of the druggists who sold them in the principal towns of France. There I found my three unknown names with those of the three towns with which they were connected in my mind. All was explained; my memory, which is excellent for words, had preserved a recollection of these associated names, on which my eyes must have rested while I was looking (as had happened about two months previously) for the address of a *depôt* of mineral waters. But the circumstance had gone out of my mind without the recollection being wholly effaced. Now, certainly, I could not have paid much attention in so rapid a glance.”

Illness sometimes causes a revival of such images as this of names, which seemed, not merely torpid, but hopelessly extinct. “A girl was seized with a dangerous fever, and, in the delirious paroxysm accompanying it, was observed to speak in a strange language which, for some time, no one could understand. At last it was ascertained to be Welsh—a tongue of which she was wholly ignorant at the time she was taken ill, and of which she could not speak a single syllable after her recovery. For some time the circumstance was, unaccountable, till, on inquiry, it was found that she was a native of Wales, and had been familiar with the language of that coun-

try in her childhood, but had wholly forgotten it afterwards.”\* —Again; some fugitive impressions, not observed at the time, may rise anew with strange power and automatic exactness. Many medical writers have noticed the story† of a young woman of five-and-twenty who could neither read nor write, who, during an illness, repeated long passages of Latin, Greek, and Rabbinical Hebrew, but on recovery, spoke nothing but her own language. During her delirium, several of these fragments were taken down in writing from her own mouth. After inquiry, it was found that she had lived, when nine years old, with her uncle, a clergyman of considerable learning, who was in the habit of walking of an afternoon in a passage adjoining the kitchen, and there reciting favorite passages of Rabbinical Hebrew and Greek. On referring to his books, there were found, word for word, many of the passages repeated by the sick girl. The noise and articulation of his voice had remained fixed in her ears. She had heard them as she repeated them without understanding them.‡ Haschich, the death-agony,§ great and sudden emotion, sometimes cause revivals, equally minute, of sensations as little observed and still farther distant.—We can assign, then, no limits to these revivals, and are compelled to ascribe to every

\* Macnish, “Philosophy of Sleep,” p. 55, n.; and see two analogous facts cited by Azam, “Annales Medico-Psychologiques,” 3<sup>e</sup> Série, vi. 443.

† Coleridge, “Biographia Literaria,” vol. i. p. 117.

‡ “A man of ordinary ability, servant of a Spanish ambassador, had frequently to be present during important conferences, but did not appear to have recollected any thing of what had passed. He was seized with brain fever, and in his delirium repeated with considerable order many discussions he had heard on the political interests of different powers, so much so that the ambassador, who had considered him only as a faithful servant, came to hear him, and thought of promoting him to be his secretary; but the affection of the brain passed off, and when the patient recovered, this memory had departed.”—(Grimaud de Caux, cited by Duval Jouve, “Traité de Logique,” 159.)

§ “I was once told by a near relative of mine, that having in her childhood fallen into a river, and being on the very verge of death, . . . she saw in a moment her whole life, arrayed before her as in a mirror, not successively, but simultaneously; and she had a faculty developed as suddenly for comprehending the whole and every part.”—De Quincey, “Confessions, etc.” p. 258.—De Quincey and other opium-eaters have observed in themselves this faculty of living mentally, during a dream of a few minutes, a life of many years, and even of many centuries.

sensation, however rapid, unimportant or obliterated it may have been, an indefinite power of revival, without mutilation or loss, even after an enormous distance of time; just as a vibration of ether, which, starting from the sun, transmits itself through millions of leagues till it reaches our optical apparatus, with its special spectrum and its proper rays, the same at its starting-point and at its place of arrival, intact, and capable, by its exact conservation, of manifesting on the instrument receiving it the nature of the fire from which it is emitted.

II. If, however, we compare different sensations, images, or ideas, we find that their aptitudes for revival are not equal. A large number of them are obliterated, and never reappear through life; for instance, I drove through Paris a day or two ago, and though I saw plainly some sixty or eighty new faces, I cannot now recall any one of them; some extraordinary circumstance, a fit of delirium, or the excitement of haschich would be necessary to give them a chance of revival. On the other hand, there are sensations with a force of revival which nothing destroys or decreases. Though, as a rule, time weakens and impairs our strongest sensations, these reappear entire and intense, without having lost a particle of their detail, or any degree of their force. M. Brierre de Boismont,\* having suffered when a child from a disease of the scalp, asserts that "after fifty-five years have elapsed he can still feel his hair pulled out under the treatment of the *skull-cap*."—For my own part, after thirty years, I remember feature for feature the appearance of the theatre to which I was taken for the first time. From the third row of boxes, the body of the theatre appeared to me an immense well, red and flaming, swarming with heads; below, on the right, on a narrow floor, two men and a woman entered, went out, and re-entered, made gestures, and seemed to me like lively dwarfs: to my great surprise, one of these dwarfs fell on his knees, kissed the lady's hand, then hid behind a screen; the other, who was coming in, seemed angry, and raised his arm. I was then seven, I could understand nothing of what was going on; but the well of crimson velvet was so crowded, gilded, and bright,

---

\* Brierre de Boismont, op. cit. 376.

that after a quarter of an hour I was, as it were, intoxicated, and fell asleep.

Every one of us may find similar recollections in his memory, and may distinguish in them a common character. The primitive impression has been accompanied *by an extraordinary degree of attention*, either as being horrible or delightful, or as being new, surprising, and out of proportion to the ordinary run of our life; this it is we express by saying that we have been strongly impressed; that we were absorbed, that we could not think of any thing else; that our other sensations were effaced; that we were pursued all the next day by the resulting image; that it beset us, that we could not drive it away; that all distractions were feeble beside it. It is by force of this disproportion that impressions of childhood are so persistent; the mind being quite fresh, ordinary objects and events are surprising. At present, after seeing so many large halls and full theatres, it is impossible for me, when I enter one, to feel swallowed up, engulfed, and as it were, lost in a huge dazzling well. The medical man of sixty, who has experienced much suffering, both personally and in imagination, would be less upset now by a surgical operation than when he was a child.

Whatever may be the kind of attention, voluntary or involuntary, it always acts alike; the image of an object or event is capable of revival, and of complete revival, in proportion to the degree of attention with which we have considered the object or event. We put this rule in practice at every moment in ordinary life. If we are applying ourselves to a book, or are in lively conversation, while an air is being sung in the adjoining room, we do not retain it; we know vaguely that there is singing going on, and that is all. We then stop our reading or conversation, we lay aside all internal pre-occupations and external sensations which our mind or the outer world can throw in our way; we close our eyes, we cause a silence within and about us, and, if the air is repeated, we listen. We say then that we have listened with all our ears, that we have applied our whole minds. If the air is a fine one, and has touched us deeply, we add that we have been transported, uplifted, ravished, that we have forgotten the

world and ourselves; that for some minutes our soul was dead to all but sounds.—And, in fact, there are numerous examples in which, under the empire of a ruling idea, all other sensations, however violent, are annihilated; such, for instance, is the story of Pascal, who one night solved the problem of the cycloid, to distract his mind from violent pain in the teeth; that again of Archimedes, who, in tracing geometrical diagrams, was unconscious of the storming of Syracuse. Such also are the frequent and well-proved instances of soldiers, who, in the excitement of action, do not notice their wounds, and those of ecstasies, of somnambulists, and of hypnotized persons.—These authentic instances, and these metaphors of language, all bring to light the same fact, that is to say, the more or less complete and universal cancelling of all sensations, images, or ideas in favor of a single one; this last one being persistent and absorbing, produced and prolonged with an energy usually dispersed over several. In other words, we are set up for a time in a fixed and determinate form; the contrary solicitations, the different tendencies which result in another state, the other images, ideas, and sensations which are striving for production, remain in an incipient and abortive state. The given form is incompatible with them, and checks their development. What happens in us is just what takes place in a solution when a crystal is formed; the particles which had no affinity for any special structure now place themselves in a mass in fixed order; their unstable equilibrium is followed by a stable equilibrium whose rigid and precise direction resists the different agitations of the air and the fluid.

This exclusive momentary ascendancy of one of our states of mind explains the greater durability of its aptitude for revival and for more complete revival. As the sensation revives in the image, the image reappears with a force proportioned to that of the sensation. What we meet with in the first state is also to be met with in the second, since the second is but a revival of the first. So, in the struggle for life,\* in

---

\* "Struggle for life" (Darwin). We shall see later on the development of this doctrine. The theory of the great English naturalist is nowhere more precisely applicable than in psychology.

which all our images are constantly engaged, the one furnished at the outset with most force, retains in each conflict, by the very law of repetition which gives it being, the capacity of treading down its adversaries; this is why it revives, incessantly at first, then frequently, until at last the laws of progressive decay, and the continual accession of new impressions, take away its preponderance, and its competitors, finding a clear field, are able to develope in their turn.

A second cause of prolonged revivals is repetition itself. Every one knows that to learn a thing we must not only consider it attentively, but consider it repeatedly. We say as to this in ordinary language, that an impression many times renewed is imprinted more deeply and exactly on the memory. This is how we contrive to retain a language, airs of music, passages of verse or prose, the technical terms and propositions of a science, and still more so the ordinary facts by which our conduct is regulated. When, from the form and color of a currant jelly, we think of its taste, or when tasting it with our eyes shut, we imagine its red tint and the brilliancy of a quivering slice, the images in our mind are brightened by repetition. Whenever we eat, or drink, or walk, or avail ourselves of any of our senses, or commence or continue any action whatever, the same thing happens. Every man and every animal thus possesses at every moment of life a certain stock of clear and easily reviving images, which had their source in the past in a confluence of numerous experiences, and are now fed by a flow of renewed experiences. When I want to go from the Tuileries to the Panthéon, or from my study to the dining-room, I foresee at every turn the colored forms which will present themselves to my sight; it is otherwise in the case of a house where I have spent two hours, or of a town where I have stayed three days; after ten years have elapsed the images will be vague, full of blanks, sometimes they will not exist, and I shall have to seek my way or shall lose myself.—This new property of images is also derived from the first. As every sensation tends to revive in its image, the sensation twice repeated will leave after it a double tendency, that is, provided the attention be as great the second time as the first; usually this is not the case, for the novelty

diminishing, the interest diminishes ; but if other circumstances renew the interest, or if the will renovates the attention, the incessantly increasing tendency will incessantly increase the chances of the resurrection and integrity of the image.

III. These are but the general conditions of revival ; we obtain them by comparing an image taken at any point of its existence with another image at any point of its existence. We have now to compare two adjoining moments in the same mind, and to determine the more special conditions which excite at any time the birth of one image rather than of another.—For this, let us consider, not only isolated sensations, but also series of sensations. These have a similar tendency to revival, and the law which is applicable to the elements is also applicable to the compounds. On some days, without wishing it, we pass over in our mind some portion of our life, such as a day's travel, some evening at the opera, some interesting conversation. We feel ourselves brought back in a fixed manner to a former state ; the ideas which attempt to throw themselves in the way are unwelcome ; they are driven out, or rest on the threshold ; if, at the first moment, some gap was found in our recollection, it usually ends by supplying itself ; a forgotten detail rises unexpectedly.—I recollect at this moment an evening spent at Laveno on the Lago Maggiore, and as I dwell on it, I see my dinner at the inn, the coarse white cloth, the pretty startled servant ; then, a moment after, the path winding among thyme and lavender, the grayish-blue lake under its moist cloud of vapor, the patches of light, the glittering tracks, the sprinkled silver scales which a stray sunbeam had embroidered in places on its level sheet, the imperceptible rustling made by the little waves on the shore, and the bells of the cows tinkling here and there in the silence. All the prominent points in the group of sensations I then had, reappear in turn or together.—If now, taking one of these points, I inquire how it emerged, I find that it was *when it had already commenced to emerge*. For instance, when I have recalled the winding lines of the path, and imagine myself turning to the left, I recall the slate-colored lake and its embroidery of shining spangles, and above, the peaked mountains descending in green slopes to the water ; I find that the extreme

edge of the bank borders the lake, the uniform surface is striped with brilliant fringes, and on the other side, the water rejoins the meadows and rising slopes; thus, the extremity of one image coincides with the commencement of the next, and so the latter begins to revive as the first disappears. In the same way, the murmur of the tiny waves and the tinkling of the bells revert to me when my visual images are those of the lake and the bank; a commencement of imaginary sound accompanied the imaginary colored forms; it disengages itself, and we feel it reproduced with all its shades, and up to its end. The partial revival results in a total revival.—This is so true that if, upsetting the natural tendency of the images to revert in the order of the sensations, I attempt to reproduce the series inversely, I am able to call up the former sensations from the latter ones as soon as I can hit on the point of contact in which they touch the ones they have followed. In fact, if I now trace backwards up to my arrival at the inn, I see again the old oak some twenty paces from the house, two or three trunks of felled trees, and a dozen vagabonds strolling about or sleeping in the warmth of the evening sun; thus by calling up the point of contact, that is to say, the commencement of the image, I supply to the image the means of reviving as a whole.—In fact, to speak correctly, there is no isolated and separate sensation. A sensation is a state which begins as a continuation of preceding ones, and ends by losing itself in those following it; it is by an arbitrary severing, and for the convenience of language, that we set it apart as we do; its beginning is the end of another, and its ending the beginning of another. By force of the general law which connects it to the image, its image has the same properties as itself; therefore this image itself arouses at its earlier extremity the ending of another image, and at its later extremity the commencement of another image, in such a way that the precedents and consequents of the sensation have also indirectly their echo in the image of the sensation.

Further than this, as different sensations are often similar in part, as soon as the image of one among them appears, the images of the others partially appear. When just now I was describing the sparkling streaks which the sun made on the



water, I compared them to embroidery, to fringes, and to spangles of silver; the portion common to these four sensations, present in the first, successively revived the three others. Here again, the partial revival has resulted in a total revival.—We have often a difficulty in observing this partial revival. It seems to us, at the first glance, that such an idea has arisen involuntarily and by chance; we cannot see how it is connected with the foregoing one. This results from the idea which seems to have immediately preceded it, not having really done so; there were intermediate stages between them, which habit, inattention, or the speed of the operation, have prevented our observing; these intermediate stages have served for an invisible transition, and it has been through them that the law of Contiguity, or the law of Similarity, has applied. Hobbes, one of the first originators of this theory, relates\* how, in the midst of a conversation on the English civil war, some one suddenly asked what was the value, under Tiberius, of the Roman penny; an abrupt question seemingly unconnected with what had gone before. There was, however, a connexion, and with a little thought he recovered it. The English civil war, under Charles the First,—Charles the First delivered up by the Scotch for 200,000*l.* sterling,—Jesus Christ similarly betrayed for thirty pence under Tiberius. These were the links of the chain which led the speaker to his remarkable inquiry.†—We see now how the celebrated laws governing the association of images, and consequently that of ideas,‡ are reduced to a more simple law. What excites

---

\* "*Leviathan*," part i. ch. 3, vol. iii. p. 12 (Ed. Molesworth).

† "An instance of this occurs to me with which I was recently struck. Thinking of Ben Lomond, this thought was immediately followed by the thought of the Prussian system of education. Now, conceivable connexion between these two ideas in themselves, there was none. A little reflection, however, explained the anomaly. On my last visit to the mountain, I had met upon its summit a German gentleman, and though I had no consciousness of the intermediate and unawakened links between Ben Lomond and the Prussian schools, they were undoubtedly these,—the German,—Germany,—Prussia,—and, these media being admitted, the connexion between the extremes was manifest.—Sir W. Hamilton, "*Lectures*," etc., i. p. 353.

‡ See Bain, "*Senses and Intellect*." He derives all the operations of the intellect from these two laws. See also Mervoyer, "*Etude sur l'Association des Idées*" (1864).

at any moment a particular image rather than any other, is a commencement of the revival; and this revival has already commenced, either *by similitude*, from the anterior image or sensation containing a portion of the reviving image; or *by contiguity*, from the anterior image becoming confused at its end with the commencement of the reviving image. Given any image at any particular moment, we can always explain its actual presence by its commencement of revival in the preceding image or sensation; and its clearness, force, aptitude for revival and other intrinsic qualities, by the amount of attention it has received, and number of revivals it has undergone, either in itself or in the corresponding sensation. All, it will be observed, comprised in our fundamental law, which discovers the tendency to revival in the sensation and in its image, and which, therefore, assures to the commenced image, to the image accompanied by attention, and to the image strengthened by repetitions, a preponderance which results in its revival.

IV. The same laws explain the opposite event; by suppressing or weakening the conditions which increase an image's chance of revival and preponderance, we suppress its chances of ascendancy and revival.—In the first place, all that lessens the attention lessens these chances. Every minute we experience twenty sensations, of heat, cold, pressure, contact, muscular contraction; slight sensations like these are being incessantly produced in all parts of our bodies; in addition to this, sounds, murmurings, and hummings, are constantly going on in our ears; a number of little sensations of smell and taste arise in our noses and throats; but we are otherwise engaged—we are thinking, meditating, talking, reading—and during all this time we neglect other things. As regards other sensations, we are as if asleep or in a dream; the ascendancy of some dominant image or sensation keeps them in a nascent state. If, at the end of a minute, we attempt to recall them by memory, they do not revive; they are like seeds sown by the handful, but which have not grown; some single one, more lucky, has monopolized to itself all the room and nutriment the earth affords.—It does not necessarily follow that these sensations, destined to obliteration, are feeble ones:

they may be powerful ones : it is sufficient that they should be weaker than the privileged one. A musket-shot, the flash of a cannon, a painful wound, frequently escape attention in the heat of battle, and, not having been observed, cannot revive ; a soldier suddenly finds he is bleeding, without being able to recollect the blow he has received.—In nine cases out of ten, and perhaps in ninety-nine out of a hundred, the sensation loses in this manner its power of revival, because there cannot be attention without distraction, and the predominance acquired by one impression is a predominance taken from the others. Here again, things are, as it were, in a balance ; one scale can only rise by lowering the other, and the lowering or elevation of the one is in proportion to the elevation or lowering of the other.

On the other hand, the want of repetition also diminishes the chances of revival. Every one knows that we forget many of the words of a language when we have given up reading or speaking it for many years. So it is with an air we no longer sing, with a piece of verse we no longer recite, with a neighborhood we have been long absent from. Breaks occur in the train of recollections, and go on increasing like the holes in an old garment.—We have no difficulty in seeing how continuous and vast these destructions must be ; every day we lose some of our recollections, three-fourths of those of the preceding day, then others among those surviving from the previous month, so that before long a whole month, or even year, is only represented in our memory by certain prominent images, like those few peaks still appearing in a submerged continent, destined, at least the most of them, themselves to disappear, since the gradual obliteration is owing to a continuous flood, invading one by one the untouched crags, and sparing nothing but a few rocks uplifted by some extraordinary circumstances to a height no wave can reach. In fact, very few of our sensations, even of those accompanied by attention, are often repeated. Six months ago I was talking to such a person ; after I left him, and even on the following day, I could have described his appearance and dress, have repeated the principal topics of conversation ; but since then I have not renewed in experience or repeated in memory the images which

then revived in me, intact and connectedly. They are obliterated, and now, when by chance I find some fragment of the distant scene, and stop to call up the rest, my efforts are vain.—So it happens with nearly all the portions of our experience: the impression received has been a solitary one; in a thousand such, there is at most one which is twice repeated; in a thousand of the repeated ones, there is scarcely one which is repeated twenty times. Some few only—those of permanent objects surrounding us—of some twenty or thirty persons, pieces of furniture, monuments, streets, landscapes, derive from constant repetition a multiplied aptitude for revival. With the others, the aptitude is too weak; when a fragment of distant experience, with which they were formerly connected, reappears, they do not reappear with it; the tendency which formerly called them up is vanquished by other tendencies formed in the mean while; and the recent past blocks up the way of the earlier past.

Finally, on the other hand, images grow dull by repetition, as bodies are worn away by friction. If we see a person eight or ten times, the outline of his form and expression of his face become at last much less clear in our mind than on the day after we have first seen him. So it is with a monument, a street, a landscape, when seen many times at different hours of the day, at evening, in the morning; on a dull day, in rain, under a bright sun, if we compare them with the same monument, landscape, or street, watched for three minutes, and then replaced by some entirely different object. The impression, so precise at first, becomes less so the second time. When I imagine the monument, I find indeed the outline, which has remained constant all the time, but the distribution of light and shade, the changing nature of the tones, the look of the gray or blackened pavement, the band of sky above—grayish and misty in the one case, dark and tarnished in the other; sometimes a bright white, sometimes a dark purple—in short, all the diversities which at different moments have connected themselves with its permanent form, are mutually annulled. And so, when I think of a person I know, my memory wavers between twenty different expressions, smiling, serious, unhappy, the face bent on one side or the other. These different

expressions form obstacles of each other ; my recollection is far clearer when I have only seen him for a minute—when, for instance, I have looked at his photograph or picture.

In fact, when the image of the form we have perceived tends to revive, it draws with it the images of its several accompaniments. But these accompaniments being different cannot revive together ; the features of the same face cannot be at once smiling and severe ; the façade of the same palace cannot be at once of an intense black, as when the sun is setting behind it, and of a rosy brightness, as when it is rising in front of it. Therefore, if these mutually excluding accompaniments have an equal tendency to revive, neither one nor the other will do so, and we shall feel ourselves drawn in different directions by contrary tendencies which come to nothing ; the images will remain in an inchoate state, and will make up what we call in ordinary language an *impression*. This impression may be strong without ceasing to be vague ; beneath the incomplete image a dull agitation is going on, and as it were, a swarm of feeble impulses which usually sum themselves up in an expressive gesture, a metaphor, a visible summary. Such is our usual state as regards things we have many times experienced ; a vague image, corresponding to a portion of our different experiences, a heap of contrary tendencies of nearly equal force, corresponding to their different circumstances, a clear notation, denoting and concentrating the whole in an idea.

This law of obliteration is of considerable extent, for it is applicable not only to different appearances of the same object, but also to different objects of the same class ; and all the objects in nature may be grouped in classes. A man who has passed through an alley of poplars, and wishes to figure to himself a poplar, or who, after seeing a large farm-yard, wishes to figure to himself a hen, experiences a difficulty. His different recollections encroach upon each other ; the differences which distinguished the two hundred poplars or the hundred and fifty hens are mutually obliterated ; he will preserve a more precise image if he has only seen a single poplar standing in a meadow or a single hen roosting in a shed.—All our images undergo a similar blunting ; let the reader attempt to imagine

a rabbit, a carp, a pike, a bull, a rose, a tulip, a birch tree or any other object belonging to a numerous class and of which he has seen many individuals, and on the other hand, an elephant, a hippopotamus, a magnolia, an American aloë, or any other object of a small class, and of which he has only met with one or two specimens; in the first case the image is vague and all its surroundings have disappeared; in the second it is precise, and one is able to point out the spot in the Jardin des Plantes, the Parisian Conservatory, the Italian villa, where the object was seen.—The multiplication of experience is then a cause of obliteration, and images, by annulling one another, thus fall into the state of dull tendencies hindered by their contrariety and equality from assuming an ascendancy.

V. Thus we arrive at a general conception of the history of images, and, consequently, of ideas in a human mind. Every sensation, weak or strong, every experience, great or small, tends to revive by means of an internal image which repeats it, and is itself capable of repeating, even after long pauses, and this indefinitely. But as sensations are numerous, and are at every moment replaced by others, without truce or termination, up to the end of life, there is a conflict of preponderance between these images, and, though all tend to revive, those alone do so, which have the prerogatives required by the laws of revival; all the others remain incomplete or null, according to the laws of obliteration.—By force of this double law, groups of efficacious aptitudes are constantly becoming inefficacious, and images are falling from the state of actual to that of possible existence. Thus, human memory is like a vast reservoir, into which daily experience is continually pouring different streams of tepid waters; these waters being lighter than the others rest on the surface and cover them; then growing cold in their turn, they descend to the bottom by portions and degrees, and it is the last flow that constitutes the new surface. Sometimes a particular stream, from being swollen or having a higher fall, warms ancient inert layers below, and then they remount to the light; the chance of the flow and the laws of equilibrium have warmed a certain layer so as to place it above the rest. The shape of

the reservoir, the accidents of temperature, the various qualities of the water, sometimes even shocks of earthquake, all bear part in this; and many authentic instances show us deep layers uplifted suddenly and entire to the surface, sometimes superficial layers plunged suddenly and entire below.

In fact, images have, as we shall see later on, certain states of brain as conditions of their being; hence, we understand how an injury, a rush of blood, a deterioration of blood, any change of the cerebral substance, may hinder or promote the arising of certain groups of images. "I descended on the same day," says Sir Henry Holland,\* "two very deep mines in the Hartz mountains, remaining some hours underground in each. While in the second mine, and exhausted both from fatigue and inanition, I felt the utter impossibility of talking longer with the German inspector who accompanied me. Every German word and phrase deserted my recollection, and it was not until I had taken food and wine, and been some time at rest, that I regained them."—Similar mischances are not uncommon after brain fevers or great losses of blood. A lady, says Winslow,† after large uterine hæmorrhage, "had forgotten where she lived, who her husband was, how long she had been ill, the names of her children, and even her own name. She was unable to give any thing its real name, and in attempting to do so, made the most singular mistakes. She had been accustomed, before her illness to speak French instead of English. But afterwards she seemed to have lost all knowledge of French; for, when her husband addressed her in that language, she did not appear to understand what he said the least in the world, though she could converse in English without difficulty," After seven or eight weeks these blanks in her memory began to be restored; and after some months they were entirely filled up. So a gentleman, mentioned by Abercrombie, "after a blow on the head, lost his knowledge of Greek, and did not appear to have lost any thing else."‡—

---

\* "Chapters on Mental Physiology," p. 167, n. cited by Winslow, "Obscure Diseases," etc. p. 252.

† Winslow, *ibid.*, p. 344.

‡ "Inquiry into the Intellectual Powers," p. 152.

The loss occasionally attaches to some period of former life. "A clergyman, on recovering from an apoplectic attack, was found to have lost the recollection of exactly four years; every thing that occurred before that period he remembered perfectly. He gradually recovered."\* Another patient, who had been for some ten or twelve years in Edinburgh, recollected nothing of that period of his life; on the contrary, the earlier portion, which had been passed in another country, was well remembered by him.—Lately, a celebrated Russian astronomer forgot, in turn, the events of the previous day, then those of the year, then those of the years last past, and so on, the chasm gradually increasing, till at last he could only recollect the events of his childhood. His case was considered hopeless; but by a sudden stop and unforeseen return, the blank filled up in an inverted manner; the events of his youth first reappearing, then those of his manhood, and finally, the more recent, those of the previous day. His memory was wholly restored at the time of his death.

Gradual recoveries like these have also been observed after violent falls; and the fissure in the memory closes up sometimes from one end, sometimes from the other. "Some years ago," says Abercrombie,† "I saw a boy who had fallen from a wall, and struck his head against a stone which lay at the foot of it. He was carried home in a state of insensibility, from which he soon recovered, but without any recollection of the accident. He felt that his head was hurt, but he had no idea how he had received the injury. After a short time he recollected that he had been on the top of a wall, and had fallen from it and struck against the stone, but could not remember where the wall was. After some time longer, he recovered the recollection of all the circumstances." Others when injured forget the accident only, and not the circumstances; others the circumstances only, but not the accident.—Sometimes the alteration is still stranger, and affects a certain class of associations only. "A lady,‡ after an apoplectic attack, recovered correctly her ideas of things, but could not

---

\* "Inquiry into the Intellectual Powers," p. 151.

† Ibid, p. 146.

‡ Ibid., p. 149.



name them. In giving directions respecting family matters, she was quite distinct as to what she wished to be done, but could make herself understood only by going through the house, and pointing to the different articles.—A gentleman could not be made to understand the name of an object if it was spoken to him, but understood it perfectly when it was written. His mental faculties were so entire that he was engaged in most extensive agricultural concerns, and he managed them with perfect correctness by means of a remarkable contrivance. He kept before him in the room where he transacted business, a list of the words which were most apt to occur in his intercourse with his workmen. When one of these wished to communicate with him on any subject, he first heard what the workman had to say, but without understanding him further than simply to catch the words. He then turned to the words in his written list, and whenever they met his eye he understood them perfectly.”\*

This suppression of ordinary aptitudes explains the revival of lost aptitudes. One particular new organic disposition may be unfavorable to the first ; and so, some other new organic

---

\* See other analogous facts in the “*Dictionnaire d'Histoire Naturelle*,” published by M. Guérin, in an article by Grimaud de Caux.—(Duval Jouve, “*Logique*,” p. 159.)

“A man of sixty, in good health, who had had an ulcer in his leg for a considerable time, permitted it to become closed. Before long he had a slight attack of apoplexy, and this was followed by a loss of memory, first of certain words, then of the French language. The remarkable thing was that he recollected perfectly the Piedmontese language.

“A man of science on starting for Greece was thrown out of his carriage ; a box, fortunately not a very heavy one, fell on his head ; he suffered no pain, and the skin was not broken ; but he completely forgot where he had come from, the object of his journey, the day of the week, the dinner he had just made, and all his acquired knowledge. In fact, he had forgotten the names of his relations and friends, and could only recall his own, those of his children, and the symbol of the Trinity. He was replaced in the carriage, in order that assistance might be obtained, and, after half an hour's jolting over a stony road, suddenly recovered himself.”

Page 162—“Some persons forget proper names ; others, like Doctor Broussonnais, substantives. Dietrich tells the story of a man who, while recollecting facts had forgotten half his words. There are instances of foreign languages, the facts of history, dates, etc., being entirely forgotten, while other things were recollected.”

disposition may be favorable to the second. The first cease to be active, like a nerve suddenly paralysed; the second become active again, like a paralysed nerve suddenly electrified. We have seen an instance of this in the case of the ignorant young girl who, in her delirium, recited passages of Greek and rabbinical Hebrew; in the servant who, when seized with fever, spoke Welsh, which, when well, she did not understand. "A man," says Abercrombie, "born in France, had spent the greater part of his life in England, and for many years had entirely lost the habit of speaking French. When under the care of Mr. Abernethy for an injury of the head, he always spoke French."\* In other cases a similar revival as to other languages has been observed. "An eminent medical friend," says the same author, "informs me that during fever, without any delirium, he on one occasion repeated long passages from Homer, which he could not do when in health." Another person, who, when well, had no capacity for music, and had almost forgotten the Gaëlic language, sang, during an illness, Gaëlic songs, and that with great precision, though the melody was a difficult one, and he had previously been utterly incapable of singing it.

Let us now conceive the existence in the same person of two distinct states, such as we have been describing; let us suppose that in the first a certain group of images, in the second, some other group, can alone revive, what will happen if in the two states the general organic disposition is different, and if this difference is a clearly marked one? The individual will have two memories, the first recalling only the events of the first state, and the second recalling only the events of the second state.† A young American lady, says Macnish,‡ after

---

\* Abercrombie, *op. cit.* 140, 142.

† "When people have been twice hypnotized, we find that they forget completely when they wake the acts and thoughts artificially produced, and recover perfect recollection of them on re-entering the artificial state. Mr. Braid mentions having seen intelligent persons who could recollect exactly and minutely all that had happened during a state of sleep six years before, and who narrated this whenever they were hypnotized, while, when awake, they had no recollection of it."—"De la Folie Artificielle," Dr. Tuke, "*Annales Medico-Psychologiques*," 4<sup>e</sup> Série, vi. p. 271.

‡ Macnish, p. 13, n. citing from "The Medical Repository." New York.

a prolonged sleep, lost the recollection of all she knew. She was obliged to learn again how to spell, to read, to write, to calculate, and to know the persons and objects around her. A few months after, she was again seized with a deep sleep, and when she woke she was restored to the state she was in before the first sleep, having all the knowledge and recollections of her youth; but on the other hand, having entirely forgotten all that had passed between the two attacks. "During four years and upwards she has passed periodically from one state to the other, always after a long and sound sleep . . . . The former condition of her existence she now calls the Old State, and the latter the New State; and she is as unconscious of her double character as two distinct persons are of their respective natures. For example, in her old state she possesses all the original knowledge; in her new state only what she acquired since. If a lady or gentleman be introduced to her in the old state, or *vice versâ* (and so of all other matters), to know them satisfactorily she must learn them in both states. In the old state, she possesses fine powers of penmanship, while in the new, she writes a poor awkward hand, not having had time or means to become expert. Both the lady and her family are now capable of conducting the affair without embarrassment. By simply knowing whether she is in the old or new state, they regulate the intercourse, and govern themselves accordingly."—This double life is often found in somnambulists.\* The majority of them forget on awaking all they have done in their sleep, and are surprised to find themselves out of bed or in the street. But this forgetfulness frequently ceases on a second attack. "The somnambulist," says M. Maury, "takes up again the chain of ideas interrupted while he was awake. Thus Dr. Mesnet's patient carried out, during an attack, projects of suicide she had conceived in a previous attack and forgotten during the lucid interval; in the second attack she recalled all the circumstances of the first. M. Macario has cited a very significant example of a young girl who was violated during a fit of somnambulism,

---

\* Maury, "Du Sommeil," 210. Todd, "Cyclopædia," Article "Sleep." Puel, "Memoire sur la Catalepsie."

and who, on awaking, had no recollection or consciousness of what had happened. It was only in a new fit that she related to her mother the outrage committed upon her." In these two instances, the wakeful state only recalled the wakeful state; the state of somnambulism only recalled the state of somnambulism, and each of the two alternate lives formed a separate whole.

Correspondences and separations like these, but partial and temporary, are met with in ordinary life. "Mr. Combe mentions the case of an Irish porter to a warehouse, who, in one of his drunken fits, left a parcel at the wrong house, and when sober could not recollect what he had done with it; but the next time he got drunk, he recollected where he had left it, and went and recovered it."\* M. Maury again mentions cases of dreams forgotten when awake, and recalled in a new state of sleep.—On the other hand, our ordinary memory recalls only half our states. We recall our thoughts of yesterday, but not those of the night while we were asleep; however vivid they may have been, even when they have provoked actions or the beginnings of actions, cries, gestures, and all that an uneasy man does in his sleep, it is very unusual, for us to be able on waking to recover any portions of them.† It is a strange thing, we start from an intense dream, full of emotions; and it would seem that so violent a state ought to be easily reproduced, even after a considerable time. Not at all; after two or three minutes the objects so clearly perceived die away in clouds; and these clouds vanish; half an hour afterwards I shall be scarcely able to relate my dream; if I want to remember it later on, I am obliged to write it down at once.—The fact is that the physiological state and the circulation of blood in the brain are not alike in sleep and when awake, and the second state, favorable to the recall of its own images, is not favorable to the recall of the images of the first state.

But whatever be the phenomenon, rudimentary and normal or abnormal and complete, it shows how our images, by connecting themselves, make up the group which in liter-

---

\* Macnish, "The Medical Repository," p. 55, n.

† Ibid.

ary and judicial language we call the moral personality. If two groups are distinctly severed, so that no element of the one calls up any element of the other, we shall have, as in the case of the lady cited by Macnish, two moral personalities in the same individual. If in one of the two states the images have exact and delicate associations, if as we see in the cases of many somnambulists,\* superior aptitudes show themselves, if, as we observe in drunkenness and after many illnesses, the passions take another degree and another direction, not only will these moral personalities be distinct, but there will be enormous disproportions and contradictions between them.—No doubt, though among somnambulists, persons hypnotized and in states of ecstasy, similar contrasts distinguish the ordinary from the abnormal life, these two lives are not clearly nor entirely distinct; some images of the one always, or nearly always, introduce themselves into the other; and, when man is concerned, the supposition we have made remains simply a conception of the mind.—But, among animals, we meet with instances in which it is exactly applicable; such as that of the patrachians, and of insects which undergo metamorphoses. Their organization and nervous system bring forward in turn, by their transformations, two or three moral personalities in the same individual: in the chrysalis, the larva, and the butterfly, instincts, images, recollections, sensations, and appetites, are all different; the silkworm which spins, and its moth which flies, the voracious larva of the cockchafer, with its terrible apparatus of stomachs, and the cockchafer itself, are two distinct states of the same being at two epochs of its development, two distinct systems of sensations and images engrafted on two distinct forms of the same nervous substance.—If a sleep like that of the chrysalis were to overtake us in the midst of our life, and if we were to awake with an organization and a nervous machinery as much transformed as that of the worm which has become a butterfly, the break between our two moral personalities would evidently be as great in our case as with it.—The reader can now see the infinite consequences of that property of our sensations

---

\* Maury, "The Medical Repository," p. 125.

and images which we have termed aptitude for revival; it assembles in groups our internal events, and in addition to the continuity of physical being constituted by permanence of form, it constitutes, by the return and connexion of images, the continuity of the moral being.

### BOOK III.

#### OF SENSATIONS.

---

#### CHAPTER I.

##### OF SENSATIONS OF HEARING AND THEIR ELEMENTS.

I. BY reduction upon reduction we have arrived at a fact, primitive and apparently irreducible, of which all the rest, whether images or ideas, are but repetitions more or less transformed and disguised. I mean sensation, and before defining it, that is to say, before showing its nature, we must first describe it, that is, must distinguish it and bring it to light, from among the heap of facts in which it is comprised.—When a cutting instrument is plunged into our flesh, we feel pain; and this pain, taken by itself and alone, is a sensation strictly so-called. There are a number of such facts, similar in nature, though differing in kind and degree; such are the sensations of contact, of pressure, of tickling, usually excited in us when an external body touches, in a particular way, certain portions of our bodies; such are the sensations of temperature produced when a certain degree of heat is added to or taken away from our ordinary temperature; such are the sensations of muscular activity, so called from their apprising us of the tension or relaxation of our muscles; such, in short, are the sensations excited in us by the particular juices of an object we taste, by the volatile particles of an object we smell, by the vibrations of the air which strike our organs of hearing, by the vibrations of light which strike our organs of sight, and which we commonly call sensations of taste, of smell, of sound, and of color.

Many of these names are ambiguous, and the words taste, smell, sound, color, heat, sometimes denote a property, more or less unknown to us, of surrounding bodies, of liquid or volatil :

particles, of vibrations of the air or of light ; sometimes, the well-known kind of sensations which these bodies, particles, and vibrations, excite in us. But the distinction is easily made ; for the property appertains to the object and not to us, while the sensation appertains to us and not to the object. Lemon-juice has an acid taste ; this means that it possesses an unknown property of exciting in us a well-known sensation, that of an acid taste. This sheet of paper is white : this means that by virtue of its particular texture, this sheet of paper, when in the light, excites in us the sensation of the color white. —Two other distinctions less readily made are no less necessary. When we experience a sensation, we localize it ; we refer, such a pain, such a feeling of heat, such a sensation of contact, to the hand, to the leg, to such-and-such a part of the body, such a sensation of smell to the interior of the nose, such a sensation of taste to the palate, to the tongue, to the back of the mouth. But, as we shall see later on, there is here an ulterior operation engendered by experience ; a group of images has combined with the sensation to attribute to it this position ; this group gives it a situation which really it has not, and, in general, places it at the extremity of the nerve whose action excites it. Sometimes again, a second operation removes it to a still more distant place ; sounds and colors, which are sensations only, at present appear to us situated, not in our organs, but at a distance, in the air, or on the surface of external objects ; the reader will see, when we examine external perception, how the education of the senses produces this apparent recoil. Meanwhile, to understand the sensation properly, we must separate it from this accompaniment, must lay aside the appendages which time has attached to it, and consider it in its simple primitive state.—Finally, we must distinguish it, at least provisionally, from the state of the nerve and nervous centres by whose action it is produced. It is true that this state is the sufficient and necessary condition of the sensation, but their identity is not clear ; at first sight they differ, and certainly are not known to us to the same extent or in the same way. For the sensation is perceived directly, completely, and at once, but the action of the nervous system is proved indirectly, incompletely, and very slowly ; an infinite



amount of anatomical and physiological research was required to teach us that the sensation depended on it ; even now we are wholly ignorant of what it consists, whether it is a propagated vibration, an electric current, a chemical change, or what else it may be. Strict method then requires us, for the present, to leave it on one side and to study in the first place the sensation apart.—So circumscribed, it is that primary internal event, directly known to us, accompanied by images associated with it and localizing it, and excited by a certain state of the nerves and nervous centres, a state unknown to us, and consequent, in general, on the action of external objects.

II. Here we have a fact of supreme importance ; for its diversities and arrangements form the material of all our knowledge. When we consider closely any one of our conceptions—that of a plant, an animal, a mineral—we find that the primitive threads of which it is woven are sensations, and sensations only ; we shall see the proof of this later on. But we have it already, if we recollect that our images are only reviving sensations, that our ideas are nothing more than images which have become signs, and that thus this elementary tissue subsists, in a more or less disguised form, at all stages of our thought.—These primitive threads are of different kinds. Sensations have long been, more or less happily, distributed, in the ordinary method, into classes and sub-classes ; first, according to the services they render us ; then, according to the particular circumstances in which they arise, and the parts in which the associated images induce us to place them ; and lastly, according to such rough similarities as internal observation can find in them.\*—A first group has been formed of those which denote different states of the body in health or sickness, and are stimulants to action, rather than elements of knowledge ; these have been called sensations of organic life, and have been divided into genera and species, according to the organs or functions which excite them ; in one class, effort, fatigue, and the different pains occasioned by states of the

---

\* Gerdy, "*Physiologie des Sensations et de l'Intelligence.*" Bain, "*Senses and Intellect,*" 87, 250.

muscles, bones, and tendons; in another, nervous exhaustion and the nervous sufferings occasioned by special states of the nerves; in another, the sufferings of thirst and hunger occasioned by certain states of circulation and nutrition; in another, suffocation and the peculiar state of uneasiness occasioned by a certain state of the respiration; in another again, sensations of cold and heat occasioned by a general state of all the organs; finally, in another, those, as of digestion, occasioned by states of the alimentary canal.—By the side of this group a second has been formed, whose earlier classes come in contact with the latter ones of the first group; it comprises those sensations which do not acquaint us with the healthy or unhealthy states of our bodies, but are elements of knowledge, rather than stimulants to action. These we call sensations of intellectual life, and divide them, according to the special organs exciting them, into sensations of smell, of taste, of touch, of hearing, and of sight. In each of these genera there are species. In sensations of taste, distinctions are drawn between relishes\* allied to alimentary sensations, and provoking appetite or disgust, according to the state of the stomach, and tastes strictly so called, and themselves divisible into many groups, such as bitter, sweet, salt, alkaline, acid, astringent. In sensations of smell, distinctions are similarly drawn between smells connected with the respiratory sensations, compounded or mingled with a sensation of freshness or closeness, and smells strictly so called, and themselves divisible into perfumed, fœtid, pungent, ethereal, etc. Similar classifications are adopted in the distribution of the sensations of the other senses; and slight differences will be found in them, according to different authors.†

But these differences are of little importance; all they afford us is a survey of the subject; we have constructed a convenient repository, with compartments enabling us to lay our hands readily on the sensation we wish to consider; but this is all. We do not know what the sensation itself consists

---

\* *Relishes* distinguished from *tastes*.—Bain, "Senses and Intellect."

† See the physiological works of Longet, Mueller, Carpenter, Todd and Bowman, etc.

in ; if we consider some particular one—for instance, the smell of a rose—we find it comprised in the class of perfumed odors with that of the lily, the violet, musk, and an infinite number more. But while thus distinguishing it from others, we cannot say in what it differs from them ; we vaguely perceive that it is a stronger smell than that of the violet, and not so strong as that of the lily ; our knowledge is reduced to this. We cannot enumerate and state its elements as precisely as if it were a question of two kinds of minerals or vegetables ; we have no elements of comparison, like magnitude, form, position, number, to sum up and connect together ; mathematical and geometrical qualities, which serve as a foundation for the physical sciences, fail us here.—And here, again, the ground from which we started to construct the moral sciences fails us also. We have not here those common elements, images, representations, general ideas, to which different human inventions and social combinations may be reduced. We are at the central point of knowledge, a kind of link placed between the infinite ramifications of the branch and those of the root, enclosing in its narrow band the origin of the fibres which above and below make up, by their multiplication and their arrangement, the entire plant.—But it is precisely because our sensations are elements of which all the rest is composed, that we are unable to decompose them like the rest ; we cannot find elements of these elements. We are able to show how with them we form images, representations, and general ideas—how with them we form notions of magnitude, position, form, and number ; but as to how they are themselves formed, this we do not know.

It seems, then, that they escape from science ; and, in fact, when we read works treating of them, we learn little but what we knew before ; when we close the book, we find them well arranged in our mind, and that is all. If we are taught any thing, it is in another department, in physiology and anatomy, by the knowledge of the apparatus, organs, and movements on which they depend. Even with the highest hopes, all the horizon shows us is a more extended knowledge of these apparatus, movements, and organs ; perhaps some day, if the microscope becomes more powerful, when the theories of elec-

tricity, organic chemistry, and molecular physics have made some great advance, experimentalists may be able to distinguish the different primitive fibres in a nerve, may define exactly their internal movements, explain the structure of the nervous centres, and state precisely what change of state the action of the nerve excites there.—Under the most favorable circumstances, and supposing the science complete, we should arrive at a mathematical formula enabling us to sum up in some one law the different positions and relations of the nervous particles.—But these advances, great as we imagine them to be, add nothing to our idea of sensations; they enlighten us as to their conditions, but not as to them. If you describe to me the molecular movement produced in the glosso-pharyngeal nerves, and the other molecular movements consequently developed in the nervous centres when a solution of sugar or of colocynth passes over my tongue or throat; you will not teach me any thing as to the nature of the sensations of sweet and bitter. I shall know the circumstances under which they arise, I shall not know their elements, or even if they have any. The most I shall perhaps find will be some law connecting the intensity of bitterness with some form or other of molecular movement, resembling the law which makes the acuteness of a sound increase with the number of vibrations transmitted to the auditory nerve.

The matter becomes still clearer when we compare two sensations, not of the same, but of different senses, even when both are produced by the same external cause; for instance, the tickling and the sound produced by the same vibrations of the air, the painful feeling and luminous circle produced by the same compression of the eye, the sensations of dazzling light, of hissing sound, of shock, or tingling, produced by the same electricity applied to different senses. Each one of these senses forms a region apart; neither smell, nor taste, nor color, nor sound, nor sensation of contact, can be reduced to any other; and, in every sense, there are many regions no less distinct from one another; bitter, salt, and sweet tastes, like blue, red, and yellow colors, like sensations of heat, pressure, and tickling, seem equally irreducible to one another.—The only intrinsic quality which we find to be common to all these

distinct domains, is the degree of intensity; every sensation is capable of increase or decrease; it is a stage in a magnitude; smell, taste, sound, brightness, pressure, may all be more or less strong. So it is with the secondary groups comprised in the principal ones; every special sensation, that of bitterness, of tickling, of blue, has a maximum and a minimum, on passing which, it ceases, or becomes of another kind.—But each of them is a kind of simple body which, though capable in itself of increase or diminution, is not convertible into any of the others. In chemistry there are sixty-one such; there are many more for every sense, for instance, for smell or taste; for there is scarcely a single volatile odorous matter that does not form a type apart; we are sometimes able to arrange two, or at most three other sensations, together with the sensation it excites, as the smell of garlic and of the vapor of arsenic with the smell of tin; thus the species are innumerable, and classes scarcely exist; as we see on attempting to count the smells of perfumed plants in a garden, or of disagreeable gases in a laboratory.—Thus it would seem that at the commencement of psychology, we are obliged to set down a very great number of facts as mutually irreducible, just as simple bodies in chemistry, as the species of animals in zoology, or of vegetables in botany, but with this special disadvantage, that while in chemistry, in botany, and zoology, differences and resemblances are constituted by homogeneous and precise elements, number, force, and form, in the sensations, no such element can be isolated, and we are driven to the unreasoning affirmation of certain rough likenesses and to the dry statement of an indefinite number of undefinable differences.

III. Sensations, however, have elements, as will appear from various examples. We all know that in a musical chord there are two notes, that an ordinary color is made up of many colors; we must advance a step, and see if those sensations of sound, color, and the rest, which appear to us simple, are not themselves composed of more simple sensations.—Psychology is at present confronted with sensations professedly simple, just as chemistry was, at its outset, with professedly simple bodies. In fact, in its early stages, observation, whether internal or external, perceives compounds only;

its business is to decompose them into their elements, to show the different groupings these elements are capable of, and to construct different compounds with them. The chemist shows that, by the combination of a proportion of nitrogen with one, two, three, four, or five, proportions of oxygen, we form protoxide of nitrogen, deutoxide of nitrogen, nitrous acid, hyponitric acid, and nitric acid; five substances which, to ordinary observation, have nothing in common, and which, nevertheless, differ only in the number of proportions of oxygen comprised in each of their atoms. The psychologist has to inquire whether, by combining such-and-such an elementary sensation with one, two, three, other elementary sensations, by approximating the times of their occurrence, by giving them a longer or shorter duration, by communicating to them a greater or less intensity, he cannot arrive at constructing those masses of sensation to which rude consciousness attains, and which, though irreducible to her, differ only in the duration, proximity, magnitude, and number of their elements.

Now there is a group of sensations in which a complete reduction can be effected—namely, those of hearing; and we may legitimately argue from these to others; the partial solution attained indicates a general solution which may be attained.—The kinds of sounds are apparently very numerous; and ordinary observation detects in them many seemingly simple qualities. Two sounds produced by the same instrument may be respectively high and low. Two sounds equally high or low have different tones, if produced, one by a violin, and the other by a flute. Two sounds equally high or low, and of the same tone, may be more or less loud or intense. Two sounds may be, the one musical, the other unmusical; that is to say, the one may be a continuous sensation, all whose parts are mutually alike; while the other is a discontinuous sensation, and made up of parts differing from one another. Finally, this last class contains many kinds apparently irreducible to one another; explosions, clangings, grindings, hummings, rustlings, which we can only denote by the body and external condition producing them, as the sound of a hammer, of a glass, of a piece of wood, of crumpled paper, etc.—In this great collection we distinguish two qualities

capable of degrees—intensity, and acuteness; in these respects, different sounds form a scale; in all other respects, they are in juxtaposition, are vaguely related to one another, like smells and tastes, without it being possible to say in what this relationship consists; tone, for instance, like noise, is a thing undefinable. The same *sol* played with the same strength on a clarionet, a flute, a violin, a horn, a bassoon, borrows a special character according to the different instruments; it is more piercing on the violin, more brilliant on the horn, sweeter on the flute, keener on the clarionet, more veiled on the bassoon. But none of these adjectives define it; they only indicate some distant analogy between our total impression and impressions of another nature; they are simply literary labels like the names we apply to perfumes, when we call the smell of the heliotrope delicate, that of the lily, full and rich, of musk, penetrating, etc. These epithets tell us something of our sensation, but very little; in no case do they tell us any thing of the elementary sensations, of which our whole sensation is made up.

Fortunately, students of physics and physiology have advanced our researches while pursuing their own; and their discoveries as to undulations and the nerves enable us to find what we are seeking.—The sensation of sound is excited by the concussion of the acoustic nerve, occasioned, in most cases, by the vibration of the external air; we further observe, in fact, that when precisely similar concussions are occasioned, precisely similar sensations of sound are produced. This is the case with the sirens of Cagniard Latour and Helmholtz, and the wheel of Savart. When this wheel is turned at a uniform rate, its teeth, which are at equal distances, strike a bar in passing; and this regular succession of similar concussions excites a regular succession of similar sensations of sound. Now, while the wheel turns sufficiently slowly, the sensations, being discontinuous, are distinct; and each of them, being compound, is a sound. But when the wheel is set to turn fast enough, *a new sensation arises*, that of a musical note. It distinguishes itself from the remains of the noises which still go on and continue distinct, and stands out as a fact of a different kind; among the different elementary sensations which make

up each sound, there is one which the operation has separated ; and this now ceases to be distinct from *the similar elementary sensation* following in each of the succeeding sounds. *All these similar sensations now combine in one long continuous sensation* ; their mutual limits are effaced ; experience, just as in a chemical analysis, has extracted an elementary sensation from the complex group in which it was included, has joined it to an absolutely similar elementary sensation, and formed a new compound, the sensation of musical sound.\*

But if, among musical sounds, we choose a very deep one, for instance, the lower octave of the organ, we see that the elementary sensations, though still forming a continuous whole—which they must do for the sound to be musical—nevertheless remain to a certain extent distinct. “The lower the note, the better does the ear distinguish in it the successive pulsations of the air.”† It is then not much removed from a buzzing, that is to say, a simple noise. We distinguish in it elementary sensations ; we recognize that each of them consists in a swelling and a dying away, that is to say, in an increase and a diminution of intensity ; we can observe the limits of each one of them ; these limits are but half effaced. We find, on comparing it with the elementary sensation corresponding to a more acute note, that it occupies a greater length of time. Again, the length of time is greater between the maximum of height of one of its elementary sensations, and the maximum of height of the succeeding one. The whole sensation is thus composed of larger molecules and more distant maxima. This is why we call it a fuller or heavier sound. Here we perceive the elementary sensation whose different combinations are sufficient to explain all the sensations of sound.

Let us first consider musical sounds. We know by acoustics that the condition of a sound being musical is that there be a uniform series of vibrations of the air ; that each of these

---

\* Mueller (tr. Baly), ii. 973 and 1298. The wheel of Savart shows us that a second elementary sensation is necessary and sufficient to effect this extraction and form the new compound.

† Helmholtz, “Conférences Scientifiques de Bonn.”—“Revue des Cours Scientifiques,” 10th February, 1867, p. 78.



vibrations is of certain length, and lasts a certain fraction of a second; that the more it diminishes in length and duration, the more acute becomes the note. All analogies show that there are elementary sensations in this case, just as in that of the very deep note, and scientific experiment comes in to confirm these inductions.—Take a wheel with two thousand teeth revolving in a second; it gives two thousand blows in a second, and therefore two blows in the thousandth part of a second; if all the teeth except two adjoining ones are now removed, the two blows which it will give when set going again will only occupy the thousandth part of a second.\* Now these two blows cause a determinate and appreciable sound. The sound, then, given in a second by the wheel when it has all its teeth, comprises a thousand similar successive sounds, each perceptible to consciousness. In other words, the whole sensation which lasts a second, is made up of a continuous series of a thousand similar sensations, each lasting one-thousandth part of a second, and each *perceptible to consciousness*. But as we have just seen, each one of them comprises in itself at least two successive elementary sensations, which, *if isolated, would not come within our consciousness* and, to be perceptible, must be combined in pairs. Here we have the elements of a sensation lasting a second, and the elements of its elements.

Now, in the passage from the deep to the acute note, what become of these elementary sensations of which we are conscious? It is plain that each of them lasts less and less time and that its maximum sound becomes nearer and nearer to the maximum of the succeeding sound; hence it will necessarily become less and less distinct, and at last we shall cease to perceive any maximum or minimum in it; this is what happens; in proportion as the note becomes acute, the number and plurality still apparent, though indistinctly, in the low note, disappear and wholly vanish. Consciousness no longer distinguishes, even vaguely, the little composing sensations; the whole sound appears one and united.—At the same time, it puts on a new appearance, it seems thinner and more drawn

---

\* Mueller (tr. Baly), ii. 973 and 1298, Experiments of Savart.

out. This arises from the closer arrangement of the maxima, and from the shorter time occupied by the molecules of the sensation, which, though as numerous as before, are smaller. It follows that, as regards consciousness, our sensations of sound arrange themselves in a pyramid: at the base, are those of very deep sound, composed of longer elementary sensations and more distant maxima; at the summit, are those of very acute sound, composed of shorter elementary sensations and of more closely ranged maxima; this is why we say of sounds that some are higher and some lower, and arrange them in a scale.—Hence we see that the qualities of deep or acute, of high or low, of full or drawn out, of vibrating or firm, by which we distinguish the different notes of the scale, depend on the degree of brevity of the elementary sensation, and the degree of proximity of its maxima. Here, already, we have reduced quality to quantity.

IV. It is also thus reducible in other respects.—First, as to intensity, the reduction is complete. The different degrees of force or intensity of any one sensation of sound are the different degrees by which it passes from its minimum to its maximum, and we know that these degrees have as their necessary and sufficient condition different degrees of condensation of the wave of air. Now, mathematics show us that in each elementary wave, there is a maximum and a minimum of condensation, which explains how it is we find in each elementary sensation a maximum and a minimum of intensity. Mathematics further show that in the two series of waves produced by two notes sounded in unison, the condensations combine and become of double strength; which explains how it is that in the sensations of sound so produced the intensities combine and become doubly as great. Consequently, when we are given the law connecting the elementary sensation with its condition, we are able to follow the elementary sensation under all its aspects and in all its degrees, far above the range of consciousness, by following mathematically the changes and degrees of its condition.

In the second place, an indirect analysis comes to our aid to explain with the most complete success that undefinable quality which seemed to resist all the efforts of direct analysis,

tone.\* If the same note is played by various instruments of different tone, it is not a simple sound but a combination of sounds, of which the principal one—the same for all the instruments—is the fundamental note; and the others, varying with particular instruments, are supplementary notes of less strength, termed superior harmonics, arising from vibrations twice, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, or ten times as quick as those of the fundamental note. Thus, in the piano, we can hear without difficulty the six first harmonics of each note, but not the seventh or ninth. The violin, under the bow, gives the six first harmonics more feebly; but the higher ones, from the sixth to the tenth, are very distinct. The pipes of covered organs give a hollow sound, arising from the isolation of the odd harmonics. The clarionet gives a nasal sound, in which again there are only the odd harmonics; but of these, the higher ones predominate. Hence it follows that differences of tone arise from the addition of different harmonics to the fundamental note. By following out this principle, and with the aid of an instrument called a *résonnateur*, it has been proved that this same circumstance explains the different vowel-sounds of the human voice—that is to say, the variations which the same note presents, when pronounced in turn *u, a, e, i, o, eu, ou*. Analogous considerations show us how sounds become either harsh and rough, or smooth and even. So that these differences of sensation hitherto irreducible, and denoted by idle metaphors, are reduced to the intervention of little subsidiary and complementary sensations of the same kind, which, attaching themselves to the principal sensation, give it a special character and unique appearance, while consciousness, which sees the whole and nothing but the whole, is unable to distinguish these feeble auxiliaries, and therefore to recognize that, though inferior in strength to the principal sensation, they are, in nature, identical with it, and that, while entirely similar to one another, they differ only, according to the tone, in number and acuteness.

This being settled, we are in a position to explain sensations of noise, and their innumerable varieties. The science

---

\* Helmholtz, "Die Lehre von den Tonempfindungen."

of acoustics shows us their general mode of formation, though without entering into the details of each particular one. Like sensations of musical sounds, they are compound. But while the sensation of musical sound corresponds to a series of vibrations, equal in length and duration, that of noise corresponds to a series of vibrations, unequal in duration and length; and hence we conclude that in the first instance the elementary sensations are similar, and in the second dissimilar; and this explains the infinite number of sensations of noise and the impossibility of grouping them like those of musical sound in a single series; there are no limits to the combinations of dissimilar sounds; having no fixed relations between themselves, they can only produce a chaos.

We see now in what all the differences and peculiarities of sounds consist. Given two continuous elementary sensations, the one preceding and the other following, the two united form, as far as consciousness is concerned, a single whole sensation, which we term a sensation of sound.—If the two are similar, the sound is musical; if they are dissimilar, it is a noise.—If, in the couple so formed, the elements are of longer duration, the sound is deeper; if of shorter duration, the sound is more acute.—In every elementary sensation, there is a maximum; and according as the time between two maxima diminishes, the sound becomes more even.—If the maxima of one couple are greater than those of another, the whole sound of the first couple is more intense than the whole sound of the second.—If to the whole sound be added complementary sounds, less intense, and twice, three, four, or several times as acute, the tone varies with the variations of the complementaries.—If we conceive two given elements, on the one hand, the elementary sensation, on the other, the quantity we call time; we have in them the materials necessary to construct sensations of sound.—Two elementary sensations are discontinuous, or continuous, that is to say, are separated by an appreciable or unappreciable portion of this quantity; and the sound is accordingly null or appreciable.—They occupy equal or unequal portions of this quantity; and the sound is accordingly musical or not musical.—The portions so occupied are larger or smaller; and the sound accordingly becomes

deeper or higher.—If we now conceive the magnitude or intensity of the elementary sensation itself, with this new element, the construction is accomplished.—The elementary sensation having a maximum of intensity, the maxima of two elementary sensations may be discontinuous or continuous, that is to say, separated by an appreciable portion of time or not; and the sensation is accordingly composed of appreciable portions, or uniform.—The maxima of two elementary sensations are greater or less than the maxima of two others; and the sound is accordingly more or less intense.—There are added to a sound different groups of sounds of less intensity, but of an acuteness the multiple of its own; and the sound has such-and-such a tone accordingly. So that all differences of sound, though apparently irreducible, are reduced to differences of magnitude introduced into the same elementary sensation, these differences being furnished sometimes by the magnitude or intensity of the sensation itself, sometimes by that particular magnitude we denominate time.

Let us now consider the elementary sensation itself. In the noise which precedes the musical note,\* it is united with other elementary sensations of unequal duration, and forms with them a heterogeneous compound. In the musical note which is formed by accelerated and approximating noises, it is united with other elementary sensations, of duration equal to its own, and forms with them a homogeneous compound. But for it to reach our consciousness there must always be one or other of these combinations; it must be enlarged in order to be distinguished. When isolated, the inner sense does not perceive it; but it still exists, for in the very deep musical note we perceive it incessantly repeated and making up the note; and again, there can clearly be no compound without components.—On the other hand, we have seen that in the high as in the low note, the elementary sensation has a maximum; we discover this maximum in the very low note, we do not discover it in the high note; still it exists in the one as in the other; but, in the very low note, the greater interval between the two maxima enables us to distinguish

---

\* See the Wheel of Savart, and the Sirens.

them, while, in the high note, their proximity prevents our doing so.—Further than this, every elementary sensation, in order to pass from its minimum to its maximum, passes in its short duration through an infinite number of degrees; much more therefore are these degrees insensible to consciousness; so that, in a high note, the indistinct elementary sensation comprehends not only two indistinct extreme states, but an infinite number of indistinct intermediate states.

We get a glance here at the obscure and infinite world extending beneath our distinct sensations. These are compounds and wholes. For their elements to be perceptible to consciousness, it is necessary for them to be added together, and so to acquire a certain bulk, and to occupy a certain time; if their group does not attain this bulk and does not last this time, we observe no change in our state. Nevertheless, though it escapes us, there is one; our internal sight has limits; outside these limits, internal events, though real, are for us as though they did not exist. They gain accessions, they undergo diminutions, they combine, they are decomposed, without our being conscious of it.\* They may even, as we have just seen in the case of sensations of sound, have different degrees of composition, and consequently different degrees of recoil, beyond the grasp of consciousness. The elementary sensations directly making up our ordinary sensations are themselves compounded of sensations of less intensity and duration, and so on. Thus, there is going on within us a subterranean process of infinite extent, its products alone are known to us and are only known to us in the mass. As to elements and their elements, consciousness does not attain to them, reasoning con-

---

\* Leibnitz, "Des Perceptions Insensibles," p 65, "Nouveaux Essais sur l'Entendement," Ed. Jacques.

"To hear the sound of the sea, from the shore, we must necessarily hear the parts which make up the whole, that is to say, the noise of each wave, though each of these little noises only makes itself known to us in the confused assemblage of the whole, and would not be observed if the wave causing it were alone by itself. For we must be affected a little by the movement of this wave, and must have some perception of its sound, however slight; otherwise we should have none of the sound of a hundred thousand such, since a hundred thousand nothings cannot make up any thing."—Cf. Hamilton, *Lectures, etc.*, i. 349–351, cited Mervoyer, "De l'Association des Idées," p. 337.

cludes that they exist ; they are to sensations what secondary molecules and primitive atoms are to bodies ; we have but an abstract conception of them, and what represents them to us is not an image, but a notation.

## CHAPTER II.

SENSATIONS OF SIGHT, OF SMELL, OF TASTE, OF TOUCH, AND  
THEIR ELEMENTS.

I. A SIMILAR, though somewhat less complete, reduction may be effected with sensations of sight.\* We all know that a ray of white light may be divided with a prism into several rays of different colors. It spreads out into a spectrum, in which the colors form a continuous scale. At the commencement of the scale is red; then come orange and the different yellows, then green, the different blues, indigo, and lastly violet,† and each of these tints passes by intermediate stages into the one preceding it and the one following it.—Here are an infinite number of distinct sensations connected by intermediate stages. Let us examine their external conditions. The science of optics shows us that the spectrum is formed by the different rays which make up the white ray being inflected, some more and some less, in passing through the prism; this inflection increases with the shortness and rapidity of the waves; therefore, if we follow, from red to violet, the series of rays which form the spectrum, we find that the shortening and acceleration of the waves go on increasing. Thus, from red to violet, each sensation corresponds to waves quicker and shorter than those of the preceding sensation, slower and longer than those of the succeeding sensation. An increase of speed and diminution of length in the waves are sufficient to determine the variations which our sensation of color undergoes in passing from red to violet.

Having premised this, let us consider the red; as we go

---

\* Helmholtz, "Physiologische Optik," part ii.

† M. Helmholtz distinguishes the following successive colors: red, orange, golden yellow, pure yellow, greenish-yellow, pure green, bluish-green, blue of water, cyanic blue, indigo, violet and ultra-violet.



down the spectrum, the sensation of red diminishes, it passes from its maximum to its minimum. There is then an elementary sensation, which decreases in proportion as the waves become shorter and more rapid.—But there is more than one such; for if there were only one, we should find that as we passed towards violet, it would simply grow feebler with the shortening and acceleration of the waves, and the entire spectrum would only present degrees of intensity of red, while in fact, we find at what appears to be the minimum of red, a second distinct sensation arising, that of yellow. There are then, at least two elementary sensations of color.—Are there but two? If there were only two, for instance, that of red and that of yellow, the red, having its maximum at the commencement of the spectrum, and the yellow having its maximum at the centre of yellow, the first decreasing with the time and length of the waves, the second decreasing whenever the time and length of the waves are less or greater than the degree of time and length corresponding to the centre of yellow, we should see, on passing down the spectrum below this centre, yellow become indefinitely feebler till the end of the spectrum, without undergoing any other change. This is not so; for at the lower minimum of yellow we find a new distinct sensation appear, that of green.—There are then, at least three elementary sensations, and on studying the composition of the spectrum we find it is sufficient to admit three, one analogous to that of red, another to that of violet, and the last to that of green.

All the three are excited by every ray of the spectrum; but each of the three is differently excited by the same ray.—The first is at its maximum at about the central point of red; in proportion as we descend towards the violet and the waves become shorter and more rapid, its intensity diminishes and approaches its minimum.—The second is at its maximum at about the centre of the violet; and as we go back towards the red, and its waves become longer and slower, its intensity diminishes and approaches its minimum.—The third is at its maximum at about the central point of the green; in proportion as we return towards the red, or descend towards the violet, that is to say, as the waves become either longer and

slower, or shorter and more rapid, its intensity diminishes and approaches a minimum.—So that, as we pass from red to violet through all the degrees of the spectrum, the three component sensations vary from degree to degree, but each one in a special manner, the first passing insensibly from maximum to minimum, the second from minimum to maximum, the third passing first from a minimum to its maximum, and then from its maximum to a minimum, which explains at the same time the insensible passage by which every compound sensation in the spectrum is connected with the succeeding one, and the diversities of the ten or twelve principal compound sensations.\*

We can readily see the object of this disposition of our being. If a simple ray excited in us one sensation of color only, it would have a maximum, a minimum, and intermediate stages, nothing more; and for want of being able to contrast it with another, we should not observe it;† we should have no notion of color; the luminous waves, in increasing or decreasing in speed and length, would only render the sensation more intense or more feeble; objects would differ only in higher or fainter color; they would resemble the various parts of a drawing in which all the differences are those of white, gray, and black.—If, on the other hand, every simple ray excited two sensations of color only, we should still have the notion

\* Helmholtz, *ib.*, 191. The substance of this explanation is due to Young. He supposes that every nervous fibre of the retina is made up of three elementary fibres, differently excitable by the same ray. As Helmholtz observes, we may suppose that every nervous fibre of the retina possesses three different kinds of activity, excitable by the same ray, and this is very probable.—But we may dispense with all suppositions by admitting, instead of three nervous fibres or three nervous activities, three elementary sensations. In the anatomical or physiological hypothesis, the assumed fact is uncertain; for it is not certain that there are three different fibres in every nerve, or that one fibre has three kinds of action. In the psychological explanation, the admitted fact is positive; for it is certain that the three sensations, red, green, and violet, exist.—I have therefore made the necessary changes in the explanation of Helmholtz. “This hypothesis of Young’s,” he says, gives a complete view and extraordinarily clear and simple explanation of all the phenomena connected with the physiological science of colors.”

† “Persons affected with achromatopsy can only distinguish degrees of light and dark, they see all objects as they are represented in photography.”—Wecker, “*Maladies des Yeux*,” ii. 432.

of color ; we should still distinguish two principal colors, their maxima, minima, intermediates and compounds ; but very many of our sensations of color would be wanting, and their whole arrangement would be reversed.—This we observe in studying various cases of illness or congenital infirmity, and the theory reducing our elementary sensations of color to the three sensations of red, violet, and green, receives here a most striking confirmation from experience.\*—The sensation of red is wanting in some persons ; in others, that of green ; after taking *santonine*, the sensation of violet is lost for some hours. In all these cases, not only is a principal sensation missing, but many others are altered, and both losses and alterations are precisely those which, according to theory, would result from the absence of the elementary sensation.—Finally, we obtain a more delicate and definitive verification.† According to the theory, the red and violet of the spectrum are, even at the points at which they seem most intense, compound sensations ; for, to the elementary sensation which is then at its maximum, are joined two others which are then at a minimum ; the first then is mingled and weakened ; it is neither absolutely pure nor of the greatest possible strength. It will, then, be purer and stronger if we can remove these causes of impurity and weakness. Now there is a case in which we are able to do this ; that is, when we have blunted the sensibility of the eye to the other colors. In this case we ought to see a red or violet more intense than those of the spectrum ; and this is what happens. In this instance, which is unique, we are able to isolate one of our elementary sensations of color. By a lucky hit in psychological chemistry, we extract it from the ternary compound in which it is usually combined, and in which theory alone had detected it.

---

\* Helmholtz, 294, 848, 293, and Wecker, *ibid.*—"The ingestion of *santonine* brings on a particular variety of Daltonism by making the retina insensible to violet rays. . . ." Some persons "have no perception of blue ; this state always coincides with insensibility of the retina to red rays. Others while distinguishing white, gray, and black from all other colors, do not distinguish other colors, from one another. In others, the retina is insensible to violet, while other colors are perceived, if strongly marked and in a bright light."

† Helmholtz, *ib.*, 369, 370.

II. With the three elementary sensations of color we are able to construct the rest. And first, if we represent by a curve the increase and decrease which each of them undergoes as it passes down the spectrum, we shall see the three different variations of their respective intensities produce the different colors of the spectrum.\*—The longest and slowest waves, placed at the summit of the spectrum, excite the elementary sensation of red strongly, and the two others feebly; the result is the sensation of spectral red.—Lower down, at the point denoted by yellow, the waves, already not so long and slow, excite the elementary sensations of red and green with moderate intensity; and that of violet feebly; and then we have the sensation of spectral yellow.—Towards the middle of the spectrum, the waves, which then have a medium length and speed, excite the elementary sensation of green strongly, and the others much more feebly; our entire sensation is that of spectral green.—Lower down, when the waves begin to grow short and quick, the elementary sensations of violet and green are excited with moderate force, and that of red more feebly; then we see spectral blue.—Towards the lowest part, when the acceleration and shortening of the waves has further increased, the elementary sensation of violet is strong, and those of red and green are very weak; and the compound sensation we call violet is produced.

On the other hand, when the three elementary sensations are of about equal force and no one predominates over the others, we have the sensation of white, or of whitish colors. This happens in many cases; first, when all the rays of the spectrum, collected again by another prism, strike the retina at the same point, and thus produce the maximum, minimum, and all the degrees of each elementary sensation; again when, two rays being selected from the spectrum, the inequality of the three elementary sensations excited by the first is compensated by the inverse inequality of the three elementary sensations excited by the second. In this case, the two spectral colors produced by the two rays are said to be complementary to one another, and they form a distinct couple.

---

\* Helmholtz, 291.

Among such couples we reckon four principal ones, red and bluish-green, orange and cyanic blue, yellow and indigo, greenish-yellow and violet; combined in their respective pairs, these colors give us the sensation of white, and we find a fixed distance between such pairs on the spectrum.—If, on the contrary, we take the two colors at the furthest distance from one another on the spectrum, red and violet, their mixture produces a sensation of distinct color, that of purple.—These two observations afford us the law governing all mixtures of spectral colors.—Two colors being given for mixture, their distance on the spectrum, compared with the fixed distance between complementary colors, differs from it by a greater or less quantity. The smaller this quantity is, the nearer to white or whitish will be the color produced by the mixture; and on the contrary, the greater this quantity is, the freer from white, or more “saturated,” will the color formed by the mixture be.—On the other hand, this distance may exceed or be less than the fixed distance. The more it exceeds the fixed distance and the nearer it approaches to the extreme possible distance, the nearer will the color formed by the mixture approximate to purple, which is produced when the separation is most complete; on the contrary, the further it is below the fixed distance and the smaller the separation becomes, the more does the color produced approximate to the intermediate color, in which the separation of the two component spectral colors disappears.\* All these conclusions are confirmed by experience.

A last color remains, black, which is not a sensation, but the absence of all sensation at a particular place and moment, when this place and moment are compared with others in which the sensation is present. But consciousness is so ill-acquainted with our internal events that she places in the same rank, as colors, our sensations and our wants of sensation; what strike her are differences between our states, and, on account of this, she sets together as similar facts the passage from repose to action, and that from action to repose, observing them as contrary, but without distinguishing that one is negative,

---

\* Helmholtz, 279.

the other positive. The different degrees of black or of want of sensation come in then to complicate the colors already constructed. "Prismatic analysis proves that gray becomes identical with white, brown with yellow, reddish brown with red, olive green with green, when the white, yellow, red, and green are feebly luminous."

These data being given, we have all the elements necessary to explain all sensations of color, and we see the elements of the sensation form compounds, which combining together form more complex compounds, and so on, just as we see physical atoms form chemical molecules, these form chemical compounds, and these again, the ordinary minerals found in nature.—By our utmost analysis we arrive at three elementary colors, all simultaneously excited, though each one differently, by a simple ray of the prism. Their union forms a spectral color.—Many spectral colors united form, in accordance with a fixed law, white, purple, and an infinite number of compound colors; and the addition of black, that is to say, the enfeebling the whole sensation, introduces an infinity of shades in all these products.—These products themselves form, by their combinations, the ordinary colors we observe in the world surrounding us.

Positive science stops here; experience does not enable us to mount higher than the three elementary sensations of color. We are dealing with an instrument far more complicated than the sensation of hearing. In fact, for every undulation we have three sensations instead of one. With sound again, the vibrations sometimes succeed one another slowly enough to enable us to distinguish the elementary sensation corresponding to each of them; there are only sixteen and a half per second in the *ut* of an organ-pipe thirty-two feet long; and so we are able to observe that our whole sensation is made up of successive small sensations having each a maximum and minimum; we distinguish almost precisely these component sensations. With sight, on the contrary, at the extremity of red, the part of the spectrum where the vibrations succeed most slowly,\* there are 451 billions of them in a second; it is plain

---

\* Mueller (tr. Baly), ii. 1109, and Helmholtz, p. 32.—451 billions for the slowest, 789 billions in the quickest.

that, were we able to isolate the sensation of red from the two other elementary sensations, we could never distinguish from one another component sensations so prodigiously numerous and of so prodigiously short duration. All we can admit with confidence is that the elementary sensation of red, like that of the lowest note of *ut*, is composed of successive sensations. For Wheatstone's experiments show that such a light as that of the electric spark is enough to produce a sensation on the retina; that this light is, so to speak, instantaneous; that it lasts less than the millionth of a second; and that thus a sensation of light lasting a second is made up of at least a million successive sensations. The number of these cannot be determined; it is probably much greater; perhaps with the ethereal undulation, as with the undulation of air, two successive vibrations are sufficient to produce a sensation still perceptible to consciousness; if so, the shortest sensation of light perceptible to consciousness would—as is the case with the shortest sensation of hearing perceptible to consciousness—be compounded of two elementary sensations imperceptible to consciousness, and having each a maximum or minimum and intermediate stages.—Without pushing the induction to this extent, the case of the electric spark shows that the sensation of light, like that of a very acute sound, is composed of a continuous succession of very numerous, successive, and similar sensations, forming, as far as we are concerned, a simple undecomposable mass. A new proof of the unnoticed work going on in the depth of our being, beyond the range of our consciousness, and a new example of the latent, complex, and innumerable combinations, of which we only perceive the totals or the effects.

III. We must not expect to find such complete reductions in the cases of taste and smell. With air, or ether, we know the mode of action, which is an undulation of calculable length and speed, and thus we are able to draw conclusions from it to the corresponding sensations. Besides, this mode of action is uniform, and the nerve, moreover, is specially constructed to receive it; we find proof of this in the designed structure of the organism of which the nerve forms part, and in the similitude of the sensations produced through the nerve by a blow

or an electric current applied to the eye or ear. The nerve itself, then, is capable of uniform action; and so it is natural that sensations excited by its action should be readily referable to a simple type, as happens with those of sound, or to types few in number, as with those of color.—With the other groups of sensations all this is reversed. We are ignorant of the mode of action of volatile substances on the olfactory nerves and of liquefied substances on the gustatory nerves; it is recognized to be chemical, but here our knowledge stops; we do not know whether it is an undulation or what other movement; we have not the least idea of its elements, and are unable to avail ourselves of such an idea to form conclusions as to the corresponding sensations.—And yet, from the single fact that it is chemical, we may conclude something as to the composition of the sensations it excites in us through the medium of the nerve.

Before commencing this inquiry, we must distinguish sensations of smell and taste, strictly so called, from accompanying sensations. For, what we term a smell or taste is, in general, a very complex sensation; the olfactory or gustatory nerves only contribute a part of it; another very considerable part referable to nerves of touch, similar to those spread over the rest of the body, and from which we receive sensations of contact, of muscular contraction, heat, cold, local pains, and all their kinds.—To begin with smell.\* Numbers of what are termed sensations of smell comprise other sensations. And first, sensations of pungent smell are divisible in two parts; they all comprise sensations of touch and, perhaps, are nothing more; such is the smell of ammonia, which is principally a stinging, as it is transmitted by other nerves than the special ones; the vapor of ammonia produces on the conjunctiva an effect precisely similar to its smell. This stinging may subsist even after the strict sensation of smell has been lost; some great snuff-takers become insensible to smells, pleasant or otherwise, but continue to take snuff, as they still feel the tingling it produces.—Appetizing and nauseating smells are also thus divisible. The strict sensation of smell is here

---

\* Bain, "Senses and Intellect," 173.



combined with another, which, according to the state of the stomach, ceases, is augmented, or reversed; the same smell, that of a plate of hot meat, is agreeable when we are hungry, and disagreeable when we are suffering from indigestion; it is probable that, in this case, certain deep-seated nerves of the alimentary canal are called into action, and that the whole sensation is made up of a sensation of the olfactory nerves and several accompanying sensations.—Finally, we may also divide refreshing and suffocating smells, comprising, on the one hand those of the volatile salts of eau-de-Cologne, of tar, of tan; and, on the other hand, that of a close room, of a pastry-cook's shop, of a cotton factory, of a cloth warehouse; here we plainly have, in addition to the strict sensation of smell, a sensation of comfort or uneasiness, arising from the air-passages, and conducted by the nerves of touch and pain.—I think, too, that in many cases, if, for instance, we inhale alcohol, a feeble sensation of heat comes in to complicate the strict sensation of smell.—Pure sensations of smell remain, agreeable or disagreeable in themselves; those, for instance, of the violet and of assafoetida; there are an infinite number of them, of which we can only say, that they are agreeable or disagreeable; in themselves, they resist all analysis, and in order to denote them we have to name the bodies producing them.

As to taste, what we generally term a flavor, comprises, besides the strict sensation of taste, a number of sensations of other kinds.—In the first place, as the back of the mouth and nose communicate, the olfactory nerve is in operation at the same time as the gustatory.\* “If you close your eyes and nostrils, and have different kinds of sweetmeats, for instance, placed on your tongue, then aromatic creams, of vanilla, of coffee, etc., in every case you will only perceive a sweet, sugared taste, and will not be able to distinguish the different substances employed.” In the same way it can be proved that “the urinous taste we attribute to fixed alkaline bases, does not belong to these substances, but to the ammonia set free by the reaction of the fixed alkaline bases on the ammoniacal salts contained in the saliva.” Here, again, a

---

\* Longet, “*Traité de Physiologie*,” ii. 171. Bain, “*Senses and Intellect*,” 157.

sensation of smell, or rather of nasal touch, is included in the sensation of taste.—Secondly, strict sensations of taste are frequently combined with a different sensation, sometimes agreeable and attractive, sometimes disagreeable and repulsive, belonging to other nerves of the alimentary canal. This accompanying sensation varies, while the others remain constant; the same good plate of meat is agreeable or disagreeable, accordingly as the stomach is empty or loaded. Besides this, it arises in other ways; it has no need, like the other, of chemical action as an excitant; mere contact is enough; a finger or a feather in the throat will produce a sensation of disgust.—Thirdly,\* “Many impressions referred to taste are simply tactile;” such, for instance, are acrid, irritant, astringent flavors, which are sensations of touch, not of taste.—Fourthly, certain flavors are combined with sensations of heat and cold; the sensation of heat accompanying strong drinks is well known, and also the cool sensation we find as an element in the flavor of certain sweetmeats.—Lastly, different sensations are excited by the same body in different parts of the mouth, and not only different accompanying sensations, but different sensations of pure taste.† “Numbers of bodies, and particularly the salts, exhibit the remarkable peculiarity of exciting, when applied to the back of the tongue, an entirely different sensation from what they excite when applied to the anterior part. Thus, the solid acetate of potash, of a burning acidity in the anterior part of the mouth, becomes insipid, bitter, and nauseating at the back, and loses entirely its acid pungent taste. Hydrochlorate of potash, simply salt and fresh in the anterior part, becomes sweetish at the back. Nitrate of potash, fresh and pungent in front, is insipid and slightly bitter at the back. Alum is fresh, acid, and astringent when crushed in the front of the mouth, while behind it gives a sweetish taste without the least acidity. Sulphate of soda is distinctly salt in front, and distinctly bitter behind.” Acetate of lead, fresh, piquant, and astringent in front, becomes

---

\* Vernier, cited by Longet, “*Traité d'Anatomie et de Physiologie du Système Nerveux*,” ii. 170. Bain, *ibid*.

† Longet, “*Traité de Physiologie*,” ii. 167. “Experiments of Guyot and Admyrault.”

sweet at the back.—Hence it follows that an ordinary sensation of taste may have several distinct elements in itself, in addition to the four kinds of elements furnished by accompanying sensations. For, in addition to the non-gustatory nerves, there are different gustatory nerves which intervene to produce it. The mouth, then, is not a simple organ, but a succession of organs, and a taste, even one strictly so called, may be a succession of tastes.

Let us simplify the matter ; let us lay aside all that part of the sensation which may be referred to touch, such as acidity, astringency, irritation, heat, coolness, the spontaneous muscular sensation radiating towards the alimentary canal, and consider simply the sensations of the gustatory nerves themselves, and put them on the same footing, whether they arise in the anterior part, or at the back of the mouth ; their principal types are the sensations of bitter and sweet, with their innumerable varieties ; when we have thus named them, we are at the end of our knowledge, as happened just now when we called sensations of smell fetid or perfumed.—Still, let us see what we can learn in either case by availing ourselves of previous reductions, and by studying the circumstances in which these sensations arise. They have, like the rest, as direct stimulus, an action of the nerve transmitted to the nervous centres. Now it is admitted, in accordance with all known facts, that two different sensations indicate two different states of the nervous centres, and, if the same nerve is concerned, two different actions of that nerve.—It remains, then, to be known in what way the olfactory or gustatory nerves act ; and, to arrive at this, we must determine the external event in *immediate* sequence to which its action commences.

Nothing is easier than to know the antecedents of this event ; but it is difficult to determine accurately the event itself. We see, at first sight and by ordinary experience, that such a body excites in us such a sensation of taste or smell, that another excites in us the sensation of red, or blue ; but neither one nor the other excite these sensations otherwise than through media ; the science of optics was required to tell us that undulations of an ether of certain length and speed are the media of action of the second : and it would be necessary

to have recourse to a science already constructed to determine the media of action of the first.—Let us inquire, however, into this last immediate event in direct sequence to which the olfactory or gustatory nerves begin to act. A body has no taste unless in solution; the taste is increased when it is moved about and pressed to the gustatory membrane;\* this membrane, again, must not be dry, or rendered insensible by cold. Again, the gustatory nerves are probably protected by a colloid membrane, permeable, as are all such, to non-colloid substances, but nearly impermeable to colloid substances, which accounts for the taste of non-colloid substances, and the want of taste in colloid ones. All these facts lead us to the conclusion that the dissolved molecules of the body which is tasted penetrate the tissues of the tongue, and come in contact with the nervous papillæ; and there, under the influence of the animal heat, form with the liquid secretions a *chemical combination* varying with the variations of these secretions.†—Similarly, a body has no smell, except in a gaseous state; and the pituitary membrane must not be dry; it is also proved that, to be odorous, a gas must combine with oxygen at the surface of the pituitary membrane. All these facts lead to one and the same conclusion, that the molecules of gas become absorbed in the moisture of the pituitary membrane in contact with the olfactory fibres, and there form a *chemical combination* with the oxygen of the air.—Thus the action of the olfactory nerve, like that of the gustatory nerves, appears to have a chemical combination as its immediate antecedent.

Now what is a chemical combination? Chemists reply that a homogeneous body is made up of molecules precisely similar to one another, and extraordinarily small; that each of them, if the body is not simple, is itself composed of several different atoms, much smaller still, and so situated, with re-

---

\* Bain, "Senses and Intellect," 156, 168.

\* Longuet, ii. 164.—"The most delicate kinds of food are tasteless, earthy or bitter when the stomach is out of order. . . . The brain and sensorial nerves remain as they were, but the tongue is covered with a mucous or bilious coating, and every thing produces a dull nauseous impression." Mueller (tr. Baly), ii. 1323.—"After chewing the root of the sweet-flag, milk and coffee taste acid to me."

spect to each other, as to remain in equilibrium ; that a chemical combination takes place when a molecule, receiving an atom of another kind, passes into another state of equilibrium ; that the atoms then leave their respective positions to take up new ones ; that these displacements of atoms, acting at extremely small distances, are themselves extremely small ; that, as these atoms are wonderfully small, we must, to explain their active force, attribute to them, on displacement, velocities of enormous magnitude ; and that, therefore, every distinct chemical combination is made up of a distinct system of prodigiously small and rapid displacements, of which we cannot yet indicate the elements or explain precisely the type.\* Here we have the immediate antecedent of the action of each olfactory or gustatory fibre ; and we cannot help observing how closely it resembles the immediate antecedent of the action of the optic nerve, but with this difference, that in the second case the, type and elements of the antecedent are known. In fact, in the vibration of either, the active particles are also of extraordinary minuteness ; their displacements are also wonderfully small and rapid ; they form, also, a number of distinct systems. Only we know that these systems are all made up of waves, and we can measure the speed and length of each wave ; and thus we are able to define exactly the elementary displacement by whose repetition each system is formed, to show that, in different systems, the elementary displacements differ in respect of quantity only, to reduce them all to a single type, to denote the corresponding elementary action of the optic nerve and brain, and to conclude the existence of an elementary optical sensation, by whose prodigiously rapid and multiplied repetitions our total sensations of color are made up. Unfortunately, chemistry is not so far advanced as optics : it can only prove the existence of systems of displacements, while the other science defines and measures them ; it must wait till, like its rival, it can represent these infinitely small events, of which it only knows the final effect.—But it is plain

---

\* " Chemistry has as yet been constructed with reference to masses only ; its construction with reference to velocities remains to be accomplished."—Saigey, "*De l'Unité des Forces Physiques*," p. 184.

that in the two cases the problem and solution are of similar nature. In each, movements are dealt with, the minuteness, speed, and number of which are wholly disproportioned to the ordinary magnitudes we are capable of estimating in time and space. We may compare, then, the wave of either to a system of atomic movements, and a succession of similar waves of either to a succession of similar systems of atomic movements. Consequently, thanks to the first case, we can, to some extent, represent to ourselves the second.

A molecule comes in contact with an olfactory fibre or a gustatory papilla ; a system of atomic movements takes place in the molecule, and a corresponding action follows in the fibre ; a second similar molecule arrives at the same point ; a second similar system of atomic movements takes place, and a second exactly similar corresponding action follows in the same fibre. The two similar nervous actions have aroused two similar cerebral actions, and two similar elementary sensations. But the number of such sensations, actions, and systems of movements succeeding in a second is enormous, and the whole sensation of smell or taste, like the whole sensation of color, is but the sum of all the successive elementary sensations, the series of which occupies a certain time.\*

We can now form an idea of the four special senses. The distinctive character of their sensations is that each, even the simplest, of those we are conscious of, is made up of a succession of very numerous elementary sensations of extremely small duration, whose rhythm corresponds to the special rhythm of an external event, to an undulation of air or ether, to a system of atomic movements, forming the external natural antecedent with regard to which the sense was constructed, and by the presence of which it ordinarily acts.—What

---

\* Certain points of agreement show us the connection of our sensations of smell and taste with the atomic constitution, and therefore with the change of atomic constitution of the molecules (Bain, 152, 165). Three atoms of oxygen with two atoms of a metal form a compound of sweet or sugary taste.—All organic alkies are very bitter.—Almost all acids have an acid taste.—Almost all salts of iron have an inky taste, etc.—Substances with a perfumed smell are carburets of hydrogen.—Substances of fetid smell have, nearly all of them, arsenic or sulphur in their bases, etc.

constitutes a special nerve is its capacity to arouse such elementary sensations. Those excited by the acoustic nerve correspond to undulations of the air comprised between two limits. Those of the optic nerve correspond to undulations of ether also comprised between two limits. Those to which the gustatory and olfactory nerves give rise, correspond to molecular movements of determinate form.

Compare, for instance, the two sensations which the same undulations of the air excite through the nerves of touch, and the nerves of hearing ; that is to say, on the one hand a more or less pronounced quivering and tickling, and on the other hand a sound more or less intense and acute. The external antecedent is the same in the two cases ; but the elementary sensations excited through the medium of the acoustic nerve correspond to the elements of the undulation of the air, and this is not the case with the elementary sensations excited by the medium of the nerves of touch. For, in fact, all details and variations of the undulation of the air are represented in the whole sensation of hearing, and are not represented in the whole sensation of touch. In the sensation of hearing, the greater or less speed of the waves is represented by the greater or less acuteness of the sound ; the tone, by a supplementary group of more feeble sensations ; each wave, by an elementary sensation ; the depth of the wave, by the intensity of the sound ; the degrees of condensation of each wave, by the degrees of intensity of the sound. With the sensation of touch, on the contrary, the representation is imperfect ; all we experience is that the quivering becomes stronger, and degenerates into a tickling, when the undulation becomes quicker and the condensations of the waves become stronger.—And so again another external event, the undulation of an ether, represents itself to us in two ways, by the tactile sensation of heat or cold, and the visual sensation of color and light. In the second case, all the degrees of speed and length which the wave of ether assumes are precisely represented, but only when their speed and length attain that of the limit of red, and do not exceed that of the limit of violet. On the contrary, the first translation represents, not only waves comprised between the limits of red and violet, but many other waves

situated outside those limits; but none of the waves are specially represented, and the sensation of heat or cold does but roughly represent the difference of intensity separating two systems of successive undulations.

Thus the four special senses are four special languages, each appropriate to a different subject, each admirably adapted to express one order of facts, and that order alone. Touch, on the other hand, is a general language applicable to all subjects, but not well fitted to express the shades of meaning in the different subjects. In general, a sense is a system of spontaneous writing and of automatic notation, resembling the instruments of measurement of which we avail ourselves in physics and chemistry. Sometimes these are delicate and special, as the multiplying calorimeter, or the instrument invented for the self-registration of the movements of the heart; sometimes they are less delicate and of general use, as the balance which only serves to denote the final augmentation or diminution of weight in an experiment. Sometimes the elementary sensation corresponds, feature for feature, with the element by whose repetition the external event is made up; in this case the elementary sensation copies, one by one, the variations of this element, with their order and magnitude; but, if we apply it to elements of another kind, it is of no effect, or confused, or extreme, and unfit to represent them. Sometimes the elementary sensation does not thus correspond, feature for feature, to the element whose repetition constitutes the external event, and does not copy the several variations of this element; but, in this case, the external event, whatever it be, excites a body of elementary sensations, the whole of which represent it as a whole, though unprecisely and in the rough.

IV. This is the character of touch, and we see that it differs from the other senses, and that its elementary sensations do not correspond to any elementary external event, and so cannot be referred to any known type. Here, then, we are confronted with a new difficulty. There is no special event here, as in former instances, to serve as a guide in discovering elementary sensations. We have to seek out a new path; before attempting it, let us see whether among the sensations of



touch we cannot find some to which others may be reduced ; we must clear the ground before attempting to cultivate it.

In studying cases of partial paralysis, physiologists have first distinguished two groups of primitive sensations, one comprising sensations of the muscles, and the other sensations of the skin, the first having as origin the excitement of the nervous extremities found in the muscles, the second having as origin the excitement of the nervous papillæ found in the derma. Each of these two groups may be missing, without the other being affected.

When the first is wanting, we see that all the sensations of muscular contraction and expansion are absent, with all their several degrees of painful effort, fatigue, and cramp, besides the various sensations of cold, heat, contact, pain, electric shock, produced by the application of stimuli to the muscles in their normal state.\* “As soon as the patients take their eyes off their limbs, they have no more consciousness of their position, or even of their existence. When in bed, they lose them, as it were, and are obliged to look for them, not knowing where they are. Sometimes they try to stretch out or bend some limb already stretched out or bent. On moving, they are ignorant of the extent of their movement, and frequently do not know whether they have moved or not. If they intend to move, but are prevented, they are unaware of it, and think they have moved, from having willed to do so. Passive movements may be occasioned in them by means of an electric apparatus, without their suspecting it. Their limbs seem to them deprived of weight. If their hands are plunged in water, they know by the cutaneous impression that it is a liquid, but on moving the hand about, they do not experience that soft resistance which gives the notion of the fluidity of water, and do not know whether their hand is moving in the air or in the water. If the muscles be pressed, pinched, or kneaded, no distinct sensation takes place. They do not perceive the passage of an intense electric shock. A sharp instrument may be stuck in their flesh without their perceiving it ; that is, unless they discover it through the persisting sensibility of the

---

\* Axenfeld, “Des Névroses,” 339.

skin." Therefore, though they have retained all their muscular vigor, and are besides insensible to fatigue, they walk with great difficulty in the dark, or when they cease to watch their movements with their eyes; the sensations of sight must be constantly present to supply the place of the absent muscular sensations. If both sensations fail them, "they can hardly keep themselves upright without stumbling or running the risk of a fall; their movements are either too extensive or not extensive enough; they readily let things slip from between their fingers, or sometimes crush them by too forcible a contraction." No other sensation is missing; they may still feel all the cutaneous sensations of tickling, contact, passive pressure, of superficial heat and pain. In other words, such patients can no longer estimate the state of their muscles, but are still perfectly capable of estimating the state of their skin.

There are patients, on the other hand, unable to estimate the state of their skin, but who can still estimate the state of their muscles.\*—A workman, mentioned by Landry, had his fingers and hands insensible to all impressions of contact, pain, and heat; but his muscular sensations were unaffected. If his eyes were closed, and a somewhat bulky object were placed in his hand, he was surprised at not being able to close it; he had a sensation of resistance, but nothing more; he could not say what the object was, what was its form, size, kind, if it was cold or hot, rough or smooth, or even if there was any object there at all. A weight of a kilogramme was tied to his fist with a string without telling him what it was, and he thought some one was pulling his arm.

Here, then, we have two groups of sensations and two groups of nerves as distinct as those of the arm and leg,† and,

---

\* Landry, "*Traité des Paralysies*," i. 195, 182, 199.

† Brown-Séquard, "*Journal de Physiologie*," vi. pp. 124-615. According to Brown-Séquard, "sensitive impressions of pain and touch are transmitted in a cross direction to the spinal marrow, that is to say, the transmission to the brain of impressions arising in one half the body acts in the lateral half of the spinal marrow on the opposite side. On the contrary, impressions of muscular sensation pass without crossing to the anterior part of the spinal marrow." Consequently "the conductors of muscular sensation differ fundamentally from the conductors of other sensitive impressions." And the author adds, "not only do these conductors

we may add, as similar. For the nerves of the muscles, like those of the skin, may give rise to sensations of contact, of cold and heat, of pleasure and pain.\* "Persons wounded by a sword-thrust, or the cut of a bistoury, frequently feel, in addition to the pain of the wound, the chill of the blade and its presence in the depth of the tissues, and, with many paralytics, although the skin may be quite insensible to all kinds of stimulation, a pressure, a shock, the pick of a pin-thrust into the soft parts, are felt as deep-seated impressions of contact, shock, and pain." Besides, these same nerves give us pain when electricity is passed through them, or when they are excited by a very strong muscular contraction; and when excited by the expansion consequent on fatigue and shampooing they give pleasure. In all these respects, their action is the same as that of the nerves of the skin, from which they only differ by terminating in the muscles, and being excited by the stretching out or shortening of the muscles. But here, there is no difference of action, the difference is the excitant; in the strict muscular sensation there is nothing more than a sort of wrenching, similar to the other sensations, and capable, like them, of passing into pain if pushed too far.

Thus we arrive at distinguishing in the nerves of the muscles, as in those of the skin, three, and only three kinds of sensations: those of contact, those of heat and cold, those of pleasure and pain.—And further, we find all three kinds more or less vaguely present wherever there are tactile nerves.

---

not cross in their passage to the spinal marrow, but further, they spring from this organ principally if not entirely by the anterior spinal roots."

There are very strong proofs of this theory in observations made in cases of wounds and lateral alterations of the spinal marrow. We see patients lose on one side, the right for instance, the power of experiencing sensations of touch, of pain, of cold, of heat, of tickling, and preserve on this same side, not only the power of moving their limbs, but also that of directing them exactly, and estimating all the degrees of muscular contraction; the inverse is the case on the left side. (See particularly the cases cited, pp. 238, 582).—In accordance with this theory, the nerves and conductors of muscular sensations are not only distinct from the nerves and conductors of tactile sensations, but, more than this, their anatomical course is different, and we can discover this course in the spinal marrow.

\* Landry, "*Traité des Paralysies*," i. 201.

"The internal surface of the walls of the abdomen feels clearly the motion of the intestines. . . . After a cold injection, a very plain sensation of cold is felt passing in the direction of the ascending and transverse colon."\* The pharynx, œsophagus, and even the stomach, feel with some degree of exactitude the passage, warmth, and presence of food. And, in general, let us review successively the innumerable internal sensations, agreeable, painful, or indifferent, of organic life, those constituting hunger, thirst, and repletion, those accompanying digestion, respiration, circulation, copulation, or speech, those produced by wine, medicines, and various substances introduced into the circulation, besides all the spontaneous sensations, tinglings, itchings, shiverings, all the various hardly definable pains which serve as symptoms of different illnesses, all the special and very delicate sensations of touch we meet with in the conjunctiva, the tongue, and the interior of the nostrils, all the general and blunted sensations of touch such as we find on the surface of the wound after a recent amputation: we shall see that they are sensations of contact, of cold or heat, of pleasure or pain, more or less obscure, more or less ill-defined, more or less spread about, the same in substance, but diversified by their situation, the order of their phases, and the degree of their intensity.† We shall

---

\* Landry, "Traité des Paralysies," i. 201. Longet, "Traité de Physiologie," ii. 179.

† Numbers of sensations which seem to have a special type and to be *sui generis*, are composed of elementary sensations of contact. "If," says M. Landry, "we cover a polished surface with a thin layer of talc and get a person who is not aware of this to pass the tip of his finger over it, he will imagine he is touching a greasy or oily body. . . ."—Again, if we sprinkle some drops of water on a marble table, and then, with our eyes shut, place the tip of a finger alternately on the dry and the wet spots, we shall not be able to distinguish one from the other. There is no special sensation, then, of damp or stickiness, but a *compound sensation of touch*. "This sensation," says M. Gratiolet, "is developed when the skin detaches itself from something *sticking* to it, as, for example, a surface covered with diachylon. It is most clear and distinct at the moment the adhesion comes to an end, and the skin which had been drawn by the surface suddenly returns to its proper state. From this sensation, when it is strong, comes the idea of viscosity; when slight, that of humidity. The contrary notion of dryness is derived from an absolute want of adherence. This is so far the case that when the hand is plunged in water we do not feel this humidity, nor when it is plunged in oil do we feel its oiliness. In fact, bodies which an intermediate layer of water cause to *adhere* to us,

find no other element in them, and, by this first reduction, we bring tactile sensations under three types, and three only.

These types are not only distinct, but separable; each of them, as far at least as sensations of the skin are concerned, may severally be lost, while the other two are retained.\*—In some cases the sensation of pain only is lost. Patients still perceive the other cutaneous sensations, such as heat, contact, tickling, and can recognize the touch of a finger, the brushing of a quill, the contact of a pin; but if, in the same spot, we prick them with the pin, it occasions no pain. "I can feel," said one of them, "that you prick and pinch me, but you do not hurt me." This is carried so far that sometimes the application of a white-hot cauterizing iron gives no pain. A girl, suffering from hysteria, at the Hôpital Saint-Antoine, upset boiling water over her hands, and did not find it out till she saw large blisters rising.—In other cases, sensations of heat and cold are alone wanting. The patient then says:—"I feel the form and consistency of the body touching me, but cannot tell whether it is hot or cold."—Finally, in other cases, the sensation of touch only is wanting. Here, for instance, the patient does not feel small objects placed between the tips of his fingers; but "if pricked there, even superficially, it is plainly felt."—On the other hand, each type of sensation may subsist alone, the other two being lost. Some patients who no longer feel sensations of pain or heat, still feel contact at the same point. Others more numerous, no longer feel sensations of pain and contact, but those of temperature only. Others finally, who can still feel pain, cannot feel heat or contact. It is plain that each of these three types of sensation has its

---

no longer adhere when plunged in water, and so with bodies plunged in oil. . . . The skin is capable of receiving impressions on two layers—the one superficial, the other deep-seated. When the sensibility of the deep-seated layer is brought into play, the sensation of pressure arises."—Gratiolet, *Anatomie Comparée du Système Nerveux*, ii. 409. Landry, "Paralysies," 159, 179.

\* Beau, "Archives Générales de Médecine," Janvier, 1848.—Delacour, thèse, Janvier, 1850.—Landry, "Recherches sur les Sensations Tactiles."—"Traité des Paralysies."—Axenfeld, "Des Névroses," 332.

This separation has not been observed in the muscular sensations; when any of them disappear, the others disappear as well.

special conditions, and when these conditions alone are abolished, or alone preserved, the isolated abolition or preservation of the type ensues. Experience has discovered some among these conditions. If a limb is chilled up to a certain fixed point, it retains the sensation of contact, but ceases to experience that of pain; for instance, "if we apply to the knee a mixture of pounded ice and sea-salt in the proportion of two parts of ice to one of salt, the skin becomes bloodless, and we may cauterize the limb without the patient feeling any other sensation than that of the pressure of the iron." Thus, the sensation of pain is subject to a special condition; to produce it, the circulation of the blood, and therefore the molecular wastings and repairs of the nerve, must go on with a certain degree of speed. With a less degree the nerve is no longer capable of the special type of action which arouses the sensation of pain, though it may still be capable of the special type of action which arouses the sensation of pressure and of contact.—We see that the sensation of pain requires for its production a condition, additional to those required by the sensation of contact; hence it follows that it may readily be abolished without inducing the abolition of the sensation of contact, and that the reverse is not the case; this is in conformity with experience. Persons who have lost all sensations of pain frequently retain sensations of contact; but very seldom do persons who have lost sensations of contact retain those of pain.\*

This instance puts us in the track of the needed explanation. In fact, we have no need to suppose, with many physiologists, that there are three kinds of nerves intended to transmit impressions of contact, of heat and cold, and of pain respectively; each of the three classes being capable of being paralyzed singly, and of thus cutting away from us one kind of sensation without the other kinds being thereby abolished. The only thing which the facts attest is, that the three kinds of sensations have special conditions, and that these con-

---

\* Axenfeld, *ibid.*, 332. "The inverse case is rarely seen; when the sense of touch is lost, that of pain is lost at the same time, or, in other words, the existence of anæsthesia, strictly so called, *almost* invariably implies that of analgesia."

ditions may be singly destroyed.—What are these conditions? We may conceive many kinds.—They may be anatomical; this is the answer of the physiologists, of Landry, Brown-Séquard, and Lhuys. In fact, it is sufficient for the explanation of these isolated abolitions that there be three kinds of nerves; this solution is a manifest one, we are tempted to adopt it. But there are others, for the presence of a special nerve does not necessarily follow from the fact of a special condition.—There are two other possible explanations. First, the condition may be a special state of the same nerve, which would appear to be the case from the experiment in which the frozen knee becomes bloodless. Secondly, the condition may be a special state of the parts surrounding the nerve, and through which the external stimulus acts on the nerve; in this case, the same nerve, under the influence of the same external stimulus, would transmit different sensations, according as the parts between it and the stimulus were in different states. These last solutions are more abstract, but they agree better with the facts.

Weber's experiments appear to me conclusive as to this.\* —If we dip into cold water a large nervous trunk, for instance, the cubital nerve, where it springs from between the two bones at the elbow, we find, in accordance with a well-known law, a sensation in the arm and two last fingers of the hand, occasioned by the nervous action going on at the elbow; now this sensation is not of cold, but simply of pain. Consequently, when we have a sensation of cold, it is not owing to the immediate action of cold on the nerve; for it was not felt just now, when the cold was acting immediately on the cubital nerve. In order to feel it, the cold must act indirectly; that is to say, through certain parts adjacent to the nerve, certain

---

\* Article Tastsinn, 498, in "Handbuch der Physiologie," by Rudolf Wagner.

Cf. Fick, "Anatomie und Physiologie der Sinnes Organe," 23, 30, 42, 43. From the anatomical structure of the organs of touch, he shows, by approximation and hypothesis, the different types of action which excite in the same nerve different sensations, that of heat or cold, that of pressure or contact. "It is probable that the stimulation of the nerves, in the sensation of heat or cold at the sensible periphery of the skin, is not immediately developed by a change of temperature of the nervous substance itself, but by the simultaneous changes supervening in the mechanical relations of the terminal corpuscles."

organs disposed for this purpose ; these act directly on the nerve ; the cold modifies them, and their modification impresses on the nerve a special type of action, which excites in us the special sensation of cold.—If, on the contrary, without paralyzing the nerve, we simply destroy in these adjacent parts the property they have of impressing this rhythm of action on the nerve, we shall cease to have the special sensation of cold ; when the cold begins to act on the nerve, it will no longer excite the special sensation of cold, and will only excite, as we found just now in the case of the cubital nerve, the sensation of pain. This is what happens in certain illnesses. M. Axenfeld writes as to this—"With ataxic persons, whose cases are among those in which want of sensibility is most complete, I have often observed that cold was disagreeable without its being recognized as cold. When we question them as to the nature of their perception, all we can get from them is, 'It hurts me.'"—We are led to the same conclusion by studying the sensations of persons whose bodies present large cicatrices, consequent on amputations or other wounds. "The parts of the skin," says Weber, "in which the tactile organs have been destroyed, and are not completely reproduced, cannot distinguish heat and cold."—Similar experiments point out the presence of similar media in the case of the sensation of pressure. If the cubital nerve between the two bones of the elbow be pressed with the finger, the sensation in the fingers and forearm is not of pressure, but solely of dull pain. "Therefore," says Weber, "the sensation of pressure, and the power of distinguishing its numerous and different degrees, are only possible when the pressure acts on the organs of touch, and, through them, on the extremities of the tactile nerves ; this sensation does not arise when the tactile nerves are directly compressed."—Consequently, the sensation of pressure has for its special condition, not the pressure of the nerve, but a certain modification of certain organs or parts surrounding the nerve. If these organs be alone destroyed, or their capacity for undergoing this modification be alone suppressed, the sensation of pressure will alone be abolished.

Thus, in all cases, what is excited in us is a special type



of action in the nerve, and what excites this special type of action in the nerve is a special modification of its appendages and dependent parts.—Consequently, to explain the three kinds of tactile sensations, and to comprehend how they may be singly abolished, there is no necessity of supposing them excited in us by distinct nerves of three different kinds: this is a gratuitous hypothesis which no vivisection or microscopic observation comes in to confirm. It is enough to admit that the same nerve or group of nerves is capable of many different types or rhythms of action, and that each of these rhythms is directly excited by the special modification which the external agents impress on the parts surrounding the nerve, whether on the tubes containing it, or on the blood washing it, or on some other of its internal accompaniments.

It is not impossible to form a notion of the differences of these rhythms. “Each tactile nervous fibre,” says Fick, “can only transmit one and the same sensation which is capable only of degrees. . . . But ordinary external stimuli do not arrive at these isolated elementary fibres; they come in contact with a group of fibres taken together. We may suppose that heat reaches these fibres *in a different order* from pressure.”—“In fact, the nearer we draw to the true elementary sensation, the more does the difference between the sensation of heat and that of a mechanical stimulus seem to vanish. For instance, we can hardly distinguish a prick with a very fine needle from the touch of a spark of fire.”—There is a further analogy; we know that the sensations of heat and cold, like those of pressure, become, when carried beyond a certain point, pure pain.—“Lastly, place on the skin some imperfectly conducting body; for instance, a piece of paper, pierced with a hole of from 2 to 5 millimetres in diameter; through this hole apply to the skin, first, a mechanical stimulus, a pointed piece of wood, a pencil or a flock of wool; then, a heated stimulus, such as the radiation from a piece of hot metal.” The two sensations, when thus limited to a minimum of nervous elements, are so similar that the subject of the experiment frequently mistakes the sensation of heat for one of contact, and that of contact for one of heat,—On the contrary, when the nervous elements are numerous, as when a large

surface of the skin is subjected to the same experiments, there is not this confusion.—Plainly, then, here as before, the ordinary sensation is a whole; and, here as before, two whole sensations may be apparently irreducible to one another, though their elements may be the same; for this it is enough if the little composing sensations differ in number, magnitude, order and duration; their wholes form masses indivisible by consciousness, and seem simple facts, differing in essence and opposed in quality.

It is very probable that the sensation of pain is no more than a maximum; for all the others, pressure, tickling, cold, heat, change into pain when carried beyond a certain limit.—It is very probable that the sensation of pressure only differs from contact because in pressure “the terminal corpuscles of the deep-seated system are also engaged, while in contact they are not so.”\*—The sensation of tickling is most probably nothing more than a high degree of the sensation of touch; for, writes M. Axenfeld, “I have always found it disappear with the sensation of touch.” And, in fact, the contact producing it, though apparently feeble, is actually excessive; the feather of the quill, or the piece of string which, when drawn slowly along the cheek or across the nose, grazes imperceptibly the extremity of a nervous papilla, evidently excites considerable activity in the terminal molecule of the papilla, for the sensation is a most vivid one and lasts for some seconds after the touch. The alteration of equilibrium in the nerve indicated by it is greater and slower in disappearing than when a pressure drives back uniformly a whole group of papillæ; if the whole displacement of flesh is then much greater, the relative displacement of the nervous molecules is much less. This is why the final sensation, if of less extent, is far more vivid.

To sum up; all that observation shows us in the nerves of touch, are different systems of transmissible molecular dis-

---

\* See Fick and Gratiolet at the places mentioned. Cicatrices have no sensation of heat, and only a dull sensation of pain, but they retain the sensation of pressure. This arises from the terminal epithelial corpuscles being lost, while the deep-seated corpuscles of Pacini are still there.

placements. Composed of similar elements, they constitute dissimilar types or rhythms; undefinable by us in the present state of science, they are, like all displacements, definable in themselves, by the speed, magnitude, and order of their elements; and we may admit that, according to the order of their elements, they arouse in us sensations, sometimes of temperature, sometimes of contact or pressure; that at their minimum of speed and magnitude, they arouse feeble sensations of pressure, contact, and temperature; at their maximum of speed and magnitude, they excite in us the sensation of pain.

V. Let us attempt to cast a general glance over all these facts. A sensation of which we are conscious is a compound of more simple sensations, which are themselves composed of others still simpler, and so on. Thus the sensation produced by a harmony of thirds, *ut mi*, is made up of two *simultaneous* sensations of sound, *ut* and *mi*. Again, the sensation of *ut*, like that of *mi*, is made up of a comparatively strong sensation, that of *ut*, with the addition of other comparatively feeble simultaneous sensations, those of the superior harmonics. As to this comparatively strong sensation and these comparatively weak ones, each is made up of shorter *successive* sensations, which, when isolated, are still perceptible by consciousness, and whose number is equal to that of the vibrations of the air divided by two. Each of these little sensations is, in its turn, composed of two *successive* elementary sensations, which, taken singly, are not perceptible to consciousness. Finally, each of these elementary sensations is itself an infinite series of *successive* sensations, equally imperceptible to consciousness, infinitely short, and increasing from a minimum to a maximum through an infinite number of intermediate stages. The whole results in the sensation of the chord *ut mi*, a compound of the fifth degree, just as a product in organic chemistry.—So, again, the sensation of white is composed in the first place of as many partial and *simultaneous* sensations of white as there are nervous fibres excited in the retina. Secondly, every partial sensation of white is constituted by *simultaneous* sensations of two, or more than two, complementary colors, for instance, yellow and indigo. Thirdly, the sensation

of yellow, like that of indigo, is made up of three elementary and *simultaneous* sensations of color, red, violet, and green, each having a particular degree of intensity. Fourthly, each of these three elementary sensations is composed of *successive* and continuous sensations of the same color, sensations still perceptible to consciousness, and so numerous that there are at least a million of them in a second. Fifthly, each of these successive sensations, so prodigiously short, is, according to all analogies, composed like those of sound, of still shorter *successive* sensations, imperceptible to consciousness, like the primitive sensations of sound. Finally, if we follow out our analogies to the end, we are led to conceive the sensation excited by each elementary wave of ether on the model of the sensation excited by each elementary wave of air, that is to say, as an infinite series of *successive* sensations infinitely short and increasing from a minimum to a maximum through an infinite number of degrees. Such is the sensation of white, a compound of the fifth or sixth degree.

This analysis brings three important principles to light.—The first is that two successive sensations which, singly, are insensible to consciousness, may, when combined, form a total sensation which consciousness perceives.—The second is that a sensation indecomposable by consciousness, and apparently simple, is a compound of successive simultaneous sensations which are themselves highly complex.—The third is that two sensations of the same kind and differing only in the magnitude, order, and number of their elements, appear to consciousness as irreducible to one another, and as possessed of special qualities absolutely different.—Armed with these three principles, we can conceive the nature and diversity of the sensations of the other senses. In accordance with the second and third, smells, which like the color white, appear simple sensations, are, like white, compound sensations, and the different smells, which like different tones, seem irreducible to one another, are, like these different tones, wholes, which, composed of the same elements, differ only in the magnitude, order, and number of these elements. We may form the same conclusion with respect to tastes, and the sensations of touch.—But here a difference appears.—With smells and

tastes an advance may be made which cannot be made with sensations of touch. An idea may be formed of the elementary sensations of which sensations of smell and taste are constituted, but not of those of which tactile sensations are constituted. We prove that the special and immediate antecedent which sets the olfactory nerves and gustatory nerves in action is a system of molecular displacements; we conceive his system of displacements to be represented in the nerves by a corresponding system of nervous actions, and to represent itself to us by a corresponding system of elementary sensations of taste and smell; we define, to a certain extent, these unknown elementary sensations by saying that they correspond to molecular movements of chemical action, as the known elementary sensations of hearing or sight correspond to waves of the undulations of air or ether.—There is nothing similar in the case of touch; we have no means of determining or conjecturing the rhythm of action impressed on the tactile nerves and transmitted by them to the nervous centres. The elementary nervous action, and consequently the elementary tactile sensation, remain beyond our grasp. All we know is that there is such an action, and therefore such a sensation; for whatever be the stimulus, the tactile nerve and the centres it is connected with always act alike and in a way peculiar to them: their rhythm of action is special and unalterable; this is proved by the rhythm invariably exciting in us the same kind of sensation, and from this kind of sensation being excited by it alone.

Here are great gaps; they will only be filled when physiology is sufficiently advanced to determine the form and speed of the molecular movement, whose repetition constitutes nervous acting. Meanwhile the theory of sensation is like a building in part completed, and in part planned out.—Still this incomplete construction is sufficient to give us an idea of the whole. We see that the innumerable sensations which we refer to one sense may be reduced in each case to an elementary sensation whose different groupings make up the different sensations of that sense. We conceive, in accordance with the three principles laid down, that the elementary sensations of the five senses may themselves be wholes, composed of the

same elements, without other difference than that of the number, order, and magnitude of these elements, and therefore, like the distinct sensations of hearing or sight, they may be reduced to a single type. If so, there would be but one elementary sensation capable of various rhythms, as there is but one nervous texture capable of various types.\*—And in fact, whatever may be the structure of the nerves and nervous centres whose action excites a sensation, however various this structure may be supposed, that which is transmitted from one end of the nerve to the other up to the ultimate nervous centre, is never more than a molecular displacement, more or less rapid, extensive, and complex. A particle had a certain situation with respect to others; this situation changes, that is all; at the limit of all the sciences relating to bodies we invariably find mechanics. So that the different nervous actions which excite different sensations, can only be conceived as systems of movements. Thus all these actions, though differing in quantity, are the same in quality.—Now since, by the known correspondence between the sensation and the nervous action, sensations different in quantity are the same in quality, we arrive, by deduction, at the result foreshadowed by analogy.—At the foundation of all bodily events we find an infinitesimal event, imperceptible to the senses, movement, whose degrees and complications constitute the rest, whether the phenomena be physical, chemical, or physiological. At the foundation of all moral events, we guess the presence of an infinitesimal event, imperceptible to consciousness, whose degrees and complications make up all

---

\* Fick, "Lehrbuch der Anatomie und Physiologie der Sinnesorgane," 5. Der Erregungsvorgang, welche Form er auch immer haben mag, ist in allen nervösen Elementen gleicher Art, also ins besondere, in allen Nervenfasern, derselbe, sei dieser Faser im Hirn, im Rückenmark, oder in einem peripherischen Nervenstamm. . . . Indessen ist doch sehr wahrscheinlich, dass der Erregungsvorgang in den nervösen Elementen in gewissen Drehungen oder Umgruppierungen electromotorischen moleculle besteht.

See also Dr. Onimus, "De la Vibration Nerveuse et de l'action reflexe dans les Phénomènes Intellectuels."

Many physiologists admit that this displacement of the nervous molecules may be compared to a vibration or to the swing of a pendulum. At all events, there is an order of positions, which is altered, and then re-established.

the rest, sensations, images, and ideas. What is this second event, and can we reduce one of these events to the other?

Meanwhile we have reached the foundations of human knowledge, and are capable of estimating their solidity.—We have seen that our senses are idioms, of which four are special and the last general. A sensation is a mental representative, the internal sign of the external fact exciting it. The special sensations of sight, hearing, smell, and taste are delicate and limited representatives, each of which severally translates accurately, by its characteristics, a special order of external facts. The general sensations of touch are coarse universal representatives translating, by their characteristics, nearly all the orders of external facts. Thus, every normal sensation corresponds to some external fact which it transcribes with greater or less approximation, and whose internal *substitute* it is. By this correspondence, internal events agree with external, and sensations, which are the elements of our ideas, find themselves naturally and beforehand adjusted to things, which adjustment will, further on, enable our ideas to be in conformity with things, and consequently true.—On the other hand, we have seen that images are *substitutes* for sensations, past, future, or possible, that individual names are *substitutes* for images and sensations momentarily absent, that the more simple general names are *substitutes* for images and impossible sensations, that the more complex general names are *substitutes* for other names, and so on.—It seems then that nature has undertaken to provide in us representatives of her events, and has effected her purpose in the most economical way. She has provided, first, the sensation which translates the fact with more or less precision and delicacy; then, the surviving sensation capable of indefinite revival, that is to say, the image, which repeats the sensation, and consequently translates the fact itself; then, the name, a sensation or image of a particular kind, which, by virtue of its acquired properties, represents the general character of many similar facts, and replaces the impossible images and sensations which would be necessary to translate this isolated character. By means of this correspondence, of this repetition, and this replacement,

external facts, present, past, future, special, general, simple, or complex, have their internal representatives, and this mental representative is always the same internal event, more or less compounded, repeated, and disguised.

.



## BOOK IV.

## OF THE PHYSICAL CONDITIONS OF MENTAL EVENTS.

## CHAPTER I.

## OF THE FUNCTIONS OF THE NERVOUS CENTRES.

I. WE must stop here and change our route; we have come to the end of psychological analysis; let us see how far physiological analysis will carry us.

We have explored, as geologists, a great country, from its highest peaks to its seaboard, and, through all the accidents of surface, have recognized one and the same stratum supporting all the different varieties of soil. From our most abstract ideas to our crudest sensations, we have constantly found the same fundamental layer; ideas are sensations or images of a certain kind; images themselves are sensations capable of spontaneous revival. At the foundation of all these, we invariably find the sensation. But, when we come to the sensation, we are at the limits of the mental world; between it and the physical world there is a gulf, and, as it were, a deep sea; we can no longer make our accustomed borings; the water prevents us from examining whether the layer we have traced from end to end of the land goes on beneath it to rejoin the other continent. In five places, on the territory of the five senses, we have attempted to step over the ordinary bounds; with respect to the sensations of sight and hearing, we have pushed on to a considerable distance; with those of taste and smell, some advance has been made; and we see that, later on, a similar one may be accomplished with sensations of touch.—From all these indications, we have concluded that the sensations of each sense, and probably those of the different senses, though apparently differing in quality, dif-

fer in quantity only, that the same elementary sensations may, by their differences of number, intensity, and proximity, make up whole sensations which consciousness pronounces irreducible to one another, and which therefore, different as they may apparently be, probably comprise one and the same fact, a kind of primitive rock whose different aspects are owing to the different depths of the water covering it. We have further proved that this rock, though invisible at a certain depth of water, still subsists there and is indefinitely prolonged, since at a certain degree of brevity or weakness, the sensation, though imperceptible to consciousness, is nevertheless real, and is found to be made up of infinitesimal elements. Beyond, then, the psychological world observable by consciousness, there extends to infinity a psychological world to which consciousness does not attain. Here then we part from consciousness, which can teach us nothing further, and pass to the other continent, to see if anatomy and physiology will not, on their side, indicate to us some projecting rock, connecting itself with ours, beneath the obscure sea which appears forever to separate the countries.

II. Let us look then for the physical facts on which our mental events depend, and first, for the conditions of sensation. These are direct or indirect, and make up a chain whose earlier links act only when the last one is affected.

Let us trace this chain. In the first place, there is the physical external event, the undulation of air or ether, the chemical action of the liquid or volatile body, the mechanical pressure, the change of temperature, which by dilatation or contraction of the parts arrives at affecting the nerve. This condition is plainly but an accessory and distant one. Though the nerve be so constructed as to translate more specially external movements of a certain type, it has its own type of action; it is a spring which, however it be set going, works in one way.\*—The optic nerve when excited gives no other sensations than those of light; its various stimuli result in the same effect. An undulation of ether strikes it, and we have sensations of color. It is excited by compressing the

---

\* Mueller, "Physiology" (tr. Baly), ii, 1069.

eyeball, and we see brilliant circles, which are termed *phosphènes*. It is divided in a surgical operation, and at the moment of its section, the patient sees sudden large bodies of light. An electric current is applied to it, and we see vivid flashes of light. Digitalis is absorbed into the blood, and the blood so altered excites in it sensations of flickering light.—So again the acoustic nerve gives no other sensations than those of sound,\* whatever be the external event which sets it in operation, whether an undulation of air, electricity, irritation of the blood, or a narcotic absorbed into the blood.—So it is with the other senses, and notably with that of touch. The tactile nerves serve better than any others to prove this; for they are excited by a number of different external events, mechanical contact or pressure, the chemical action of caustics, of the air, and blood, change of temperature, undulations of air or ether, section with the bistoury; their action invariably results in a sensation of contact, or pressure, of temperature, or of pure pain.

Not only has each kind of nerve its special action, but the action of each kind is different. The external event may be the same, but, if it sets in motion nerves of different kinds, the sensations excited will be different. The same electric action arouses, according to the nerve it sets in action, here a sensation of light, there of sound, elsewhere again one of shock or of pricking. The same violent blow arouses a sensation of pressure and pain through the tactile nerves, of light through the medium of the optic nerve, of sound through the medium of the acoustic nerve. The same narcotic, introduced into the blood, arouses flashings when acting on the optic nerve, ringings when acting on the acoustic nerve, formication when acting on the tactile nerves.—Thus each distinct kind of nerve has its individual and distinct mode of action.

Hence it follows that all external excitants may be absent; if the nerve enters into action of itself, we should have the

---

\* That is, in the Limacean branch. See Flourens's experiments. On the other hand, it is sensible to pain in the vestibular branch; this then belongs to the group of tactile nerves.

same sensation in their absence as in their presence.—And, in fact, this is what happens: we experience without their concurrence a number of sensations which we term subjective or consecutive. They are especially numerous in the case of sight; the excitation of the optic nerve, and the consequent sensation of colors or of light, lasts after the undulation of ether has ceased to impress the retina; in such a case we continue to see, with closed eyelids, or with the eye turned in a different direction, the object we were first looking at; according to the circumstances, the object is uncolored or colored, of persistent or of changing color; and these illusions are subject to known laws by which a multitude of singular facts are explicable.\*—The same kinds of spontaneous sensations are found in the sense of hearing. “Such are the ringings and buzzings in the ears heard by persons of delicate nerves and patients with disease of the auditory nerve; such, too, is the noise heard in the ears for some time after a long journey in a noisy vehicle.”† Subjective sensations of taste and smell are not so easy to detect. If some patients are continually complaining of smelling fetid odors, it is not certain that the origin of their sensation is in the nerve itself; it may possibly be found in the nervous centres.—But there is nothing more common than spontaneous action of the nerves of touch; it is enough to mention neuralgia, strictly so called; the simple action of the nerve, in the absence of all appreciable excitants, arouses, maintains, and then revives the keenest and most various sensations of pain.

This is why, if the state of the nerve changes, though the excitant continue the same, the sensation changes in degree, or even in quality. For instance, if the nerve has become unduly excitable, the least stimulus develops an extreme action, and the sensation is of terrible intensity; this is the case with the unfortunate patients who suffer from hyperæsthesia of the optic, acoustic, or tactile nerves. If, on the other hand, the nerve has become less excitable, or has ceased to be excitable at all, the strongest stimuli will only arouse in

---

\* Helmholtz, “*Handbuch der Physiologischen Optik.*” 2<sup>me</sup> partie, §§ 22–25

† Mueller (tr. Baly), ii. 1072, 1210, 1310.

it weak or imperceptible sensations; this happens when the nerve is divided, tied, benumbed with cold, or paralyzed by illness. Finally, if the nerve has become excitable in a different way, its action, though induced by the same stimulus, is different, and the sensation is no longer the same; in indigestion or fever, all kinds of food have an earthy or bitter taste.—In short, the direct condition of the sensation is the action or molecular motion of the nerve; neither external events nor the other internal events of the living body matter much; they only act by means of the movement they excite; in themselves, they do nothing; they may be dispensed with. If the action of the nerve were always spontaneous, as it sometimes is; if this action were still produced according to the ordinary order and degree, the external world, and all within us excepting the nervous system, might be annihilated; we should still have the same sensations, and consequently the same images and the same ideas. Let us look, then, more closely into this nervous action, since there is no sensation without it, and since it is sufficient of itself to excite sensation.

III. When a sensitive nerve commences to act, a molecular movement is propagated through its whole course till it reaches the nervous centres.\* The nerve is a conductor, just as the air which transmits the oscillations of a vibrating string, or the iron wire which transmits electric action. Two experiments prove this.—If it is compressed, tied or cut at any point between the nervous centres and the spot excited, there is no longer any sensation; in this case the nervous centres are intact, the terminal extremity of the nerve acts as before; the central part of the nerve, then, is what has ceased to act; therefore, it was previously acting; therefore when, in consequence of a terminal excitation, a sensation is produced, the nerve has acted in all its segments and through all its course.—On the other hand, in all parts of its course, this action results in the same effect.† At whatever point it may be irritated, the

---

\* This movement is produced in the central filament of the nerve, termed the axis-cylinder. It is the only essential part of the nerve. Vulpian, "*Leçons sur la Physiologie du Système Nerveux*," p. 55.

† Mueller, "*Physiology*" (tr. Baly), i. 686. Of the laws of action of sensitive nerves.

final sensation is the same. This extends so far that sometimes our associated images localize the sensation in parts which are insensible or absent. "There are kinds of paralysis in which the limbs are absolutely insensible to external irritations, though the severest pains are felt there." The fact is, the nerves which supply these limbs, though insensible at their extremities, are still irritable and irritated in the higher parts of their course. For the same reason, any section, compression or irritation of a nervous trunk excites a sensation which appears to be situated in the parts to which the branches and terminal fibres of the trunk lead. If the arm be compressed with a tourniquet till it is insensible to excitations from without, and if the nervous trunk between the two bones of the elbow be then pressed, a keen sensation will be felt similar to that of an electric shock, and this sensation appears to be situated in the part whose nerves are benumbed. Every one has heard of the illusions of persons who have lost limbs. "These illusions persist and retain the same intensity through the whole of life; we may convince ourselves of this by questioning persons who have suffered an amputation a long time after they have undergone the operation. They are most vivid at the time of the inflammation of the stump and nervous trunks; the patients then complain of very severe pains throughout the limb which they have lost. After the cure there frequently remains for life a feeling of formication, or even of pain, seated apparently in the non-existent external parts. These sensations are not vague, for the patient feels pains or pricking in some particular spot, the heel, the sole, or the back of the foot, the skin, etc. They end by becoming accustomed to it, and finally cease to perceive it; still, if attention be called to it, the sensation reappears, and is often felt very distinctly in the heel, the fingers, the sole of the foot, the hand," etc. In many cases, after seven, twelve, or even twenty years, the sensation is as plain as on the first day.—We see that for the purpose of exciting the sensation, the action of nerve is itself accessory only; it is only a medium; if the molecular movement which is propagated along its course is effective, it is simply because it excites another molecular movement in the nervous centres; just as the electric action that runs along

the telegraph wire has no importance till it arrives at its destination and moves the needle of the dial-plate.

What is this molecular movement which is propagated throughout the conducting nerve? We cannot tell; all we know are some of its characteristics.\* We prove that in the sensitive nerves, though its usual course is in the direction of the centres, it may also be directed towards the extremities. If we engraft the end of a rat's tail into the skin of its back, and then, when the grafting process is completed, cut the basilar portion of the tail about a centimetre from the root; after some months, if the grafted tail be pinched, the animal feels it, and turns round to bite; the irritation of the nerve, which, before the operation, acted in a centripetal direction, now acts in a centrifugal one.—We can further prove that the molecular movement is the same in a motor nerve and in a nerve of sensation. For if we unite end to end the fibres of a motor nerve, as the hypoglossal, with those of a sensitive nerve, like the lingual, on the one hand, the irritation of the sensitive nerve is visibly propagated along the motor nerve, and produces muscular contractions; while, on the other hand, it is very probable that the irritation of the motor nerve is propagated along the sensitive nerve, and excites pain.—We finally establish that “every excitation applied to any part of the length of a nervous fibre is immediately and simultaneously transmitted in two directions, centripetal and centrifugal,” and we have some indications as to the velocity of this transmission.†—The conclusion from all this is, that “the intimate phenomena caused by an excitation of the nervous fibres are certainly identical, whether those fibres are motor, sensitive, or sympathetic.” If the final effect be different, it arises from the different ramifications of the nervous fibres, some being in connection with muscles, and others, with particular parts of the nervous centres; just as similar wires, which are the theatre of similar electrical phenomena, produce according to the

---

\* Vulpian, *op. cit.*, 102, Experiments of Helmholtz, *ib.*, 283; of Bert, *ib.*, 287; of Philipeaux and Vulpian, *ib.*, 290.

† According to the most recent experiments, it is twenty-nine metres a second in the nerves of the human body. It varies with the surrounding temperature, and is not uniform throughout the length of the nerve.

apparatus they are connected with, sometimes the ring of a bell, sometimes the displacement of a needle, sometimes the impact of a handle.

Hence it follows that the immediate condition of the sensations found in the nervous centres; where there is produced a molecular movement of unknown nature, without which the sensation cannot arise, and which is of itself sufficient to give rise to it. And this, in fact, is what happens in very many cases. Many sensations arise in us without the intervention of the nerves, and by the simple excitation of the nervous centres. Such are hallucinations, strictly so called, of which we have seen numerous examples,\* and, in which cases, we can, on most occasions, neither prove nor conjecture the existence of any irritation of the extremity or any portion of the course of the nerve.—I have described the visions which precede sleep, and which any one may observe in himself; in such a case, we close our eyes, we discard all excitation from without, we pacify all the nerves, and, as might be expected, in the universal stillness of all the conductors which usually set the brain in action, our vague and feeble images become intense and clear; they are turned into sensations; we dream, we see absent objects. Excepting in the absence of objects and the inaction of the nerves, our state is the same then as in the cases of ordinary sensation; the brain is then acting as in the case of ordinary sensation; and it alone is acting, owing to the absence of objects and the inactivity of the nerves.—When it is excited directly and alone, hallucinations are produced; that is to say, spontaneous sensations with their associated images; and this is what happens when the brain is inflamed, or irritated by haschich.—Besides, medical observers have recorded many instances of patients some of whose nerves have been more or less completely destroyed, though the hallucinations corresponding to these nerves have been perfect.† Esquirol mentions among other cases that of “a Jewess, thirty-eight years old, blind and insane, who never-

---

\* Book ii. chap. i.

† See Griesinger, “*Traité des Maladies Mentales*,” 101-5, for numerous examples.



theless saw the most extraordinary objects. She died suddenly; I found the optic nerves atrophied from their point of intersection to the points where they enter the eyeballs; in this case the transmission of impressions was clearly impossible.” —“Two persons had each of them lost an eye by phthisis of the eyeball, and in their cases hallucinations were produced as readily on the side on which the eye was lost as on that of the sound eye.” —“We have at present in the Salpêtrière,” says Esquirol, “two women who are absolutely deaf, and who have no other delusion than that of hearing the voices of different persons, with whom they dispute night and day,” —Strictly it might be objected that in these instances the central and as yet intact portion of the nerve is the starting-point of the irritation; but this is not probable; the hallucination is too systematic; if it proceeded from the nerve, it would be requisite that its different fibres should enter into action in the complex order and with the exact degree which an external excitant could alone impose on them. “A direct irritation,” says Griesinger, “may certainly occasion luminous patches, globes of flame, and colored figures in the retina, but not complex forms, such as houses, men, trees; it may determine buzzings and noises, loud or otherwise, in the ear, but not actual words or tunes.” —The distinction is still more clearly marked in the hallucinations following the use of the microscope; the details of which I give from a letter written me by one of our most distinguished micrographists, M. Robin. “I have remarked,” says he, “that after having looked through a microscope for some time, and especially when I have been aided by a strong light, the figures of the objects observed persist when I close my eyes.—They still persist whether I direct my eyes on the mahogany table holding my instruments, or on my drawing-board, which is of a grayish-blue, or on my drawing-paper.—They persist for about two or three minutes, oscillating about in a narrow circle; after diminishing in size and then disappearing they reappear, though paler; after two or three reappearances, more and more faint, they cease to reappear.—They disappear more readily when I rest my eyes on a white paper than when I turn or rest them on my table, which is of dark mahogany.—I see them of a grayish

color, just as the images of objects seen under the microscope. These images are the shadow of the objects, projecting itself on the retina, which is brightly lighted up around them in the circular field of the microscope, just like *the Chinese shadows of the magic lantern*." In my opinion, adds M. Robin, it is not the retina which continues and recommences to act in the absence of the object ; " it is the cerebral centre of visual perception," which having once acted, recommences two or three times to act of its own accord. " I do not think the external extremities of nerves of sensibility, or organs of impression, are capable of such spontaneous action as to transmit the form, color, etc., of an object to the perceptive centre ; but, on the other hand, the centre of perception itself may return spontaneously to a preceding state of activity, under the influence of some temporary congestion of its vessels, such as is produced by the prolonged use of the microscope, or the ingestion of the alkaloids of opium, or of belladonna, absinthe," etc. In fact, diseases of the eye with congestion of the retina, but unaccompanied by meningitis, do not recall to the scene images of this kind, but entirely different ones ; to arouse these, there must be meningitis, the intoxication of opium or absinthe, that is to say, irritation of the nervous centres.—To sum up, irritation of the nerves and that of the nervous centres are recognizable by symptoms of marked difference. " The first, which we may term pseudæsthesia of the peripheral extremities, is characterized by luminous sparks and flashes, by noises, ticklings," and other isolated sensations, not forming a system and not corresponding to any possible combination of external characters. " The second, which we may term pseudæsthesia of the perceptive centres," is characterized by the persistence or revival of complete images, like those of the microscope—that is to say, by hallucinations or spontaneous and organized sensations of color and relief, of harmonized and articulate sounds, corresponding to a possible combination of external characters.

IV. We have then finally settled that the necessary and sufficient condition of the sensation and therefore of images, is a certain action or molecular movement of the nervous centres, that is to say, of the encephalon ; in fact, all

nerves of sensation terminate there, either directly, as is the case with the cranial nerves, or indirectly, as the rachidian nerves, through the medium of the conducting parts of the spinal marrow.\*—We must now inquire, what among the different parts of the encephalon are those whose action is the necessary and sufficient condition of sensation and of images? For this purpose physiologists employ vivisections, and their experiments are very decisive in the matter. Let us first consider the pure sensation.

If the reader will examine a preparation of the encephalon, or at all events the figures of some large anatomical atlas, he will find that the spinal marrow at its upper extremity swells out into a bulb termed *Medulla Oblongata* or *rachidian bulb*, with which the encephalon commences. We may cut away from an animal the whole encephalon excepting this bulb; the animal will still execute a number of systematic and automatic movements, which are termed reflex, and which are produced by the different segments of the marrow without the intervention of the encephalon.† For instance, it swallows food, the muscles of its face still contract in an expressive manner, it articulates vocal sounds, and goes through all the movements of respiration; but it can no longer experience sensations strictly so called. It utters cries, but mechanically only; it no longer suffers pain. Let a transverse section be made above the bulb. "The bulb and marrow are then isolated from the encephalic centre, just as if the brain and annular protuberance were removed; this is what I do to this rat. I now pinch its paw; you hear a short slight cry. I do so again; another similar cry. I now wound deeply the rachidian bulb; I again pinch a hind limb; there are reflex movements, but there is no longer any cry. . . . Observe the character of the cries you have just heard, they are *reflex cries*, and very different from cries indicating pain." There is in the bulb, as in the different segments of the marrow, a mechanism capable of acting, either directly by the irritation of the sensitive nerves it receives, or indi-

---

\* Brown-Séguard, "Journal de Physiologie," and see *ante* book iii. chapter 2, p. 136.

† Vulpian, *op. cit.*, 496, 510.

rectly by the effect of the sensations aroused in the other parts of the encephalon. When the other parts are cut away, the bulb continues to act, and the cry is produced, without any sensation having been excited.—Let us next preserve, not only the rachidian bulb, but also the part of the encephalon adjoining it—the *Pons Varolii* or annular protuberance through which the fascia of the bulb pass, and remove the remaining parts, that is to say, the cerebral lobes, the corpora striata, the optic thalami, and the corpora quadrigemina. “When this is effected on dogs and rabbits, they manifest by violent agitation and *plaintive cries*, the pain they feel when the trigeminal nerve is pinched, or when they are subjected to keen external stimuli. If the protuberance be then deeply wounded, there are no more cries or agitation, even under violent pinchings; and yet the circulation, respiration, and other functions continue to be accomplished for some time. . . . I have repeated M. Longet’s experiments, and have obtained precisely the same results as his. This young rabbit has, strictly speaking, no brain, neither corpora striata, nor optic thalami; all there is left in its skull are the annular protuberance, the rachidian bulb, the cerebellum, and the corpora quadrigemina.\* I pinch its tail sharply; you see it is at once violently agitated. I pinch its ear, its lip; similar agitation, and similar cries. Can these cries be considered as reflex phenomena?”—By no means. “You have seen animals from which the whole encephalon, excepting the rachidian bulb, has been removed; these animals continued to cry when pinched; but what a difference between their cries and those we hear when we have left the protuberance intact! In the first case, each excitation of a still sensible part excited a short cry, single for each separate excitation, always the same, and something like the sounds given out by children’s toys when pressed in a certain way—in a word, deprived of all kind of signification. There we have the reflex cry. But

---

\* Other experiments show that the cerebellum does not intervene in sensation; the functions of the corpora quadrigemina will be presently explained. Meanwhile this experiment may be considered as conclusive as if the cerebellum and corpora quadrigemina had also been removed.

here, with this rabbit, what a difference we find! When a sensible part is irritated the cry is not a short but a prolonged one, unmistakably plaintive, and, after a single excitation, the animal gives several successive cries, precisely similar to the cries of pain which another uninjured rabbit gives when it is subjected to sharp irritation."\* Hence action of the protuberance is the necessary and sufficient condition of tactile sensations.—It is also the necessary and sufficient condition of sensations of hearing. "A certain call made with the lips, of rough purring noise like that of an angry cat, will always startle an uninjured rat. Now here is a rat from which the brain, strictly so called, the corpora striata, and the optic thalami have been removed. You see him—he is very quiet; I make the noise I have just described, and the animal at once gives a sudden jump. Every time I make a similar noise you see a similar jump. Those of you who have noticed the effects of being so startled upon an uninjured rat will recognize that they are of precisely the same character as we see here."† Finally, the action of the protuberance is also the necessary and sufficient conditions of sensations of taste. "I have removed the cerebral lobes from kittens and puppies; and on pouring down their throats a concentrated decoction of colocynth, I have seen them go through abrupt motions of mastication, and contort their lips, as if to rid themselves of a disagreeable sensation. The same movements were observed in an uninjured animal of the same species, when forced to swallow the same bitter decoction."‡ There is, then, a special centre, the protuberance, whose action is the necessary and sufficient condition of many kinds of sensations.—There are other similar centres which perform the same office with respect to other sensations. For the sensations of sight, they are the corpora quadrigemina or bigemina. "Here is a pigeon whose cerebral lobes are entirely removed, but whose corpora bigemina remain; when I suddenly put my hand near it, it makes a slight movement of the head to avoid the threatened danger. The sight then is re-

---

\* Vulpian, op. cit., 541. Experiments of Longet. † Vulpin, op. cit., 548.

‡ Longet, "Traité de Physiologie," ii. 243. Vulpian, 548.

tained. We have here a phenomenon analogous to that which we noticed in the case of the rat deprived of its cerebral lobes, when we induced a sudden jump by means of certain sudden noises. Here again we have an example of sensations without the intervention of the brain strictly so called.\*—If, on the other hand, we leave intact the cerebral lobes, and injure or destroy the corpora quadrigemina, the animal becomes blind, preserving, nevertheless, all its ideas, its instincts, and its other sensations. The corpora quadrigemina, then, furnish by their action the sufficient and necessary condition of visual sensations, and of visual sensations only.—As to sensations of smell, experiments have not yet been made to determine the portion of encephalon whose action is their necessary and sufficient condition; but all anatomical and physiological analogies lead us to the belief that, for them, as for the other four kinds of sensations, there is a centre, distinct from the cerebral lobes themselves.—When excited by the action of the sensitive nerves, the cells of these centres perform their functions in an unknown manner, and this special molecular movement, without which there is no sensation, is in itself sufficient to arouse the sensation.

V. It must be observed that we have here been dealing with pure sensations, or with what physiologists call *crude unelaborated* sensations, that is to say, with sensations unprovided with the faculty of spontaneous revival, and therefore with the faculties of being associated, of forming fixed groups, and of furnishing means for the higher operations of intelligence. We must now look to another class of experiments, and here again the concordance of physiology with psychology is as complete as unforeseen. Psychological analysis had already separated the functions; physiological analysis separates the organs. The first placed on one side pure sensations, on the other images or reviving sensations; the second puts on one side the corpora quadrigemina, the protuberance, and perhaps another ganglion, whose activity arouses pure sensations, and on the other side the cerebral

---

\* Vulpian, 557. Experiments of Flourens and Longet.

lobes, whose action arouses images, that is to say, reverberates, prolongs, and associates sensations.

If the reader will look again at a prepared encephalon, he will see that, from the anterior angles of the annular protuberance, spring two large white columns, called cerebral peduncles or *crura cerebri*, whose fibres terminate in the swellings called optic thalami and corpora striata, which are intermediate organs to the cerebral lobes and the protuberance. In fact, other fibres start from these organs and terminate in the cerebral lobes.\* As to the cerebral lobes themselves, they constitute, particularly in the superior animals, the greatest part of the encephalon. In man they are enormous, and occupy by far the largest part of the cranium. Comparative anatomy has already foreshadowed their use by showing us that in the animal series their volume increases at the same rate as intelligence; we shall, moreover, find that their most important part is the outer layer, composed of a gray substance; and it is a no less significant circumstance that, as we ascend the zoological scale, this surface increases much more quickly than the volume owing to the very numerous swellings and anfractuosités which bend it into folds and are called circumvolutions.† In man himself, atrophy of the cerebral lobes and absence of circumvolutions are always accompanied with idiocy; "when a brain is below a certain volume and certain weight, it must necessarily have belonged to a person affected with imbecility . . . ;" and, in general, if we compare different races of men, "the volume of the encephalon is in proportion to the degree of intelligence."—All these presumptions are confirmed by our operations on living animals; it is sufficient to resume the preceding experiments;‡ when we have removed the cerebral lobes, the rest of the encephalon being intact, pure sensations still, as we have seen, subsist; but they alone subsist. The animal still experiences crude sensations of light by means of the corpora quadrigemina, crude

---

\* Vulpian, 652, following Koelliker.

† Broca, "Sur le Volume et la Forme du Cerveau, suivant les individus et suivant les Races." Paris, 1861.

‡ Vulpian, 690. Flourens, 2<sup>me</sup> édition, "Recherches Expérimentales sur les Propriétés et les Fonctions du Système Nerveux," 24.

sensations of pain, contact, sound, and taste, by means of the protuberance. But these are bare sensations; they are not, as in the normal state, accompanied and clothed with associated images, which add to the sensation of light notions of the relief, distance, and other characters of the luminous object; to the sensation of contact, notions of situation, resistance, and form; to the sensation of sound or taste, the representation of a sonorous or savory body. Much less then, can these isolated sensations arouse the associated images constituting memory and prevision, and through them judgments, and all the assemblage of emotions, desires, fears, and determinations developed by the notion of approaching danger or of future pleasure.

Another consequence is the absence of instincts; for instincts are constituted by groups of images whose association is innate. A beaver shut up in an enclosure in the Jardin des Plantes, who collects pieces of wood and mortar to make a dam of which he has no need in Paris, and of which he has need in America, is an animal in whom are developed a spontaneous system of images; so, again, is a bird who builds his nest in the spring; at the sight of straw, hair, and wool, the notions of their combination and usage arise in him without preliminary experience, without tentative effort, in a fully constructed order, by an unacquired wisdom. It matters little whether this order be, as with man, the effect of a personal apprenticeship, or, as with the brutes, the play of an hereditary mechanism; it is invariably an order of representations—that is to say, of grouped images; and therefore, if the images are destroyed, it is destroyed.

This is what happens when the cerebral lobes are cut away. “The animal loses all its intelligence.” Though, with the corpora quadrigemina and protuberance, it may have retained crude sensations, it no longer has the images which by their association with crude sensations give it the notion of objects. “These objects continue to paint themselves on the retina; the iris remains contractile, the optic nerve excitable; the retina remains sensible to light; for the iris contracts or expands accordingly as the light is more or less vivid; so the eye is sensible. And still the animal no longer sees. . . .”



A pigeon thus operated on "kept itself well upright; it flew when thrown in the air; it walked when pushed on from behind; the iris of its eyes was very contractile; nevertheless, it did not see or hear, it never moved spontaneously, it put on all the attitudes of a sleeping or drowsy animal, and when roused from this sort of lethargy, assumed the attitude of an animal waking up. . . . When I let it alone, it remained calm and as it were absorbed; in no one case did it give signs of will. In short, picture to yourself an animal condemned to perpetual sleep, *and deprived of the faculty of dreaming in this sleep.*" In fact, all the images whose irregular concatenation forms dreams, and whose regular concatenation forms the waking state, were absent; all that remained were some few intermittent sensations aroused by the experimenter, and, accompanying them, the dull tendencies and involuntary movements consecutive to them:—A hen lived ten months after a mutilation of this kind, and after the fifth month, was fat, strong, and healthy; but instincts, memory, prevision, and judgment were gone. "I left her fasting on many occasions for three whole days at a time, and then have put food to her nostrils, have dipped her beak in grain, have placed grain in the anterior part of her beak, plunged her beak in water, placed her on a heap of corn. She did not smell, or swallow, or drink, she remained motionless on the heap of corn, and would assuredly have died there of starvation if I had not taken on me to make her eat. I have twenty times put pebbles instead of grain in her beak; she swallowed the pebbles as she had swallowed the grain.\* Finally, when she met with an obstacle in her way, she ran against it, and the shock stopped her or shook her. But to run against an object is not to feel it; she never groped about or hesitated in her progress. . . . She never took shelter, however inclement might be the weather; she never defended herself against the other fowls; she no longer knew how to fight or to run away; the caresses of the male bird were indifferent or unperceived by her . . . She ceased to peck with her bill.

---

\* By a reflex movement.

The same thing happens with other animals.\* Frogs have no longer any notion of eating a fly held to their mouths. "The mole ceases to dig, the cat remains quiet even if teased." All images, then, fail, and consequently, those which serve as signs, and by which we have abstract ideas, also perish. Thus all the operations which pass beyond pure sensation—not only those which are common to animals with man, but also those which are special to man—have, for sufficient and necessary condition, an action of the cerebral lobes. They are, then,

---

\* Vulpian, 690. Landry, "Paralysies," 82.

If we take two frogs, one uninjured and the other deprived for some days of its cerebral tubercles.

"Let them both be put on the floor, the first runs off at once and tries to hide himself. The second, after a leap or two, becomes motionless and remains so. When a noise is made near them, the first will sometimes turn round to see where it comes from and sometimes run away, the second will give a slight start, but will not move. If their paws are pinched they will both jump away, and struggle if they are retained.

Let them both be put in a large basin of water.

The *uninjured frog* goes through several movements of swimming and tries to hide himself at the bottom of the basin. Meanwhile, *the movements of respiration have entirely ceased*. After a time, it regains the surface of the water in order to breathe, and tries to remain there, but having no hold exhausts itself in its efforts to keep there. When pushed down to the bottom, it soon comes up again, and if prevented from doing so, will attempt to come up at another part of the basin.

The *frog deprived of its brain* behaves very differently. The moment it is placed in the basin it sinks to the bottom like an inert mass without attempting to swim. Still, when stirred with a stick, it goes through the movements of swimming but at hazard and without object, and then becomes motionless and sinks to the bottom. In its case *the respiratory movements continue to be gone through as in the air*, with the single difference that the little membranous lid of the nostrils is completely closed. The animal remains quietly at the bottom of the basin without attempting to gain the surface to breathe, and without showing the least uneasiness. The respiratory movements "become abrupt and few, and the frog dies suffocated without having made any attempt to breathe, and without appearing to have suffered.

"Thus the brainless frog does not know how to suspend respiration, and would inspire water if the lid of the nostrils did not close automatically at the contact of the liquid; it does not suffer from asphyxia, is not aware of it, and does not attempt to avoid it. Nothing, it seems to me, can better show than this experiment both the real absence of perception, the absence of every intellectual phenomenon, and the absence of will.

"I admit with M. Flourens that the brain properly so called is the seat of perception, volition, and all intellectual phenomena."

attached to this action ; they rise, perish, are altered, accelerated and transformed with it, and pathology here is in accordance with vivisection.

"All the organs," says Mueller, "with the exception of the brain, may either pass slowly out of the circle of the animal economy or perish, without the faculties of the mind undergoing any alteration. It is different with the brain ; any cause which disturbs its action slowly or suddenly, affects at the same time the mind. . . . Inflammation of the brain is never unattended with delirium, and at a later period with stupor ; pressure on the cerebrum, whether produced by depressed bones, serum, blood or pus, always gives rise to delirium or stupor, according as there is or is not irritation with the pressure. The same causes, according to the seat of their action, frequently abolish the power of voluntary motion, or memory ; and when the pressure is removed, the memory frequently returns, and it has been observed that the chain of thought was immediately resumed at the point where it was interrupted by the injury."\* After cerebral commotion "there is sometimes complete loss of intelligence. In other cases the patient answers questions put to him, but soon falls again into a drowsy state, his memory is sometimes entirely, sometimes partially gone. Total forgetfulness of a foreign language is one of the most usual effects of this commotion. . . . Patients never recollect how their accident has occurred ; if they have fallen from horseback, they recollect perfectly having mounted and got off, but never recollect the circumstances of their fall. The effects of a lesion of the brain are in some ways analogous to those brought on by old age ; the patient preserves the recollection of recent impressions only, and forgets those of earlier date. . . . With some patients, memory remains ever after imperfect. . . . In some particular cases patients are unable to avail themselves of the right word to express their ideas, the judgment is often impaired."† —Other injuries indirectly affecting the brain produce similar effects ; we know that people faint when they have lost much blood, that drunkenness disorders the ideas, that narcotics

---

\* Mueller, *op. cit.* (tr. Baly), i. 817.

† Vidal, "*Pathologie Externe*," 750—citing Cooper.

produce stupefaction, haschich brings on hallucinations, coffee develops a liveliness of mind, chloroform and ether produce insensibility." \*—To sum up, alteration of the cerebral lobes has, as a consequence, a proportionate alteration of our images. If the lobes become unfitted for some particular system of actions, some particular system of images, and therefore some group of ideas or of cognitions, is found wanting. If their action becomes excessive, images of a more intense kind escape from the repression ordinarily imposed on them by sensations, and turn into hallucinations. If, in addition to this their action becomes disconcerted, images lose their ordinary associations, and delirium is pronounced. If their action be annulled, all images, and therefore all ideas and cognitions, are annulled; the patient falls into the state of torpidity and deep stupor which we find caused in animals by cutting away these lobes.

VI. We must now determine on what part of the cerebral lobes images depend. These lobes are made up of a white substance and gray cortical matter; and all inductions concur in attributing images to the action of the gray cortical matter. In fact, the extent of this cortical matter is augmented by that of the convolutions, and comparative anatomy shows us that, in the animal kingdom, intelligence increases with the extent of the convolutions. Physiology again proves that in other parts of the nervous system the white substance is simply conductive.† According to all indications, that of the brain has no other function. "It is evident that here, as in all other parts of the nervous system, the special activity belongs to the gray substance. Pathological observations are equally conclusive. . . . Whilst lesions of the cerebellum, of the optic thalami, of the corpora striata, in fact of *the white*

---

\* Longet, ii. 36. The above theory may be verified by the process of etherization. This process has two stages. In the first, the animal etherized (dog or rabbit), loses its intelligence, its will, its instincts, and all its faculties with the exception of its crude sensations. In this stage there is etherization of the cerebral lobes and other parts of the encephalon, but not of the protuberance and bulb.—In the following stage the animal also loses its sensations. There is then etherization of the annular protuberance.

† Vulpian, 646, 669.

*medullary masses of the cerebral lobes*, do not ordinarily occasion any permanent or clearly marked disturbance of the intellectual functions, extensive alterations of the gray substance of the convolutions, or morbid excitation of this substance, necessarily occasion weakening or exaltation of these functions according to the nature of the alteration and the stage at which it has arrived. Thus we can explain the effects of diffused meningo-cephalitis and of simple meningitis. The centre of cerebral activity being thus clearly ascertained, it is not permissible to doubt that we have here the true starting-point of dementia and mania."

This gray cortical matter is composed of several layers, which are alternately gray and white.\* "We see in them nuclei, and very many multipolar nervous cells of small dimensions;" a quantity of fibres connect together different regions of the gray layer of the same lobe, and those of one lobe with the other; other fibres connect the whole surface of the gray matter with the corpora striata and optic thalami. When transmitted by the fibres of the optic thalami and corpora striata, the action, which in the corpora quadrigemina and annular protuberance had aroused a crude sensation, passes on by the fibres of the white substance to the cells of the cortical matter of the cerebrum, and propagates itself, by the intermediary fibres, from one point to another of the gray substance; this action of the cortical cells is the necessary and sufficient condition of images, and consequently of all cognitions or ideas.—The scalpel, the microscope, and physiological observation can go no further than this without falling into hypotheses; we can neither define this action nor explain this propagation, and all we know is that there is a molecular movement in the case. But vivisections and the history of wounds of the head here afford new evidence, which, combined with the former, enables us to gain a general view of the functions of the brain. It is *a repeating and multiplying organ*, in which all the different departments of the gray cortical matter fulfil the same functions.

In the first place, "it is easy to prove by instances that

---

\* According to M. Baillarger—Vulpian, 644.

with an absence we may term complete of one cerebral hemisphere, a man may still enjoy all his intellectual faculties and even all his external senses. . . . This was the case with one Vacquerie, in 1821. He was hemiplegic on the left side, but his intellectual functions were intact. At the autopsy, a quantity of serum was found filling the place of the right hemisphere; the cerebral substance on that side had disappeared.\*—Not only does one hemisphere supply the place of the other, but any one region of the brain, if sufficiently large, may supply the place of another; the proof of this lies in the fact that any portion may be wanting without any of the mental faculties being missed.† The disorganized or destroyed portion may belong to the anterior or to the posterior lobes of the brain; it is of little consequence. “Bérard reports a case in which the two anterior lobes were crushed, while reason, sensibility, and voluntary movements were retained.” “An officer had received a ball that had entered one temple and passed out at the other; the wounded man, who died very suddenly three months afterwards, was observed till then, and, during all that time, not only did he enjoy his full intelligence, but showed unusual cheerfulness and serenity in the intercourse of life.”‡ After the battle of Landrecies, “twelve men had received wounds at the top of their heads, as large as the palm of the hand, with loss of substance of integument, bone, dura mater, and brain. These wounds were occasioned by horizontal sabre-cuts. They had all travelled more than thirty leagues before their wounds were dressed, sometimes on foot, sometimes in wretched cars, and went on favorably till the seventeenth day. They preserved their appetite, their strength, and even their martial appear-

---

\* Longet, “Anatomie and Physiologie du Système Nerveux,” 666, 669. And see Vulpian, 707. The same result is observed in pigeons when one hemisphere has been removed. They preserve or regain all their faculties.

† Longet, *ibid.* Vulpian, 711.

‡ See “Bulletin de l’Académie de Médecine,” x. 6, for an analogous case of a child four years and a half old, through both of whose temples a ball had passed, and who nevertheless lived twenty-six days, enjoying the whole of its intellectual faculties, with complete memory, sound judgment, and with its character unaffected by the injury.

ance." \* . . . Such, again, is the case of the dragoon mentioned by Lamotte, who "had lost by a sabre-cut a piece of the right parietal bone two inches long, and three or four inches of the left parietal bone, down nearly to the ear. This wound, which comprised not only the membranes of the brain but the longitudinal sinus and the brain itself, was followed by syncope, consequent on the loss of blood, but gave rise to no serious ill effects,† and was cured in two months and a half. Lamotte is not the only one who has observed cases of this kind, for they are not very uncommon."—All the mutilations practised on animals lead to the same conclusion. "We may remove a considerable portion of the cerebral lobes, either in front or behind, above or below, without their functions being lost. A very small portion, then, of these lobes is sufficient for the exercise of their functions. In proportion as the removal goes on, all the functions are weakened and gradually become extinct, and, when certain limits are passed, they become actually extinct. . . . Whenever one perception is lost, all are lost; whenever one faculty disappears, they all disappear . . . . Provided the loss of substance occasioned to the cerebral lobes does not exceed certain limits, these lobes regain after a time the exercise of their functions; when these first limits are passed, the functions are but imperfectly recovered, and, when the new limits are also passed, the functions are not recovered at all. In short, as soon as one perception returns, they all return, and as soon as one faculty

---

\* Nélaton, "Pathologie Externe," iii. 572.—Vidal, "Pathologie Externe," ii. 744.

† Cf. Karl Vogt, "Leçons sur l'Homme," 127.

"If we gradually, layer by layer, remove the cerebral lobes in an animal, the different phenomena of increasing stupidity become more and more evident, without our being able to determine a special action in any one direction.—The removal of half the brain seems to have no appreciable influence, which shows that, for some time at least, the other entire half is able to supply the place of the missing half. Still, we observe that the functions exhaust themselves more quickly than when the brain is entire, which shows that the operation influences the quantity, not the quality, of the manifestations of the organ. Several observations have been collected of men who, after deep lateral wounds of the head, followed by loss of cerebral substance, have experienced no diminution of their faculties, but *were speedily exhausted, and compelled, after short intellectual labor, to stop and abandon themselves to complete repose or even to sleep.*"

reappears, they all reappear."\* A frog, which had only a fragment left of its posterior lobes, amounting to about an eighth of the whole brain, had preserved the appearance of a healthy frog. "Five weeks afterwards, a large fly, with one wing removed, was put into its basin, as soon as the fly was in the basin, the frog changed its attitude, and seemed to watch the insect, and, as soon as it came near, made a short jump and tried to catch it with its tongue; but it did not succeed the first time, and was obliged to recommence the movement of projecting its tongue; this time it succeeded. On the following days, other flies were given it, and it seized them at the first attempt. . . . The only alteration observed in its movements was, that it was a little less lively; and again, it did not attempt, like other frogs, to escape from the hand put out to catch it. . . . On the contrary, when the brain is completely removed, there is not the least attempt on the part of the frogs to take flies which are given them; and they do not even swallow the flies till placed at the back of their mouths."—We see that in the case of the first frog the eighth part of its brain supplied the place of the rest; a larger portion would be required in the case of a superior animal, and, when we come to the summit of the animal kingdom, the mutual dependence of the different parts of the brain is much greater. But the conclusion is still the same. The brain is a kind of polypus, whose elements have the same functions. We cannot say with precision how many cells and fibres are required to form one of these elements; but each of these elements is capable, by its action, of giving rise to all normal images and all their associations, and consequently to all the operations of the mind.

Having settled this, we can, by aid of psychology, take a step in advance. We know that all ideas, all cognitions, all the operations of the mind, are composed of associated images, that all these associations depend on the property of images to revive, and that images themselves are sensations reviving spontaneously. All this agrees with the teaching of physiolo-

---

\* Flourens, "*Recherches Expérimentales*," etc., 99.—Vulpian, 709 (*Experiments on Fowls and Pigeons*).



gy. An action is produced in the sensitive centres strictly so called, protuberance, or corpora quadrigemina; it there excites a primary or crude sensation. An *exactly similar* action is consequently developed in a cortical element of the cerebral lobes, and there excites a secondary sensation or image. The first action is incapable, and the second is capable of reviving spontaneously; consequently the crude sensation is incapable, and the image is capable of reviving spontaneously. The more extensive is the cortical matter of the brain, the more elements has it capable of setting one another in action; the more elements it has capable of setting one another in action, the more delicate an instrument of *repetition* it is. The brain, then, is the *repeater* of the sensitive centres; such is its office; and it will the better fulfil this office the more numerous the repeaters of which it is itself composed.

Here we perceive the mechanism which renders possible the fundamental property of images—I mean, their aptitude for endurance and revival. As the brain is made up of similar mutually-excitabile elements, the action of the protuberance, of the corpora quadrigemina, and in general of the centres of sensation, once repeated by one of its elements, is transmitted in turn to the rest, and may thus revive indefinitely. Imagine a series of vibrating strings disposed in such a way that the movement of the first is communicated from string to string up to the last, and reverts from this last to the first; the illustration is homely but clear. Such is the action which runs through the similar elements of the brain; and thus, in the absence of all external excitation, it lasts on, being effaced, reviving, and so persisting indefinitely through a series of extinctions and revivals. Such too is the image, and we have but to refer back to its history to see it endure, become effaced, and reappear in precisely the same manner.—Assuming now that, by a new excitation of the centres of sensation, a different action is produced in one of the cerebral elements; according to the law of communication, it must pass in turn to the other elements, and we shall have a different image which will persist like the first, while becoming weaker and stronger by turns. But the same cerebral element cannot be in two different states at the same time, and consequently

cannot produce two different actions at the same time. The cerebral elements, then, will be drawn in two different directions, and, as the two actions are incompatible, one alone will be propagated.

Which of them will be propagated? There are conditions which incline the balance to the one side or the other. Of the two tendencies, one or the other will prevail.\* We have seen the laws which confer ascendancy on images and deprive them of it, and these are precisely the ones which determine the propagation of such or such a particular action. Images strive together for predominance, and so cerebral actions strive together for propagation. At any given moment some one action will be propagated, and will give the ascendancy to some image, and will then make way for another action, which, propagated in its turn, brings on the scene another image. Thus images succeed one another, and become preponderant in proportion as the action producing them is propagated through a greater number of elements.

It must be observed that this presence of an image is nothing more than its preponderance; it is considerably stronger than the others, that is all; but it does not exclude the others; on the contrary, they still persist in a rudimentary and latent state; and this obscure persistence may be observed at any moment.—You have sung over, some fifteen or twenty times in succession, a new air which has impressed you a great deal; you are interrupted for some little household occupation, or by some tiresome visit; on this, another series of sensations, images, and ideas unrolls itself perforce within you; but the first, though it has yielded its place, has not been destroyed. It is pushed back, reduced; it permits the others to occupy the foremost place and to obtrude themselves on the attention; but though retired and driven back into the distance and shade, it still exists. You will find it there as soon as you revert to it; it will spring again to the light of its own accord as soon as the intruders have gone. The evidence of its secret persistence lies in the disturbance, the un-

---

\* See ante, Book II. chap. ii. "Laws of the Revival and Obliteration of Images."

easiness, the dull tendencies which you have felt all the time and which its obscure presence excites in you.—So again, you hear news, good or bad, and after an hour you have ceased to think of it; but nevertheless, after the hour and perhaps for the whole day, you still feel an ill-defined pleasure or inquietude which you cannot explain at first sight, and which you do not understand till you reflect, and the recollection of the news returns.—Among latent images or ideas, we must also reckon those of all the actions we carry out while our minds are occupied by some other preponderant image or idea. For example, we follow out a thought as we walk along; we follow the tune of the piece we are playing, all the while we are playing it; we follow the argument of an author while we are reading him aloud. In these different cases, the images of the muscular movements we wish to accomplish must be present to our minds, since the muscular movements are accomplished; but their series is not observed because another series is preponderant.—This is the constant state of our minds, a dominant image, in the full light, and extended around it, a constellation of fading images, growing more and more imperceptible; beyond these, a milky way of images wholly invisible, of which we have no other consciousness than by the effect of their mass, that is to say, by our general feelings of gayety or sadness. Every image may pass through all the different states of light and dimness; at a certain limit, it escapes from consciousness, but it is not therefore extinguished, and we do not know to what degree of obliteration it may possibly descend.—The scale of these degrees descends to a marvellous depth; it is enough, to convince one's self of this, to observe the revivals of images\* taking place after twenty, thirty, and fifty years' interruption, and the abnormal reproductions of transient experiences which seemed to have left no trace behind them. We find here the same law as in the case of sensations proper; the image of which we are conscious is but a *whole* whose elements may be infinitesimal.

Having determined this, we conceive the corresponding

---

\* "Laws of the Revival and Obliteration of Images." See for different instances ante, Book II. chap. ii. pp. 76, 77.

cerebral process, and further, by this comparison, we understand how there may be images within us of which we have no consciousness. When an image is preponderant, the action corresponding to it is propagated through the greater part of the similar cerebral elements ; but through the greater part only. Without this vortex are other elements, in which a different action may be propagated at the same moment, whose whole intensity is less, since the number of its factors is smaller ; to this action of less intensity corresponds the accessory image, of less intensity, all but invisible to consciousness, and which we can only perceive indirectly, in the background. Let the number of factors again diminish, the intensity of the action, and, therefore the intensity of the image will diminish proportionately ; a moment will arrive at which the image will be wholly without the range of consciousness, and nevertheless still capable of as many degrees of progressive weakening as the number of its factors is capable of reductions. The series of these degrees and of these reductions may be enormous, and we can conceive that, in addition to secondary and tertiary images, whose presence we may still distinguish or divine, there are images again still more enfeebled, below these, others still more so, and so on, till we come to those aroused by the action of a single cerebral element. Similarly we can conceive that the same image, having been for a moment preponderant, may be effaced by degrees, may subsist for a long time without our having had consciousness of it, then, of a sudden, to our great surprise, may reappear in full light, according to the more or less extended ascendancy of the corresponding action, which, propagated at first through the majority of the cerebral elements, becomes more and more limited, is contracted and grows thinner, then, later on, reassumes the ascendancy by the sudden appearance of some unforeseen sensation which renews one of its fragments.

VII. We now know exactly the physical conditions of our mental events ; the condition of our crude sensations\* is a

---

\* Vulpian, 681.—“It is a notion of extreme importance in physiology and philosophy, that in every complete sensation there are two wholly distinct phe-

certain action or molecular movement of the protuberance of the corpora quadrigemina, and, in general, of some primary centre of the encephalon; the condition of our images, ideas, and the rest, is the same molecular movement repeated and propagated in the elements of the gray cortical matter of the brain. On this molecular movement depend the events which we refer to our personality; if the movement exist, they exist; if it is missing, they are missing. There is no exception to this rule; the loftiest thought, the most abstract conception, is subject to it, through the words or signs which serve as its foundation. Every idea, voluntary or not, clear or obscure, complex or simple, fugitive or persistent, implies a determinate molecular movement in the cerebral cells.—But, besides the mental events perceptible to consciousness, the molecular movements of the nervous centres also arouse mental events imperceptible to consciousness. These are far more numerous than the others, and of the world which makes up our being, we only perceive the highest points, the lighted-up peaks of a continent whose lower levels remain in the shade. Beneath ordinary sensations are their components, that is to say, the elementary sensations which must be combined into groups to reach our consciousness. By the side of ordinary images and ideas, are their collaterals, I mean the latent images and ideas, which must take their turn of preponderance and ascendancy in order to reach consciousness.

Having settled this, we see the moral world extending far beyond the limits assigned to it. We are accustomed to limit it to events of which we have consciousness; but it is now plain that the capacity of appearing to consciousness belongs only to certain of these events; the majority of them do not possess it. Outside a little luminous circle, lies a large ring of twilight, and beyond this an indefinite night; but the events of this twilight, and this night are as real

---

nomena, so distinct that they are seated in two different parts of the nervous system. The one is the sensation strictly so called, and has as its seat the isthmus of the encephalon, and in part, the annular protuberance. The other is the intellectual elaboration of the sensation, and takes place in the brain properly so called."

as those within the luminous circle. Hence it follows, that if we find elsewhere a nervous structure, excitations, reactions, in short all the accompaniments and the physical indications we meet with in the mental events of which we have consciousness, we shall have a right here also to conclude the presence of moral events to which consciousness does not attain.

This is the case with *reflex* phenomena, one of the most instructive instances physiology presents. There is in a living body another centre besides the encephalon; that is the spinal marrow; this marrow, like the encephalon, comprises a gray substance, which, like that of the encephalon, is a terminus of transmitted excitations, and a starting-point for reflected excitations. There is produced in it, as in the encephalon, an unknown molecular movement, which is excited by the action of the sensitive nerves, and excites the action of the motor nerves, and which, according to all analogies, arouses, like the molecular movement of the brain, an event of the mental order.—In fact, the action it gives rise to in the motor nerves is not irregular;\* “it is appropriate and adapted;” it seems “intentional.” In every case, it tends to an object, “even when the animal is deprived of its encephalon,” and this so perfectly, that many physiologists have admitted a soul, or at least, “a perceptive and physical centre,” in the segment of marrow thus cut off.—“Here is a Triton, whose head, with the anterior part of the body and the two corresponding limbs, have been removed by a transverse section. I pinch the skin of the lateral parts of the body; there is, as you see, a movement of lateral curvature of the body, producing a concavity of the irritated side, and it is plain that the result of the movement is to remove the irritated part away from the object irritating it. Now, this is the precise movement which we see in unmutated Tritons when subjected to a similar irritation. . . . If they do not succeed by this means, they attempt to rid themselves of the irritating object by another plan which this mutilated Triton will also put into execution. You see,

---

\* Vulpian 414, et seq.

in fact, a movement takes place of the hind limb on the irritated side." The movements alter according to the point irritated, and the new combination of muscular movements is always one adapted to avoid the new cause of irritation. "All these movements are so well adapted and natural, that if the wound caused by the decapitation were not apparent, you would think the animal had undergone no mutilation, and the common character of these movements is that their effect is defence against attacks from without."

So too, frogs when beheaded, can still leap and swim. Further, "if we put a drop of acetic acid on the upper part of the thigh of a decapitated frog, the hind limb bends in such a way that the foot rubs against the irritated part." The foot is amputated and the experiment repeated. "The animal begins new movements to rub the irritated part; but he cannot reach it, and after some movements of agitation, as if he were seeking a new mode of accomplishing his design, he bends the other limb, and thus succeeds in doing so."—These are the most salient experiments, and it will be comprehended that, to obtain such striking facts, we must operate on the lower animals, whose life is more tenacious, and whose parts are less strictly connected with one another.—But similar ones are met with among the mammalia and even in man.\* Cases have been seen "of anencephalous foetuses, who cried and sucked a finger placed to their lips. Beyer, being compelled once to open the head of a foetus to accomplish a delivery, and having completely emptied the skull, saw the foetus, some minutes after birth, give a cry, breathe, and move its hands and feet."—With the higher animals, if we suppress the whole of the encephalon—that is to say, all the nervous centres with which sensations and images, strictly so-called, are connected—the spinal marrow and bulb, which alone remain, are still capable, under the stimulus of the sensitive nerves, of exciting and combining movements with some object in view, as happens with the posterior limbs of a frog or Triton.

---

\* Vulpian, 396.

The animal still cries, though without pain, when its paw is pinched; it swallows food when placed at the end of its gullet; it goes through all the movements of respiration. In our own cases, sneezing, coughing, vomiting, are so many systematically complex and useful movements, excited without exercise of will on our parts, through the medium of the bulb.\*—In general, given in an animal a segment of spinal marrow, with the sensitive nerves terminating in it, and the motor nerves springing from it, when the sensitive nerves are excited, the segment, commencing to act, will set to work the motor nerves, and we shall see muscular contractions. This may be readily observed in eels, salamanders, and serpents. Landry† observed it in sucking pigs, whose spinal marrow he divided into several segments, while leaving the rest of the body intact. Animals thus treated may live a long time, and while the circulation subsists, “the reflex excitability of a separated portion of the marrow may persist almost indefinitely;” it has been seen to last three months, and even for more than a year.

Every segment then is a sort of complete animal, capable in itself of being excited and of reacting, capable even of living in an isolated state, if, as is the case with the inferior animals, and notably with the annelidæ, the mutual dependence of the segments is not too great.‡—We should never come

\* Vulpian, 423.

† “Des Paralysies,” 47. Experiments, 6, 7, 8. Vulpian, 432.

‡ Landry, “Paralysies,” 47. The spinal marrow may be divided perpendicularly to its axis in two, three, four, or more segments, without inducing any modification of the phenomena in which it takes part.—Each one of these parts, anatomically constituted like the whole organ, possesses separately the same faculties. I have shown by experiments 9, 7, and 8, that a simple transversal section of the marrow, though it interrupts its continuity, leaves the reflex power, the excitability of the nerves, the contractility and nutrition of the muscles, still subsisting, in all the parts whose sensibility and movement are paralyzed. . . . Every segment of the marrow then is a real centre of innervation. . . . Thus we may consider the medullary cord as made up of a series of nervous centres with identical properties, but affected nevertheless with different functions according to the different organs with which the nerves springing from it are connected. . . . This would be in accordance with comparative anatomy, which shows that the marrow becomes gradually segmentary as we descend from the mammalia to fish, and from these to animals still lower in the scale, to the crustacea for instance. . . .”



to an end if we attempted to enumerate all the cases of reflex action. The majority of the muscular movements of animal and of organic life, whether intermittent or continuous, are accomplished by it alone, so that we are obliged to consider all the central parts of the nervous system, encephalon, bulb, spinal marrow, as constantly set in action by the play of sensitive nerves, in such a way as to excite the play of motor nerves, with an accompaniment of sensations of which we are or are not conscious. Whatever be the portion of the nervous system observed, we never see in it any other than reflex actions; they may be more or less complex, but are always of the same kind. A white conducting cord conveys an excitation to a central nucleus of gray substance; a molecular movement then arises in this substance, and thereupon an excitation is carried on to the muscles by another white conducting cord. These three movements so connected constitute reflex action; the gray substance, wherever it be, in spinal marrow protuberance, or cerebral lobes, always acts in the same way.

Now, in the protuberance and the cerebral lobes, its action arouses mental events, all of the same kind; temporary sensations or reviving sensations. We must, then, admit that its action excites everywhere mental events of an allied kind; and inasmuch as, even in the protuberance and lobes, the greatest part of these events are imperceptible to consciousness, there is nothing to prevent its action from arousing, in the marrow, mental events analogous to sensation, but now situated, by nature not by accident, beyond the reach of consciousness.—We should thus have three degrees in sensation. In the highest degree, in the cerebral lobes, the sensation becomes capable of revival, and is termed an image. In the next degree, in the protuberance, the sensation, incapable of revival, remains simply crude. In the lowest degree, in the marrow, it is in a still more incomplete state, and we cannot now define it exactly from our having no consciousness of it, but we recognize it correctly by this incapacity to appear, and it probably resembles those elementary sensations which, when separate, amount to nothing as far as consciousness is concerned, and only make up an ordinary sensation by com-

bining with others to constitute a whole.—So too there would be three degrees of complication in the action of the nervous centres. At the lowest degree, in the marrow would arise fragmentary actions analogous perhaps to those which excite elementary sensations, imperceptible to consciousness. In the next degree, in the protuberance, these same actions combine, when transmitted, into a total action exciting the ordinary total sensation. In the highest degree, in the lobes, this total action, transmitted a second time, is repeated indefinitely by a series of mutually excitable cerebral elements, and then excites those secondary and reviving sensations we term images.—We thus conceive, for the action of the nervous centres as for mental events, three stages of successive transmission and elaboration, and we can thus include in a general view the reciprocal dependence and the development of the two streams.

They form two long series, the one of which is the necessary and sufficient condition of the other, and which correspond as precisely as the convexity and concavity of the same curve. On the one side are the molecular movements of the nervous centres; on the other are mental events, all more or less analogous to sensation. The first invariably excite the second, and the degree of complication found in the one series always corresponds to an equal degree of complication in the other.—At a certain degree, the second series may be known by a special inward process we term consciousness; but, even when at this degree, it generally happens that the events of this series are not thus known.—Beneath those which consciousness attains, there are many others to which it cannot attain and which we are compelled to conceive on the type of those we know, but on a reduced and fragmentary type, and becoming more reduced and fragmentary as the nervous action exciting them becomes more simple.—Thus we see that, beneath the ordinary sensations which we know by consciousness, there descends an indefinite series of analogous mental events, more and more imperfect more and more removed from consciousness, without our being able to put a limit to this series of increasing degradations; and this successive lowering which has its counterpart in the attenuation of the nervous

system, leads us to the foot of the zoological scale, while connecting together, by a continuous sequence of intermediate links, the most rudimentary outlines and highest combinations of the nervous system and the mental world.

## CHAPTER II.

RELATION OF THE FUNCTIONS OF THE NERVOUS CENTRES  
AND MENTAL EVENTS.

I. HERE we have the great question of the physical and the moral world, two worlds which the most obvious experience shows to be inseparably connected together, and which their representations show us as absolutely irreducible to one another. On the one hand, we prove that the second depends on the first; on the other hand, we are unable to conceive that it so depends.—Physiologists, on the one hand, willingly lose sight of the second fact, and tell us that “mental events are a function of the nervous centres, just as muscular contraction is a function of the muscles, and the secretion of bile, a function of the liver.” Philosophers, on the other hand, willingly lose sight of the first fact, and tells us that “mental events have nothing in common with the molecular movements of the nervous centres, and appertain to a being of different nature.”—On this, cautious lookers-on interpose and conclude that:—“It is true that mental events and the molecular movements of the nervous centres are inseparably connected together; it is true that as far as our mind and powers of conception are concerned they are absolutely irreducible to one another. We stop at this difficulty, and will not even attempt to surmount it; let us content ourselves with ignorance.”—For our own parts, if we attempt to make an advance into this obscurity, it is because we have already made several advances. On the one hand, we have seen that our most abstract ideas, being signs, are reduced to images, that our images themselves are reviving sensations, that consequently our whole entire thought is reduced to sensations. The difficulty then is simplified, and it is now a question only of comprehending the connection between a

molecular movement and a sensation.—On the other hand, we have seen that sensations, though apparently simple, are wholes; that these wholes, though apparently irreducible to one another, may be composed of similar elements; that at a certain degree of simplicity these elements are no longer perceived by consciousness; that the sensation is then a compound of rudimentary events, capable of indefinite degradations, incapable of coming within the grasp of consciousness, but whose presence, and further, whose effectiveness is proved by reflex actions. The difficulty is thus simplified a second time; it is now a question only of comprehending the connection between these events and a molecular movement. The obscurity still remains very great; for we can never conceive these events otherwise than after the type of ordinary sensations, and between this conception and that of a movement is still a gulf. But we know that ordinary sensation is a compound, that it differs from its elements, that these elements escape our consciousness, that they are none the less real and active, and, in this deep lower twilight whence the sensation arises, we shall perhaps discover the link between the physical and the moral world.

II. Let us begin by stating the difficulty in all its force. Since mental events are nothing more than sensations more or less twisted and transformed, let us compare a sensation with a molecular movement of the nervous centres. Let us take the sensation of golden yellow, that of a musical note like *ut*, that given by the emanations of a lily, by the taste of sugar, by the pain of a cut, by tickling, by heat or cold. The necessary and sufficient condition of such a sensation, is an internal movement in the gray substance of the protuberance of the corpora quadrigemina, in short, of a centre of sensation; this movement may be unknown, it matters little; whatever it may be, it consists of a more or less complex and extensive displacement of molecules, and is nothing more.—Now, what relationship can we imagine between this displacement and a sensation? Cells, constituted of a membrane and one or more nuclei, are strewn in a granulated substance, a kind of flabby pulp or grayish jelly, made up of nuclei and of innumerable fibres; these cells ramify into slender prolongations,

which probably connect themselves with the nervous fibres, and it is supposed that they thereby communicate with one another, and with the white conductive parts. Study as closely as you will the anatomical preparations and micrographic plates which show us this apparatus; suppose the power of the microscope indefinitely increased, and the enlargement carried to a million or a thousand million diameters. Suppose physiology at maturity, and the theory of cellular movements as far advanced as the physical theory of undulations; suppose we knew the mechanism of the movement produced in the gray substance during a sensation, its circuit from cell to cell, its differences according as it excites a sensation of sound or of smell, the link connecting it with movements of heat or electricity, and further, the mechanical formula which respects the mass, velocity, and position of all the elements of the fibres and the cells at any time of their movement. We should even then have movement only, and movement, of whatever kind it be, rotatory, undulatory, or what else, has no resemblance at all to a sensation of bitter, of yellow, of cold, or of pain. We cannot convert either of these two conceptions into the other, and consequently the two events seem to be of absolutely different quality; so that analysis, instead of filling up the interval between them, seems to enlarge it to an infinite extent.\*

---

\* Cf. the following extract from Professor Tyndall's Address to the British Association for the Advancement of Science, on "The Physical Forces and Thought."

"I can hardly imagine that any profound scientific thinker, who has reflected upon the subject, exists who would not admit the extreme probability of the hypothesis, that for every fact of consciousness, whether in the domain of sense, of thought, or of emotion, a certain definite molecular condition is set up in the brain; that this relation of physics to consciousness is invariable, so that, given the state of the brain, the corresponding thought or feeling might be inferred; or given the thought or feeling, the corresponding state of the brain might be inferred. But how inferred? It is at bottom not a case of logical inference at all, but of empirical association. You may reply that many of the inferences of science are of this character; the inference, for example, that an electric current of a given direction will deflect a magnetic needle in a definite way; but the cases differ in this, that the passage from the current to the needle, if not demonstrable, is thinkable, and that we entertain no doubt as to the final mechanical solution of the problem; but the passage from the physics of the brain to the corresponding facts

III. Repulsed in this direction, we must turn to another. It is true that we cannot conceive the two events otherwise than as irreducible to one another; but that may depend on the way in which we conceive them and not on their actual qualities; their incompatibility is perhaps rather apparent than real; it arises on our side and not on theirs. There would be nothing extraordinary in such an illusion as this. As a general rule it is sufficient for a fact to be known to us in two different ways, for us to conceive, in its place, two different facts.

Such is the case with the objects we know by the senses. A person born blind\* who has just been couched, remains for a considerable time unable to reconcile his perceptions of touch with those of sight. Before the operation, he represented to himself a china cup as cold, polished, and capable of affording to the hand certain sensations of resistance, weight, and form; when he sees it for the first time, and it gives him the sensation of a white patch, he conceives the white lustrous object as something different from the resisting, heavy, cold, polished object. He would stop at this, if he did not acquire new experiences; the two things would always be different in quality; they would form two worlds, between which there would be no communication.—And so, if your eyes are

---

of consciousness is unthinkable. Granted that a definite thought, and a definite molecular action in the brain occur simultaneously; we do not possess the intellectual organ, nor apparently any rudiment of the organ, which would enable us to pass by a process of reasoning from the one phenomenon to the other. They appear together, but we do not know why. Were our minds and senses so expanded, strengthened, and illuminated as to enable us to see and feel the very molecules of the brain; were we capable of following all their motions, all their all their electric discharges, if such there be; and were we intimately acquainted with the corresponding states of thought and feeling, we should be as far as ever from the solution of the problem, 'How are these physical processes connected with the facts of consciousness? The chasm between the two classes of phenomena would still remain intellectually impassable. Let the consciousness of *love*, for example, be associated with a right-handed spiral motion of the molecules of the brain, and the consciousness of *hate* with a left-handed spiral motion. We should then know when love that the motion is in one direction, and when we hate that the motion is in the other; but the 'WHY?' would still remain unanswered."—See Report xxxviii. for the year 1868. *Transactions of the Sections*, p. 5.

\* See post, Part II. book ii. chap. ii.

shut and you are not aware of what is going to happen, and you see a flash, then hear a sound, and then feel as if hit on the arm with a stick (the experiment may be tried on a child or an ignorant person), you will imagine that you have been struck, that some one has whistled, and that a bright light has shone into the room; and yet the three different facts are but one, the passage of a current of electricity.—The science of acoustics had to be constructed to show that the event which arouses in us, through the tactile nerves, sensations of vibration and tickling, is the same as that which, through the acoustic nerves, gives rise to sensations of sound. Till very recently “phenomena of heat,\* electricity, light, ill-defined enough in themselves, were thought to be produced by so many peculiar agents, fluids possessed of special activities. A closer examination has enabled us to recognize that this conception of different specific heterogeneous elements has for foundation one single reason—namely, that the perception of these different orders of phenomena takes effect in general through different organs, and by thus attaching themselves more specially to some one of our senses, they necessarily excite special sensations. The apparent heterogeneity then would be not so much in the nature of the physical agent as in the functions of the physiological instrument by which the sensations are effected; so that by transferring, by an erroneous attribution, these differences of appearance from the effect to the cause, we should in reality have classified the intermediate phenomena by which we have cognizance of the modifications of matter, rather than by the very essence of these modifications. . . . All physical phenomena, whatever be their nature, seem to be at foundation nothing more than the manifestations of one and the same primordial agent.”—Thus, the conception we form bears invariably a deep imprint of the process forming it. We are compelled then to take count of this imprint; and therefore, when we find within us two ideas which have entered by different routes, we ought to mistrust the tendency which in-

---

\* M. de Sénarmont. From a Lecture at the Ecole Polytechnique, cited by Saigey. “*La Physique Moderne*,” p. 216.



duces us to assert a difference, and above all an absolute difference, between their objects.

Now when we examine closely the idea of a sensation and the idea of a molecular movement of the nervous centres, we find that they enter by routes not merely different, but contrary.—The first comes from within, without any intermediate; the second comes from without, through several intermediates.—To represent to one's self a sensation is to have present an image of that sensation, that is to say, the sensation itself directly repeated and spontaneously reviving. To represent a molecular movement of the nervous centres is to have present images of the tactile, visual, and other sensations, which it would excite in us if it were acting on our senses from without, that is to say, to imagine sensations of white, of gray, of flabby consistency, of cellular or fibrous form, of small quivering points, that is, in fact, if we go further, to combine internally the names of movement, velocity, and mass, which denote collections and extracts of muscular and tactile sensations.—On the whole, the first representation is equivalent to its object, the second to the group of sensations which its object would excite in us. Now we cannot conceive more dissimilar processes of formation. In the case, just now, of different senses, the two representations reached us by two different roads, but both were external, so that there was nothing to prevent their having some common starting-point. Here, the two representations reach us by two opposite roads, one from within, the other from without, in such a way that these roads are perpetually divergent, and that we are unable to conceive their having the same starting-point.—Thus the fundamental opposition of the two processes of formation is sufficient to explain the mutual irreducibility of the two representations. One and the same single event known in these two ways will appear double, and, whatever be the link which experience establishes between its two manifestations, we shall never be able to convert one of them into the other. According as its representation comes from without or within, it will invariably appear as *a thing without, or within*, and we shall never be able to reduce that which is without to that which is within, or that which is within to that which is without.

IV. It is possible then that the sensation and the internal movement of the nervous centres may be at bottom one and the same unique event, condemned, by the two ways in which it is known, always and irremediably to appear double. Another line of reasoning leads to a similar conclusion. In fact, we have seen that our sensations are but wholes, composed of elementary sensations, that these are similarly composed, and so on ; that at each of these degrees of composition the compound presents itself to us with qualities wholly different from those of its elements, that consequently, the more simple the elements, and the more removed from the grasp of consciousness, the more must they differ, as far as we are concerned, from the whole which is accessible to consciousness, in such a way that the aspect of the infinitesimal elements at the foot of the scale, and that of the whole sensation at the summit of the scale, must be wholly and entirely different. Now such is the aspect of the molecular movements when compared with that of the entire sensation. Consequently, there is nothing to prevent the molecular movements from being the infinitesimal elements of the whole sensation.—Thus, the fundamental objection is removed.\* If our conceptions of the mental and of the cerebral event are irreducible to one another, it may doubtless depend on the two events being, in fact, irreducible to one another ; but it may also depend, first, on the event which is single, being known to us in two directly contrary ways, and, next, on the mental event and its ultimate elements being forcedly presented to us under absolutely opposite aspects.

There is room then, and equal room, for the two hypotheses, for that of two heterogeneous events, and for that of one and the same event known under two different aspects. Which must we choose?—If we adopt the first we are confronted with a link, not only unexplained, but inexplicable. For, the two events being by nature irreducible to one another, form two worlds, apart and isolated ; we exclude by hypothesis any more general event of which they might be but distinct forms and particular cases ; we declare beforehand that their nature furnishes nothing on which their reciprocal dependence may be founded. We are compelled, then, in

order to explain this dependence, to seek for it in something above their nature, and therefore above all nature, for they, between them, make up all nature, consequently, then, in the supernatural. So that we must call in aid a miracle, the intervention of a superior being. The philosophers of the seventeenth century, Leibnitz and Malebranche at their head, clearly saw this consequence, and boldly decided that there was a pre-established harmony, the artificial agreement of two independent clocks, an extrinsic adjustment descending from on high, a special decree of God.—Nothing could be less conformable to the methods of scientific induction: which exclude all hypotheses by which is nothing explained.—We are driven back then to the second supposition. And, first, it is in itself as plausible as the other. Again, it has analogies and numerous precedents in its favor; for, like so many other physical and psychological theories, it takes into consideration the influence of the percipient and sentient subject, the structure of the observing instrument, the effects of optics. Besides this, it calls in no third cause, no imaginary or unknown property; it is as little hypothetical as possible. Finally, it shows not only that the two events may be connected with one another, but that they must always and necessarily be so connected, For, from the moment they are reduced to one single fact, possessed of two aspects, they evidently become like the front and reverse side of a surface, so that the presence or absence of the one will infallibly result in the presence or absence of the other.—We are entitled then to admit that the cerebral event and the mental event are, at foundation, but one and the same event under two aspects, one moral, the other physical, one accessible to consciousness, the other accessible to the senses.

Now of the two ways in which we attain to this event, the one, consciousness, is direct; to know a sensation by consciousness, is to have present its image, which is the same sensation revived. The other way, on the contrary, that is external perception, is indirect; it teaches us nothing as to the special characters of its object; it simply informs us of a certain class of its effects. The object is not directly manifested to us it is denoted indirectly by the group of sensations

it arouses, or would arouse in us.\* In itself, excepting as to character we shall examine later on, this physical and sensible object remains wholly unknown to us; all we know respecting it, is the group of sensations it excites in us. All we know of the cerebral molecules, are the sensations of grayish color, of flabby consistence, of form, volume, and other analogous ones, which these molecules excite in us, directly or through the microscope, in a crude state or after preparation that is to say, their constant effects upon us, the fixed accompaniments, their signs, nothing but their signs, *signs and indications of unknown things*.—There is, then, a great difference between the two aspects. By consciousness, I attain the fact itself; by the senses, I attain a sign only. A sign of what? What is it that is constantly accompanied, denoted, *signified* by the internal movement of the nervous centres? We have shewn this previously when explaining the conditions of sensations and images; it is the sensation, the image, the internal mental event. All is then in accordance. This mental event, which consciousness attains directly, can only be attained indirectly by the senses; the senses know nothing of it but its effect on them; that is why they cause us to conceive it as a cerebral movement of gray cells; as it acts on them from without only, it cannot appear to them otherwise than as external and physical.—Here is a direct and remarkable confirmation of the admitted hypothesis, and we now understand how it is the mental event being single, necessarily appears double; the sign and the event signified are two things which can no more be confounded than separated, and their distinction is as necessary as their connection. But, in this connection and in this distinction, all the advantage is on the side of the mental event; it alone exists; the physical event is but the way in which it affects or is capable of affecting our senses. The physical world, then is reduced to a system of signs, and all that remains to enable us to construct and conceive it are the materials of the moral world.

---

\* See *post* Part ii. book ii. chaps. 1 and 2. See too, the admirable chapters on the Theory of the Belief in an External World and on the Primary Qualities of Matter, in Mill's "Examination of Sir W. Hamilton's Philosophy."

What are these materials? We have seen that the sensation, strictly so called, is a compound of successive and simultaneous events of the same quality, themselves composed in the same way; that at the extremity of our analysis, indirect experience and analogies still show successive and simultaneous events of the same quality, all remote from consciousness and becoming at last infinitesimal; that reflex actions indicate analogous rudimentary events, and that these may be traced even at the lowest point of the animal scale, even in animals like the fresh-water polypus in which no trace of a nervous system has been found.\*—But they may be traced still further than this; for, in many plants like the sensitive plant and the oscillating clover of Bengal, in the antherozoides, of cryptogamia and the zoospores of the algæ, reflex actions are met with wholly similar to those produced by the trunk of a decapitated frog. “There is no radical difference between animals and vegetables,” when looked at in this light.—No more again is there when looked at in the light of internal structure, or of chemical composition. The two kingdoms are so confounded together in their lower branches, that many groups, among others the *Vibriæ*, have sometimes been classified in the one, sometimes in the other. In fact, “the nervous system is but a perfected apparatus,” and the mental event of which it is the condition, and of which its action is the sign is a complex and organized group whose elements and rudiments may also be met with elsewhere.—By pursuing analogies then, we may descend still lower in the scale of beings. Beneath the organic world extends the inorganic, and the first is but a case of the second. It is constructed with the same chemical substances, subject to the same physical forces, governed by the same mechanical laws, and all the indications of science concur in representing it as differing in degree but identical in nature;† what we term life is a more delicate chemical action of more complex chemical elements. In pursuing our analysis, from the highest operations of the

---

\* Vulpian, 43, 37, 31.

† Bertholet, “Chimie Organique.” ii. conclusion Bérard. “Eléments de Physiologie,” ii. 65. Saigey, “De l’Unité des Phénomènes Physiques,” *passim*.

cerebral lobes to the most elementary phenomena of physics, we find nothing but mechanical movements of atoms, transmissible without loss from one system to another, and so much the more complicated as the systems become more complex. By correspondence, the same degradation and the same reduction occur in mental events; at the highest degree of complication, they constitute images, sensations, strictly so called, and those rudimentary sensations which reflex action denotes; in the next degrees, they are still events of the same kind, but less compound, and so on, their complication diminishing with that of the molecular movement, till at last, to the most simple degree of the physical event, corresponds the most simple degree of the mental event.

V. Nature, then, has two faces, and the successive and simultaneous events of which she is made up may be conceived and known in two ways, internally and in themselves, externally and by the impression they make on our senses. The two faces are parallel, and every line cutting the one cuts the other at the same level. When seen from the one side, nature has, as elements, events of which we can know nothing except when in a state of extreme complication, and which, in this state, we term sensations. Seen from the other side, she has, as elements, events which we can only conceive clearly when in a state of extreme simplicity, and which, in this state, we term molecular movements. From the first point, she is a scale of successive and simultaneous mental events, whose complication goes on *decreasing*, if we start from the summit of which we are conscious, to descend to the base of which we are unconscious. From the second point, she is a scale of successive and simultaneous physical events, whose complication goes on *increasing*, if we start from the base which we clearly conceive, to ascend to the summit of which we have no precise idea. Every degree of complication on one side of the scale indicates an equal degree of complication on the other. On both sides, at the base of the scale the events are infinitesimal; we have seen in the case of those sensations which we have been able to a certain extent to analyze, those of hearing and sight, that the mental event, as the physical event, passes in a very short time through a strictly infinite

series of degrees. From base to summit, the correspondence on either side is perfect. Phrase for phrase, word for word, the physical event, as we represent it to ourselves, *translates* the mental event.

Let the reader follow out the comparison to the end ; it will express the matter with all its details. Suppose a book written in an original tongue and furnished with an interlinear translation ; the book is nature, the original language is the mental event, the interlinear translation is the physical event, and the order of the chapters is the order of beings.—At the beginning of the book, the translations is printed in clear and legible characters. But these become less so, as we go on, and here and there, from chapter to chapter, new characters creep in, which we have difficulty in connecting with the earlier ones. At last, and above all in the final chapter, the impression can no longer be deciphered ; but we have abundance of evidence that it is still the same book and the same language.—It is just the reverse with the original text. It is very legible at the last chapter ; in the one before it the ink is pale ; in earlier chapters we can still discover that there is printing, but can read nothing of it ; before that again, all trace of ink has disappeared.

Such is the book philosophers attempt to understand ; before the final unintelligibility of the first writing, and before the enormous gaps of the second, they stop embarrassed and each one decides, not from the facts in evidence but from the habits of his mind and the wants of his heart.—Scientific men properly so called, physicists and physiologists who have begun the book at the beginning, say that it contains but one language, that of the interlinear translation, and that the other is reducible to it ; an enormous supposition, since the two languages are wholly different.—Moralists, psychologists, and religious minds who have commenced the book at the end, and are nevertheless forced to confess that the bulk of the work is written in another idiom, find an inexplicable mystery in this assemblage of two languages, and usually declare that there are two books put in juxtaposition and beside one another. In short, materialists disallow the text, and spiritualists declare the connection of text and

translation to be inexplicable.—We have not proceeded in this way, and our minute analysis has led us to a new solution. We have first studied for a long time the original idiom, and have shown that the pages of the last chapter, which appear to be written in various kinds of characters, are all written in the same character. Profiting by this reduction, we have then deciphered many half-obliterated lines of the chapter preceeding it; then, from the vague traces left on the earlier pages, we have conjectured that the text is continued much further back, even on those pages on which no trace of it is visible. We then prove the interlinear writing to be a translation, and the other to be an original text; and have concluded, from their dependence, that the first is the translation of the second. On this evidence we have admitted that the text, though invisible to our eyes, must be continued on the earlier pages, and that, on the final pages, the interlinear writing, though it cannot be deciphered is still a translation. In this way, the unity of the book has been proved, and the two idioms are completed or explained by one another. We now know which of them is the original testimony and deserves our confidence, and to what extent and with what assurance we may consult the other. Thanks to their mutual dependence and to the continual presence of one or other of them, each of them may supply the place of the other. When one of them is effaced or incapable of being deciphered, we are entitled to draw conclusions, from the one we can read, to the other which has become unreadable.\*

---

\* To complete this theory, see *post*, note at the end of sect. vii, chap. i, book ii. part ii.



### CHAPTER III.

#### THE HUMAN PERSON AND THE PHYSIOLOGICAL INDIVIDUAL.

I. HITHERTO we have considered our events, without occupying ourselves with the being *they* appertain to, and which each of us calls *himself*. We must now examine this being. Philosophers usually give, it the principle place, and a place, wholly distinct. "I experience sensation, say they, I have recollections, I combine images and ideas, I perceive and conceive external objects. This *Ego* or *self*, unique, persistent, and always the same, is something different from my sensations, recollections, images, ideas, perceptions, and conceptions, which are various and transient. Besides this, it is capable of experiencing some of these and of producing the rest; and thus it possesses powers or faculties. Now these faculties reside in it in a stable manner; by them it feels, recollects, perceives, conceives, combines images and ideas; it is, then, an efficient and productive cause."—Thus they arrive at considering the *Ego* as a subject or substance, having for its distinctive qualities certain faculties, and they suppose that, beneath our mental events, there are two kinds of explicative entities, first the powers or faculties experiencing or producing them, then the subject, substance, or soul possessing these faculties.\*

Now these are metaphysical entities, pure phantoms, begotten of words, and vanishing as soon as we examine rigorously the meanings of the words. What is a power?—A despotic sovereign has absolute power; this means that, as soon as he commands a thing to be done, whatever it may be, the confiscation of property, the death of a man, it will be done.—A constitutional king has limited power only; this means

---

\* Garnier, "*Traité des facultés de l'âme*," vol. i. books i. and ii. See Jouffroy and Maine de Biran for the theory of these scholastic entities.

that if he commands certain things, the dismissal of a minister, the promulgation of a law, they will be done; but that, if he orders other things, such things, for instance, as we mentioned just now, they will not be done; this is all that is meant. All that the word power here denotes is a constant connection between one fact, the order of a prince, and certain other facts following it.—And so again we say that a healthy man has power to walk and a paralytic man has not; this simply means to say that, in the healthy man, the resolution to walk is certainly followed by the movement of his legs, and this resolution is never so followed in the case of the paralytic; here again power is but the perpetual connection between one fact which is antecedent and another which is consequent.

So again with force. A particular horse has force enough to draw a cart weighing five thousand kilogrammes, and has not force enough to draw the same cart when more heavily loaded. A particular stream of water has force enough to move a wheel, and has not force enough to move a heavier wheel. This means that, when the horse's muscles are contracted, the cart of five thousand kilogrammes will be moved, and the other cart will not be moved: that when the stream falls on the boards of the wheels, the first one will turn and the second one will not. Here we have connections only, one between the muscular contractions of the horse and the movement of the cart; the other between the stream of water and the wheel turning round. A particular force exists when a particular connection exists; it ceases when this connection ceases. When two events are connected, and the second of them has a particular magnitude when compared to others similar to it, we say that the force has a particular magnitude. When the magnitude of the second event is double, the magnitude of the force is double. The force of the muscular contraction is double, if the cart moved weighs ten thousand kilogrammes instead of five thousand; the force of the stream of water is double, if the wheel set turning is twice as heavy as the first wheel. In general, if we are given two facts, one antecedent and the other consequent, connected by a constant link, we term the particularity of the antecedent to

be always followed by the consequent, force, and we measure this force by the magnitude of the consequent.

The names power and force, then, do not denote any mysterious being, any occult essence. When I say that I have power or force to move my arm, I merely wish to say that my resolution to move my arm is constantly followed by the movement of my arm. In fact, if, with the aid of physiology, I examine this operation somewhat more closely, I find in it a number of intermediate steps—a molecular movement in cerebral lobes, another molecular movement in the cerebellum, another molecular movement propagated along the marrow, and thence into the motor nerves of the arm, a contraction of the muscles of the arm, a displacement of their points of attachment. I have power to move my arm in the same sense that a person working the telegraph at Marseilles has power to move the telegraph needles at Paris. Between my resolution and the displacement of my arm, there are all the intermediate steps enumerated; between the operator at Marseilles and the needles at Paris, there are a thousand kilometres of telegraph wire. It is a constant particularity that the signals of the worker are followed a thousand kilometres off by the play of the indicating needles; it is a constant particularity that my resolution is followed, through ten indispensable intermediate links, by the movement of my arm. There is nothing more than this.—Unfortunately, of this particularity, which is a relation, we construct, by a mental fiction, a substance; we describe it by a substantive name, force or power; we attribute qualities to it; we say that it is greater or less; we employ it in language as a subject; we forget that its existence is wholly verbal, that it derives it from ourselves, that it has received it by way of loan, provisionally, for convenience of discourse, and that, being simply a relation, it is nothing in itself. Led away by language and custom, we suppose there is something real in it, and reasoning from false premises, increase our error at every step.—In the first place, as the being in question is a pure nonentity, we can find nothing in it but emptiness; this is why, by an illusion of which we have already seen instances,\* we make of it a pure essence, unex-

tended, incorporeal, in short, spiritual.\*—In the second place, as the event only arises through this force, the event is wanting if the force is wanting; the force is the cause of the event. Besides this, it precedes and survives the event; it is permanent while the event is transient; the event may be repeated or changed, the force is always one and the same; it may be compared to an inexhaustible stream, of which the event is a wave. Hence we come to consider it as an essence of a higher order, placed above the facts, stable, monadic, creative. From its model, philosophers go on to people the universe with similar entities. And yet, it is in itself nothing more than a character, a property, a particularity of a fact, the particularity of being always followed by another fact, a particularity detached from the fact by abstraction, set apart by fiction, kept in a distinct state by means of a distinct substantive name, till the mind, forgetting its origin, believes it to be independent, and becomes the dupe of an illusion of its own effecting.

II. The fall of this illusion causes the fall of another. "Power," say the spiritualists, "identifies itself with the being possessing it. . . . That something by which *we can* ought not to be considered as distinct from the soul."† The faculties and forces of the Ego, then, are Ego itself, or at least a portion of the Ego; many spiritualists go so far as to admit, with Leibnitz, that the Ego, is nothing more than a force, and that in general the notions of force and substance are equivalent. Now we have just seen that powers and forces are but verbal entities and metaphysical phantoms. So far, therefore, as it is made up of forces and powers, the Ego itself is but a verbal entity and a metaphysical phantom. That inner something of which the faculties were different aspects, disappeared with them; the one permanent substance, dis-

---

\* "Causes are not material; their activities are necessarily immaterial. Forces seize on matter, conform it to themselves and manifest themselves by their effects on its surface, they are signified and interpreted by the qualities they impose on matter. . . . The real cause which sets in motion the heart, the stomach, and other organs, is external and superior to those organs."—Jouffroy, "*Esthétique*," 132, 145; "*Nonveaux Mélanges*," 233 to 273.

† Garnier, "*Traité des facultés de l'âme*," i. 44.

tinct from events, is seen to vanish and re-enter the region of words. All that remains of us are our events, sensations, images, recollections, ideas, resolutions: these are what constitute our being; and the analysis of our most elementary judgments shows, in fact, that our Self has no other elements.

Take a sensation of taste, then a pain in the leg, then the recollection of a concert. I taste, I suffer, I recollect. In all these words we find the verb *to be*, and all these judgments contain the subject *I* connected by the verb *to be*, with a participle denoting an attribute. Now, in every judgment, the verb *is* expresses that the attribute is an element, a fragment, an extract of the subject, included in it, as a portion in a whole; this is the whole sense and office of the verb *to be*; and it is the same with it here as in other cases. Here, then, the verb expresses that the sensation of taste, the pain, the recollection of the concert, are elements, fragments, extracts, of the Ego. Our successive events then are successive components of ourselves. The Ego is in turn each of these events. At one moment, as was clearly seen by Condillac, it is nothing more than the sensation of taste, at the second, moment, nothing more than suffering, at the third, nothing more than the recollection of the concert.—Not that it is a simple whole; for the verb *is*, which connects the subject to the attribute, expresses, not only that the attribute is included in the subject as a portion in a whole, but further, that the existence of the whole precedes its division. Whatever be the origin of a judgment, the attribute is always, in relation to the subject, an artificial fragment in relation to a natural whole. The mind extracts the fragment, but, at the same moment, recognizes that this extraction or abstraction is purely fictitious, and that, if the fragment exists apart, it is from the mind's having set it apart. In fact, it is simply for the convenience of studying them that we separate our events from one another; they actually form a continuous web in which our inspection sets boundaries by arbitrary severings.\* The operation we perform resembles that of a man who the

---

\* "Les Philosophes Français du xix<sup>me</sup> Siècle," par H. Taine, 3rd ed. p. 250.

better to know a long plank divides it into triangles, rhomboids, and squares, all marked out with chalk. The plank remains one and continuous; we cannot say that it is simply the series of its portions placed end to end, since it is only divided to the eye; but still it is equivalent to the series of these portions; if they were taken away, nothing would remain; they constitute it. In the same way the Ego remains one and continuous; we cannot say that it is the series of its events placed in succession, since it is not divided into events except to observation; but still it is equivalent to the series of these events; if they were taken away, nothing would remain; they constitute it. When we separate them from it, we do as a man would who should say, after going over the several divisions of the plank, "This plank is a square here, just now it was a rhomboid, presently it will be a triangle; through all my advancing, retreating, recalling the past, foreseeing the future, I always find an invariable, identical single plank, though its divisions vary; it then is different from them, it is a distinct subsisting being, that is to say, an independent substance of which the rhomboids, triangles, and squares are but successive states." By an optical illusion, such a man would create an empty substance—the plank in itself. By a similar illusion, we create an empty substance—the Ego in itself.—Just as the plank is nothing more than the continuous series of its successive divisions, so, the Ego is nothing more than the continuous web of its successive events. If we consider it at a given moment, it is nothing more than a portion severed from the web, that is to say, a group of simultaneous events, about to be made up and then undone, some salient sensation among other less salient ones, some preponderant image among others about to fade away. At any other moment, the portion severed is analogous; it is no other and no more than this.

If now we classify these various events, sensations, images, ideas, resolutions; if we impose a name on each class, sensibility, imagination, understanding, will; if we attribute to the Ego various powers, that of feeling, that of imagining, that of willing; this is permissible and useful. But we must never forget what underlies these words; we

mean simply to say that this being feels, imagines, thinks, wills, and that, if things remain the same, it will feel, imagine, think, and will. When we outstep this vague proposition, we mean to say that, certain conditions being given, this being will have a certain sensation, image, idea, or resolution, in other words, that in the web constituting it there is a constant connection with some event internal or external.—I have the power of recalling a picture, the Marriage at Cana by Véronèse; this means that my present time of life, and with my present memory, the resolution to recall the picture is constantly followed, after the lapse of a certain time, by the internal revival, more or less clear and complete, of the figures and architecture of which the picture is composed.—I have the faculty of perceiving an external object, this table, for instance; this means that in my present state of health, without amaurosis, or tactile muscular paralysis, if the table be in the light, if it be within the range of my hand and my eyes, if I turn my eyes towards it, or stretch out my hand upon it, these two actions will be constantly followed by the perception of the table.—The forces, faculties, or powers appertaining to this web are nothing more, then, than the property which any particular event of the web has of being constantly followed, under various conditions, external or internal, by some particular internal or external event. There is nothing in the web, then, but its events, and the more or less distant connections which they have with one another or with external events; and the Ego, that is the web, contains nothing beyond its events and their connections.

The destruction of this metaphysical phantom lays low one of the principle survivors of that army of verbal entities which formerly invaded all the provinces of nature, and which during the last three hundred years, the progress of the sciences has one by one upset. There are two only left at present, the Ego and matter; but at that time, during the avowed or dissembled empire of the scholastic philosophy, men imagined that, underlying events, were a number of chimerical beings—the vital principle, the vegetable soul, substantial forms, occult qualities, plastic forces, specific virtues, affinities, appetites, energies, archæa, in short, a population

of mysterious agents, distinct from matter, connected with matter, and believed to be indispensable to explain its transformations. They have gradually vanished at the contact of experience. Nowadays, when scientific men speak of forces, physiological, chemical, physical, or mechanical, they see that these names are names only. Their efforts are limited to the proof of constant connections; when they explain a fact, it is by means of another fact. At the highest point of their theories\* they establish couples of very general events, the first antecedents, the second consequents, the second following the first without exception or condition; from these couples they deduce other things. If they use the word force it is to denote the constant connection between the second and the first. If they admit different forces, it is because, in the present state of our knowledge, the couples to which certain groups of events are reduced cannot be reduced to one another or to other couples. In short, verbal entities no longer subsist except at the two extremities of science—in psychology, by the notion of self and its faculties; in the preliminary parts of physics by the notion of matter and of its primitive forces.—Hitherto, and in France especially, this illusion has obstructed psychology; men have applied themselves to observing the pure Ego; they have attempted to see in the faculties “the causes which produce the phenomena of the soul;”† they have studied the reason—the faculty which produces ideas of the infinite, and discovers necessary truths; the will—the faculty which produces free resolutions. They have thus constructed a science of words alone. “From a pictured hook,” says an English philosopher, “we can hang only a pictured chain.” Let us lay aside words, let us study events, which alone are real, their conditions, their dependencies, and it is certain, that by following the path struck out by Condillac, and cleared by James Mill and his English successors, we shall gradually arrive at the construction of a science of things and of facts.

III. Having upset this entity at the summit of nature,

---

\* See Mill's “Logic,” and especially the theory of Induction.

† Garnier, “*Traité des Facultés de l'Âme*,” i. 33.



there remains, at the foot of nature, another entity, matter, which falls by the same blow. Hitherto, the most faithful followers of experience have admitted, at the foundation of all corporeal events, a primitive substance, matter possessed of force. Positivists themselves underwent this illusion; in spite of their reducing all knowledge to the discovery of facts and their laws. Beyond the accessible region of facts and laws, they placed an inaccessible region, that of substances, real things, the knowledge of which would certainly be most precious, but in whose direction research ought not to stray, since experience attests the futility of all inquiry respecting them. Now the analysis which reduces substance and force to verbal entities is applicable to matter as well as to mind. In the physical as in the moral world, force is that particularity which a fact has of being constantly followed by another fact. Isolated by abstraction, and denoted by a substantive name, it becomes a permanent subsisting being, that is to say, a substance. But it becomes so for the convenience of discourse only, and the attempt to make anything more of it, is founded on a metaphysical illusion like that which sets apart the Ego and its faculties. Scientific men themselves come involuntarily to this conclusion when, provided with mathematical formulæ and with the whole of the facts of physics, they attempt to conceive the ultimate particles of matter.\* For they arrive at picturing atoms, not according to the coarse imagination of the crowd, as little solid masses, but as pure geometric centres, with relation to which, first, attractions, then repulsions increase with increasing proximity. In all this there are but movements, present, future, or possible, connected with certain conditions, variable in magnitude and direction according to a certain law, and determined with relation to certain points.

Thus, in the physical as in the moral world, nothing remains of what is commonly understood by substance and force; all left subsisting are events, their conditions and dependences, some of them moral or conceived on the type of

---

\* Renouvier, "*Essais de Critique Générale*," 3<sup>me</sup> essai, 25 Exposition of the Ideas of Boscovich, Ampère, Poisson, and Cauchy.

sensation, others physical or conceived on the type of motion. The notion of *fact or event* alone corresponds to real things. In this way, the Ego is a being as much as the chemical body or material atom ; only it is a more compound being, and consequently subject to more numerous conditions of origin and conservation. Chemical body, material atom, self—that which we term a being, is always a distinct series of events ; what constitutes the forces of a being is the property of certain events of its series to be constantly followed by some particular event of its own or of another series ; what constitutes the substance of a being is the permanence of this and other analogous properties. This is why, if we cast a general glance over nature, and drive out of our minds the phantoms we have set up between her and our thought, we perceive in the world nothing more than simultaneous series of successive events, each event being the condition of another and having another as its condition.

IV. This being settled, we have no difficulty in comprehending the connection between the human personality and the physiological individual. For it is now no longer a question of knowing how an unextended substance, termed soul, can dwell in an extended substance, termed body, or how two beings of nature so different can hold intercourse with one another ; these scholastic questions fall to the ground with the scholastic entities which suggested them. All we have now before our eyes is a series of events termed self, connected with other events forming its condition. Henceforward, there is nothing strange in the dependences we have proved. The web of facts which makes up our being is a distinct district in the aggregate constituted by the nervous functions, this aggregate itself being a distinct province in the entire living animal. As we have shown, this web may be considered under two aspects, directly, in itself and by consciousness, or indirectly, by external perception and from the impressions it produces on the senses.—Next to ideas, images, and sensations, events of a very compound nature, of which we are conscious, and which are thus distinguished from other analogous events, are other rudimentary and elementary events of the same kind, of which we are not conscious, and whose ex-

tences is denoted by the reflex action: such is the first aspect.—Next to the very compound molecular movements which take place in the gray substance of the cerebral lobes and of the centres termed sensory, and other analogous but less compound molecular movements which take place in the gray substance of the marrow and the ganglia of the sympathetic nerve;\* this is the second aspect.—The first is the psychological aspect; the second is the physiological aspect.—According to the second, there are in the animal many centres of nervous action, the ganglia of the great sympathetic nerve, the different segments of the marrow, the different departments of the encephalon, more or less subordinate or predominant, more or less simple or complex, but all distinct, mutually excitable, and possessed of the same fundamental properties.—According to the first, there are in the animal many groups of mental events, ideas, images, sensations strictly so called, rudimentary and elementary sensations, all more or less subordinate or predominant, more or less simple or complex, but distinct, mutually excitable, and more or less analogous to sensation.—By somewhat straining language, we might consider the marrow as a string of rudimentary encephala, and the ganglia of the sympathetic nerve as a network of still more rudimentary encephala.† Consequently, we should see, in the groups of rudimentary sensations of which we are not conscious, rudimentary souls; and just as the nervous apparatus is a system of organs in different states of complication, so the psychological individual would be a system of souls in different degrees of development.

We must not take these metaphors for more than they are worth, that is to say, for phrases translating into ordinary language the positive facts we have proved. But, as we descend the animal kingdom we constantly find them becoming more and more exact; the mutual dependence of the nervous centres becomes less strict; each centre is less affected by being cut off from the rest; and when isolated, performs its

---

\* Experiments of Claude Bernard on the reflex power of the submaxillary ganglion.

† See Landry, "*Des Paralysies*," 47, cited ante, p. 184.

functions less incompletely and for a longer time. We have seen that, in a triton or a frog, the hindquarters go through complex movements when separated from the rest of the body, movements adapted to a purpose, and capable, under altered circumstances, of adapting themselves to another purpose. These co-ordinated movements which seem to denote an intention, are still more visible in the severed portions of insects.\* This extends so far that many observers have seen in such movements a true intention, and consequently true representations, just as those of which the cerebral lobes are the organs. "I remove rapidly with scissors," says Dugès, "the anterior segment of the thorax of the *Mantis religiosa*. The posterior part of the body still remains balanced upon the four legs which belong to it, resisting and attempt to overthrow it, recovering its position when disturbed and performing the same agitated movements of the wings and elytra, as when the unmutated insect is irritated. . . . The experiment may be pursued in a more striking manner. The anterior part of the thorax contains a bilobed ganglion, sending out nerves to the arms or fore-limbs, which are armed with powerful claws. If the head be removed, the detached portion will then live for nearly an hour with its solitary ganglion; it will set in motion its long arms, and knows how to turn them against the fingers of the experimenter who holds it, and to insert its hooks in them."

If we descend a step lower, the fundamental plurality of the animal will become more evident. "With the Annelids, each ganglion corresponds to a segment of the body, often formed of many rings, as for instance, with leeches, all whose parts are repeated with every five rings. Every segment thus possesses, besides this ganglion, a similar portion of the principal apparatus, sometimes even of the apparatus of the senses. This is the case with the *Polyophthalmus*, in which each segment is provided with two rudimentary eyes, each receiving a nervous thread from the corresponding ganglion, a real optic nerve." Each of these segments is a complete

---

\* Vulpian, op. cit. 790. Experiments of Dugès, Dujardin, Walkenaer, etc. Dugès, "Physiologie Comparée," i. 337.

animal, and the whole animal is formed "of several elementary animals placed one after another." Thus it is that, when separated, each is still an independent centre of co-ordinated reflex actions adapted to an end. Now the only difference between a nervous system so constituted, and the nervous system of a mammal, is that the segments of the first are more complete and independent than those of the second. In fact, anatomy shows that a vertebral column, like, an annelid, is composed of distinct segments, medullary and protecting, that the skull itself is made up of flattened and consolidated vertebræ, and that the brain is nothing more than a prolongation and development of the spinal marrow. In short, the republic of nervous centres, all equal and almost independant, which we meet with among the inferior animals, is gradually changed as we ascend to the superior animals, into a monarchy of unequally developed and intimately connected centres subject to one principal centre.—But this advanced organization and centralization do not suppress the original plurality of the being so constituted. In proportion as it rises in the scale, it departs from the state in which it was a total, and approaches the state in which it will be an individual; that is all. Even when in the state of an individual, we can push it back into the state of a total; by affecting transverse segments in the marrow of a young mammal, it is possible, if circulation and respiration go on, to maintain in it, for several weeks, independent segments, each capable of reflex action, and incapable of receiving from or transmitting to others any excitation whatever.\* Lastly, at the lowest point of the animal scale, with zoophytes for instance, in which no nervous system is apparent, and in which nervous matter probably exists in a diffused state only, the plurality and division are much greater still; for a polypus may be cut in every direction, and even chopped up; each fragment becomes complete, and furnishes an animal having all the faculties and instincts of the primitive animal.

The reader sees now how the web of events, which is ourselves, and of which we have consciousness, is connected with the rest. This series—which, according to the aspect in

---

\* See *ante* p, 184.

which we consider it, is sometimes, to our senses, a series of molecular movements, sometimes, to our consciousness, a series of sensations, more or less transformed—is nothing more than the most complex and most predominant in a group of other analogous series. In proportion as we descend the animal scale, we see it lose its domination and complexity, and become reduced to the level of the others, while these in turn loosen their mutual connections, and become insensibly degraded.—To external perception, they have all for condition of existence, the integrity and renewal of the nervous system whose special activity they are, and the beings, more or less strictly bound together, which they constitute, whatever they may be to consciousness, with whatever names metaphysical or literary illusion may clothe them, are subject to the same condition.

## PART THE SECOND.

## THE DIFFERENT KINDS OF KNOWLEDGE.

---

BOOK I.

## OF THE GENERAL MECHANISM OF KNOWLEDGE.

---

CHAPTER I.

## OF ILLUSION.

I. The reader has now followed, under all its forms, the internal event which constitutes our knowledge. Our ideas are signs, that is to say, sensations or images of a certain kind. Our images are repeated surviving and spontaneously reviving sensations, that is to say, sensations of a certain kind. Our sensations strictly so called are whole sensations, made up of more simple sensations, these of still simpler ones, and so on. We may, then, for want of a better name, say, with Condillac, that the internal primordial event which constitutes our knowledge is sensation.—But it must be observed that this name simply denotes its most remarkable state, that in this state it is but a total or group of elementary sensations, themselves composed of more elementary sensations, that by the side of these are other rudimentary ones, equally inaccessible to consciousness, and whose presence is indicated by reflex actions, and that thus the internal primordial event is progressively simplified and degraded to an infinite extent beyond our range and grasp. We must further observe, to understand it properly, that in another aspect, that is, seen from without and by means of external perception, it is a molecular movement of the nervous centres, and so comes with-

in the category of physical phenomena. We must finally observe that the names of force and substance, of self and matter, denote metaphysical entities only, that there is nothing real in nature but connected webs of inter-connected events, that these are all we find in ourselves or in other things.—This is why, in order to form a first notion of mind, we must represent to ourselves one of these webs, and postulate that, being known by two different processes, external perception and consciousness, it must perforce appear under two irreducible aspects of unequal importance, that is to say, moral on the face and physical on the reverse.—The primordial event being thus disengaged and determined, we have now with its combinations to construct the rest.

We are conscious of our states of mind, we recollect them, we foresee many of them. We perceive external objects, we recollect their changes, we foresee many of them. Besides these operations, which are common to us with animals, there are others, special to ourselves. We form abstractions and generalizations, we conclude, we reason, we construct ideal objects. These are the principal groups of acts which make up our cognitions.—How can such a being as we have described accomplish these?—How can they be constructed out of such internal events as we have described? This is the question, and it is not solved by saying, as many psychologists do, that we have such and such faculties, consciousness, memory, imagination, or reason. These are verbal explanations, inherited from the school-men. To explain one of these acts is to distinguish its elements, to show their order, to determine the conditions of their origin and combination. Now the events we have been studying, signs, images, sensations, are the elements of all knowledge. By their association or their conflict, they become transformed. On the one hand, they appear other than they are. On the other hand, by a more or less complete correction, they are stripped of this false appearance. Two principal processes are employed by nature to produce the operations we term cognitions: the one consisting *in the creation of illusions within us*; the other consisting *in their rectification*. It is by this double operation that the mental edifice is raised and completed; hitherto we



have been observing the materials; now, we must study its structure.—Let us commence at once with examples; we shall better understand the meaning of the words by first seeing the particulars of the facts.

II. A woman makes violent gestures, wipes her eyes with her handkerchief, and sobs, hiding her face in her hands. She cries in a plaintive voice:—"Good God! how wretched I am!" Her face is contracted, her chest heaves, she is panting, and her stifled cries are incessantly renewed.—She is acting grief; but if I happen not to know this, it *seems* to me that she is in great grief; which means that her gestures, her features, cries, and words are the same, and arouse in me the same ideas as if she were in great grief. Between her grief and my idea, is a series of intermediaries, the first of which is her expressive attitude. This attitude is usually preceded by grief, but usually only. If the woman is a skilful actress, the grief may be wanting though the attitude is there, and I shall form the same conclusion as if the grief were there.

So again, a stick is plunged half-way into water; it *seems* bent, though it is straight. But between the presence of the stick and my preception there are several intermediaries, the first of which is a pencil of luminous rays. In the most common case, that is, when the stick is wholly in the air or wholly in the water, if the rays from one-half are inflected with reference to the rays from the other half, the stick is actually curved; but this is only the most common case. When by exception the straight stick is plunged into two unequally, refracting media, although it is straight, the rays from one-half will be inflected with reference to the rays from the other half, and I shall have the same perception as if the stick were bent.

Lastly, take the case of a person who has lost a leg and complains of tinglings in the heel. He actually experiences tinglings; but not in the heel he no longer possesses; only the feeling *seems* to be there. Here again, between the nervous disturbance in the heel and the judgment which situates the sensation in that spot, there are many intermediaries the principal one being the sensation itself. Usually, when the sensation arises, it is preceded by peripheral disturbance,

but usually only. When by exception the central extremity existing after amputation enters into activity, the sensation will arise though the heel is destroyed, and the patient will form the same conclusion as when he still had his leg.—These examples show us very clearly in what the appearance consists. There are three terms forming the three links of a chain; an antecedent, the asserted fact, an intermediary, which is usually preceded by the antecedent, an idea, belief, judgment, or perception, which always follows the intermediary, and refers to the antecedent. For the affirmative judgment to be produced it is sufficient for the intermediary to be produced; it matters little whether the antecedent exists or not.

To push this further. The antecedent has been hitherto simply a property of the object, sometimes absent, sometimes present; in fact, what we have been considering has been the situation of a tingling, the curvature of a stick, the trouble of a woman. Let us now look for a case in which the antecedent is the object itself; this is what happens in hallucinations. A man sees, with eyes closed or open, the perfectly distinct head of a corpse three paces in front of him, though no such head is there. This means, just as in the previous instances, that between the actual presence of a corpse's head and the affirmative perception, are a group of intermediaries, the last of which is a particular visual sensation of the nervous centres. Usually, this sensation has as its antecedents a certain molecular motion of the optic nerves, a certain impingement of luminous rays, lastly, the presence of the real head of a corpse. But it is usually only that these three antecedents precede the sensation. If the sensation is produced in their absence, the affirmative perception will arise in their absence, and the man will see a corpse's head which is not actually there. Here again, the presence of the last intermediary is sufficient to cause the perception to arise; it matters little whether the antecedents exist or not. We see by all these examples that an object or property which do not exist *seems* to us to exist, when the final effect which they usually produce in us by an intermediary, is produced in us without their existence. Their intermediary replaces them; it is equivalent to them.

Now it is readily seen that in all these instances the final intermediary which immediately precedes the affirmative idea, belief, perception, or judgment, is a sensation. The others act only by and through it. Remove all but it; suppress the thing itself, as is done in instruments for producing optical delusions; suppress the luminous rays, which is what happens in the cases of the subjective images we see with our eyes closed; suppress the disturbance of the peripheral extremity of the nerve, which happens in the illusions of persons who have lost limbs; suppress all action of the nerve, which is what happens in hallucination strictly so called; leave nothing subsisting but the sensation or activity of the centres of sensation, there is hallucination, and consequently affirmative judgment.—On the contrary, suppress this sensation or activity of the centres of sensation, while preserving the other intermediaries and the object itself; let there be an object present, and in the light, let the extremity of the nerve be in action, let this action be propagated through the whole course of the nerve; if the nervous centres are benumbed by chloroform, or if, as happens in hypnotism and in impassioned attention, an anterior dominant sensation closes the access to supervening sensations, a drum may be beaten in the room, or the patient may be pinched, pricked, and wounded without his ever surmising it; as he does not experience the sensation of sound, or the pain of the wound, he will perceive neither drum nor cutting instrument. In short, in the absence of any ulterior obstacle, it is necessary and sufficient for the production of the perception or affirmative judgment that the sensation or action of the nervous centres be produced.—In this respect mental operations resemble vital operations. If we remove the tail from a tadpole and throw it into water, it will become organized and developed up to the tenth day, just as if it had remained in its first place.\* If we cut off the paw of a young rat, and, having skinned it, place it under the skin of the side of another rat, it becomes grafted on, is nourished, and grows

---

\* Vulpian, 296. See the whole thesis of Paul Bert, "*Sur la Vitalité Propre des Tissus Animaux.*"

there and acquires its full development, all its connections, all its ordinary structure, just as if it had remained attached to its former owner. Such is the vital process; in the absence of ulterior obstacles, that is to say, if the medium be a fitting one, it goes on blindly, whether its result be useful, useless, or even harmful.—So is it again with the mental process; in the absence of paralysis or other hindrance in the cerebral lobes, as soon as the sensation is given, the affirmative perception or judgment follows, whether false or true, salutary or pernicious, matters little, even should the hallucination which sometimes constitutes its lead on to suicide, and destroy the customary harmony adjusting our activity to the coarse of the universe.

III. Thence follows a consequence of capital importance: it is that external perception is a true hallucination. Let us fully understand this truth in the guise of a paradox. A person laboring under hallucination who sees a corpse's head three paces in front of him, experiences at that moment an internal visual sensation precisely similar to what he would experience if his open eyes were then to receive the luminous rays coming from the head of a real corpse. There is no real corpse's head in front of him; there are no gray and yellowish rays coming from it; there is no impression made by such rays on his retina, or transmitted by his optic nerves to the centres of sensation. What is really three paces in front of him is a red arm-chair; the rays coming from it are red; the impression made on his retina and propagated thence to the centres of sensation is one of red rays. But nevertheless, the action of the centres of sensation is that which would in their normal state, be excited in them, by gray and yellowish rays, such as an actual corpse's head would emit. This action of the centres of sensation, in other words, this spontaneous visual sensation, is sufficient to call up in him an apparent corpse's head, apparently situated three paces off, apparently possessed of relief and solidity, an internal phantom, but so closely resembling an external and real object that the patient gives a cry of horror.—Such is the efficacy of the visual sensation strictly so called; and it extends so far that the sensation possesses it even when the normal

antecedents are absent. It extends then to the cases in which the normal antecedents are present; therefore when the corpse's head is real and present, when a pencil of gray and yellowish rays starts from it to strike the retina, when this impression of the retina is propagated along the optic nerves, when the action of the centres of sensation corresponds to it, the visual sensation so excited will give rise to the same internal phantom, and the semblance of the corpse's head, which is produced in us during hallucination, properly so called, will also be produced in us during external perception, with this difference only, that, in the first case, the hand or other sense, the bystander to whom we appeal to attest our affirmative judgment, will pronounce it false, whilst, in the second case, the hand or other sense, the bystander to whom we appeal to test our affirmative judgment, will confirm it; and this we express by saying, in the first case, that the object is apparent only, and, in the second case, that it is real. It is readily seen that this analysis is applicable not only to visual sensations, but to all others, since all the others admit of hallucinations.—Therefore, when we walk in the street, watching and listening to what passes around us, we have within us the various phantoms which would be experienced by a sufferer from hallucinations shut up in his room, and in whose case the visual, auditory, and tactile sensations which are produced in our case by the action of the nerves would all be produced in the same order but without the medium of the nerves. These various phantoms are in our case, as in his, houses, roads, carriages, pavements, and passers-by. Only, in our case, there are objects and external events, independent of ourselves and real, proved by the ulterior experience of the other senses, and by the concurring testimony of other observers, which correspond to our phantoms; while, in his case, there is no such correspondence.—Thus, external perception is an internal dream which proves to be in harmony with external things; and instead of calling hallucination a false external perception, we must call external perception a *true hallucination*. Illness separates the internal event and shows it us as it is, in the state of a colored, intense, precise, and localized semblance. In this state, it is no longer con-

fused with things ; we can distinguish it from them, and immediately on this we may, with fair reason, conclude its presence when health and reason are perfect ; hence it follows that, while health and reason are perfect, it is this internal event, this semblance which we take for a subsisting thing other than ourselves and placed without us.

By the same stroke we comprehend and correct the error into which consciousness naturally falls with respect to external perception. When we examine our perception of things without, we are tempted to mistake it for a simple naked act of mind, destitute of any sensible character, and indeed of any character other than its relation with the thing which is its object.—Take the case of a table, I see it, touch it, perceive it. In addition to my tactile and visual sensations, I find nothing in me but an act of pure attention, a spiritual act, unique in kind, incomparable to any other.—There is nothing strange in this conclusion ; if the act is pure and spiritual, it is because it is empty ; we have emptied it ourselves by taking from it all its characters, to set them apart and form from them an object. The external perception of an arm-chair is nothing more than the phantom of the arm-chair ; when, in accordance with habit, we consider this phantom as a real and external object, we cut away from perception all that constitutes it, and, from a full act, we form a void or abstract act.—We have already seen many instances of this illusion ; we shall see many more such ; thus arise the beings and spiritual activities with which metaphysics and psychology are still crowded. Many philosophers, and all those who content themselves with words, are subject to this error. Usually they picture to themselves our cognitions, external perceptions, recollections, acts of consciousness or of reason, as acts of a special and simple nature, of which we are unable to say any thing more than that they are each an activity and a relation, the activity of a simple being, which by their means enters into relation with extended beings other than itself, with itself, with past events, with laws or higher truths. Science, in this acceptation of it, is soon constructed ; there is nothing to seek or to find in an activity like this, since it is simple ; when once we have given it a name we have come to an end. The truth

is we have found names, which is somewhat unimportant. The truth again is that, if we have come to an end it is because we have ourselves barred the way. Neither external perception nor the other acquisitions of consciousness are simple activities applying to and ending in objects differing from themselves. They are symbols, phantoms, or semblances\* of these objects, hallucinations, usually true, and arranged, by an artifice of nature, in such a way as to correspond to objects, and all are more or less advanced, retarded, and altered in their development. We shall see the detail and the arrangement in the following pages.—Meanwhile let us keep in mind this principle, that sensation, whether in the absence or presence of impulsions from without and of nervous action, produces hallucinations, and produces them by itself alone. It is the motive spring of all the mechanism, and so much so that, for the purpose of renewing and perpetuating our knowledge, nature has given it a *substitute*.

IV. This substitute is the image; by the side of sensations strictly so called, which are, by nature, temporary, connected with the vibration of the nerves, almost always incapable of reviving spontaneously, and situated in the centres of sensation, there is another series within us of absolutely analogous events, which are, by nature, durable, which survive the vibration of the nerve, are capable of reviving spontaneously, and are situated in the cerebral lobes or hemispheres. These are what we have termed images.—Here are a second group of sensations, so similar to the first that we may call them reviving sensations, and repeating the first, as a copy repeats an original, or as an echo repeats a sound. In this way they have the properties of the first, they replace the first when absent, and, as they perform the same function, must give rise to the same mental process.

This is what experience has already shown us. The more complete, that is to say the more intense and precise do they

---

\* All the terms by which men have denoted the phenomenon result etymologically in the same meaning.—Conception (*cum-capere*, the thing becomes internal).—Representation (*rursus præsens*, the thing present anew though actually absent).—Idea (*Eidos*, the figure, the image, the semblance, the appearance of the thing instead of the thing itself).—So in German, *Begriff*, *Vorstellung*, &c.

become, the more does the operation they give rise to border on hallucination. Represent to yourself some particular object you are well acquainted with, for instance, some little brook running among poplars and willows. If you have a clear imagination, and permit yourself to become absorbed in the reverie as you sit by the fire, you will soon see the glistening waves on its surface, the yellowish or ash-colored leaves floating down its stream, the little eddies agitating the water cresses, the cold shade of the lines of trees; you will almost hear the ceaseless whispering of the branches and the vague rustling of the water striking against its banks. Fragments of your former sensations have revived in you; you have seen again, with closed eyes, patches of green, of blue, of dark glitter; scraps of sound have come back; and these surviving wrecks of the primitive sensation have had, on a small scale and incompletely, but with all their proportions preserved, the same effect as the primitive sensation; the hallucinatory process has been half effected.

Let us get rid of the obstacles which hinder its completion. Let us take the case of the images which present themselves at the moment the waking state draws to a close, and sleep begins.\* We have seen that they become brightened and precise, in proportion as our present sensations become more and more vague and feeble; after some seconds we seem to hear real sounds, to see real forms, to actually smell, taste, and touch. By a necessary consequence, affirmative judgments follow these images; according to their kind we think we have before us such and such an object, "an open book, printed in very small text which we read with difficulty,† an hermaphrodite, a stew with mustard in it, giving out a very sharp smell, some picture of Michael Angelo, a lion, a green rhomboidal figure," numbers of persons, landscapes. When sleep has actually come on, the hallucination, then at its height, makes up what we term our dreams.—When the sleep, instead of being natural, is artificial, the hallucinatory process becomes plainer still. Such are the cases of hypnotism and

---

\* Cf. Maury, "*Le Sommeil*," &c., p. 33.

† Maury, *ibid.* p. 51, Observations made on himself.



somnambulism. In this state, which may be excited at will in many persons, the patient believes, without resistance or reserve, in all notions *suggested* ‡ to him, and these may be suggested to him in two ways.

The first means of suggestion is to give the patient an attitude which would correspond with some particular feeling, or which would be assumed in commencing some particular action, or which would indicate the presence of some object; he will, of his own accord, complete the attitude, and immediately experiences the feeling, goes through the action, and believes in the presence of the object.—If the head be thrown slightly back, and the spine straightened, “his countenance then assumes an expression of the most lofty pride, and his whole mind is obviously possessed by the feeling.” At this moment, “let the head be bent forward, and the body and limbs gently flexed; and the most profound humility then takes its place.” If the corners of the mouth be gently separated, he becomes lively at once; and, when the eyebrows are drawn towards each other, and downwards, he becomes morose; sometimes on waking he is still conscious of the insurmountable emotions into which he has been thrown and fixed by the ascendancy of the attitude. “So, again,” says Carpenter, “not merely emotional states, but definite ideas are thus excitable. Thus, if the hand be raised above the head, and the fingers are flexed upon the palm, the idea of climbing, swimming, or pulling at a rope is called up; if, on the other hand, the fingers are flexed while the arm is hanging down at the side, the idea excited is that of lifting a weight; and if the same be done when the arm is advanced forwards in the position of striking a blow, the idea of fighting is at once aroused.” The somnambulist proceeds to complete the action, that is to say, he begins to box, to draw up his arm with difficulty, to move his limbs as if to climb, to swim, or to pull a rope.

---

‡ Braid, “*Neurhypnology*.”—Carpenter, article “Sleep” in Todd’s “*Cyclopædia*.”—Dr. Hack Tuke, “*De la Folie Artificielle*,” “*Annales Médico-Psychologiques*,” 4<sup>me</sup> Série, vi. 429, and vii.—Maury, “*Le Sommeil*,” &c.; the whole of chap. II and p. 424.—Azam, “*Annales de Médecine et de Chirurgie*,” Jan., 1840; and “*Annales Médico-Psychologiques*,” 3<sup>me</sup> Série, vi. 430.—Dr. Philips, “*Cours de Braidisme, théorie et pratique*.”

The second means of suggestion consists in words, and this process sometimes succeeds in ordinary somnambulism. "We knew," says Carpenter, "a young lady at school, who frequently began to talk after having been asleep an hour or two; her ideas almost always ran upon the events of the previous day; and if encouraged by leading questions addressed to her, she would give a very distinct and coherent account of them; frequently disclosing her own peccadilloes and those of her school-fellows, and expressing great penitence for the former, whilst she seemed to hesitate about making known the latter. To all ordinary sounds, however, she seemed perfectly insensible, . . . and, if the interlocutor addressed to her any questions or observations that did not fall in with her train of thought, they were completely disregarded. . . . The well-known case of the officer, narrated by Dr. James Gregory, is one of the same intermediate class; rather allied, in our apprehension, to somnambulism than to ordinary dreaming. This gentleman, who served in the expedition to Louisburgh in 1758, was in the habit of *acting* his dreams; and their course could be completely directed by whispering into his ear, especially if this was done by a friend with whose voice he was familiar; so that his companions in the transport were in the constant habit of amusing themselves at his expense.—At one time they conducted him through the whole progress of a quarrel, which ended in a duel; and when the parties were supposed to be met, a pistol was put into his hand, which he fired, and was awakened by the report.—On another occasion they found him on top of a locker, or bunker, in the cabin, when they made him believe he had fallen overboard, and exhorted him to save himself by swimming. He immediately imitated all the motions of swimming. They then told him that a shark was pursuing him, and entreated him to dive for his life. He instantly did so, with such force as to throw himself entirely from the locker upon the cabin floor, by which he was much bruised, and awakened of course.—After the landing of the army at Louisburgh, his friends found him one day asleep in his tent, and evidently much annoyed by the cannonading. They then made him believe that he was engaged, when he expressed great fear, and showed

an evident disposition to run away. Against this they remonstrated; but, at the same time, increased his fears, by imitating the groans of the wounded and the dying; and when he asked, as he often did, who was down, they named his particular friends. At last they told him that the man next himself in the line had fallen, when he instantly sprung from his bed, rushed out of the tent, and was roused from his danger and his dream together by falling over the tent-ropes.—After these experiments he had no distinct recollection of his dreams, but only a confused feeling of oppression and fatigue; and used to tell his friends that he was sure they had been playing some trick upon him.”

Artificial or induced somnambulism puts the mind into a similar state. “If you tell a somnambulist that you are a lion, and assume something of its attitude by going on all fours and imitating its roar, the magnetized person at once exhibits violent fear, which appears in all his features, and shows all the signs of positive conviction.”\* When a person is hypnotized, says Dr. Tuke,† he may often “be made believe by suggestion that he sees an absent person. . . . So it is possible to make him imagine that he hears a particular air played on an instrument, while really there is no sound produced.” Words excite in the patient the images of certain auditory or visual sensations, and the mental process which ensues is precisely the same as if the sensations themselves had been aroused through the medium of the nerves.

The same process ensues whatever be the kind of the images. “C. D., when hypnotized, was asked to feel the operator’s fingers. He answered that he felt nothing. The operator then placed his finger and thumb, joined together, under the patient’s nose, and told him to draw in his breath, so as to take a pinch of snuff. The suggestion took effect at once. The patient drew in his breath, and then showed all the symptoms consequent on taking a sternutatory powder.”—And so, “tell a person properly prepared by hypnotism that he is

---

\* Maury, 333. I have myself watched analogous experiments at the house of Dr. Puel. A somnambulist was told that she was in a garden; she went through the motion of plucking flowers and smelling them with great pleasure.

† “*Annales Médico-Psychologiques*,” 4<sup>me</sup> Série, vi. 427 : and vii. 261.

eating rhubarb, that he is chewing tobacco, or some other substance of unpleasant taste, . . . and the effect will follow the words. Thus, one W. H. was hypnotized, and a glass of pure water placed before him, which he was induced to take as brandy. He praised it as excellent—the water had, in fact, for him the taste of brandy—and drank it eagerly, asking for another.—In the second instance, J. K., when in the same abnormal state was asked to drink a little fresh water, and, while he did so, the operator drank a little of it himself, and spat it out at once with an expression of horror and disgust. This action suggested at once to the patient that the water was impure or perhaps poisoned, so much so that in this persuasion he spat it out with disgust.” . . . —The same illusion occurs when the image suggested is that of a sensation of touch. “C. D. was hypnotized, and induced to believe that he was covered with bees. He gave credence to the suggestion at once, and acted precisely as a person would do when stung. He gave all the signs of pain, shook his hair, rubbed his face with his hands in a frantic manner, and then tore off his coat to rid himself of his imaginary assailants. He was evidently laboring under an hallucination of general sensibility.—The same thing may be said of another person, E. F., who, under the same conditions of somnambulism, was led by suggestion to believe that she suffered from a violent toothache, the operator increasing the effect of his words by placing his finger on the patient’s cheek, when she buried her face in her hands, and moved from side to side, writhing with pain.”

In all these instances, the physical and moral conditions which usually repress the hallucinatory process are absent. In fact, the nerves and centres of sensation are benumbed; all that portion of the nervous system by which we communicate with the outer world becomes inactive, or comparatively so. When this happens, we have, in fact, no sensations strictly so called, or at all events those which we have are singularly blunted, and are of no effect as far as we are concerned. They all cease in the case of the ordinary sleeper; with the dreamer those only subsist which harmonize with his dreams; the somnambulist and hypnotized person preserve a

series of them only, those termed muscular or those of the sounds put before him by the operator. Sensations thus lose wholly or in part the control they exercise in the normal state.—In physiological language the equilibrium subsisting in the waking state between the nerves and nervous centres on the one side, and the hemispheres on the other, is upset in favor of the hemispheres; they perform their functions alone, and in a preponderating manner. In psychological language the equilibrium subsisting in the waking state between sensations and images is upset in favor of the images; they acquire their full development and all their consequences; they become intense and precise, result in affirmative judgments, produce the same mental process as sensations themselves, and give rise to hallucinations.

V. An important consequence follows from this. We have seen that in every representation, conception, or idea, there is an image or a group of images.—When I think of any particular object, the Louvre for instance, there is some image in my mind of the visual sensation I should have in its presence.—When I think of a general object, the tree or the animal, there is some fragment, more or less vague, in my mind of an analogous image, and, in every case, the image of its name, that is to say, the visual, auditory, muscular sensations, which the name would excite in me if I read, pronounced, or heard it.—Consequently, in all the higher operations we effect by means of abstract names—judgment, reasoning, abstraction, generalization, combination of ideas—there are images more or less effaced or more or less distinct.—On the other hand it is evident that all recollections and all previsions contain images. When I recollect that the sun rose yesterday at a particular point of the horizon, and when I predict that it will rise to-morrow at some other particular point, I have internally the image, vague or distinct, of the visual sensation which I had yesterday, and the visual sensation I shall have to-morrow.—And so again, all the associated perceptions which recollection and prevision add to the crude sensation to constitute ordinary external perception, all the judgments, beliefs, and conjectures which a simple sensation excites as to the distance, form, kind, and properties of objects,

contain images. This arm-chair, three paces from me, gives my eyes the sensation only of a green patch, differently shaded, according to its different parts; still, from this simple visual indication, I conclude that it is solid, soft, with a certain magnitude and form, and that I may seat myself in it; in other words, I imagine the certainty of a series of muscular and tactile sensations which my hands and body would have, if I were to make the experiment.—Lastly, in consciousness itself, for instance, in the consciousness of our present sensations, there are images; for, when we are conscious of a pain, a taste, a muscular effort, a sensation of cold or heat, we situate it at some spot or other of our organs or limbs; in other words, my sensation arouses the image of the tactile, visual, and muscular sensations of which I should avail myself to recognize the spot at which the nervous disturbance is produced.

Thence it follows that all these operations comprise an hallucination, at all events in an incipient state. The image, a spontaneous repetition of the sensation, tends like it to excite an hallucination. No doubt it does not fully excite it; the mental process which has commenced is checked by surrounding repressions; the image must be alone and left to itself, as in sleep and hypnotism, to attain its full development and produce its whole effect; it does this in part only; when it does so completely the man is mad.—But whether the hallucinatory process be commenced or completed matters little, and the state of our mind when we are awake and in health may be defined as *a series of hallucinations which do not become developed*.

Let us, in fact, consider our usual representations and the habitual tenantry of our brain: let us picture to ourselves some house, some street, some study, some drawing-room, certain human figures, certain sounds, smells, tastes, feelings of contact, muscular efforts, and, above all, certain words; these last read, heard, or pronounced mentally, form most numerous inmates of a thinking brain. All are phantoms of external objects, semblances, of action and sensation, recognized on the spot as simple appearances, and, moreover, fugitive, effaced, incomplete, but, on the whole, identical in nature with the phantom of the house or of the corpse's head arising

in a person suffering from hallucination, with the semblance of cutaneous stings or of nasal tingling arising in the hypnotized person or somnambulist. Between the idea and the hallucination there is no other difference than that between the germ and the full-grown vegetable or animal.

We have but to look at cases of mental disease to see the germ develop itself, and obtain the proportions denied it in the normal state. Let us examine in turn the words and images which make up our ordinary thoughts.—In the normal state we think by words mentally heard, read, or pronounced, and what passes through our minds are images of certain sounds, certain letters, or certain muscular and tactile sensations of the throat, the tongue, and the lips.—Now it is sufficient for these images, and especially for the first of them, to become exaggerated for the patient to have hallucinations of hearing, and to believe that he hears voices.—“In the midst of my fever,” says Mme. C.,\* “I perceived a spider hanging from the ceiling over my bed. *A mysterious voice* told me to catch the spider. As I was afraid of the insect, I caught it with the corner of the sheet. After many efforts I rose, *and received an order* to burn the spider and the sheet to deliver myself from sorcery, so I set fire to the sheet. My room then became filled with a thick smoke. *A mysterious voice told me* to leave it as quickly as I could. . . . Having walked about the streets for three or four hours, *I heard the mysterious voice*, as I passed a pastrycook’s, telling me to buy a cake, and I did so. Further on, near a drinking fountain, *I was ordered* to drink. I bought a glass and drank.” Some hours afterwards she found herself near the Baths in the Rue Vendôme; *the mysterious voice* commanded her to take a bath; but this *same voice* proceeded with so much force from the bath that Mme. C. was frightened, and left without venturing into the water.—“M. N. was préfet of a large town in Germany which rose in 1812 against the rearguard of the French army, then in retreat.” His mind was upset by this; he imagined himself accused of treachery and dishonored; in short, he cut his throat with a razor. “As soon as he regained his senses he

---

\* Baillarger, “Des Hallucinations,” p. 14-24, &c.

heard *voices* accusing him ; when cured of his wound he heard the same *voices*. . . . These voices repeated to him night and day that he had betrayed his trust, that he was dishonored, that the best thing he could do was to kill himself. They availed themselves in turn of all the languages of Europe which the patient knew ; only, one of these voices was heard less distinctly than the rest, as it employed the Russian language, which M. N. spoke less readily than the others. M. N. frequently retired alone, the better to hear and listen ; he asked questions, he replied, he became convinced that his enemies by some means or other *could guess his inmost thoughts*. . . . On other matters he reasoned perfectly correctly, all his intellectual faculties were unimpaired, he followed conversations on various subjects with the same spirit, knowledge, and readiness as before his illness. . . . Having returned home, M. N. passed the summer of 1812 in a country house, where he received a great deal of company. When conversation became interesting he heard no *voices* ; if it slackened he heard them imperfectly ; if he left the company and retired alone the better to hear what these perfidious *voices* said, he became disquieted and anxious.”—These hallucinations persisted some time after his reason had returned, but they were no longer continuous, and usually occurred in the morning only, soon after rising. “My patient,” says Esquirol, “had his attention distracted from them by a very short conversation or reading ; but now he knew as I did what these symptoms were ; he looked on them as a nervous phenomenon, and expressed his surprise at having been their dupe so long.”—“Nothing is more common,” adds M. Baillarger, “than to hear patients complain that their invisible interlocutors tell them a host of things about their own affairs. . . . To employ the expression of a patient, ‘*How can they read in one’s life as in a book ?*’”

Not only may the image of articulate sound, that is to say, of words, but every image of sound may be developed so as to become an internal sensation.\* “In 1831, during an outbreak, the wife of a workman, then eight months preg-

---

\* Baillarger, “Des Hallucinations,” p. 9.



nant, saw, as she was attempting to reach her home, her husband fall mortally wounded by a bullet; she was delivered of a child; ten days afterwards delirium set in; she heard the noise of cannon, the fire of musketry, the whistling of bullets, and fled into the country. She was brought to the Salpêtrière, and recovered in about a month." In the next ten years six similar attacks occurred, and in each case the same hallucinations were renewed from the outset of the delirium. "The patient on each occasion escaped into the country to avoid the noise of cannon and musketry, and the crashing of windows broken by the shot."—In a healthy brain the image of the sounds heard in the outbreak would have been exactly reproduced, but very faintly. It might have been driven away and recalled at will. By these two characters it would have been recognized as purely internal, and would have been distinguished from sensation. Here it was reproduced with an intensity equal to that of the sensation and unexpectedly, without act of will, even against the resistance of the will; thus it no longer differed from the sensation, as we are acquainted with it by consciousness. Therefore, it had the same effects and same consequences, and renewed the trouble and terror which the woman, then sound in mind, had experienced during the fighting.

The same observation is to be made as to other images, and especially as to those of sight. A lady was in great trouble at the loss of her husband, and, being a believer in the immortality of the soul, constantly thought of him as of a person still in existence. "One evening, just as she was going to bed, there being a faint light in the room, she saw her husband cautiously approaching her, heard him pronounce some words in a low tone, and felt her hand pressed by that of the departed." Full of doubt and surprise she held her breath, the phantom disappeared, and she found she had been the dupe of an hallucination.—"Two persons," says Griesinger, "shortly before an outbreak of madness, had been much given to hunting. In their cases, the delirium turned principally on the adventures of the chase. Another had been reading, shortly before falling ill, an account of travels in the Himalayas, and it was on this subject that his delirium chiefly

turned.”—The most obliterated circumstances\* of our early years, the least observed and most insignificant incidents of our life, occasionally revive with this monstrous hypertrophy. “I passed my early life at Meaux,” says M. Maury, “and often went to a neighboring village called Trilport, situated on the Marne, where my father was building a bridge. One night, in a dream, I found myself carried back to the days of childhood, and playing in this village of Trilport. I saw a man dressed in a kind of uniform, and spoke to him and asked his name. He told me he was called C., and that he was coast-guard there, then disappeared to give place to other persons. I woke up with a start, having the name C. in my head. Was this a pure imagination, or was there really at Trilport a coast-guard named C.? I did not know, having no recollection of such a name. Some time afterwards, I questioned an old servant who formerly lived with my father, and who had often taken me to Trilport. I asked her if she recollected a person of the name of C., and she told me at once that he had been a coast-guard of the Marne, when my father was building the bridge. Most certainly I had known this, as she did, but the recollection had become effaced. The dream in calling it up had as it were revealed to me what I did not know.”—So again, Theophile Gautier tells me that once passing before the Vaudeville he read upon the placard, “the polka will be danced by M——.” This phrase fastened itself to him, and he thought of it incessantly, and in spite of himself, by an automatic repetition. After some time it was no longer a single mental phrase, but a phrase composed of articulate sounds, and with an external tone and appearance. This lasted several weeks, and he began to get uneasy, when suddenly the besetting disappeared.—There is no normal image, even the most ancient, the most enfeebled, the most latent, which may not vegetate and develop in this manner, just as there is no grain of poppy-seed, the most insignificant, the most abandoned to hazard, which may not become a poppy.

---

\* A number of instances are collected by M. Maury: “*Le Sommeil*,” &c., pp. 70, 120, 128.—See other remarks as to images which, on reviving, become hallucinations, in De Quincey, “*Confessions*, &c.,” p. 258.

For this reason, if we wish to understand the mental process excited by the image in its reduced and abortive state, we must examine the mental process excited by it in its state of fulness and freedom. We must imitate the zoologists, who, to explain the structure of some useless bony excrescence, prove by the comparison of neighboring species that it is a rudimentary limb; or the botanists, who, by increasing the nourishment of a plant, change its stamens into petals, and so prove that the ordinary stamen is an altered and abortive petal.—By similar comparisons, and from analogous hypertrophies, we discover that the image, like the sensation it repeats, is, in its nature, *hallucinatory*. Thus the hallucination, which seems a monstrosity, is the very fabric of our mental life.—Considered in relation to things, sometimes it corresponds with them, and then constitutes normal external perception; sometimes it does not so correspond, and then, as for instance, in dreams, somnambulism, hypnotism, and disease, it constitutes false external perception, or hallucination strictly so called.—Considered in itself, sometimes it is complete and perfectly developed, as happens in the two preceding cases; sometimes it is repressed, and remains in a rudimentary state; as happens in the cases of ideas, conceptions, representations, recollections, previsions, imaginations, and all the rest of the operations of the mind.

## CHAPTER II.

## OF RECTIFICATION.

I. IT now remains for us to study this abortion and its different stages. The reader must here revert to the theory before explained of antagonist reductives.\*—When alone, and in silence, reclining in a chair, I abandon myself to reverie, and when, by the obliteration of ordinary sensations, the internal phantasmagoria becomes intense, if sleep draws on, my precise images end by exciting actual hallucinations. At this moment a slight touch arouses me, the images become undone; the imaginary sounds lose their tone and sharpness; the colors fade; the outlines become vague, and the hallucinatory process is proportionately checked; the landscapes, houses, and figures I dreamed of are only seen imperfectly and through a mist; they seem to lose their solidity and consistence.—So far, there is nothing remarkable. We knew that the two great departments of the nervous system, that in which sensations take effect, and that producing images, are antagonistic—in other words, that sensations become feeble as images become strong, and *vice versâ*; from which it follows that the waking state, as it draws to a close, confers the ascendancy on images by taking it from sensations, and that the close of sleep deprives images of their ascendancy by restoring it to sensations.—But here a new phenomena is disclosed: not only does the phantom grow pale, but it ceases to appear a real object. It was pronounced external, it is pronounced internal. While we preserve our mental health, we recognize the figure for what it is—that is to say, for a simple phantom, a pure semblance, a representation, an idea. And this recognition is made, even when it remains precise,

---

\* Part I. book ii. chap. i. pp. 53 et seq.

colored, possessed of relief, founded on intact images. In fact, those painters who have the clearest imagination, those who paint a whole portrait from memory\*—Horace Vernet, who painted elaborate uniforms from his head—are not subject to hallucinations; they do not confound their mental representations with external objects; with exceptions, they all declare that, as far as they are concerned, these representations are invariably mental.—Here, in fact, comes into play a mechanism of universal application in our intelligence. A general law governs all our representations, from the most abstract to the most sensible. We cannot conceive a figure as having three sides and at the same time as having four. We cannot imagine a surface as blue and at the same time as red. We cannot perceive our right hand as hot and at the same time as cold. When two contradictory representations come in contact, the first is altered by the second, and this alteration constitutes what we call in ordinary language *a partial negation*. The two together thus form a complex representation, with two periods: in this compound the second negatives the first, on one point or another; and the alteration so produced varies in magnitude and differs in nature, according to the kind of the two representations thus united and in conflict.

Observe the simplicity of the mechanism. It consists solely in the attachment of a contradictory representation. By this attachment, the first become affected by a negation—in other words, contradicted in some particular respect, sometimes as an external and real object, sometimes as an actual or present object, and this operation causes it to appear, sometimes as an internal and imaginary object—that is to say, as a simple representation and pure phantom—sometimes as a past or future event—that is to say, as a recollection or prevision.

II. To convince ourselves of this, let us consider some examples, those which served to explain the appearance will also serve to explain the rectification.—Take the case of a clever actress imitating grief; in her presence we almost attain illusion; an unaccustomed or impassioned spectator actually

---

\* The testimony of Horace Vernet himself.

attains it; as, for instance, the American soldier on guard at the theatre when *Othello* was played, who cried out, "It shall never be said that a wretched negro killed a white woman while I stood by;" on which he levelled his piece at the actor, and put a ball through his arm.—We are not carried away to this extent, but when a play is very good, in close imitation of modern life, and, especially, at a first representation, suppressed exclamations, involuntary laughter, a hundred little gestures, show the emotion of the audience. The reader may observe this in himself when he sees for the first time some new comedy of Dumas the younger; twenty times in an act we have a minute or two of complete illusion; some true, unexpected phrase, supported by the appropriate gesture, accent, and surroundings, leads us up to it. We are distressed or enlivened; we are on the point of rising from our seats; then, of a sudden, the sight of the footlights, of the audience at the side, some other incident, recollection, or sensation, stops us and keeps us in our place. Such is the illusion of the theatre, incessantly upset and reviving; in this the pleasure of the spectator consists. His emotions of pity and aversion would be too powerful, if they lasted; their sharpened point is blunted by incessant rectification.\* At one moment he believes, then he ceases to believe; then again begins to believe, then again ceases to believe; each of these acts of belief ends in a denial, and each of these bursts of sympathy culminates in an abortion; thus, a series is made up of checked beliefs and weakened emotions; we say, in turn, "Poor woman, how unfortunate she is!" and almost immediately, "But she is only acting, how well she plays her part!"—In other words, we imagine her as heartbroken, and a moment after as calm; the two representations contradict one another, and, as the second is fortified with more supports, more closely connected with the aggregate of our former experience, and backed up by the body of all our general judgments, the first is negatived, altered and repressed till the moment when the incidents and recollections which support

---

\* Stendhal, "Racine and Shakspeare."

its rival disappear with its rival, and permit it again to assume a momentary ascendancy.

Let us now take the second and less familiar instance. We plunge halfway into water a straight hard stick, and it appears to be crooked. It is impossible for it not to appear so to us; the laws of optics and vision compel us so to see it. But we recollect that the water is soft and could not bend the wood, and that in twenty other instances, other sticks plunged halfway into water have undergone the same alteration of appearance. We conclude that in this instance also the curvature is but apparent; we assure ourselves of this by drawing out the stick and finding it still straight. Here is a rectification; in what does it consist?—Even after our correction, if the stick be again plunged halfway into water, we shall still see it crooked. In other words, to our visual sensation is joined an associated perception—that of distance and form. In other words, again, we imagine the special tactile sensation which corresponds in general to this visual sensation, and which would be given us by a really crooked stick. In this respect our associated perception is misleading.—But, by means of former experiments we have made, and of the general laws we are acquainted with, we pronounce it misleading, and represent the stick as straight; in other words, we imagine a different tactile sensation, that which would be given us by a stick really straight. In this way we couple to the first image a second contradictory image, and the first is at once *negatived*.

So is it with the person who refers feelings of tingling to a leg he has lost, and so, again, with the person subject to hallucination but sane, who, like Nicolai, or the patient mentioned by Bonnet, sees figures of persons passing through his room. Such a patient has proved, by the test of the other senses, that these figures correspond to nothing solid. He bases his rectification on the testimony of all persons present, and on the accordance of all natural probabilities. He knows that in the place where he sees a human figure there is nothing more than a wall hung with green paper. In other words, the image of the wall so hung with green paper comes in conflict with the sensation of a human figure

in apparently the same place; and the image, by simply coupling itself with the sensation, negatives the sensation. This is why the sick man preserves his reason, why he refrains from addressing the phantoms, why he seats himself on the chair in which they appear seated, in short, why he knows that he is ill, just as the person who has lost a limb knows he has lost it, and does not attempt to rub the absent foot in which he appears to feel the tingling. Such is the power of the contradictory image; it forms a couple with the contradicted sensation, and, while this coupling lasts, the persisting contradiction checks the hallucination, if not at its first stage, at all events at its second.

III. Here a distinction must be drawn: for the contradicted representation may have several degrees, from extreme dulness and feebleness up to complete energy and precision, and, further still, up to the abnormal exaggeration which transforms it into sensation.—In the normal state, while we are awake, our images remain more or less vague and colorless; even in intense reverie, the figures we imagine, the tunes we hum mentally, have not the clearness of the figures we see with our open eyes, or of the tunes which reach our ears from a musical instrument; the image of a visual or auditory sensation is but the feeble echo of that sensation.—But in illness the image becomes exaggerated till it transforms itself into a complete sensation. All the hallucinations termed\* psycho-sensorial are of this kind; the evidence of sane persons suffering from hallucinations, and the actions of insane persons so suffering, agree as to this.—To the same class belong the hallucinations which precede sleep and of which dreams are composed; any one of us may observe in his own case the spontaneous transformation by which, as sleep gains upon us confused and dull images become vivid and precise, and acquire all the energy, relief, and detail of sensations. The numerous examples cited above, have, I think, put this truth out of reach of doubt, and the transformation has been seen to effect itself in two ways, sometimes by a slow progress of which several phases may be followed—as is

---

\* Baillarger, *op. cit.*; Maury, *op. cit.*



the case with the reverie resulting in sleep ; sometimes suddenly, after an obscure incubation, traces of which may frequently be discerned—as usually happens in cases of hallucination.\*

After what has been said of the centres of sensation and the cerebral lobes, the physiological theory of this metamorphosis is self-apparent. In whatever way the sensation arises, it has as its condition the action of the centres of sensation. In ordinary cases this action is produced by the disturbance of the nerves. But, if otherwise produced, it will arise without the medium of the nerves, and we shall have a true sensation, that of a green table, that of the tones of a violin, without any table or any violin having acted on our eyes or ears. Now, setting aside the medium of the nerves, we find two cases in which the centres of sensation come into play.—Sometimes, when they have been set in action by the nerve they spontaneously persist in this action, and repeat it of themselves several times after the nerve has ceased to act ; this being notably the case with the hallucinations following the prolonged use of the microscope, when the micrographist, resting his eyes on his table or paper, sees a few inches in front of him small gray figures which persist, become effaced and revive again, some four or five times, continually growing paler and feebler.—Sometimes the centres of sensation come into play by a reflected shock when images, strictly so called, excite them to action. Usually, it is the sensation which excites the image, and it is the transmitted action of the centres of sensation which is repeated in the cerebral lobes or hemispheres: here, on the contrary, it is the transmitted action of the hemispheres which is repeated in the centres of sensation, and the image which excites the sensation. This is probably the case in hypnogogic and psycho-sensorial hallucinations.

If I may be permitted a homely illustration—let us conceive a bell-rope, the nerve, a simple conductor, attached \* ; a large bell, the centre of sensation ; when the rope is pulled

---

\* See Part I. book ii. chap. i. Especially the story of the gendarme S., p. 67, *ante*.

it causes the bell to toll; here we have the sensation. This bell, thanks to an imperfectly understood mechanism,\* communicates by different threads, the fibres of the optic thalami and the corpora striata, with a system of little bells which make up the hemispheres, and whose mutually excitable ringings exactly repeat its sounds with their pitch and tone; these ringings are images. When the bell tolls it sets in motion the ringings, and when the tolling is over the ringings continue, grow weaker, and are obliterated, but are capable of resuming and regaining all their primitive energy, when a favorable circumstance permits the persisting sound of one or two of the little bells to cause all the rest to ring in unison.—Usually, the large bell is set in motion by the rope. But sometimes, when the rope has ceased to pull, the bell continues to toll. Sometimes again it recommences to toll of its own accord. Lastly, sometimes, the little bells, which, as a general rule, receive their motion from it, transmit their motion to it; and we know the principal conditions of these singular effects.—In hallucinations of the microscope the large bell has been so powerfully and constantly set vibrating in one direction, that its mechanism continues to act even when the cord is motionless.—In dreams and hypnogogic hallucinations, the string is relaxed; it no longer communicates; the long employment of the waking hours has rendered it unfit for use; external objects may pull, but it no longer causes the bell to toll; on the other hand, at this moment, the little bells whose vibrations have been constantly repressed while we were awake, and whose pullings have been annulled by the more powerful pulling of the bell-rope, regain all their power, they ring more strongly and pull effectually; their disturbance excites a corresponding disturbance in the large bell, and the life of man is thus found to be divided into two portions, the waking state, in which the large bell rings by means of the cord, and sleep, in which it rings by means of the little bells.—In abnormal hallucination the cord still pulls, but its effort is overcome by the greater

---

\* The anatomical difficulties are too great.—See, however, the great work of Lhuys, "*Recherches sur le Système Nerveux*," with plates.

power of the little bells; and various causes—a flow of blood, inflammation of the brain, haschich—all the circumstances capable of rendering the hemispheres more active—produce this mischance; the vibrations of the little bells, which in the normal state are more feeble than the action of the cord, have become stronger, and the ordinary equilibrium of the functions is upset, from one of them having assumed an ascendancy to which it is not entitled.

IV. Having settled this, we see what may be the effect of the contradictory image and sensation on images so exaggerated. In order that the contradictory sensation may arise and negative them, it is necessary for the images to lose their exaggeration, to cease to excite sensations, and to return to the state of simple images; in other words, the little bells must cease to set the great bell tolling. Such is the case when we wake up; just now, in a dream, I imagined myself to be in a burning atmosphere; I wake up and have the sensation of ordinary temperate warmth; this sensation of comparative cold contradicted the image of the sensation of heat, and, by means of this coupling, the image appeared in its actual state, that is, as a simple image.—But if, through any derangement, the little bells continue to set the great bell tolling, which is what happens with the sufferer from hallucination who perceives an absent person, if the great bell repeats its tolling of its own accord, which is what happens in the hallucinations following the prolonged use of the microscope, the result is different. The patient may know the physiological cause of the error, may base his reasoning on the evidence of surrounding persons, may prove by the aid of the other senses that the phantom is but a phantom, still he continues to see it. In Nicolai's case the figures continued to pass through his room, and the little gray specks persist in appearing on the blank paper placed before the micrographist.—In fact, the contradictory sensation is no longer produced. The paper ceases to give the sensation of white at the place in which it appears to be covered with gray patches, and the green or brown wall of the room ceases to give the sensation of green or brown in the places at which the figures come in the way. The optic nerve is impressed by the white

rays of the paper or the green and brown rays of the wall, but ineffectually so; its action is no longer communicated to the centre of sensation. The place is occupied; another action is set up and persists there, resisting all the solicitations of the nerve.

There remains, then, a single corrective, the image strictly so called, the image of the green or brown wall which Nicolai attempted to picture to himself in the place of the phantoms, the image of the plain white paper which the micrographist represents to himself in the place of his paper spotted with gray outlines. But this image remains a simple image; it does not become exaggerated to the extent of setting in motion the centre of sensation and transforming itself into a sensation. Nicolai observed a very marked difference between the figure of a person as it appeared to him, and the same figure as he pictured it a moment after by an effort of attention and memory. The first invariably seemed an external thing, the second an internal, a simple mental representation; in fact, in the first case, the centre of sensation was operating, and, in the second, it did not operate.—Hence it follows that the correction afforded by the contradictory image is limited. The person under hallucination, even when sane, continues to see his phantoms as external; in fact, in his case, the centres of sensation operate precisely as if he had before his eyes real persons. Although the bell-rope does not pull, the large bell tolls as usual; the little bells of the hemispheres are powerless; the contradictory image can do nothing against the sensation itself. It has no effect except upon the consequence of the hallucinations so produced. If it were wanting, these consequences would be madness; the patient would imagine and reason about his phantoms, as he imagines and reasons about external objects: the micrographist would try to rub out the gray patches on his paper, Nicolai would have spoken to the imaginary friends who came to visit him, and have asked them how they were.—Here it is that the contradictory image, supported by the whole troop of general convictions, intervenes with success. Against sensations, that is to say against a state of the sensory centres on which it has no hold, it was powerless. Against ideas, representations, and reason-

ings, all founded on images resembling it, and situated like it in the hemispheres, it is effective. Rectification, of no effect in the first stage, becomes sufficient in the second.

V. Let us now study the contradicted image, as it remains in the normal state of wakefulness, that is to say when it does not set in motion the centres of sensation, and does not become exaggerated to the extent of being transformed into a sensation.—In this state it constitutes, in the first place, an event of capital importance which we term *recollection*.

Let the reader recall some recollection of his own, and abandon himself to it, especially if it be recent, vivid, and prolonged; he will thus obtain a better insight into its nature. A month ago I spent three hours on the pier at Ostend, engaged in watching the sun which was setting in a clear sky, and at this present moment I recall without difficulty the level street, the dyke paved with reddish bricks, the vast extent of glittering water, all the incidents of my walk, the sailor, and the two loungers I spoke to, my long reverie at the pier-head, from whence I watched the declining day, and the variations of the moving sea, the luminous twinkling of the waves, their bluish hollows striped with russet tints, all the splendor of the vast watery carpet, undulating and displaying itself with its changing colors, like a silk of Jordaens.—These are images, that is to say spontaneous revivals of anterior sensations, and, like all images, they admit of an illusion when they become intense and clear. In fact, there are moments when we believe for a half-second that we see real objects; I experienced this just now, and artists, writers, all who have precise and lucid memories, are well aware of this; a nervous person who has undergone a surgical operation, or met with some serious accident, bears the same testimony;\* the keenness of the recollection is so great that he will sometimes grow pale and utter a cry. In this state we forget ourselves, we lose consciousness of the present; we feel, before the internal phantasmagoria, as we do at the theatre when a good piece is being played. We become for the moment dupes of the half-dream, then cease to be so, then again become so, then again cease to be

---

\* See Part I. book ii. chap. i, p. 42.

so: thus an incessantly interrupted series is formed of beliefs incessantly denied, and of illusions incessantly set right.—But here the denial and the correction result in a new and marvellous effect, whose mechanism is so simple that we neglect to observe it, one of infinite extent, and which, by its adjustment to things, constitutes *memory*. At present, by virtue of this correction, *the present image appears to me as a past sensation*; this, strictly speaking, is recollection.—No doubt, a moment afterwards, on reflection, I shall know that all there is in my mind is a present image, that this vivid internal half-sight of blue waves spangled with gold and set in a semicircle of white sand, is entirely present and internal. But this will be an ulterior and supplementary correction, a rectification upon a rectification, a second and last stage in the series of reductions through which the image passes in order finally to appear as it actually is.—At the first stage, at the moment at which we are, it still appears as a sensation, not as a present sensation, as happens in hallucination proper and dreams, but as a past sensation situated at a greater or less distance from the present moment, as the sensation of certain glittering blue and certain dead white, placed in between my present sensations and other still more distant ones.—And in fact, when a lengthy series of well-connected sensations arises within us, when we mentally live over the incidents of a day's travel, we believe ourselves to be confronted with real, though distant facts. The images of sounds, colors, pains, pleasures, which are nothing more than present images, but which correspond to anterior sensations, seem, as they pass in review before us, our anterior sensations themselves. All there is within us is the present echo of a distant impression; nevertheless, what we affirm is not the echo, it is the distant impression, and by an admirable correspondence we affirm it truthfully.

Such is the crude fact, and we see that recollection, like external perception, is a true hallucination, that is to say, *an illusion which results in a cognition*. It is an illusion, since the present image which constitutes it is taken, not for a present image, but for a past sensation, thus appearing other than it really is. It is a cognition, since in the past, and

precisely at the proper place there, a sensation is met with exactly similar to the affirmed sensation, and our judgment, which is, in itself and directly, false, is thus found, indirectly and by coincidence, to be true.—Here again nature deceives to instruct us. Just as in external perception we have seen simple internal phantoms taken for external objects, but by an admirable adaptation corresponding to the presence of real external objects, so in memory we see simple present images taken for past sensations, but corresponding, by as beautiful a mechanism, to the anterior presence of real sensations.—Thus, the first repression which the image undergoes, and which checks the complete hallucination in which the image would naturally have resulted, opens to us a new world, that of time and space. In this intermediate state, partially abortive and partially complete, half rectified and half hallucinatory, the image resembles some organ\* checked in the midst of its development, a special product, utilised for special functions, and sometimes for functions of the highest order. This is the case here, since here we owe to it our knowledge of the past, and, consequently, our previsions of the future.

Here again we seize in the act an illusion of consciousness.—When a psychologist observes an act of memory, he begins by remarking that it is a cognition, and postulating that every cognition implies two terms, a subject knowing, and an object known, he says that there are two terms involved in recollection, the past sensation and the knowledge we have of it. If he then goes on to examine this knowledge he is tempted to take it for a simple naked act of the mind, deprived of all sensible character, and indeed of all character, except its connection with the past sensation which is its object. He is consequently disposed to regard this cognition as a pure act of attention, an act unique in kind, incapable of comparison with any other, whose essence, purely spiritual, consists solely in putting us in communication with our past life.—But if this act appears to be pure and spiritual, it is

---

\* As, for instance, the stamens and other parts of a flower, which are petals checked in the course of their development.

because it is empty; he has himself emptied it by taking from it all its characters, to set them apart and form from them the object. In fact, that which constitutes recollection or act of memory is the present image which a past sensation has left in us, an image which we find affected with an apparent recoil, and which seems to us the sensation itself. By cutting away from the image all that constitutes it, and all the positive properties by which it resembles the sensation, and referring them to the sensation itself, we turn recollection from a full act into an abstract one; as this act no longer comprises any thing, nothing can be said about it; we name it, and there is science completed. Here, as with external perception, we have made the mistake of splitting in two our internal act, and here, as with external perception, we are led to do this from its having two aspects. On the one hand, as it passes within us, and at the present moment, it is our present act; on the other hand, as it is hallucinatory, it seems to us, in external perception, an object other than ourselves, and, in recollection, a sensation not actually present. It was necessary to recognize its hallucinatory nature to understand that it is single, and that while in reality internal and present, it is in appearance only that it is an external thing, or past event. Until this remark is made, we divide it into an internal act and known object. In this operation the act loses all that the object gains; a transfusion of characters is effected to the detriment of the first and to the advantage of the second. Thereupon consciousness, self-deceived, declares that in recollection, as in external perception, the mind performs an act *sui generis*, simple, irreducible to any other, mysterious, marvellous, ineffable; and thus a new thread is added to the constantly broken and constantly repaired cobweb, in which the moral sciences have been entangling themselves for so many ages.

VI. Let us now examine more closely the apparent recoil which the image undergoes. I am quietly stretched in the shade of a hedge, listening to the chirpings of the birds, and the prolonged buzzing of the insects flitting about in the summer air; suddenly a distant rolling is heard; it increases, and comes on me with a furious grinding and growling noise



like a peal of thunder ; I jump up, a railway train is passing ; I had been, without knowing it, within ten paces of the line. The hoarse roll grows weaker and becomes effaced ; listen as I may, I hear nothing but the indistinct murmur of the country and the monotonous rustling of leaves shaken by the wind. But in this silence the image of the resounding noise persists, disappears, and reappears, till some other pre-occupation or some other vivid emotion drives it from the stage to make way for a new actor.—Now, at each of its re-entries, the image finds itself in conflict with the then present group of sensations. If, in conformity to its natural tendency, it appeared as a sensation, there would be a contradiction between it and this group. In fact, I cannot represent myself as at the same time tranquil, reclining, listening to the vague little sounds, and as startled, springing up, deafened by a violent noise ; the first representation is incompatible with the second ; in ordinary language, the one negatives the other. But this negation is on one point only ; the one negatives the other only as being its contemporary. The ordinary hallucinatory process is checked in this point only, since a negation on this point only is sufficient to enable both to subsist : there is a minimum of repression proportioned to a minimum of antagonism. Consequently, in other respects, the hallucinatory process takes effect ; the image, not being negated as a sensation, but as a present sensation, appears as a sensation which is not present, and the only result of the negation it undergoes is to reject it, as far as appearance goes, out of the present.

Why is this rejection a recoil ? And why does the apparent sensation seem to take a backward rather than a forward direction ?—It must be observed that every image, much more, then, every series of images, has a certain duration ; for every image repeats a sensation, and we have seen that the shortest sensations, even those we consider instantaneous, are series of elementary sensations, themselves composed of still more elementary ones. Hence it follows that every image occupies a portion of time, and has two extremities—an anterior one joining on to preceding events, and a posterior one joining on to subsequent events : the first one attached to

the past, the second attached to the future. And thus, a simple sound, a color perceived by a momentary glance, a brief sensation of heat, smell, or contact, whose successive parts we do not distinguish, is similar in nature to a drive or walk whose successive parts we do distinguish, and every sensation, consequently every image, possesses, like every series of sensations or images, its beginning and its end. Thus, when hearing a note on the piano I recall the preceding note, the case is similar to that in which, when thinking over the events of the day, I recall the events of yesterday. When the present sensation and the image of the preceding sensation come into conflict they have each two extremities; neither one nor the other are instantaneous and simple; they are two wholes composed of successive elements. This is why the repulsion by which the first acts on the second is itself an aggregate of repulsions—repulsions which are unequal, and which, by their distribution, determine the direction in which the apparent rejection takes place.

Let us first consider the two extremities of the sensation, or of the present, in their relation with the posterior extremity of the image, or of the past. The posterior extremity of the past coincides with the anterior extremity of the present; here then the contradiction, and consequently the repulsion, has no effect. But it is at the greatest possible distance from the posterior extremity of the present; here then the contradiction, and consequently the repulsion, is at its maximum. Hence we see that the rejection must take place in a backward direction, so that under the pressure of the present sensation the posterior extremity of the image seems to coincide with the anterior extremity of the present sensation, and to separate itself as far as it can from the posterior extremity of the present sensation.—Let us now consider the two extremities of the past in their relation with the anterior extremity of the present. The anterior extremity of the present coincides with the posterior extremity of the past; here then the contradiction, and consequently the repulsion, is of no effect. But it is at the greatest possible distance from the anterior extremity of the past; here then the contradiction, and consequently the repulsion, is at its

maximum. Hence we see that, in the whole rejection into the past, the anterior extremity of the sensation must apparently coincide with the posterior extremity of the image, and appear at the greatest possible distance from the anterior extremity of the image.—In cases of prevision, the inverse takes place. According as the relation of the extremities of the image with the extremities of the actual sensation is different, the balance inclines in one direction or the other, and we may at any moment witness in our own cases these remarkable changes of place.

I meet casually in the street a person whose appearance I am acquainted with, and say to myself at once that I have seen him before. Instantly the figure recedes into the past, and there wavers about vaguely without at once fixing itself in any spot. It persists in me for some time, and surrounds itself with new details. "When I saw him he was bare-headed, with a working jacket on, painting in a studio; he is so-and-so, of such-and-such a street. But when was it? It was not yesterday, nor this week, nor recently. I have it; he told me that he was waiting for the first leaves to come out to go into the country. It was before the spring. But at what exact date? I saw, the same day, people carrying branches in the streets and omnibuses: it was Palm Sunday!"—Observe the travels of the internal figure, its various shiftings to front and rear along the line of the past; each of these mental sentences has been a swing of the balance. When confronted with the present sensation, and with the latent swarm of indistinct images which repeat our recent life, the figure has first recoiled suddenly to an indeterminate distance. Then, completed by precise details, and confronted with all the shortened images by which we sum up the proceedings of a day or a week, it has again receded beyond the present day, beyond yesterday, the day before, the week, still further, beyond the ill-defined mass constituted by our recent recollections. Then something said by the painter was recalled, and it at once receded again beyond an almost precise limit, which is marked by the image of the green leaves and denoted by the word spring. A moment afterwards, thanks to a new detail, the recollection of the branches, it has shifted again, but forward this time, not

backward ; and, by a reference to the calendar, is situated at a precise point, a week further back than Easter, and five weeks nearer than the Carnival, by the double effect of the contrary impulsions, pushing it, one forward and one backward, and which are, at a particular moment, annulled by one another.—Now let us place this image in an inverse situation, that is to say in such a manner that its anterior, and no longer its posterior, extremity may join on to the posterior extremity of present sensations. At once, instead of sliding towards the past, it slides towards the future. This is what happens if I calculate when I shall see my friend again. The more this shifting is repeated at the successive contact of the previsions which the figure meets with in its way, the more does it seem to fly forward and to become distant. Finally, it becomes placed ; but its precise place is attained only by its projection being stopped. A new detail must intervene to give it, after successive movements in advance, a movement backwards, which will fix and intercalate it between two future periods. “ I shall see my friend, not to-day, not to-morrow, but the day after to-morrow, not the day after to-morrow in the morning, but in the afternoon, when I leave the library, before I go home to dinner.”—In this perpetual play, which has ceased to attract our attention because we live in it, the shifting image is actually contemporary with the sensation or image which causes it to shift, but nevertheless seems to be situated before or after it. In fact, *one over-rides the other* ; in appearance, they are *placed end to end* ; and this marvellous illusion which, out of two really simultaneous events, forms two events apparently posterior or anterior to one another, is the mechanism by which our sight extends out of the present to attain the past and the future.

VII. The last state of the image now remains to be considered, that state in which it ceases to appear, not only as an actual sensation, but as a past or future sensation. In this case we pronounce it to be a simple image, and the rectification is complete.—Of this kind are all the internal events we term pure conceptions, pure imaginations, and generally pure ideas. This is what happens when we read or hear a sentence, when we dream or form projects. We then picture to our-

selves, more or less clearly and with more or less minuteness of detail, some room, some landscape, certain persons or incidents, and, as they pass before our mental vision, we know that they are imaginary, supposititious, and entirely of our own fabrication. In fact, if we expect our perceptions of external objects, our recollections and our previsions, the whole web of our thought, during our waking hours, is made up of pure images. When I think of an old time-piece in an adjoining room, when, by aid of mental words, I follow out a long train of reasoning, when I reflect on what will probably happen if I take certain steps, not only have I in my mind the image of the time-piece, the image of the sounds and vocal movements which my arguments would require, if uttered aloud, the image of the gestures, emotions, and events which my conduct would excite in myself and others, but I am aware too that all these images are simple present images. This time the hallucination is wholly checked; the internal phantasmagoria, repressed the moment it arises, appears only as phantasmagoria, and here the mechanism of the repression is easily detected.

Two extreme cases present themselves and sum up all the rest. In the first, the image is a reduced and impoverished recollection. We all know that it is in its primitive state a recollection, and a full and circumstantial one. I have seen the time-piece I picture to myself a hundred times; I have heard or read a thousand or ten thousand times the mental words which pass through my mind; I have observed thirty or forty times the astonished gesture, the pleased smile or angry accent I imagine; the proof is that they revert to me; if I know them, it is because I recollect them. But certainly, when I first observed them, I was struck by their accompaniments, and shortly afterwards I could have described their surroundings from memory, the fire-place in the country, where the old time-piece stood when I was a child, the name of the person who made the gesture, the title of the book in which I saw the word.—Take, for instance, a Latin word, *securis*. No doubt on the day I learnt this word, I could recall the grammar or dictionary in which I read it, the exact place, the line and page of the dog's-

eared, blotted school-book. But since then, these circumstances have disappeared; repetition and distance have effaced them;\* the image which I then situated at a particular spot of my past life, has lost the details which situated it. Now do what I will in shifting it over the whole line of my anterior experience, it does not attach itself to any of the successive links. It is too much worn and blunted; it has no longer re-entering and salient angles, special and peculiar extremities, fixing it before or after some other distinct recollection. I no longer find in it an anterior or posterior extremity which may blend and coincide with the posterior or anterior extremity of another determinate event. Thus it moves about, in a colorless way; if I detect its place in the vague distance of childhood, it is by conjecture and reasoning; of itself, it no longer finds a place; it has no longer antecedent or consequent, it is deprived of situation.—And, if we look to the future, its position is the same, since its future existence appears subject to certain conditions, among others to my changing will, and since, in the realm of the future, it is still colorless, and capable of intercalating itself as well at one moment as at another of my future experience.—On both sides its situation fails it; it is essentially unstable; I cannot fix it *or affirm it*; thus, it is opposed to preceding affirmative judgments, to previsions, and recollections. This is how it happens that when, like them, it undergoes the repression of contradictory sensations it is contradicted, not partially as they are, but absolutely, and cannot appear other than as a sensation without situation, that is, as a sensation simply apparent and destitute of real existence.

Such is the first case; let us examine the second, which is just the inverse. Here we have the precise, intense, colored representations attained by the imaginations of great artists—Balzac, Dickens, Flaubert, Henri Heine, Edgar Poe; and some of which I have already cited. These artists attain moments of hallucination; but it is for the moment only. M. Flaubert writes to me as to this: “Do not assimilate the

---

\* See part i. book ii. chap. 2, “Laws of the Obliteration of Images.”

mental vision of the artist with the state of the man laboring under hallucination. I know both states perfectly; there is a chasm between them. In strict hallucination there is always fear; you feel your personality escaping you; you think you are about to die. In poetic vision, on the contrary, there is pleasure; it is something which enters into you. It is none the less true that one loses consciousness of where he is." He adds, further on, "This vision frequently completes itself slowly, piece by piece, like the different parts of a decoration are put together," but frequently, also, it is sudden and "fugitive, like the hallucinations preceding sleep. Something passes before your eyes; you must seize it on the spot, greedily."—My own experience is in accordance with these remarks. When the landscape, the moving figure, the gesture and voice of the person begin to rise and become precise, we wait, and hold the breath; sometimes, then all appears suddenly; at other times, slowly, with barren intervals.—But, in both cases, what appears is watched for, desired, or at least comprised in the circle of watched-for and desired images, then immediately employed, and put to use by the hand which marks and notes it, consequently followed at once by repressive sensations, in all cases stamped at its origin with a particular character—the property of springing up by a personal effort, in a foreseen direction, after a preliminary search, as an internal effect and not as an external impression; so that after such a burst and dazzling, the habitual sensations, tactile, muscular, or visual have no difficulty in resuming their normal ascendancy, and, combined with the rank of positive recollections, drive back the enfeebled phantom into the imaginary world.—A sequence of very short hallucinations, which, being voluntary, may be and are actually broken and negated at any moment by the more or less vague perception of the real world, such is the picturesque or poetic vision, very different, as M. Baillarger observes, from strict hallucination, which rises unexpectedly, and without the concurrence of the will, which persists in spite of ourselves, which is developed of its own accord, irregularly, and which seems to us the work of some extrinsic power.—In themselves, the two events are similar. But they are contrasted in their antecedents and

consequents ; the first is the harmonious product of all the united tendencies of the human being ; the second, the exaggerated enlargement of a discordant element, which, like an organ become hypertrophied and subtracted from general life, is developed separately and abnormally to the detriment of the others with whose concordant action it interferes.

We see now how it is that our ordinary conceptions and imaginations appear to us as such, and do not create illusion ; they are all comprised between two extreme states, and each of these two states includes a peculiarity repressing the illusion.—Either, as in the ordinary case, they are vague and stripped of precise details, in such a way that, cast out of the present by the contradiction of present sensations, they are wanting in angles which may fix them in the past and future ; whence it follows that, being deprived of all situation in time, they appear excluded from time, that is to say from real life, and are pronounced apparent, false, and purely imaginary sensations.—Or, after a series of repeated solicitations, they attain the detail and precision of the real sensation, by suspending contemporary sensations and ordinary recollections, but for the moment only, by a fugitive ecstasy, interrupted an instant after by a return to the normal state, and then pronounced illusory or internal, because the effort of internal will of which it is the result re-arises with it in the memory of the observer.—Suppress these repressive peculiarities and the rectification which ensues from them ; suspend for some hours or minutes ordinary sensations, and the cohesion of connected recollections, as happens in sleep, whether incipient or complete ; let, as then happens, the uncolored and vague image become complete, circumstantial and colored ; that which, in the waking state, would have been pronounced a simple idea, becomes first an hypnagogic hallucination, then an intense dream.—On the other hand, prolong this momentary ecstasy ; let it, by an organic accident, be repeated of itself, suddenly, without being watched for or desired, in spite of the will ; you will have hallucinations like those of Nicolai, and, if the patient has not a very strong mind, you will have the visions of a madman, like those shut up in asylums, or of a mystic, like



those of India or of the Middle Ages.\* Thus the history of sleep and of madness gives us the key to the history of reason, and of the waking state.

VIII. Here, again, is an illusion of mental optics, which perishes at the touch of analysis. With respect to those conceptions and imaginations which we pronounce internal, we have just seen by what repressive mechanism they appear to us as such. Thanks to this repression, they appear to us as they are, that is to say, no longer as external objects or as future and past events, but as events wrongly provided with this false appearance, actually internal and present. I think of a line of poplars, and, as I follow, with closed eyes, the green curtain of waving leaves, pierced here and there by the sky, I know very well that it is internal and present. This knowledge or cognition is called *consciousness*, since its object is internal and present; it is thus opposed to cognitions whose object is not present or is not internal; on this account, we separate it from external perception and from memory, and make of it a distinct department, presided over by a distinct faculty. All this is permissible, and even convenient.—But here the error creeps in; we are duped by the same words and in the same fashion, as with respect to memory and external perception; as a cognition is in question, we wish absolutely to find an act of knowledge and an object known; we picture consciousness as the glance of an internal eye, directed to a present internal event, just as we picture memory as the glance of an internal eye directed to a past event. Metaphors lend their aid; in fact, psychologists continually speak of consciousness as of a spectator or internal witness which observes, compares, takes notes on the various conceptions, imaginations, and representations passing in review before it. The truth is that in such a case there are not two events in my mind, my conception on the one hand, and, on the other, an act by which I am acquainted with it, but one single event, my conception itself. We split it in two because it has two phases, the first, in which it appears an external object or past

---

\* See, among other records, Bunyan's "Autobiography," the "Vita Nuova" of Dante, and the works of Saint Theresa (Tr. Arnauld d'Andilly).

event, curtain of poplar leaves or anterior visual sensation, the second, in which, being rectified, it appears an internal and present event, an optical phantom, then included in ourselves. In this splitting, when we have laid on the one side the phantom with all its distinctive characters, we have nothing left to constitute, on the other hand, the act of cognition. This act is empty ; thence it happens that we consider it pure, simple, and spiritual: the mistake is precisely that which we fell into just now respecting external perception and memory.—In fact, here as before, the internal event is reduced to the internal conception, representation, or present phantom ; the knowledge that it is such, that is to say present, internal, and visionary, is nothing more than the rectification or negation by which it is excluded from the outer world, from the future, and from the past.

We can now seize, with a general glance, on the process employed by Nature to create in us our first and principal sources of knowledge. In two words, she creates *illusions and rectifications of illusion*, hallucinations and repressions of hallucination.—On the one hand, with sensations and images combined in clusters according to laws we shall presently see, she constructs within us phantoms which we take for external objects, in most cases without being misled, since there are, in fact, external objects corresponding to them, sometimes, by mistake, since sometimes the corresponding external objects are not there ; in this way she produces external perceptions which are true hallucinations, and hallucinations, strictly so called, which are false external perceptions.—On the other hand, by attaching to an hallucination stronger contradictory hallucination, she alters the appearance of the first by a more or less radical negation or rectification ; by this adjunction she constructs repressed hallucinations which, according to the kind and degree of their miscarriage, sometimes constitute recollections, sometimes previsions, sometimes conceptions and imaginations, strictly so called, all of which, when the repression ceases, become transformed, by a spontaneous development, into complete hallucinations.—To form complete hallucinations and repressed hallucinations, but in such a way that, when awake and in the normal state, these phan-

toms usually correspond to real things and events, and thus constitute cognitions, this is the problem. We shall see how images and sensations furnish the materials, and how the laws of their origin, revival, and association construct the edifice.

## BOOK II.

## THE KNOWLEDGE OF BODIES.

## CHAPTER I.

## EXTERNAL PERCEPTION AND THE IDEA OF WHICH THE IDEA OF BODY IS COMPOSED.

I. To begin with the knowledge of bodies. What is there within us when we take cognizance by our sensations of an external body—when, for instance, experiencing tactile and muscular sensations of cold, of considerable resistance, of smooth and uniform contact in my hand, I conclude that it is resting on marble; when, casting my eyes in a certain direction and having through the retina a sensation of reddish brown, I conclude that there is a round mahogany table three paces from my eyes? A phantom or hallucinatory semblance.—The reader has already seen the main proof of this.\* But the paradox is so great that it will be well to present it anew, adding to it the complementary proofs.

In order to establish that external perception, even when accurate, is an hallucination; it is sufficient to observe that its first phase is a sensation.—In fact, a sensation, and notably a tactile or visual sensation, engenders, by its presence alone, an internal phantom which appears an external object. Dreams, hypnotism, hallucinations strictly so called, all subjective sensations are in evidence as to this. It matters little whether the sensation be purely cerebral and arise spontaneously, without preliminary excitation of the peripheral extremity of the nerve, in the absence of the objects which usually produce this excitation. As soon as ever the sensation is present, the rest follows; the prologue entails the

---

\* Part ii. book i. chap. 1, p. 221.

drama. The patient imagines that he feels in his mouth the melting pulp of an absent orange, or the cold pressure on his shoulder of a hand which is not there, that he sees a number of passers-by in an empty street, or hears clearly articulated sounds in his silent chamber.—When, therefore, the sensation arises in consequence of its usual antecedents, that is to say after the excitation of the nerve and through the effect of an external object, it begets the same internal phantom, and necessarily, this phantom appears an external object. Consequently, if there are actually persons about in the street, the sensation I shall experience in looking at them will excite in me, as before, phantoms of persons about in the street, and necessarily, as before, these purely internal phantoms will appear to me external objects, that is to say real and true persons. Hence we see that the objects we touch, see, or perceive by any one of our senses, are nothing more than semblances or phantoms precisely similar to those which arise in the mind of a hypnotized person, a dreamer, a person laboring under hallucinations, or afflicted by subjective sensations. The sensation being given, the phantom is produced: it is produced, then, whether the sensation be normal or abnormal; it is produced, then, in perception where there is nothing to distinguish it from the real object, just as in sickness where every thing distinguishes it from the real object.

If its existence be established by its antecedents, it is confirmed by its consequents. In fact, external perception leaves a semblance behind it; when we have seen some interesting object, heard some fine music, felt a body of peculiar texture, not only does the image of our sensation survive the sensation, but more than this, it is accompanied by a more or less energetic and clear conception, representation, or phantom of the object perceived. Suppose this representation very intense, it borders on hallucination; if sleep is drawing on, it becomes a complete hallucination; in fact, this is its natural ending; we have seen that, when checked, it is by means of a supervening repression or rectification which, at the first moment, was absent. Therefore, at the first moment, that is to say during external perception, it was not checked; there was, then, a complete hallucination, of which the preserved

conception, the floating representation, the posthumous phantom, is the remnant. In this state and at this second moment we distinguish the phantom, which at the first moment we had confounded with the real object.

There are other cases, again, in which we can contrive, directly, to separate them; such are the various errors of external perception, above all, those of the touch and of sight. I am not speaking of those alone which proceed from purely subjective sensations; it is abundantly clear that in such cases the apparent object is distinct from any real object, since no real object exists. I am speaking of those proceeding from ill-interpreted sensations; in which cases there is a real object, though it differs from the apparent object. For instance, when we close our eyes and touch a marble with the forefinger and ring-finger crossing one another, we imagine ourselves to be touching two marbles; this is one of the fallacies of touch. Those of sight are innumerable; we fall into them daily in ordinary life, and may fabricate them at will by optical instruments; by means of the stereoscope we give to two plane surfaces the appearance of a single body possessed of relief, and there are a hundred analogous illusions. Take the simplest of all, that produced by a figure reflected in a looking-glass; if the glass is without any flaw and fills up the whole side of a room, if the light is well arranged, and we do not know the circumstances, we shall imagine that we see a figure before our eyes at a spot where there is nothing but a wall. Now, in this and in all similar instances, what we take for the real object differs from the real object; the thing affirmed is nothing more than something apparent, there is nothing corresponding to it at the spot and with the characters assigned; in other words, it is nothing more than a simple, internal, ephemeral semblance which forms part of ourselves, and which, nevertheless, appears to us an external thing, other than ourselves, and permanent.—But when our perception was free from error, the operation was precisely the same; consequently, when our perception was free from error, we produced and projected, in a similar way, to the indicated spot, an apparent object, an internal and transient semblance forming part of ourselves, and which, nevertheless, seemed to

be a body external to us, independent and stable. The only difference is that, in the first case, there was an independent body, external and stable, which actually and rigorously corresponded to our semblance, and that now, this actual and rigorous correspondence no longer takes place. Consequently, in the first case, we could not distinguish the semblance and the body, and now we are able to do so.

Thus, there are three marks which indicate to us the presence of the semblance, even in accurate external perception.—In the first place, its exciting and sufficient condition, the sensation, is found there; it, then, must necessarily be there.—In the second place, we find it surviving an instant afterwards, and repressed by an added rectification; it was there, then, an instant before, and was not repressed, that is to say, was fully hallucinatory.—In the third place we distinguish it in many instances, and, to effect this, it is sufficient if the characters of the real object do not all perfectly coincide with those of the semblance; consequently we are forced to admit its existence, even when the perfect coincidence of all its characters with all those of the real object prevents our establishing, by subsequent experience, any difference between it and the real object.—What is this real object? Is there one? And, if we recognize one, on what can we found our recognition? We shall presently look for answers to all these questions.—Meanwhile, let us simply postulate that when we perceive an object by the senses, when we see a tree ten paces from us, when we take a marble in our hand, our perception consists in the rising up of an internal phantom of the tree or marble, and this phantom appears to us an external, independent, durable thing, situated, in the one case, at ten paces from us, in the other case, in our hand.

II. In what does this internal phantom consist?—It is plain that, among other elements, it comprises an *affirmative conception*. When I see the tree or touch the marble, my sensation suggests to me a judgment, that is to say a conception and an affirmation. I conceive and I affirm, that at ten paces from me is a being possessed of certain properties, that in my hand is another such being, and the sufferer from

hallucination, who has the sensation of an absent tree or of an absent marble, comes to the same conclusion. Here we have an essential element of the internal semblance; there is no external perception or hallucination which does not contain an affirmative conception, the affirmative conception of a being, thing, or substance possessed of properties. Let us analyze this conception, and attempt to mark, one by one, the distinct and connected conceptions of which it is the aggregate.

Take the case of a mahogany table to which I direct my eyes; when I perceive it, I have, with regard to my retinal sensation, an affirmative conception, which is that of something extended, resisting, hard, polished, feebly sonorous, of a reddish brown color, of certain size and shape, in short, of a being or substance possessed of the above-mentioned qualities or properties. Let the reader consider for a moment: here, as in every proposition, the substance is equivalent to the indefinite series of its known or unknown properties. Take away all the properties, without a single exception, extension, resistance, weight, hardness, polish, sonorousness, figure, and lastly, the most general of all, existence itself; it is plain that there will be nothing left of the substance; it is the aggregate of which the properties are the details; it is the whole of which the properties are the extracts; take away all the details, there will be nothing left of the aggregate; take away all the extracts, there will be nothing left of the whole. The rule is general that—in every proposition the attributes form the analysis of the subject, and the subject is the sum of the attributes.—Consequently, my conception of substance is nothing more than a summary; it is equivalent to the sum of the conceptions composing it, just as a number is equivalent to the sum of the units composing it, or an abbreviatory sign to the things it abbreviates and signifies. Consequently, what I apply and attribute to the substance is applicable and attributable to its equivalent. When, then, I say that it is a *being*, a *substance*, or in other words that it is, and that it subsists, this means that its properties are, and subsist. To conceive, then, and affirm a substance, is to conceive and affirm a group of properties as per-



manent and stable ; I say a group : for the properties which constitute a body are not an arbitrary collection, a heap piled up at will, like a number of units, which I collect as I please and denote by a cipher ; they are not merely an added sum, but more than this, they form a cluster. Any one of them involves the rest : the squared form, the reddish color, the feeble sonorousness, the polish, the hardness, combine together in the table ; the perfumed smell, the rosy color, the semi-globular form, the softness, combine together in the rose. In fact, whenever I experience them they are all combined, and it is enough for me to ascertain the existence of one of them by one of my senses, smell by the sense of smell, color by the sight, to have the right to affirm the simultaneous presence of the others whose existence I have not ascertained. It is this cluster which forms the body.

III. Let us follow out successively the different threads. In what do the properties of a body consist ?—With the majority of them, the answer is easy. They are *relative, relative to my sensations*, and to the sensations of every other being analogous to myself : they are nothing more than a power, the power of the body in question to excite certain particular sensations.—The rose has a certain smell, differing from that of the lily and from that of the violet ; this means that it is capable of exciting in me, and in every other being constructed as I am, a certain agreeable sensation distinct from other sensations of smell, and which we term the smell of the rose.—Sugar has a certain taste ; this again means that it is capable of exciting in me and in every other being similar to me, a certain special sensation of taste which we term a sugary taste.—And so it evidently is with colors and sounds. A certain vibrating cord gives a sound of a particular acuteness, a particular tone, and a particular intensity. A certain body when illuminated gives a color of certain tint and certain brightness. This means that the vibrating cord is capable of exciting a certain particular sensation of sound, that the illuminated body is capable of exciting a particular determinate sensation of color.—No doubt, in the present day we know more than this ; optics and acoustics have taught us that to a particular sound there correspond a particular num-

ber of vibrations of air, and to a particular color, a particular number of vibrations of ether. But this is not the primitive or ordinary judgment; it is necessary to become scientific before we can form it; the explanation is subsequent and superadded.—Besides, the difficulty is only shifted: when provided with the theory, we say that the molecules of air or ether have the power of exciting in us, by their oscillations, sensations of sound or color. This power which the spontaneous judgment ascribed to the illuminated body, and to the vibrating cord, is now referred to the interposed molecules of air or ether; thus the color and sound still remain relative properties; whether we attribute them to the vibrating cord and the illuminated body, or to the particles of air and ether, they are nothing more than the power of exciting in us certain particular sensations.

Finally, if we pass from the four special senses to the last and most general of all, that is to say to touch, our conclusions are similar.—In the first place, it is clear that heat and cold are nothing more than the power of exciting sensations of that name.—So is it with solidity or resistance, which is nothing more than the power of exciting the muscular sensation of resistance. “When we contract the muscles of our arm, either by an exertion of will, or by an involuntary discharge of our spontaneous nervous activity, the contraction is accompanied by a state of sensation, which is different according as the locomotion consequent on the muscular contraction continues freely, or meets with an impediment.—In the former case, the sensation is that of motion through empty space. After having had (let us suppose) this experience several times repeated, we suddenly have a different experience: the series of sensations accompanying the motion of our arm is brought, without intention or expectation on our part, to an abrupt close. This interruption would not, of itself, necessarily suggest the belief in an external obstacle. The hindrance might be in our organs; it might arise from paralysis, or simple loss of power through fatigue. But in either of these cases, the muscles would not have been contracted, and we should not have had the sensation which accompanies their contraction. We may

have had the will to exert our muscular force, but the exertion has not taken place.—If it does take place, and is accompanied by the usual muscular sensation, but the expected sensation of locomotion does not follow, we have what is called the feeling of Resistance, or in other words, of muscular motion impeded.”\*—Later on, when we have acquired the idea of our limbs, we shall translate such an uninterrupted series of muscular sensations by the idea of an unimpeded movement of our arm, and we shall translate the same series of sensations, when interrupted, by the idea of the hindered movement of our arm. In fact, the one is capable of replacing the other; when once our senses are instructed, we discover that a particular series of muscular sensations evidenced by consciousness is equivalent to a particular movement of our hand evidenced by our eyes or touch; we substitute the second fact for the first, as being more convenient to imagine and more generally applicable to nature, and henceforth, we define resistance as the power of arresting the movement of our arm, and in general of any body whatever.—But this is an ulterior conception. *Primitively*, resistance is nothing more to us than the power to arrest a commenced series of muscular sensations, and the other tactile qualities are reducible like resistance, to the power of exciting some tactile or muscular sensation more or less simple or compound, some mode or modification of a muscular and tactile sensation, or of a series of such sensations.—A body is smooth or rough; which means that it is capable of exciting a uniform and soft sensation of contact, or an irregular and harsh sensation of contact. Heavy, light, sharp, level, hard, soft, sticky, damp,† all these terms denote nothing more than the power of exciting more or less complex, intense, and varied sensations of contact, of pressure, of temperature, of muscular contraction, and of pain.

IV. There remain a group of properties which seem at first sight intrinsic and personal to bodies, and not merely relative to sensations; such are extension, form, mobility,

---

\* J. S. Mill, “Examination of Sir W. Hamilton’s Philosophy,” 219.

† Experiments of Landry, Gratiolet, Fick, and Bain. See part i. book iii. chap. 2, *ante*, p. 138.

situation, and all geometrical properties. And, in fact, it is by means of such as these that we explain the different powers we have just described; we conceive and suppose little bodies with extension and shape which we term molecules; we assume that they move in a certain direction and with certain velocities; that two given molecules continue to approach or to separate from each other with more or less speed according to their reciprocal distance; that a collection of molecules, whose movements are mutually annulled or compensated, form a stable body, whose equilibrium becomes altered by the approach of another similarly constituted body. Such is our idea of body, a fully reduced and abstract idea; this is to us the essential and indispensable part of a body; in what do these properties consist?

We must first observe that they are reducible to a principal property, *extension*, and to one of the powers enumerated above, *resistance*.—A body is a solid or resisting extension; that is to say, an extension capable of exciting, in all its continuous and successively explored portions, the sensation of resistance; if not in us, at all events in a being with acuter senses than ours. By this, *solid* extension is distinguished from *empty* extension; that is to say from the *place* it occupies. By this, again, we define *mobility*, which is nothing more than the power of changing place. Finally, by this, we define its *limits*. It has a surface, that is to say, a limit; the surface is the limit of solid extension, as the line is the limit of the surface, and the point the limit of the line. Now, limit means cessation; the surface, the line, the point, and the figures derived from them, are nothing more than aspects of solidity, various modes of considering its cessation and its absence; that is to say, the absence and the cessation of the sensation of resistance.—Extension itself remains. We may consider it in three aspects, according to three dimensions, in length, breadth, and height. Take the case of a cube; its extension in length, breadth and height, is the *distance* separating a point taken at one of its angles from three points taken at three other angles. Distance in three senses or directions is the foundation of our idea of extension. Here we need

only reproduce the admirable analysis of the latest English philosophers.\*

When I contract one of my muscles, I experience one of those sensations we term muscular, and I may consider this from two points of view.—In the first place, my sensation is more or less powerful; it is extreme, if the effort approaches a strain of the muscle; its limit is the pain termed cramp; its character is of greater or less intensity, and I can compare my sensation in this respect with other more or less intense sensations of the same muscle. Thus regarded, it enables me to estimate the resistance which other bodies oppose to me; but as yet, teaches me nothing respecting their extension, distance, and position.—But there is a second point of view, and to this we owe our idea of extension. For muscular sensations vary not only in greater or less intensity, but also in greater or less duration. “When a muscle begins to contract,” says Mr. Bain, “or a limb to bend, we have a distinct sense of how far the contraction and the bending are carried; there is something in the special sensibility that makes one mode of feeling for half contraction, another mode for three-fourths, and another for total contraction.” Thus we distinguish in the sensation, not only an increase of intensity, but also an increase of duration. “Suppose a weight raised by the flexing of the arm, first four inches, and then eight inches.” We shall obviously distinguish the second sensation from the first, and, in the first place, clearly, because, other things being equal, the second lasts twice as long as the first, and then, probably, because in the second period of effort, other muscles coming into play, produce new muscular sensations, which add themselves on to the continuation of the first sensations, not only by prolonging, but also by diversifying the operation. By these two distinct sensations, we distinguish the greater or less amplitude of our two movements; and we see how we can in a general manner distinguish the amplitude of one of our movements compared with another.—It is by means of this muscular discernment that we arrive at a knowledge of

---

\* Bain, “Senses and Intellect,” 99 and 199. Herbert Spencer, “Principles of Psychology,” 1st Edition, 304. J. S. Mill, “Examination,” etc., 222.

extension and space. For, "in the first place it gives the feeling of *linear extension*, inasmuch as this is measured by the sweep of a limb, or other organ moved by muscles. The difference between six inches and eighteen inches is expressed to us by the different contraction of some one group of muscles; those for example that flex the arm, or, in walking, those that flex or extend the lower limb. The inward impression corresponding to the outward fact of six inches in length, is an impression arising from the continued shortening of a muscle, a true muscular sensibility. It is the impression of a muscular effort having a certain continuance; a greater length produces a greater continuance. . . ."—Now, "the discrimination of length in any one direction includes *extension* in any direction. Whether it be length, breadth, or height, the perception has precisely the same character. Hence superficial and solid dimensions, the size or magnitude of a solid object, come to be felt in a similar manner. . . . It will be obvious that what is called *situation* or *locality* must come under the same head, as these are measured by distance taken along with direction; direction being itself estimated by distance, both in common observation and in mathematical theory.—In like manner *form* or *shape* is ascertained through the same primitive sensibility to extension or range.\*—By the muscular sensibility thus associated with prolonged contraction we can therefore compare different degrees of the attribute of space, in other words, difference of length, surface, situation, and form. When comparing two different lengths we can feel which is the greater, just as in comparing two different weights or resistances. We can also, as in the case of weight, acquire some absolute standard of comparison, through the permanency of impressions sufficiently often repeated. We can engrain the feeling of contraction of the muscles of the lower limb due to a pace of thirty inches, and can say that some one given pace is less or more than this amount. According to

---

\* We see that the idea of form is reduced to that of position, which is reduced to that of distance. Analytical geometry is entirely founded on this observation; it translates form by the relations of two or three co-ordinates representing distances.

the delicacy of the muscular tissue we can, by shorter or longer practice, acquire distinct impressions for every standard dimension, and can decide at once whether a given length is four inches or four and a half, nine or ten, twenty or twenty-one. This sensibility to size, enabling us to dispense with the use of measures of length, is an acquirement suited to many mechanical operations. In drawing, painting, and engraving, and in the plastic arts, the engrained discrimination of the most delicate differences is an indispensable qualification."

A third aspect remains ; for there are not merely different degrees of intensity and duration, but different degrees of velocity in our muscular movements, and the same contraction of the same muscles excites in us two different muscular sensations according as it is rapid or slow. We learn by experience that in many cases these two distinct sensations are signs of the same movement; in this they are equivalent. "A slow motion for a long time is the same as a quicker motion with less duration." We easily convince ourselves of this "by seeing that they both produce the same effect in exhausting the full range of a limb. If we experiment upon the different ways of accomplishing a total sweep of the arm, we shall find that the slow movements long continued are equal to quick motions of short continuance, and we are thus able by either course to acquire to ourselves a measure of range and linear extension."—"Suppose," says Mill, "two small bodies, A and B, sufficiently near together to admit of their being touched simultaneously, one with the right hand, the other with the left. Here are two tactual sensations which are simultaneous, just as a sensation of color and one of odor might be ; and this makes us cognize the two objects of touch as both existing at once. The question then is, what have we in our minds, when we represent to ourselves the relation between these two objects, already known to be simultaneous, in the form of Extension or intervening Space—a relation which we do not suppose to exist between the color and the odor." Our answer to this is "that whatever the notion of Extension may be, we *acquire* it by passing our hand or some other organ of touch, in a longitudinal direction

from A to B: that this process, as far as we are conscious of it, consists of a series of varied muscular sensations. . . . When we say that there is a space between A and B, we mean that some amount of these muscular sensations must intervene; and when we say that the space is greater or less, we mean that the series of sensations (amount of muscular effort being given) is longer or shorter. If another object, C, is farther off in the same line, we judge its distance to be greater, because, to reach it, the series of muscular sensations must be further prolonged, or else there must be the increase of effort which corresponds to augmented velocity. Now this, which is unquestionably the mode in which we became *aware* of extension, is considered by the psychologists in question to *be* extension. The idea of Extended Body they consider to be that of a variety of resisting points, existing simultaneously, but which can be perceived by the same tactile organ only successively, at the end of a series of muscular sensations which constitutes their *distance*; and are said to be at different distances from one another because the series of intervening muscular sensations is longer in some cases than in others. . . . An intervening series of muscular sensations before the one object can be reached from the other, is the only peculiarity which (according to this theory) distinguishes simultaneity in space from the simultaneity which may exist between a taste and a color, or a taste and a smell: and we have no reason for believing that Space or Extension in itself, is any thing different from that which we recognize it by.”\*

Thus, in our cases, time is the parent of space, and we conceive simultaneous magnitude by means only of successive magnitude. When our arm moves, it traverses a space; but we do not estimate the magnitude of what is traversed except by the two factors measuring it, on the one hand by the amount of our muscular exertion, on the other hand by the duration of our successive muscular sensations. In transit through space there are three terms—the magnitude of the motive force, the length of time employed, the extent of

---

\* Mill, “Examination,” etc., pp. 228–30.



space traversed—and each of these is determined by the other two. Now, the two first we find in ourselves, and they are together equivalent to the third, since the third is completely determined by them. It is by the first two, then, that the space traversed is translated into our minds, and such space is in itself nothing more to us than the power of exciting them. Thus, greater or less space is nothing more than the power of exciting in us, with an equal amount of muscular effort, a longer or shorter series of successive muscular sensations.—Add to this solidity, that is to say the power of exciting the sensation of resistance, and we have body.—In fact, its three dimensions are the three distinct aspects to which all the sensations measuring its extension are reduced. Its continuity is the power of exciting the sensation of resistance, throughout the whole duration of these sensations. Its limit is the moment at which the sensation of resistance ceases. Its figure is the aggregate of these limits. We conceive it as composed of parts, because the sensation, whose duration measures it, is itself composed of parts. So too it is infinitely divisible, because this duration is itself infinitely divisible. Though the elements of our sensation be successive, the elements of the body appear to us as simultaneous; in fact, they are, as the body itself, permanent powers, whose permanence, like that of the body itself, is attested to us by the regular return of the sensations they excite; being permanent, they are contemporaneous; though we perceive them successively they exist together, and the succession disjoining their effects is not applicable to their existence. I pass my hand several times heavily along the side of the table, from left to right, then from right to left, and always with the same speed; that is to say with the same amount of motive effort. Now, in all these experiences, the sensation given me by my contracted arm is the same in duration, and has, as accompaniment, at every moment, the uniform sensation of resistance. Whether I begin at the right or left, it does not matter; the double muscular sensation remains the same in the two cases. It forms, then, a severed group among my recollections and previsions; it is distinguished from the others by the precise degree of intensity of the first compo-

nent muscular sensation, by the precise degree of duration of the second component muscular sensation, and further, by the particular shade of the conjoined sensation of touch; the power of exciting this group is what we term the resistance and extension of the table.—Hence, we see that all the sensible properties of bodies, including extension, and consequently form, situation, and other tangible qualities, are, in final analysis, nothing more than the power of exciting sensations.

V. This leads us to a new notion of the nature of bodies; a body is a collection of such powers as we have just described. But what are these powers?—This rose has power to excite a certain sensation of smell; which means that, when within reach of it, this sensation of smell will be aroused. This table has power to excite a certain strong sensation of resistance; which means that, if it is pressed with the hand, a strong sensation of resistance will be aroused. A power, then, is nothing intrinsic and personal to the object to which we attribute it. We simply mean by the word that certain effects are possible, future, proximate, necessary under certain conditions. We simply mean, in this instance, that certain sensations are possible, future, proximate, necessary under certain conditions. Consequently, a collection of powers is nothing; consequently a body, that is to say a collection of powers, is also nothing. At the foundation of the affirmative conception, by which, having passed and pressed my hand over this table, I conceive and affirm an independent and permanent body, there is nothing more than the affirmative conception of analogous muscular and tactile sensations, these sensations being conceived and affirmed as possible for any being similar to myself, who might come within their range, as future, proximate, certain, and necessary, for any being similar to myself, who might pass and press his hand or other organ in the same manner. All I conceive and affirm is their possibility under certain conditions, and their necessity under fuller conditions. They are possible when all these conditions, but one, are given. They become necessary when all these conditions, and in addition the missing condition, are given; and here the possibility becomes necessity, by the

addition of the last condition. This is what constitutes for us the object. When, with closed eyes, I experience a sensation of the smell of a rose, and thereupon conceive and affirm the presence of a rose, I simply conceive and affirm the possibility for myself, and for every other being similar to myself, of a certain muscular and tactile sensation of soft resistance, of a certain visual sensation of colored form; a possibility would become a necessity, if, to the existence and presence of the sentient person indicated, were added a final condition, a certain movement of his exploring hand, a certain direction of his open eyes.—*Certain possibilities and certain necessities of sensations*, to these are reducible the powers, consequently the properties, consequently the very substance of bodies.

This conclusion seems paradoxical. How can we admit that bodies, that is to say permanent substances independent of us, and which we conceive as causes of our sensations, are, at bottom, and in themselves, nothing more than possibilities and necessities of sensation?—To remove this difficulty, let us consider successively the principal characters of these possibilities and necessities, and we shall see that they possess all the characters of substance.—They are permanent; in fact, the proposition by which I affirm the possibility and necessity of a certain sensation under certain conditions is general, and holds good for all moments of time. Whatever be the moment of duration I am considering, this possibility and this necessity are found there; they are, then, persistent and stable.—On the other hand, they are independent of me, and of all sentient individuals who are living, have lived, or will live. For the proposition by which I affirm the possibility and necessity of certain sensations under certain conditions is abstract, and holds good, not only in my case and in that of every actual person, but for all possible persons. Even were there not in fact any sentient individual in the world, they would exist; they exist, then, apart and by themselves.—For these two reasons, they are opposed, first, to sensations which are transient and not, like them, permanent; then, to sentient individuals themselves who are other than they. These are the essential characters of substance; consequently, there is nothing astonishing in our terming these possibilities

substances, and in their playing a predominant part in our mind.

Let us see how it is they assume this part. "I see a piece of white paper on a table. I go into another room, and though have I ceased to see it, I am persuaded that the paper is still there. I no longer have the sensations which it gave me ; but I believe that when I again place myself in the circumstances in which I had those sensations, that is, when I go again into the room, I shall again have them ; and further, that there has been no intervening moment at which this would not have been the case."—This is a specimen of the ordinary operations of our mind, and it is plain that the analysis would be the same, in the case of any other perception of sight, or of another sense.—Now, in accordance with this analysis, it appears "that my conception of the world at any given instant consists, in only a small proportion, of present sensations. Of these I may at the time have none at all, and they are in any case a most insignificant portion of the whole which I apprehend. The conception I form of the world existing at any moment, comprises, along with the sensations I am feeling, a countless variety of possibilities of sensation ; namely, the whole of those which past observation tells me that I could, under any supposable circumstances, experience at this moment, together with an indefinite and illimitable multitude of others which though I do not know that I could, yet it is possible that I might experience in circumstances not known to me. These various possibilities are the important thing to me in the world. My present sensations are generally of little importance, and are moreover fugitive : the possibilities, on the contrary are permanent, which is the character that mainly distinguishes our idea of Substance or Matter from our notion of sensation.—These possibilities, which are conditional certainties, need a special name to distinguish them from mere vague possibilities, which experience gives no warrant for reckoning upon. Now, as soon as a distinguishing name is given, though it be only to the same thing regarded in a different aspect, one of the most familiar experiences of our mental nature teaches us, that the different name comes to be considered as the name of a different thing.

“There is another important peculiarity of these certified or guaranteed possibilities of sensation ; namely, that they have reference, not to single sensations, but to sensations joined together in groups. When we think of any thing as a material substance, or body, we either have had, or we think that on some given supposition we should have, not some *one* sensation, but a great and even an indefinite number and variety of sensations, generally belonging to different senses, but so linked together that the presence of one announces the possible presence at the very same instant of any or all of the rest. In our mind, therefore, not only is this particular Possibility of sensation invested with the quality of permanence, when we are not actually feeling any of the sensations at all ; but when we are feeling some of them, the remaining sensations of the group are conceived by us in the form of Present Possibilities, which might be realized at the very moment. And as this happens in turn to all of them, the group as a whole presents itself to the mind as permanent, in contrast not solely with the temporariness of my bodily presence, but also with the temporary character of each of the sensations composing the group ; in other words, as a kind of permanent substratum, under a set of passing experiences or manifestations : which is another leading character of our idea of substance or matter, as distinguished from sensation.

“Let us now take into consideration another of the general characters of our experience, namely, that in addition to fixed groups, we also recognize a fixed Order in our sensations ; an Order of succession, which, when ascertained by observation, gives rise to the ideas of Cause and Effect . . . . Now, of what nature is this fixed order among our sensations ? It is a constancy of antecedence and sequence. But the constant antecedence and sequence do not generally exist between one actual sensation and another. Very few such sequences are presented to us by experience. In almost all the constant sequences which occur in Nature, the antecedence and consequence do not obtain between sensations, but between the groups we have been speaking about, of which a very small portion is actual sensation, the greater part being permanent pos-

sibilities of sensation, evidenced to us by a small and variable number of sensations actually present. Hence, our ideas of causation, power, activity, do not become connected in thought with our sensations as *actual* at all, save in the few physiological cases where these figure by themselves as the antecedents in some uniform sequence. Those ideas become connected, not with sensations, but with groups of possibilities of sensation. The sensations conceived do not, to our habitual thoughts, present themselves as sensations actually experienced, inasmuch as not only any one or any number of them may be supposed absent, but none of them need be present. We find that the modifications which are taking place more or less regularly in our possibilities of sensation, are mostly quite independent of our consciousness, and of our presence or absence. Whether we are asleep or awake the fire goes out, and puts an end to one particular possibility of warmth and light. Whether we are present or absent the corn ripens, and brings a new possibility of food. Hence we speedily learn to think of Nature as made up solely of these groups of possibilities, and the active force in Nature as manifested in the modification of some of these by others. The sensations, though the original foundation of the whole, come to be looked upon as a sort of accident depending on us, and the possibilities as much more real than the actual sensations, nay, as the very realities of which these are only the representations, appearances, or effects.—When this state of mind has been arrived at, then, and from that time forward, we are never conscious of a present sensation without instantaneously referring it to some one of the groups of possibilities into which a sensation of that particular description enters; and if we do not yet know to what group to refer it, we at least feel an irresistible conviction that it must belong to some group or other; *i. e.* that its presence proves the existence, here and now, of a great number and variety of possibilities of sensation, without which it would not have been. The whole set of sensations as possible, form a permanent background to any one or more of them that are, at a given moment, actual; and the possibilities are conceived as standing to the actual sensations in

the relation of a cause to its effects, or of canvas to the figures painted on it, or of a root to the trunk, leaves, and flowers or of a substratum to that which is spread over it, or, in transcendental language of Matter to Form.

“When this point has been reached, the Permanent Possibilities in question have assumed such unlikeness of aspect, and such difference of apparent relation to us, from any sensations, that it would be contrary to all we know of the constitution of human nature that they should not be conceived as, and believed to be, at least as different from sensations as sensations are from one another. Their groundwork in sensation is forgotten, and they are supposed to be something intrinsically distinct from it. We can withdraw ourselves from any of our (external) sensations, or we can be withdrawn from them by some other agency. But though the sensations cease, the possibilities remain in existence: they are independent of our will, our presence, and every thing which belongs to us. We find, too, that they belong as much to other human or sentient beings as to ourselves. We find other people grounding their expectations and conduct upon the same permanent possibilities on which we ground ours. But we do not find them experiencing the same actual sensations. Other people do not have our sensations exactly when and as we have them: but they have our possibilities of sensation; whatever indicates a present possibility of sensations to ourselves, indicates a present possibility of sensations to them, except so far as their organs of sensation may vary from the type of ours. This puts the final seal to our conception of the groups of possibilities as the fundamental reality in Nature. The permanent possibilities are common to us and to our fellow-creatures; the actual sensations are not. That which other people become aware of when, and on the same grounds as I do, seems more real to me than that which they do not know of unless I tell them. The world of Possible Sensations succeeding one another, according to laws, is as much in other beings as it is in me; it has therefore an existence outside me; it is an External World.

“Matter, then, may be defined, a Permanent Possibility of Sensation. . . . We believe that we perceive a something

closely related to all our sensations, but different from those which we are feeling at any particular minute; and distinguished from sensations altogether, by being permanent and always the same, while these are fugitive, variable, and alternately displace one another. But these attributes of the object of perception are properties belonging to all the possibilities of sensation, which experience guarantees. The belief in such permanent possibilities seems to me to include all that is essential or characteristic in the belief in substance. I believe that Calcutta exists, though I do not perceive it, and that it would still exist if every percipient inhabitant in it were suddenly to leave the place, or be struck dead. But when I analyze the belief, all I find in it is, that were those events to take place, the Permanent Possibility of Sensation which I call Calcutta would still remain; that if I were suddenly transported to the banks of the Hooghly, I should still have the sensations which, if now present, would lead me to affirm that Calcutta exists here and now.\*—We may infer, therefore, that both philosophers and the world at large, when they think of matter, conceive it really as a Permanent Possibility of Sensation. But the majority of philosophers fancy that it is something more; and the world at large, though they have really, as I conceive, nothing in their minds but a Permanent Possibility of Sensation, would, if asked the question, undoubtedly agree with the philosophers; and though this is sufficiently explained by the tendency of the human mind to infer difference of things from difference of names I acknowledge the obligation of showing how it can be possible to believe in an existence transcending all possibilities of sensation, unless on the hypothesis that such an existence actually is, and that we actually perceive it.

“The explanation, however, is not difficult. It is an admitted fact that we are capable of all conceptions which can be formed by generalizing from the observed laws of our sensations. Whatever relation we find to exist between any one

---

\* For analysis to be wholly exact, it should read, I think :—“ If any being whatever, analogous to myself, were transported to the banks of the Hooghly, he would have, etc.” The permanent possibility is absolutely general.



of our sensations and something different from *it*, that same relation we have no difficulty in conceiving to exist between the sum of all our sensations and something different from *them*. The differences which our consciousness recognizes between one sensation and another give us the general notion of difference, and inseparably associate with every sensation we have, the feeling of its being different from other things: and when once this association has been formed, we can no longer conceive anything, without being able, and even being compelled, to form also the conception of something different from it. This familiarity with the idea of something different from *each* thing we know makes it natural and easy to form the notion of something different from *all* things that we know, collectively as well as individually. It is true we can form no conception of what such a thing can be; our notion of it is merely negative; but the idea of a substance, apart from its relation to the impressions which we conceive it as making on our senses, *is* a merely negative one. There is thus no psychological obstacle to our forming the notion of a something which is neither a sensation nor a possibility of sensation, even if our consciousness does not testify to it; and nothing is more likely than that the Permanent Possibilities of sensation, to which our consciousness does testify, should be confounded in our minds with this imaginary conception. All experience attests the strength of the tendency to mistake mental abstractions, even negative ones, for substantive realities; and the Permanent Possibilities of sensation which experience guarantees are so extremely unlike in many of their properties to actual sensations, that since we are capable of imagining something which transcends sensations, there is a great natural probability that we should suppose these to be it.

“But this natural possibility is converted into certainty, when we take into consideration that universal law of our experience which is termed the law of Causation, and which makes us mentally connect with the beginning of every thing some antecedent condition or Cause. The case of Causation is one of the most marked of all the cases in which we extend to the sum total of our consciousness, a notion derived from

its parts. It is a striking example of our power to conceive, and our tendency to believe, that a relation which subsists between every individual item of our experience and some other item, subsists also between our experience as a whole, and something not within the sphere of experience. By this extension to the sum of all our experiences, of the internal relations obtaining between its several parts, we are led to conceive sensation itself—the aggregate whole of our sensations—as deriving its origin from antecedent existences transcending sensation. That we should do this, is a consequence of the particular character of the uniform sequences, which experience discloses to us among our sensations. As already remarked, the constant antecedent of a sensation is seldom another sensation, or set of sensations, actually felt. It is much oftener the existence of a group of possibilities, not necessarily including any actual sensations, except such as are required to show that the possibilities are really present. Nor are actual sensations indispensable even for this purpose; for the presence of the object (which is nothing more than the immediate presence of the possibilities) may be made known to us by the very sensations we refer to it as its effect. Thus, the real antecedent of an effect—the only antecedent which, being invariable and unconditional, we consider to be the cause—may be, not any sensation really felt, but solely the presence at that or the immediately preceding moment of a group of possibilities of sensation. Hence it is not with sensations as actually experienced, but with their Permanent Possibilities, that the idea of Cause comes to be identified: and we, by one and the same process, acquire the habit of regarding Sensation in general, like all our individual sensations, as an Effect, and also that of conceiving as the causes of most of our individual sensations, not other sensations, but general possibilities of sensation. . . . It may perhaps be said that the preceding theory gives, indeed, some account of the idea of Permanent Existence which forms part of our conception of matter, but gives no explanation of our believing these permanent objects to be external, or out of ourselves. I apprehend, on the contrary, that the very idea of anything out of ourselves is derived solely from the knowledge experience

gives us of the Permanent Possibilities. Our sensations we carry with us wherever we go, and they never exist where we are not; but when we change our place we do not carry away with us the Permanent Possibilities of Sensation: they remain until we return, or arise and cease under conditions with which our presence has in general nothing to do. And more than all—they are, and will be after we have ceased to feel, Permanent Possibilities of Sensation to other beings than ourselves. Thus, our actual sensations, and the permanent possibilities of sensation, stand out in obtrusive contrast to one another: and when the idea of Cause has been acquired, and extended by generalization from the parts of our experience to its aggregate whole, nothing can be more natural than that the Permanent Possibilities should be classed by us as existences generically distinct from our sensations, but of which our sensations are the effect. . . . If all these considerations put together do not completely explain and account for our conceiving these Possibilities as a class of independent and substantive entities, I know not what psychological analysis can be conclusive.”\*

In my opinion, this is so, save in a point we have already indicated. These *possibilities* of sensation constituted by the presence of all the conditions of the sensation, but one, are transformed into *necessities*, when this last absent condition becomes added to the rest. I see a table; which means that, having a particular visual sensation, I conceive and affirm the possibility of certain sensations of muscular movement, resistance, and feeble sound in every sentient being; but it also means that if to the existence of a sentient being we add a further condition, some movement which will put his hand in contact with the table, there will be, in his case, no longer a simple possibility, but further than this, the necessity of these sensations. These necessities, set apart and considered separately, are what we call forces.† Force or necessity, these two terms are equivalent; they indicate that the event in question *must* become accomplished; both one and the other

---

\* Mill, “Examination,” etc. pp. 192–205.

† Part i. book iv. ch. iii. p. 202.

are particularities, modes of being extracted from the event and isolated by a mental fiction. But as the law predicting the event under certain conditions is general, and therefore permanent, both one and the other appear as permanent, and are found to be erected into substances, which puts them in opposition to transient events and classes them apart.—At present, under the name of forces, permanent possibilities are reducible without difficulty to what we term matter and body; we have no hesitation in admitting that the world in which we are placed is a system of forces; at all events, this is the conception of the most profound physicists. Various forces, which, under various conditions, excite in us various sensations: in this we have bodies in their relation to ourselves, and to all beings analogous to us.

VI. What a body is with relation to another remains to be investigated.—We must first observe that the majority of bodies which we perceive change, at least in many respects, and that daily experience has no difficulty in ascertaining these changes. They change, which means that, in the group of permanent possibilities constituting them, some particular possibility perishes; in other words again, among the possible sensations which denote a body, some particular sensation ceases to be possible. The top of this stove was cold a short time ago; now the fire has been lighted, it is hot. This ball of wax is spherical, hard, odorous, capable of rendering a slight sound; when placed on the hot stove it becomes soft, loses its sonorousness and smell, and becomes a thick liquid. This green leaf has no longer any color in the dark. I left this book on my table, and find it on one of the shelves of the bookcase.—In all these cases, one or more of the possibilities of sensation constituting the object have disappeared, but are replaced or not by others of the same kind.—All these changes of bodies are, at bottom, conceived and conceivable only with relation to sensations, since they are all reduced, in final analysis, to the extinction or arising of a possibility of sensation. But, from another point of view, though bodies are but possibilities of sensation, these changes are none the less changes of bodies, and it is from this point of view that we usually consider them. When we no longer find a sensa-

tion on which we were accustomed to reckon, we do not ascribe the change to ourselves, but to the body; we say that it has changed its position, figure, size, temperature, color, taste, smell, and though its history may be only definable by us through ours, we confront its history with ours, as a series of events opposed to another series of events.

On this two new series of properties become added to it, and perfect its being.—On the one hand we observe that it is capable of certain precise changes under certain precise conditions; it may change place, figure, magnitude, consistence, color, smell; may be divided, may become solid, liquid, gaseous, be heated, cooled, etc. We conceive it with relation to its possible events as we conceived it with relation to our possible sensations, and, to the first group of possibilities and permanent necessities by which we constituted it, we associate a second.—On the other hand we observe that certain of its events excite certain changes in other bodies. The marble in motion displaces another marble. An acid solution reddens litmus paper. The heated stove evaporates water placed on it. A scrap of heated iron brought near a thermometer dilates the alcohol. By these various observations we prove that certain bodies are capable, under certain precise conditions, of exciting certain changes in other bodies, and we no longer define them by reference to our events, nor by reference to their own events, but by reference to the events of the other bodies. In this respect, too, a body is still a group of permanent possibilities and necessities, and, with these three relationships, we have completely constituted it.—It can, and under certain conditions it must, excite in us certain muscular and tactile sensations of resistance, extension, figure, and situation, certain sensations of temperature, color, sound, taste, and smell: these are its sensible properties.—It can, and under certain conditions it must, go through certain changes of consistence, extension, figure, position, temperature, taste, color, sound, and smell: these are what we may call its intrinsic properties.—It can, and under certain circumstances it must, excite in some other body some change of consistence or extension, or figure, or position, or temperature, or of taste, smell, color, and sound: these are its properties with relation to

other bodies.—All these properties exist only with relation to events; to state them is to predict some event of ourselves, of the body in question, of another body, to enunciate it as possible under certain conditions, as necessary under the same conditions with a complementary one added to them, in short, to state a general law; and all these events, our own, those of the body in question, those of the other bodies, are defined in final analysis by our events.

The case is altered, when, from among this enormous multitude of properties, we attempt to set aside fundamental properties. Sentient beings are but a rank in the prodigious army of distinct beings which we observe or divine in nature, and our events are but a trifling quantity in the enormous mass of events. The Ego is a single reagent among a hundred million others, one of the most perishable, one of the most easily deranged, one of the most inaccurate, one of the most insufficient. In the place of its notations we substitute other equivalent notations, and we define the properties of bodies, not by our events, but by certain of their events. Instead of our feeling of temperature we take as guide the elevation or lowering of the alcohol in the thermometer. Instead of the muscular sensation we experience in raising a weight, we take as guide the elevation or lowering of the scale of the balance. Among these indicating events, there is one which is very simple and more universally spread through nature than any other—motion, or passage from place to place, with its different degrees of velocity.—We first observe it in ourselves; the primitive notion we have of it is that of the more or less energetic muscular sensations, whose longer or shorter series accompanies the bending or extension of our limbs. Just as, by analogy and induction, we attribute to organized bodies, sensations, perceptions, emotions, and other events similar to our own, so we attribute to all bodies motion similar to our own. But, as by verification and rectification, we gradually limit the too close resemblance we at first imagined between the inferior animals and ourselves, so we gradually limit the too great resemblance which we at first imagined between the motion of inanimate bodies and our own. The child believed, and has ceased to believe, that its hoop jumped and ran away,

that its ball ran at it and tried to hurt it. Men imagined and have at last ceased to imagine the flight of the projectile as an effort\* analogous to their own; they have recognized the metaphor for a metaphor, and have reduced it so that it may correspond with a body incapable of intention and sensation. Instead of conceiving motion as a series of successive sensations interposed between the moments of departure and arrival, he now conceives it as a series of successive states interposed between the moments of departure and arrival; by this retrenchment, the kind and quality of the elements which compose the series are omitted; nothing remains but their number and order, and the notion is applicable, not merely to sentient bodies, but to all bodies.

This being settled, he gradually discovers that, in his definitions of bodies and their properties, a mode or particularity of motion so conceived may take the place of his sensations. He called that solid which excited in him the sensation of resistance; he now calls solid whatever arrests the progress of any body in motion. He conceived empty space by his muscular sensations of free locomotion; he now conceives it by the unarrested motion of any body whatever. He represented lines, surfaces, and solids by more and more complex groups of which his sensations of locomotion, contact, and resistance formed the elements; he now defines the line by the motion of a point; the surface by the motion of a line; the solid by the motion of a surface. He estimated force by the magnitude of his sensation of effort; he now measures it by the velocity of the motion it impresses on a given mass, or by the magnitude of the mass on which it impresses a motion of a given velocity.—He thus attains the conception of body as a *movable motor*, of which velocity and mass are equivalent aspects. Thus, all the events of physical nature are motions, each of them being defined by the mass and velocity of the body in motion; and each being a quantity which passes from body to body without ever increasing or diminishing. Such is at present the mechanical idea of nature. Among the various classes of events by

---

\* *Nisus*.

which we can define things, man chooses one, refers to it the majority of the others, and imagines that some day he will be able so to refer the rest. But if we analyze the one he has chosen, we discover that all the original and constituting elements of his definition are, like the definitions of all the rest, nothing more than sensations, or more or less elaborated extracts from sensations.

VII. Among these extracts from sensation by which, in final analysis, we invariably conceive and define bodies, is there any one which we may legitimately attribute to them? Or are bodies, indeed, nothing more than a simple collection of permanent powers or possibilities, of which we can affirm nothing except the effects they excite in us? Or, indeed, as Bain and Mill, following Berkeley, think, are they pure non-entity, erected by an illusion of the human mind into substances and external things? Is there nothing more in nature than series of transient sensations which constitute sentient subjects, and the durable possibilities of these same sensations? Is there nothing *intrinsic* in this stone? Do we only discover in it *relative* properties, for instance, the possibility of certain tactile sensations for a sentient subject, the necessity of these same tactile sensations for the sentient subject who will give himself a certain series of muscular sensations, that is to say the series of muscular sensations in consequence of which his hand will arrive at touching the stone?—We have already seen that what constitutes a distinct being, is a distinct series of facts or events. Consequently, in order that this stone may be, not the simple permanent possibility of certain sensations of a sentient subject, a vain and ineffectual possibility in case all sentient subjects were suppressed, it is necessary that it should be, in addition, a distinct series of facts, or of real or possible events—events which would still be produced in the absence of all sentient beings. May we by induction and analogy attribute to it such a series?—All followers of Berkeley are agreed that we may legitimately do so by induction and analogy, when, instead of a stone, we are dealing with a sentient subject, man or animal, other than ourselves. In this case not only do we conceive the object perceived by our senses as a collection of permanent possi-



bilities, but more than this, we rightly attribute to it a series of sensations, images, and ideas, more or less analogous to our own, and we legitimately transfer to it events which pass in us. By this transfer, instead of the simple possibility which it was, it becomes an actual thing in the same way as ourselves, and we recognize in it a distinct existence, independent of ours, since the events which constitute it, though proved by us, have no need of our events for their production and succession.

Is there any series of internal events which we may, still by induction and analogy, transfer from ourselves to the stone, in order to confer on the stone the independent and distinct existence which we have conferred on the being similar to ourselves or on the animal?—Yes, certainly, at least in my opinion, and by means of preliminary eliminations. As we have seen just now, from the series of muscular sensations by which we conceive motion, we cut away all the characters which can distinguish it from another series. After this great suppression, it is nothing more for us than an abstract series of successive states, interposed between a certain initial moment and a certain final moment. Each of these component states has been stripped of all qualities, and is defined only by its position, in the series, as being nearer or more distant from the initial or the final moment. It is this series, more or less short, of successive states comprised between an initial moment and a final moment, and defined only by their reciprocal order, that we term pure motion.—Now, we have all the reasons in the world to attribute this to the unknown things we term bodies, to be certain that it is from one to another of them, and to lay down this as the basis of such communication. In fact, if all sentient beings were pressed, our stone would still subsist; and this does not mean that the possibility of certain visual, tactile, and other sensations would still subsist; it also means that the unknown things we term molecules, and which make up the stone, would still subsist; in other words that the movable motive powers of which the stone is the aggregate would continue to weigh on the ground proportionately to their mass, and would go through the same internal oscillations as they do at

present. Whatever be the being, animate or inanimate, we may consider it in two aspects, with relation to others, and in itself.—In relation to others, it is a condition of events for the others, and, especially with relation to us, it is a condition of sensations for us ; in this respect it is determined, but solely with relation to us, and we can say nothing more of it than that it is the permanent possibility of certain sensations for us.—On the other hand, in itself, it is a series of events which, in certain conditions, tend to be accomplished ; in this respect it is determinate in itself, and we may say of it that it is this series conjoined to the tendencies by which it is accomplished.—This man is, first, the permanent possibility of tactual, visual, and other sensations, which I experience in his neighborhood ; and further, he is a distinct series of sensations, images, ideas, and volitions, conjoined to the tendencies by which this series is accomplished. So, too, this stone is, first, the permanent possibility of visual, tactile, and other sensations, which I experience in its neighborhood ; and further, it is a distinct group of tendencies to motion, and of distinct motions in way of being accomplished.

No doubt, we know nothing of animate or inanimate beings except from the sensations they give us. No doubt, too, the various materials with which we internally construct their idea are our sensations, or more or less elaborated extracts from our sensations. But we may, upon authentic evidence, refer to things external, some of these more or less transformed and reduced materials, and attribute to such things a distinct existence without us, analogous to that which they have within

We are naturally inclined by imagination and sympathy to imitation. At the sight of a rocket fired off, just as at that of a flying bird, we involuntarily put ourselves in the place of the object ; we mentally repeat its flight ; we imitate it by our attitude and gestures. Infant nations, in whom this aptitude is intact, carry it out to far greater extents than we do. The primitive man, Aryan or Greek, bestowed his soul upon fountains, rivers, mountains, clouds, the air, upon all the aspects of the heavens and the day ; he saw in inanimate things, living beings similar to himself. Gradually, by means of experiences and verifications, we have re-

strained this too complete transference of ourselves to external things. At present, we have reduced it to a minimum; we have suppressed even the last vestiges of the primitive error; we no longer attribute to inanimate things, attractions, repulsions and efforts, conceived on the model of our mental states denoted by these words; when we use such language, we know that it is merely by approximation and metaphor. If we attribute motion to bodies, it is after stripping its elements of all human qualities, after taking from them all the characters by which they were at first sensations, by carefully leaving nothing of them but their relative order, their position in relation to the initial and final moment, their more or less speedy succession in the same interval of time. In this state of extreme attenuation and curtailment, the continuous series of successive events constituting the motion of a stone we throw, is nothing more than a very slight extract, the slightest possible extract, of that continuous series of successive muscular sensations first constituting to us the motion of our hand. But we may justly attribute such a series to the stone, and in this respect, it is to us a being as real, as complete, as distinct from us, as any particular man or horse.\*

---

\* By this addition to the theory of Bain and Mill, we restore to bodies an actual existence, independent of our sensations. But the theory, with the aid of this addition, leads us much further, and enables us to complete the views we have already presented upon the relations of physical and mental events. (See part i. book iv. ch. ii. p. 200.)

It follows, from the analysis of motion, that it is not absolutely heterogeneous to sensation: for our idea of it is formed from the materials supplied by our muscular sensations of locomotion. In the series of successive muscular sensations which make up a whole sensation of locomotion, strip the component sensations of all intrinsic quality and difference; consider them abstractedly, as pure successive events, determined solely by their relative order in the series, and by the whole time they take to succeed one another in this order from the initial to the final moment; it is this abstract series which constitutes to us the movements of our arm, and which we attribute by induction and analogy to the stone our hand carries with it.—Now, the elements of this abstract series being thus brought down to the maximum degree of possible simplicity, may be considered as *elementary* sensation at their maximum of possible simplicity. In such a case the most simple motion, such as we attribute to a movable point, would be precisely the most simple series of those elementary mental events, whose degraded forms we have seen extending, while becoming still more degraded, under the compound mental events, sensations,

VIII. We now know the materials by whose assemblage the conception of a body is formed. All these materials are images of sensations, possible under certain conditions, and necessary, under the same conditions, with a complementary one added. When nothing contradicts this conception, and when, instead of being repressed and negative, it is excited and sustained by the actual sensation, it is affirmative and becomes a judgment. Therefore, we now see the part it plays in an external perception. I lay my hand in the dark on this marble table, and I have an actual sensation of contact, of resistance, and of cold. Upon this sensation, images arise of many distinct and interconnected sensations, that of the precisely similar sensations of contact, resistance, and cold, which I should experience if I repeated the trial, that of the nearly similar sensations of contact, resistance, and cold, which I should experience if I placed my hand beyond the spot I touched, that of the muscular sensations of locomotion, dur-

---

and images, of which we are conscious. Sensations and images would thus be but more complex cases of motion.—By this reduction, the two idioms, of consciousness and of sense, by which we read the great book of Nature, would be reduced to a single one; the mutilated text and the mutilated interlinear translation which mutually supply one another would be one and the same tongue, written in different characters, with more complex characters in the supposed text, with more simple characters in the supposed translation, and the link connecting the translation and the text would be found in the relation discovered between our idea of motion and the muscular sensation of locomotion which supplies the elements of this idea.

If this be admitted, we are enabled to include nature in a general glance. The simultaneous series of successive events composing it would be all homogeneous. Their type would be furnished us by the sensation as we observe it in ourselves, and in the elementary sensations, more and more degraded and simplified, of which this whole sensation is made up. *At the extreme limit* of simplicity all would be reduced to motions, which would themselves be nothing more than continuous series of infinitesimal sensations, stripped of all quality, and definable only in respect of quantity, that is to say by the duration employed in their accomplishment, and by the magnitude of the succeeding effect. In this respect, all the facts and events of nature might be reduced to motions, and our sciences, all of which have for their object the discovery of simple elements, might all be reduced, as indeed all tend to be reduced, to mechanics.—But this would be so, from the analytical aspect only. Motion itself would be conceivable only by the series of muscular sensations of which it is the most slender extract, and, directly, the type of existence would be the mental event, sensation, or image, just as consciousness presents it to us.

ing which these tactile sensations would be received, and at whose expiration they would be no longer received, that of the visual sensations of color and form, which would arise in me if there were light and my eyes were open, etc. I further believe that, by placing myself under the required conditions, not only might I experience the sensations in question at any moment of the future, but, moreover, that I might have experienced them at any moment of the past, and that the same would happen at any moment of the present, past, or future, with every being analogous to myself.

In this group of images called up by the sensation, two things must be distinguished, the images themselves, and the reflection by which I remark the permanent possibility, at all times and for every sensible being, of the sensations which they represent. The first of these two things is animal, the second is human.—In fact, animal experience is sufficient to attach the group of images to the sensation; we have seen the laws of revival and association which form and arouse it. When a dog touches the table, all the images we have enumerated arise in him as in us; consequently he can foresee, as we do, that if he runs against the table he will be bruised, that if he lies down on it he will feel cold, that if he opens his eyes to look at it he will have a certain visual sensation. This is sufficient to enable him to avoid danger, to provide for his wants, to direct his proceedings. If he sees, smells, or touches a piece of meat, he has, by revival and association, the image of a sensation of pleasant taste, and this image induces him to snap it up. When he sees a lifted stick or hears the crack of a whip, he has, by revival and association, the image of a painful sensation of touch, and this image induces him to run away. In his case there is nothing more; he is not possessed of language, he has not the means of discerning and isolating the characters of his image.—We have these means, and avail ourselves of them. The child learns the words *table*, *stick*, *meat*, *stone*, *tree*, and others; they gradually become equivalent for him to the group of animal images which first constituted his whole perception. He incessantly avails himself of them; when grown up, he enquires into their meanings and couples them. The man then observes

that the sensation of which he has the image was possible just before, that same morning, the day before, that it will be possible presently, this evening, to-morrow, and at every intervening moment, and not only for him, but for every being analogous to himself. He notes this possibility; he disengages it from the sensations in which it is included; he is struck by the singularity of its independence and permanence in the midst of the continuous flow and manifest dependence of the sensations. He denotes it by the words property, power, force. As it is independent and permanent, it seems to him alone worthy of attention, and henceforth, to fill the scene of being, he puts it into the first rank with other similar Possibilities.—He correspondingly discards or lays aside as of small importance fugitive sensations, and, owing to their omission, forgets that properties, powers and forces are but extracts from them. He attempts to consider, apart and in itself, this permanent and independent thing which he has only isolated by an oversight. Thus, he creates an empty substance; metaphysics sets to work and builds her card-castles upon this entity; in order to upset them the most rigorous analysis is hardly sufficient.—There remains, then, to constitute the perception of a body, first, an actual sensation and an associated group of images, next, the conception, that is to say the extraction and notation by means of a sign, of a character common to all the sensations represented by these images, a permanent character which, when interpreted by metaphysical illusion, becomes isolated and appears a separate being. Sensations and images, these form the crude and primitive materials; gradual and superadded abstraction completes the edifice.—Here we have the first foundation of the hallucinatory semblance which arises in us, when, upon a sensation, we conceive and affirm an extended, resisting, movable substance, localized, and possessed of other sensible properties. The operation which completes it and opposes it to ourselves, by casting it into the distance and situating it without us, remains to be described.

## CHAPTER II.

## EXTERNAL PERCEPTION AND THE EDUCATION OF THE SENSES.

I. ALONG with the great mental process of which we have been speaking, another is accomplished, as involuntary, as silent, and as fruitful in illusions and cognitions. Every special sensation becomes transformed, and acquires an apparent position. We never now experience a sensation without assigning it a place. As soon as we have an impression of cold, of heat, of pain, of contact, of muscular contraction, of taste, of smell, we can point out more or less precisely the spot at which we feel it, as—in the hand, the cheek, the middle of the arm, the nose, the tongue.—There is no appreciable interval between this judgment and the sensation itself; we are even tempted to believe that the two events are one, and that we observe, at the same moment, the twitch of pain and its locality. There is, though, an interval between these two observations, and the delicate processes employed by physiologists have recently succeeded in measuring it;\* the fact is that the operation by which we localize our sensation in a particular spot of one of our limbs is a subsequent and more or less complex addition, whose more or less numerous moments require for their succession a longer or shorter time.†

---

\* Experiments of Helmholtz, Marey, De Bezold, Hirsch, Van Deen, Donders, De Jaager, Wolf. Collected and summed up by M. Radau, in the "*Revue des Deux Mondes*," 1 Aug. 1867, p. 794.

† M. de Jaager told the person on whom he was experimenting to touch the key of the electric machine with his left hand, when he received the shock on his right side, and with his right hand when he received the shock on his left side. Thus, two cases were presented. Sometimes the person was told beforehand that the shock would be received on a particular side, the right, for instance; in this case, the interval between the shock he received and the consecutive signal he gave amounted to  $\frac{1}{2}$  of a second. Sometimes he was not told on what side he would

—By this localizing operation our sensation receives a false appearance, and this appearance begets others, which are, in themselves, illusions, but which, by their correspondence with things, constitute the perfectionment or education of the senses.—When once the sensation has arrived at this state, the bodies it reveals to us correspondingly receive new characters; the hallucinatory semblance which constitutes external perception is completed; and the object, which appeared only as something permanent and fixed, now appears as something *beyond us* and *without us*.

II. I put my foot to the ground; I experience a sensation of pressure, and determine that it is situated in my left foot, that it is strong in the middle of the foot, light at the heel, scarcely perceptible at the toes. Let us consider this conclusion; taken in itself, it is false; the sensation is not in my foot. In this case, physiologists long ago detected the error and established the theory. The truth is that a disturbance is produced in the nerves of the foot, of greater extent in the

---

receive the shock, and the shock came, for instance, from the right; in this case the interval between the shock he received and the consecutive signal he gave amounted to '27 of a second. The difference, then, between the two cases amounted to '07 of a second.—It is clear that in each case the crude sensation was produced at the same instant; but, in the first case the image of the shock on the right was fully prepared to enter on the scene, and was not counterbalanced, as in the second case, by the equal readiness of the image of the shock on the left. To upset this equilibrium, and to permit the image of the shock on the right to attach itself by selection to the supervening sensation, required a certain time, and by the experiment the time required is '07 of a second.—In general, between a sensation and a consecutive signal there elapses two-tenths of a second, and, if the sensation, that of a momentary sound, of an electric shock, of a spark, requires to call up an auxiliary image, it employs, when this image is not in readiness or is counterbalanced by another, one-tenth of a second longer than when this auxiliary image is in readiness, or has no antagonist.—Images, then, require an interval of time to connect themselves to the sensation, and this interval is increased when their calling up is less prepared or more disputed.

MM. Donders and De Jaager made the experiment in a slightly different manner. One of them pronounced a syllable, the other repeated it as soon as he heard it; the vibrations of the word were registered by a phonautograph; when the repeated syllable had been agreed on beforehand, the difference observed was two-tenths of a second; in the other case, it was three-tenths.—Analogous results were obtained by an observer noting the appearance of a white or red light, and being, in turn, informed and not informed which would be shown.



sole, and of less at the toes and heel, that this disturbance is communicated throughout the whole course of the nerves to the sensory centres of the encephalon, and that the sensation really takes place in the encephalon. We are mistaken in situating it in the periphery of the nervous system, it is at the centre; what is produced in the foot is not the sensation, but the commencement of the nervous disturbance of which the sensation is the final result.

There are superabundant proofs of this. They may be all summed up by saying that, in many instances, the sensation appears situated in a place where it certainly is not. By means of these instances we prove a general law: that, in our present state, as soon as a sensation arises, it is accompanied by a judgment in which we pronounce it to be situated in some particular spot. It may be that, in such a case, there actually is a nervous disturbance at this spot, or, it may be, that there is no such disturbance there. It matters little; the judgment takes place in the second case as well as in the first, the sensation, by itself, is sufficient to give rise to the judgment, and acquires through the judgment an apparent situation. The situation, then, was acquired in the first case, when nervous disturbance was existing at the indicated spot, just as in the second case, in which no nervous disturbance was existing there. When once it is established, in accordance with the second case, that a certain position attributed to a certain sensation is apparent only, it invincibly follows that, in the first case, the same position attributed to the same sensation is also apparent only. If, then, in the first case, we find anything at all at the indicated spot, it is not the sensation, but one of its antecedents or consequents, an event connected with it, and which it denotes, a real event, no doubt, but other than the sensation, and which, by a happy correspondence, usually accompanies the sensation in the normal state.

Let us now consider the cases by which we are undeceived. There is, first, a class already mentioned, that of persons who have lost limbs. "It is a fact," says Mueller, "known to all surgeons, and subject to no exception, that when a limb has been removed by amputation, the remaining portion of the nerve which ramified in it may still be the seat of sensations,

which are referred to the lost part. It is usually said that the illusion continues for some time, namely, as long as the patient is under the care of the surgeon; but the truth is, that in most cases it persists throughout life: of this it is easy to convince oneself by questioning a person whose limb has been amputated, at any period after the operation. The sensations are most vivid while the surface of the stump and the divided nerves are the seat of inflammation, and the patient then complains of severe pain felt as if in the whole limb which has been removed. When the stump is healed, the sensations which we are accustomed to have in a sound limb are still felt; and frequently throughout life there is a tingling, and often pain, felt, which are referred to the parts that are lost. These sensations are not of an undefined character; the pain and tingling are distinctly referred to single toes, to the sole of the foot, to the dorsum of the foot, to the skin, &c. . . . I have convinced myself of the constancy of these sensations—of their continuance throughout life—although patients become so accustomed to them as to cease to remark them. . . . A man whose thigh had been amputated, still had, after the expiration of twelve years, feelings which seemed to be in the toes and sole of the lost foot, and occasionally severe pains referable to the sole. . . . I applied a tourniquet to the stump, so as to press upon the ischiatic nerve; and he immediately said that he felt his leg asleep, and a very distinct tingling in the toes. . . . Another, who had his arm amputated above the elbow, thirteen years ago, has never ceased to have sensations as if in the fingers. He imagines that he feels the hand in a bent position. He feels a pricking in the fingers, particularly when he lies upon the stump, so as to press the brachial nerves. I applied pressure to the nerves in the stump; and he immediately felt the whole arm, even the fingers, as if asleep. . . . Another, whose right arm had been shattered by a cannon-ball in battle, above the elbow, twenty years ago, and afterwards amputated, had still, at changes of the weather, distinct rheumatic pains, which seemed to him to exist in the whole arm; and though removed so long ago, the lost part was, at those times, felt as if sensible to draughts of air. This man also com-

pletely confirmed our statement, that the sense of the integrity of the limb is never lost." \*—These illusions are strongest at night; the patients are sometimes then compelled to put their hands to the spot where their limb ought to be, to convince themselves of its absence. When the subsisting portions of the nerves become painful, they have still more difficulty in rectifying their error; one man, after eight months had elapsed, could only undeceive himself by feeling at night and looking by day at the empty place left by the amputation of his left arm.—It is plain that in all these cases the sensation of twinging, of the limb being asleep, of tingling, of pain, is not situated in the absent limb, therefore *the same* sensation is not situated in the limb, when the limb is there; thus, in the two cases, in the normal and the abnormal state, the sensation has not the situation we attribute to it; it is elsewhere; it is not the sensation, but a nervous disturbance which, in the normal state, occupies the place at which the sensation seems to be. The nerve is a simple conductor; from whatever point its disturbance may start on its way to arouse the action of the sensory centres, the same sensation is produced, and involves the play of the same internal mechanism, that is to say, the attribution of the sensation to some spot other than the sensory centre.

Numbers of facts are explicable by this observation: a violent blow on the cubital nerve excites a pain which appears to be situated through all the ulterior course of the nerve, especially at the back and palm of the hand, in the fourth and fifth fingers.—The same thing happens, if the elbow be plunged into a mixture of water and pounded ice.—Again, when the cubital or sciatic nerve is compressed, the feeling of pricking or of being asleep seems to be experienced by the internal parts of the limb. "In an amputation," says Mueller,† "at the moment of the division of the nerves, the most violent pains are felt, as if in the part which is being amputated, and to which the divided nerves are distributed. The experienced surgeon of the Hamburg

---

\* Mueller, "Physiology" (tr. Baly), i. 694, 695, *n.*

† Mueller, *op. cit.* (tr. Baly), i. 691.

hospital, Dr. Fricke, assures me that this is a constant phenomenon."—For the same reason, disease of the nervous trunk, or of the marrow, excites pains or tinglings which the patient believes to be situated in the healthy extremities of his limbs.—So, too, certain paralyzed persons, whose external parts are wholly insensible to pricking and burning, still feel in them pains and twitchings.—Lastly, take the cases in which the peripheral parts of the nerve are not paralyzed, but displaced, as happens in the transposition of portions of skin. The sensation, being the same as before the transposition, will be accompanied by the same localizing operation, and will appear situated in the original spot. In fact, "when, in the restoration of the nose, a flap of skin is turned down from the forehead and made to unite with the stump of the nose, the new nose thus formed has, as long as the isthmus of skin by which it maintains its original connections remains undivided, the same sensations as if it were still on the forehead; in other words, when the nose is touched the patient feels the impression on the forehead."\* We may confidently decide, then, that the sensation, though really situated in the sensory centres, has the property, at least in our present state, of invariably appearing to be situated elsewhere.

Let us follow out the examination; our assurance will be further strengthened, and we shall begin, at the same time, to distinguish the law which regulates the localizing operation.—In all the foregoing cases it localized our sensation at the periphery of the nerve, from which the nervous disturbance resulting in the sensation usually starts. But this is not always so. There are parts of our bodies, like the teeth and hair, which are not provided with nerves, and which are, in themselves, wholly insensible; but still we situate many of our sensations at the external extremities of these parts, where no nervous disturbance can possibly be produced.† "If some part of the beard," says Weber, "for instance, at the side of the cheek, be lightly touched, where do we imagine that we feel this pressure exercised on the hairs of our skin?"

---

\* Mueller, op. cit. (tr. Baly), i. 697.

† Weber, Article *Tastsinn* in the "Handwörterbuch" of Rudolph Wagner, iii, part ii. p. 488 et seq.

Not in the sensible parts, to which it is propagated through the horny cylinders, and at which it acts on our nerves, but at some distance from the skin. . . . If we put a little piece of wood between our teeth, and press it with them, we imagine the resistance it offers to be situated at the surface of the teeth, where, however, there are no nerves, and where, consequently, we can feel nothing. On the other hand, we have no feeling whatever of the pressure exercised on the internal surface of the root of the tooth in the alveolus in which it is hidden ; though this is where the propagated pressure is actually exercised upon the highly nervous membrane surrounding the root of the tooth, and is the only spot at which it acts on our nerves.”—Further than this : “not only do we wrongly situate pressure acting on the surface of the insensible substances growing from our skin, but we also make the same error when we place a little stick between our fingers and feel with it a resisting body, as for instance, the table.” In this case, two sensations are simultaneously produced, one which appears to be situated at the extremity of our fingers, the other at the extremity of the stick. If the stick be fixed to the extremity of our fingers and movable at the other end, the first sensation is effaced and the second predominates. If the stick is movable at the extremity of our fingers and fixed at the other extremity, the inverse is the case.—By this experiment we determine the law of the operation ; evidently, the localizing judgment situates each of our sensations in the spot in which we are accustomed to meet with the cause or condition which is accustomed to excite it.\* If, from birth, the stick had been attached to one of our hands, like the long sensitive exploring whiskers of a

---

\* Vulpian.—“*Leçons sur la Physiologie du Système Nerveux*,” 287. Experiment of Paul Bert.

The tail of a rat is cut raw with a bistoury and implanted in the animal's back, where it becomes grafted. The tail is then divided at about a centimetre from its root. The rat will then have it growing backwards, out of its back. For the first three months, there are feeble signs of sensibility when the tail is pinched. “After six or nine months, the sensibility is much increased, but the animal does not yet recognize the spot in which he is pinched. After a year, he is perfectly aware of the spot, and will turn round to bite the pincers.” We see here the proof that experience must intervene to enable the animal to localize its sensations.

cat are attached to its cheeks and lips, like the stag's horn is attached to its brow, and our beard and teeth are attached to our membranes, we should situate things we came into contact with at the end of the stick, as the cat probably situates what it touches at the end of its whiskers, and the stag at the end of its horns, as it is very certain we situate our contacts at the extremities of our beard and teeth.

III. The consequence is that when a sensation has for its usual condition the presence of an object more or less distant from our bodies, and experience has once made us acquainted with this distance, we shall situate our sensation at this distance.—This, in fact, is the case with sensations of hearing and sight. The peripheral extremity of the acoustic nerve is in the deep-seated chamber of the ear. That of the optic nerve is in the most inner recess of the eye. But still, in our present state, we never situate our sensations of sound or color in these places, but without us, and often at a considerable distance from us. The ringing of a great bell seems to vibrate high in the air and very far off; a railway whistle seems to pierce the air at some fifty paces to the left.—The position, even when distant, is clearer still in the case of visual sensations. This extends so far that our sensations of color seem detached from us; we no longer observe that they appertain to us; they seem to form a part of the objects; we believe that the green color which seems extended three paces from us on the surface of this arm-chair is one of its properties; we forget that it only exists in our retina, or rather in the sensory centres which the disturbance of the retina disturbs. If we look there for it, we shall not find it there; physiologists may prove indeed that the nervous disturbance which results in a sensation of color commences in the retina, just as the nervous disturbance which results in a sensation of contact commences in the nervous extremities of the hand or foot; they may prove that the vibrating ether strikes the extremity of the optic nerve, as a vibrating tuning-fork strikes the surface of the hand: “we have not the least consciousness of this impression on the retina, even when we direct the whole force of our attention to the spot. \*—All our sensations of

---

\* Weber, *ibid.* 482.

color are thus projected out of our body, and clothe more or less distant objects furniture, walls, houses, trees, the sky, and the rest. This is why, when we afterwards reflect on them, we cease to attribute them to ourselves; they are alienated and detached from us, so far as to appear different from us. Projected from the nervous surface in which we localize the majority of the others, the tie which connected them to the others and to ourselves is undone, and it is undone in accordance with a well-known mechanism, by the obliteration of the imaginative operation which situates the sensation in some particular spot.

In fact, as far as we are concerned, this operation is but a means: we pay no attention to it; the color and the object denoted by the color are what alone interest us. Consequently, we forget or omit to observe the intermediate steps by which we localize our sensation; they are to us as though they did not exist; and we thereupon consider that we directly perceive the color and colored object as situated at a certain distance off.—In consequence of this, a contrast is established between this sensation and others. The others seem to be situated in a body belonging to us and specially connected with us, which we move at will, which accompanies us in all our changes of place, which answers to all our touchings by a sensation of contact, in which we situate ourselves in such a way that it extends over, encloses, and circumscribes our personality. Our sensations of color seem, on the contrary, situated beyond this, on the surface of bodies foreign to ours, beyond the limited constant circle in which we are enclosed. There is nothing strange, then, if we cease to consider them as belonging to us, and end by considering them as something foreign to us. If they are fugitive as a flash of lightning, the ring of fire described by whirling round a burning coal, or an impalpable meteor, they seem to us a simple event with position and shape. If, as usually happens, they are stable like the color of a stone, of a flower, of a tangible object, they seem to us a more or less permanent and fixed quality of that object.

The reason of this is evident. As long as we rest our eyes on the gilded frame of this mirror, the long yellow stripe per-

sists unchanged; the uniform, incessant, prodigiously rapid renewal of the vibrations of ether maintains it without alteration or discontinuity; it does not disappear unless, by a voluntary and foreseen movement of which I have sensation and recollection, I turn away my eyes and head.—Moreover, whenever I look again for this yellow stripe, I invariably find it in the same relative position, to the right of the dark glittering surface presented by the mirror, to the left of the striped gray presented by the paper of the wall.—Further still, the little bright or dark bands formed by the reliefs and hollows of the chasing always preserve the same relative positions in the whole yellow stripe. Consequently, this yellow is not a transitory momentary thing like a flash of lightning; it does not cease of its own accord. Experience shows me that I am sure of finding it again whenever I please; from finding it present, whenever I have turned my eyes towards it in the light, I conclude by induction that it is constantly present, all circumstances remaining the same, at whatever moment of time I have turned or may turn my eyes towards it, in any moment whatever of the past or the future; therefore it occupies them all. Its existence past and future is thus prolonged indefinitely, and it is the same in all these distinct instants. It seems, then, a permanent quality in that group of permanent possibilities we term body.

The truth, however, is that all the colors with which the surrounding world seems decked are within us, and are sensations of our optic centres; the consideration of the sensations of sight we term *subjective* is sufficient to convince us of this. These sensations undeceive and instruct us with respect to sight, just as the illusions of persons who have suffered amputations do with respect to touch. Color is not in the object, nor in the luminous rays which spring from it; for, in many instances, we see it when the object is absent, and when the luminous rays are wanting. The presence of the object and of the luminous rays contribute indirectly only to cause it to rise; its direct necessary and sufficient condition is the excitation of the retina, or which is more important of the optic centres of the encephalon. It matters little whether this excitation be produced by an impingement of luminous



rays, or otherwise. It matters little whether it be spontaneous or not. Whatever be its cause, as soon as it arises, the color arises, and, at the same moment, that which we term the visible figure. Consequently, the color and visible figure are but internal events, which appear external. The whole of physiological optics rests on this principle, and, to convince ourselves of its soundness, we have but to look at a few, among the hundreds of cases in which apparent color and figure arise of themselves, without any external object or pencil of luminous rays directly or indirectly setting the nerve in action.

When we have been looking steadfastly at a luminous or strongly illuminated object the excitation of the retina persists after we have ceased to look.\* Hence arise the singular phenomena termed *consecutive images*. These, in fact, are complete visual sensations which survive and are prolonged in the absence of their object. According to circumstances, in some cases the brighter portions of the consecutive image correspond to the brighter portions of the object, and the darker portions of the image to the darker portions of the object, and in some cases the inverse. In the second case, the colors of the consecutive image are the complementaries of the colors of the object; that is to say, where the object is red, the image is of a greenish blue; where the object is yellow, the image is blue; where the object is green, the image is rose-colored, and *vice versâ*.—A number of analogous phenomena have been observed, and are explained by the persisting excitation and diminished excitability of the retina after undergoing the action of light.—But there are other phenomena of the same kind, which are produced without there being any need for the intervention of light. It is enough in these cases if the retina be set in action by some other cause.† If the eye be compressed with the finger we see luminous figures “sometimes annular, sometimes radiated, sometimes divided regularly into squares. If in a room otherwise dark, a lighted candle be moved to and fro, or in a circle, about six inches from the eyes, we soon see a dark arborescent figure

\* Helmholtz, “*Physiologische Optik*,” 356; Mueller, “*Physiology*” (tr. Baly), ii. 1394.

† Helmholtz, *ib.* 418; Mueller, *op. cit.* (tr. Baly), ii. 1163.

whose branches extend over the whole field of vision, and which is nothing more than the expansion of the central vessels of the retina, or that of the parts of the retina covered by those vessels." Sometimes, after compressing the eye, this arborescent figure appears luminous. "Luminous moving points appear in the field of vision when we look fixedly at a surface uniformly illuminated, as, for instance, the sky, or a field of snow, and especially during a brisk walk or some other movement of the body." In cases of plethora or congestion, "when we have been lying down and suddenly rise up, we see a number of little black bodies with tails to them jumping and moving in all kinds of directions."—Different narcotics, digitalis especially, excite flashings in the eyes.—And so, when disease inflames or irritates the retina, flashes and sparks are perceived, and, in surgical operations, which necessitate the section of the optic nerve, the patient sees great masses of light at the moment the instrument cuts the nerve.—But the retina and the whole optic nerve are themselves but intermediate conductors; they serve to excite the optic centres of the encephalon, that is all. Suppose the centres are excited and the conductors inactive; the colored figure will arise and appear internal. This is the case with hallucinations of sight strictly so called, in which a reflected excitation propagates the images of the hemispheres to the visual centres of the encephalon. This is the case with the appearance following the prolonged use of the microscope, when the visual centres of the encephalon re-enter several times spontaneously into the state in which the action of the retina has set them too often and retained them too long. These cases all resemble that in which a spontaneous disturbance of the acoustic nerve causes us to hear and localize at a particular distance, and in a particular direction, a sound which there is no vibration of the external air to produce.

Now it is plain that the color, like the sound, is then within us, and cannot be elsewhere; and still we project it without us, and situate it at a spot where it cannot be. We may know, indeed, by reasoning that this situation is illusory; the appearance is too strong for us; we perceive the luminous bluish circle excited by a pressure at the inner corner of the

eye, as if it were situated a little above the outer corner, not in the retina, but without the pupils. Thus when we are given a visual sensation to which no external object corresponds, it excites the play of an internal mechanism which transports it without us, and which, according to its kind, and as it is provided with certain particular accompaniments, situates it in one spot or another, always at the place in which, under ordinary circumstances, its ordinary cause or condition usually is: the law is a general one, and explains all the illusions of optics.—Consequently, even under ordinary circumstances, when the ordinary cause or condition, that is to say the object, is present, and occupies the spot denoted, when a red arm-chair or a green tree is really six paces from me, the internal mechanism acts just as in the exceptional case in which I have a consecutive impression on the retina, or in the exceptional case in which I have an hallucination proper in the cerebral centres. Consequently, too, the red color with which the arm-chair is clothed, the green color which seems to me incorporated with the tree, is nothing more than my sensation of red or of green, detached from myself and carried, in appearance, to a distance of six paces from my eyes.

Thus, all our sensations are wrongly situated, and the red color is no more extended on the arm-chair than the sensation of tingling is situated at my fingers' ends. They are all situated in the sensory centres of the encephalon; all appear situated elsewhere, and a common law allots to each of them its apparent situation. The law is—that a sensation appears to us to be situated at the spot in which we are accustomed to meet with its usual cause or condition, and this spot is the one at which the explorations of touch are capable, by acting there, of checking or modifying the commenced sensation. The singularities, errors, and diversities of the localizing judgment are all explained by this law.

In the first place, we see that this judgment must invariably be false; for the touch can never arrive at the sensory centres, to check or modify the commenced sensation; the sensory centres are in the box of the cranium in a place our hands cannot reach.—Secondly, we see that in most cases the localizing judgment must situate the sensation somewhere

near the peripheral extremity of the nerves ; for, though the excitation of the whole course of the nerve is the normal antecedent of sensation, our touch can only attain the parts adjoining the peripheral extremity. It is, then, at this point and no other of the nervous cord, that the localizing judgment must situate the sensation. And this is true for all sensations, even for sensations of sight, at least in the first stage of their localization ; in fact, we shall presently show that persons born blind, at the moment a surgical operation restores their sight, situate colors near the periphery of the optic nerve ; it is later on, after a further apprenticeship, that they refer them beyond this, to the place where the objects are situated.—Thirdly, we see that the localizing judgment cannot situate sensations at the exact spot of the periphery of the nerve in action, but in its neighborhood, and in general a little beyond it ; for the touch cannot reach the exact spot. The finger cannot reach the retina at the back of the eye, nor the pituitary membrane at the inner part of the nose, nor the acoustic nerve in the labyrinth of the ear, nor, in general, any nervous periphery. What it reaches, are the envelopes and appendages of the nerve, the eyeball, the vestibule of the ear, the anterior chamber of the nose, the surface of the skin. There it is that it checks and modifies the commenced sensation, or associates with it a sensation of contact. There, then, it is that we must situate the sensation, and it is the same with sensations of sight as with all the rest ; persons born blind, who have lately been operated on, situate their new sensations at the surface of the eyeball, and not at the back of the orbit.—Fourthly, we see that in many cases the localizing judgment must be vague ; for there are places which touch cannot reach, for instance, the internal parts of the limbs and trunk ; consequently, we situate approximately and vaguely all the sensations whose starting point is in the belly, the chest, the stomach, just as we do the partial sensations of which a total muscular sensation is composed.—Numbers of strange appearances are explained in the same way. If the exploration of touch is brought to a stop by a fixed eminence like the teeth, the sensation will appear to be situated at the surface of the eminence, though the nervous disturbance is

much lower down.—If the exploration of touch cannot verify the positions of the two nervous disturbances, one of which is situated above, the other below, as happens with impressions of the retina, and if, at the same time, it finds the two external conditions of these two impressions situated in an inverse order with relation to each other, as happens with visible objects, we shall situate in the inverse order the two sensations derived from them. In fact, images of objects are reversed upon the retina; the feet of a figure are above and the head below, and nevertheless, we situate the head above and the feet below. The apparent position of our two sensations is thus found to be the inverse of the real position of the two disturbances.

It remains to be shown how, in accordance with the same law, the localizing judgment situates certain kinds of sensations beyond our nervous superficies. The fact is, there are two stages, and the judgment, according to the nature of the sensation, stops at the first or goes on to the second.—Two kinds of sensations, the visual and auditory, can alone pass through both stages; they alone are clearly projected from their first position to some particular spot or other of the outside world. The fact is, they alone furnish materials for an ulterior localization.—Take, for instance, two visual sensations. Not only have they a common organic condition, the modification of the open eye, but besides they have each of them a special external condition, the presence in a particular spot of the outer world of an illuminated body, a condition to which there corresponds in them some precise and notable character, according as the body is in one place or another. When by feeling with the hand or by closing the eyelids, we have proved their common organic condition, we prove, by other feelings, and by changing our position, their different external conditions. We have interrupted all our visual sensations by the same act—by closing our eyelids; we interrupt our different visual sensations in different manners, by extending our arm more or less, by increasing our change of position, by covering with our hand the illuminated surface of the body which emits the rays. Now, these are the only differences which can interest us; for these are the only indications which

direct our action ; they alone suggest to us the number of steps and the extent of the movement, by which, through reaching the object, we reproduce in ourselves some anterior state which was agreeable or useful to us, or, by which, in removing ourselves from the object, we avoid some anterior state which was displeasing or hurtful.—Our attention, then, is directed solely to these ; the general association which had first joined our different visual sensations to the idea of the movement by which our hand reaches our eye, is effaced as useless ; the education of the eye is accomplished ; useful associations become established and alone subsist. Each distinct visual sensation is combined with the idea of a distinct movement of more or less length, effected in one or another direction ; it takes this idea as its associate ; henceforward, it is inseparable from it. By this combination, it becomes situated at a greater or less distance, in one place or another, but always in the outer world.

The same reasoning applies to the place of auditory sensations.—Now, if these two sorts of sensations have this singular peculiarity, it is because, by a special peculiarity, there corresponds to each variation in the situation of their distant cause, a precise variation in the sensations themselves. We shall see later on how the precise variations of the sensation of sight are effected by the adjustment of the crystalline lens, the greater or less convergence of the two eyes, the contraction of the motor muscles of the eye. With respect to hearing, whose localizations are less exact, variations less precise, but still precise, are furnished by the greater or less intensity of the whole sensation entering both ears, and by the greater intensity of one of the two component sensations.—It is not the same with the other senses. Their sensations indicate nothing, or next to nothing, as to position. For, first, a sensation of contact, of pressure, of taste, is only produced when the external cause touches the skin, the mouth, or the palate ; at a distance, this cause does not operate : this is how the sensation which it excites does not vary according to distance ; the localization remains checked at its first stage, and we situate the sensation at or near the place, in which the explorations of touch meet with its organic condition.—As to

sensations of smell and heat, in certain cases, and up to a certain point, we are capable of appreciating vaguely, by the force or feebleness of the sensation, whether its origin is near or distant ; sometimes we can even distinguish whether it is on our left hand or right ; but it is nearly always necessary to make a new examination. When our eyes are shut, we discover by smelling about, by turning the head in different directions, that the smell comes from a bouquet placed on a particular side of us, that the cold comes from a particular chink. But we do not know this with precision and at once ; the idea of a certain movement of measurement does not present itself immediately, by virtue of an ancient and fixed connection, and attach itself to the sensation so as to localize it in one spot rather than another of the outer world. Consequently, we remain in suspense ; we are tempted to consider our sensation, sometimes as a sensation, sometimes as an unknown thing which starts from without and enters us. The words smell, cold, heat, remain ambiguous, and denote, in ordinary language, sometimes the one, sometimes the other ; this is because the second stage of localization has commenced and broken down. It would not break down if the nostrils were placed like the ears, on the two opposite sides of the head, and could thus discern in a whole sensation of smell, two sensations, one stronger than the other, or if there were two symmetrical, distinct and opposed portions of the body charged to receive sensations of heat.—We see that the same law explains both the definite and the indefinite situation we attribute to our sensations, sometimes in the neighborhood of the peripheral extremities of the nerves, sometimes elsewhere and at a greater distance.

To sum up, in our present state, the situation we attribute to our sensations is always false ; that which is situated at the spot in which we place them is their usual cause or condition, sometimes, the organ in which the primary nervous disturbance of which they are the result is effected, sometimes, the external object which excites the nervous disturbance. This cause or condition may be absent, as its presence is usual only ; in any case, whether present or absent, the localizing judgment is an illusion, since we invariably situate the sen-

sation where it is not. Usually, this judgment is practically effective, through the provisions it suggests and which direct our conduct; in itself it is nothing more than an illusion, which is generally useful, a fundamental error which nature and experience have constructed within us and established in us perpetually, to act as a preservative of our life, and an organ for our action.

IV. The localizing judgment remains itself to be studied.—To see of what elements it is composed, let us revert to our first example. I have just put my foot to the ground, I feel a sensation of pressure, and at the same time determine the place of the sensation; it is in my left foot, strong in the middle of the foot, slight towards the heel, almost imperceptible at the toes. In what do these last observations consist?—Each one of us may observe in his own case that, in order to make them, we imagine with more or less clearness the foot in question, and imagine it *visually*, that is to say by images of the optical sensation it would excite in us, if we were then looking at it with our eyes open. We picture to ourselves the foot at a certain distance from our eyes, the curvature of the sole, the form of the heel, the row of toes. We even, if we persist, see mentally the color of the flesh, browner towards the heel, whiter at the sole, and redder beneath the toes. In fact, we have within us a *visual chart* of our body. We represent it to ourselves just as we should any other object of which we have ocular experience. To each distinct sensation there is in the chart a distinct corresponding point, which has been associated with the sensation by experience. When the sensation arises, this point revives, and their junction situates the sensation in some particular one of the different points of the field which actual, or simply mental sight is accustomed to traverse.

But it is evident that a chart like this is an ulterior and special acquisition. It is wanting to persons born blind, and still they are perfectly able to denote the position of their sensations. They have then another chart which fulfils the same office, and, as we have all their sensations, in addition to the sight which they do not possess, it follows that we possess a second and wholly different chart, which is common to



us with them, in addition to the visual chart, which is special to ourselves.—This second chart has as its elements muscular and tactile sensations. It is composed of the images of these sensations, and, in many instances, we prove their existence in ourselves, as, for example, with respect to portions of our body which we cannot observe with our eyes, and as to which the visual chart is consequently not clear.—Such, for instance, is the inside of the mouth, which we can only see by the aid of a glass, the back of the head, of the neck, of the trunk, of the thighs, which we can only see by the aid of two glasses. In fact, for all these spots, we form, from others, a sort of approximate chart of ourselves. But this plate of our visual atlas is vague, and we seldom have recourse to it. I experience an itching at a point of my back, and I know the spot; but I do not know it, or only know it imperfectly, by the visual representation; I do not picture clearly to myself the vertebra or the rib, the swelling of the muscle or spinal hollow, near which the feeling is; it is not associated, as in the hand, the foot, the arm, or the face, with some precise point of an outline pictured by the mental eye. It is by means of another atlas, *the tactile and muscular atlas*, that I am enabled to situate it precisely.

In fact I give it a situation by means of the special, longer or shorter muscular sensation of the hand and arm, which move towards it and reach it. Its position is denoted by the nature and duration of this sensation. If at a greater distance, a greater movement would be required to reach it, consequently a longer muscular sensation; if at a less distance, a less movement, consequently a shorter muscular sensation; if at the same distance, but in a different direction, a movement equal in extent, but different, consequently a muscular sensation of equal duration, but different. By means of these repeated and diversified experiments, when a sensation, whether of tingling or any other, is aroused in any part of my body, even in a point with respect to which the visual atlas, fails, it calls up its inseparable associate, the image of a special muscular sensation, a sensation of a precise duration, longer than some other similar one, shorter than some other similar one, different from some other one of equal length.

By this attachment and consolidation, my sensation of tingling finds itself denoted by a distinctive sign. This sign, having a certain duration, is a continuous magnitude; therefore it is, like a line, capable of comparison with any other magnitude of the same kind, it differs only from such other magnitude in being more or less, suggests the idea of its double or of its fraction, and is capable of measurement; here we have the conditions of a representative chart.—This is but an instance of a general operation, which has already been described. We localize our sensations as we do objects, by the associated image of certain muscular sensations of greater or less length. The sensation, by means of the associated image, is arrested in an order, and, so to speak, in a rank; there it is situated, that is to say denoted by a precise quantity, less than this, greater than that, by a muscular reminiscence which intercalates it between two series of muscular sensations, one of longer sensations, the other of shorter ones.—If we add the reminiscence of the tactile sensations experienced upon contact with the point which the exploring organ has just touched, the associated image becomes precise while completing itself; we situate our sensation, not only at a particular distance from some other, but at such a rib, at such a hollow of the arm, at such a joint of the finger.—Such is the tactile and muscular atlas, the first of all; the instinctive and unregulated movements of the new-born child, its feelings about, the incessant experience it acquires of its touch and muscles, commence at once to construct this atlas; the visual atlas is derived from it, and is not formed till afterwards.

Thus the localizing judgment consists in the adjunction to the sensation of certain images, sometimes visual, sometimes tactile and muscular. This coupling may be innate; the chicken will pick up food immediately it comes out of the shell; the new-born foal springs on his legs almost immediately and goes to suck its dam. But in man it is acquired, and the internal mechanism, which in other animals is fabricated at the moment of birth, is in his case fabricated gradually. At all events, it is for the most part a work of experience. "There is ground," says Weber,\* "for admitting that primi-

---

\* Article "Tastsinn," *ibid.* 486.

tively, by pure sensation, we know nothing of the place in which the nerves which communicate the sensation to us are disturbed. Primitively, all sensations are simple states of excitation perceptible to consciousness; these may differ in quality and degree, but do not directly furnish to consciousness any notion of place. They only furnish this indirectly, by exciting the activity of our mind, through the means of which we represent our sensations as comprised in a whole, and possessed of mutual relations." There is then an ulterior and superadded process, the adjunction of a series of muscular images, whose duration measures the distance, the adjunction of a group of tactile and muscular images which denote the consistence, shape, and magnitude of the organ to which the sensation is referred, the adjunction of a group of visual images which denote this organ from the other organs and other objects denoted in the same manner. All this is the work of experience, and experience, pushed further, is capable of associating with the sensation representations of greater exactness. An anatomist who bends his hand imagines the contraction of each of the muscles which concur in effecting it, the longer and shorter palmar muscles, the anterior cubital, and the rest. If he is pricked, he pictures to himself the form, color, and distribution of the little whitish flabby threads termed nerves, which the puncture has touched. He represents his sensation of contraction as being situated in the nerves of the contracted muscles, and his sensation of pain as being situated in the punctured extremity of the little whitish threads. This association, less fixed than ours, is identical with ours, and is like a second stage of less solidity based on a first indestructible stage. But they are both of them added constructions, and did not exist on the primitive soil.

V. If we now compare the two atlases, we shall find them very different. That the first, the tactile and muscular atlas, is effective for the purpose of localizing our sensations in some particular part of our bodies is explainable without difficulty; for we have seen that we conceive extent, distance, and position by a series of muscular sensations interposed between a point and another point—between a sensation and a sensation. I have many times experienced a

feeling of touch in my neck or cheek; I have determined its position by the series of muscular sensations which my hand must go through to reach it, and have characterized its seat by the group of tactile sensations of my hand afforded by my neck, when it is pressed, felt, and traversed. A stable association is thus formed between the sensations, whose starting-point is in the nerves of the neck, and this series of muscular images joined to this group of tactile images. Consequently, whenever a similar sensation is produced, I shall imagine its position and seat.—This is not the case with the visual atlas, and we must examine how it is that sensations of the eye, which, taken alone, seem fit only to instruct us as to colors, are capable of further instructing us, as to distance, extension and position. This arises from their being themselves transformed, and turned into equivalents of tactile and muscular sensations, by the association they have acquired with tactile and muscular sensations. Primitively, and in itself, the retina, when impressed, arouses sensations only of light, of obscurity, of successive and simultaneous colors. It is by an ulterior process—the adjunction of auxiliary images—that this pure visual sensation receives an apparent situation, and that we see objects at a certain distance, in a particular direction, with particular form and dimensions.

The accounts of persons born blind, who have been restored to sight by operations, is decisive as to this. From the moment they recover their sight, they experience the same visual sensations as we do. But their eyes have not been educated like ours; consequently, what is then wanting to their eyes is what ours have acquired; the missing parts of their perception afford a measure of the additions which have gone to complete our perception.—Still, for the purpose of explaining the different results of experience, it is necessary first to determine whether the education of their eyes has been absolutely nothing or only amounting to nothing.\* In most cases, the crystalline lens, though

---

\* See the cases recorded by Cheselden, "Philosophical Transactions" for the year 1728.—Ware, *ib.* 1801.—Home *ib.* 1807.—Wardrop, *ib.* 1826.

opaque, still permitted the passage of a small portion of light; Cheselden's patient could distinguish three colors, black, white, and scarlet; Ware's patient could distinguish strongly-marked colors when held close to his eye. Consequently, some of them had learned to direct their looks towards an object, and could judge to a certain extent of distance by the colors growing feebler. This explains how, in certain cases, the patient was able immediately after the operation to take hold of the surgeon's hand and to say, by sight only, whether it was brought nearer to or carried further from him. But this is unusual, and when the patient has not learned to interpret the meaning of the color growing feebler, he has no idea of the position of visible objects. Usually, at the moment he first sees clearly, he imagines "that all the objects he sees touch his eyes, just as the objects he feels touch his skin."<sup>†</sup> So said the patients of Cheselden and Home; they situated their new sensation in accordance with their accustomed sensations of touch, and applied their former experience to the new instance.<sup>‡</sup> Besides this, Home's patient had always done so; before the operation, when he looked at the sun through his opaque crystalline lenses, he said it appeared to touch his eye. The operation performed, the same localizing judgment remained; when asked, soon after, what he had seen, he said: "Your head, which seemed to touch my eye," but he could not tell its shape. It was not till three months afterwards, and a month after the lowering of the second cataract, that objects did not seem as before to touch his eyes, but appeared to be at a short distance from him. Not one of the blind persons so operated on was able

---

<sup>†</sup> In a case reported by Mr. Nunnely, "the young patient said that the objects touched his eyes, and walked about cautiously, keeping his hands raised before his eyes, to prevent these objects from touching and hurting them."—J. S. Mill, "Exam. etc." Third edition, p. 285.

<sup>‡</sup> Before the operation the blind person has opened and shut his eyelids, and has certainly known their situation as that of other parts of his body. Usually, when the operation is performed, the light is too keen for his eyes and compels him to close them, and to contract the pupil.—Here are two muscular sensations whose situation he knows, and which no doubt contribute to make him situate his new visual sensation against his eyeball.

at first to interpret his new sensations, to decide on the situation, form, and magnitude of objects, or to recognize them. It was requisite for the touch, slowly and gradually, to instruct the eye. Home's second patient was asked, ten minutes after the operation, the shape of a round piece of card, and said, "Let me touch it, and I will tell you." He was not allowed to do so, and, after thinking for some time, said it was round. But a moment afterwards, he said the same thing of a little square piece of card, and again of a triangular piece. The experiment was repeated some hours afterwards. At first the boy called the different cards round; but upon being shown a square, and asked if he could find any corners to it, he was very desirous of touching it. This being refused, he examined it for some time, and said at last that he had found a corner, and then readily counted the four corners of the square. Thus commenced the first education of the eye. All the patients resembled Cheselden's, who "knew not the shape of anything, nor any one thing from another, however different in shape, or magnitude; but upon being told what things were, whose form he before knew from feeling, he would carefully observe, that he might know them again; but having too many objects to learn at once, he forgot many of them; and (as he said) at first he learned to know, and again forgot a thousand things in a day. . . . Having often forgot which was the cat, and which the dog, he was ashamed to ask; but catching the cat (which he knew by feeling), he was observed to look at her steadfastly, and then setting her down, said, 'So, puss! I shall know you another time.'" Later on, when he had learned to know his parents by sight, "being shown his father's picture in a locket at his mother's watch, and told what it was, he acknowledged a likeness, but was vastly surprised; asking how it could be that a large face could be expressed in so little room, saying, 'It should have seemed as impossible to him, as to put a bushel of anything into a pint.'" \*

---

\* "Caspar Hauser, in a detailed account of his own experience in this respect states, that upon his first liberation from confinement, whenever he looked through the window upon external objects, such as the street, garden, etc., it appeared to

They require time to reconcile the different visual sensations which the same object presents according to its different distances, and to reconcile all these with the muscular and tactile sensations with which the object has already furnished them. The most instructive case in this respect is that of the lady operated on by Wardrop.—Her blindness was more complete than that of the others; for not only was she born with cataracts in each eye, but, when six months old, an unskilful surgeon had destroyed the right eye and closed up the pupil of the left. She could not recognize any color, she was able merely to distinguish a very light from a very dark room, but without having the power to perceive even the situation of the window, through which the light entered; though in sunshine or in bright moonlight she knew the direction from whence the light emanated. When placed under Wardrop's care she had reached her forty-sixth year. He opened the iris, she was able to see, and "returned home in a carriage, with her eye covered only with a loose piece of silk. The first thing she noticed was a hackney-coach passing, when she exclaimed, 'What is that large thing that has passed by us?' In the course of the evening, she requested her brother to show her his watch . . . and looked at it for a considerable time, holding it close to her eye. She was asked what she saw; and she said there was a dark and a bright side." In

---

him as if there were a shutter quite close to his eye, and covered with confused colors of all kinds, in which he could recognize or distinguish nothing singly. He says farther, that he did not convince himself till after some time during his walks out of doors, that what had at first appeared to him as a shutter of various colors, as well as many other objects, were in reality very different things; and that at length the shutter disappeared, and he saw and recognized all things in their just proportions."—Franz, "On the eye," p. 34–6. Dr. Franz adds:—Since ideas are gained by reflection upon sensation, it is further necessary in all cases in order that an accurate idea of objects may be formed from the sense of sight, that the powers of the mind should be unimpaired and undisturbed in their exercise. A proof of this is afforded in the instance related by Haslam ('Observations on Madness and Melancholy,'—Second edition, p. 192), of a boy who had no defect of sight, but was weak in understanding, and who in his seventh year was unable to estimate the distance of objects, especially as to height; he would extend his hand frequently to a nail on the ceiling, or towards the moon, to catch it. It is, therefore, the judgment which corrects and makes clear this idea, or perception of visible objects."

fact, these two sensations of brightness and darkness alone corresponded to her former sensations, since till then she had never been able to do more than distinguish light and darkness.—She was seen hourly to observe first one point, then another, then again others in the numbers of sensations of color which besieged her. But she was bewildered by them; “I feel stupid,” she said. She voluntarily remained silent, not being able to make out the chaos of impressions which were as yet destitute of meaning to her inexperienced eye.—A fortnight later, she still said, “I see a great deal if I could only tell what I do see; but surely I am very stupid.” Nevertheless, she learned by degrees the names of colors, and was soon able to distinguish them; but as to the perception of figures, that is to say for the transcription into the new visual atlas of the old tactile and muscular atlas, the apprenticeship was very long.—On the seventh day she was examining the teacups and saucers, and was asked, “What are they like?” “I don’t know,” she replied; “they look very queer to me, but I can tell what they are in a minute when I touch them.”—“She distinguished an orange on the chimney-piece but could form no notion of what it was till she touched it.” On the eighteenth day the experiment was made “of giving her a silver pencil-case and a large key to examine with her hands; she discriminated and knew each distinctly; but when they were placed on the table side by side, though she distinguished each with her eye, yet she could not tell which was the pencil-case, and which the key.” On the twenty-fifth day, being in a carriage in the Regent’s Park, she inquired continually as to the meanings of her visual sensations, such as—“‘What is that?’ ‘It is a soldier,’ she was answered. ‘Who is that, that has passed us just now?’ It was a person on horseback. ‘But what is that on the pavement, red?’ It was some ladies who wore red shawls.”—It was constantly necessary to translate for her into the language of touch, which she understood, the unknown language of the eye.—As, before the operation, she knew from what direction the light proceeded, she was probably already capable of approximately directing her head and eyes to the side at which the illuminated objects appeared; but even this art was entirely



rudimentary. On the eighteenth day, "she seemed to have the greatest difficulty in finding out the distance of any object; for when an object was held close to her eye, she would search for it by stretching her hand far beyond its position, while, on other occasions, she groped close to her own face for a thing far removed from her . . . ."—When at the end of six weeks she left London, she had acquired a pretty accurate knowledge of colors and their different shades and names, and also of many objects, but "had not yet acquired anything like an accurate knowledge of distance or of forms, and up to this period she continued to be very much confused with every object at which she looked. Neither was she able, without considerable difficulty and numerous fruitless trials, to direct her eye to an object; so that when she attempted to look at anything, she turned her head in various directions, until her eye caught the object of which it was in search." In fact the least movement of the head changes all our visual sensations for other ones; a precise movement is required, neither too great, nor too small; to attain a preconceived visual sensation, we must direct our glance correctly. Just as an infant does not distinguish or retain, till after many trials, the precise nature and exact amount of the effort required to throw a stone ten paces and not nine or eleven; so was this lady unable to distinguish and fix in her memory, until after many incessantly corrected attempts, the particular nature, the degree of intensity, and the precise duration of the muscular sensation which her neck must experience in order for the inclination to right or left; the raising or lowering of her head, and so of her eye, to be three degrees and not two, four, or five.

All these particulars result in one conclusion—our pure visual sensations are nothing more than *signs*.—Experience alone acquaints us with their meanings; in other words, experience alone associates with each of them the image of the tactile and muscular sensation corresponding to it.—At the present day, the analysis of physiologists and physicists has noted, by a multitude of proofs and counter-proofs, the various stages of this association.\* The sensations which the re-

---

\* Helmholtz, "Physiologische Optik," 797.

tina procures us are those of different colors, and of different degrees of light and shade; and further, as it is a sheaf of distinct nervous fibres, each of its fibres, in accordance with the general law of the nervous system, excites, when impressed, a distinct sensation. In these three respects, and in these three respects alone, can we distinguish a pure visual sensation from others similar in kind, and this is the first layer on which will be established later on the whole fabric of our visual perceptions.—In this state, which is that of the person born blind immediately after the operation, the eye has the sensation only of variously colored patches more or less clear or obscure; and, in a whole patch, it can observe some distinct portion, but simply, as a partial patch.† Wardrop's patient, looking at a watch, on the evening of the operation, observed the figure 12, the figure 6, and the hands, but simply as patches upon a patch, without knowing what they were. So again, on the third day, looking at her brother's face, she distinguished in this round flesh-colored patch, a special patch produced by the prominence of the nose, and guessed, in fact, that it was the nose.—Painters in color are well aware of this state; they revert to it; their art consists in seeing their model as a *patch*, the only element of which is the more or less diversified, deadened, vivid, and mingled color. At this stage, there is no idea of the distance or position of objects,

---

† With respect to this, it is curious to observe very young children. I have lately been able to apply and verify the theory in the case of a little girl whom I saw every day from her birth. It is certain to my mind that, during the first two months, the surrounding world was composed for her of sounds and patches of color, which she did not know how to situate. At two months and a half, she evidently recognized the direction of certain sounds; for instance, hearing her grandmother's voice, she turned her head towards her. At three months she knew, in some cases, how to direct her looks by turning her head and eyes towards the object she wished to see, and among others, to my face. But she could not do this with every object.—Plainly, what she first distinguished, noted in her memory, and recognized, were sounds and faces. In fact, among the hundreds of sounds and colored forms which impressed her senses were the tones of five or six voices, and the colored forms of five or six faces, and these, being the most frequently repeated, intruded, by their frequency and identity, on the rest.—At about three months old, she commenced to feel about with her hands, to move her arms to reach objects, consequently, to associate with the colored patches tactile and muscular impressions of distance and form.

except that an induction derived from touch places them in contact with the eye. No doubt, at this stage, an object may be recognized by the color, vividness, and characters of its patch, as Wardrop's patient was able to distinguish the grass from the water, but nothing is known as to its situation. The second layer of the edifice is not constructed; it is now necessary to add, little by little, to pure retinal sensations, auxiliary and additional ones.

The sensations so added are those of the muscles of the eye; for the form and position of the eye are susceptible of changes, and these changes are the effect of its muscular appendages.—In the first place, we adjust the eye to the distance of the object, by disposing it in such a way that the luminous image falls precisely on the retina, and not before or behind it; otherwise, the vision is not distinct; to effect this, we alter the curvature of the crystalline lens, probably by contracting the ciliary muscle, and the muscular fibres of the iris.—Besides this, when we look at an object with both eyes, our two eyes converge more or less, according as the object is at a greater or less distance. Now this greater or less convergence is produced by the greater or less contraction of the muscles which move the eye. Consequently, according to the greater or less distance of the object, we have a particular muscular sensation of the eye.—On the other hand, according as the object is in one or the other direction, with reference to our eye, one or other of the muscles which move the eye is more or less contracted, in order to turn it upwards or downwards, to the right or left; in such a way that when the distance remains the same, a distinct muscular sensation corresponds to every change of direction.—We learn to observe and engrave on our memory these innumerable distinct muscular sensations of our eyes. At the same time, and by means of touch, we associate some one of them with a certain movement of our hand, another with the semi-extension of our forearm, others with two, three, six, ten, twenty strides of our legs. Henceforward, when a pure visual sensation follows some particular voluntary muscular sensation of the eye, this compound calls up the idea of some particular movement of the hand, the forearm, or the arm, of some particular number of steps, in

short, of some portion of the tactile and muscular atlas which the experience of our limbs has constructed within us, and by which the person born blind estimates distance and determines positions.—At the end of three weeks, the lady operated on by Wardrop was able to recognize a grass-plot by the large and beautiful green patch it formed in her field of vision. But she had not yet distinguished and observed what muscular sensation of her eye had resulted in the apparition of this green patch, and above all, had not ascertained, from the nature of the muscular sensation, the number and direction of the steps which would be required to lead her up to the grass-plot; so that, though she saw it, she did not know where it was, and perhaps extended her foot to find out whether it was not close to her.—To us who have noted the various muscular sensations of our eyes, and have associated them to the recollection of the movements of our limbs “the feeling that we have when the eyes are parallel and vision distinct, is associated with a great and prolonged effort of walking, in other words, with a long distance. . . . The change from an inclination of the eyes of  $30^{\circ}$  to an inclination of  $10^{\circ}$  is associated with a given sweep of the arm, carrying the hand forward over eight inches and a half.”\* In this way, muscular sensations of the eye become in our cases signs, each of which has power, when produced, to call up with it the image of some particular muscular movement of the limbs, in other words, the precise idea of a certain distance measured in a certain direction.

To these auxiliaries add the rest—I mean the muscular sensations of the neck and body in turning, bending, and drawing back, so as to enable the retina to receive a distinct luminous image; these are so many complementary signs which, in connection with the first, effect the determination of the direction of the object by the association they have contracted with the image of some special movement of the limbs carried out in some particular direction.—The reader now sees how the eye is capable of perceiving the figure of a body. The visible figure of a body is nothing more than a double series

---

\* Bain, “Senses and Intellect,” 2nd edition, 374.

of optical sensations, a retinal series and a muscular series, both of which are parallel and continuous, and are experienced whenever the eye follows the outline and runs over the illuminated surface of a body. Experience associates to this double series of sensations a series of images, that is to say, images of the tactile and muscular sensations which the hand would experience in following the outline, and feeling the surface of the bodies.—Other experiences teach us that, according to the distance, this double optical series undergoes regular alteration, without the other series being altered; and we express this by saying that the same tangible object passes regularly, according to distance, through an infinite series of visible appearances; and it follows from this, that when we see it at a particular distance, the row of its other visible appearances is ready to revive in us, and to take up a position in the mental background.—I leave further explanation to treatises on optics and physiology,\* in which will be found the enumeration and explanation of all optical judgments and errors. They are the subject-matter of a whole science, but are all reduced to one principle. “By experience,” says Helmholtz,† “we can evidently learn what other sensations of the sight or other senses, an object we see will excite in us, if we advance our eyes or body, if we look at the object from different directions, if we feel it, etc. The concept of all these possible sensations combined in a whole is our representation of the body; and, when it is sustained by our actual sensations, it is what we term *the perception* of the body. . . . It includes all the distinct possible groups of sensations which the body when looked at, touched, experimented on in various ways, can excite in us; these are its real effective contents; it has no others, and these contents may undoubtedly be acquired by experience. The only physical activity required for this purpose is the constant and reviving association of the two representations, which were already connected together, an association which becomes the more solid and more constrained in proportion to the

---

\* See the admirable work of Helmholtz; above all the third part, “Die Lehre von den Gesichts-Wahrnehmungen.”

† Ibid., p. 798.

number of times the two representations have reappeared together."

From this, we understand in what our visual atlas consists.—There is a square mahogany table three paces from me, to the right. I turn my eyes, and have, through the retina, a sensation of a certain somewhat glistening brown patch ; and I have at the same time, by means of the accommodation of the crystalline lens and the contraction of the muscles which move the eye, a certain muscular sensation which, by an acquired correspondence, calls up in me the image of three paces, taken to the right.—My eyes follow the outline of the table, in other words, my retina experiences in succession a continuous series of impressions in proportion as the luminous rays starting from the sides of the table successively impinge on its yellow centre ; now, in the meantime, the accommodation and contraction of the muscles of the eye give me a parallel and continuous series of muscular sensations, which, by an acquired correspondence, call up in me the images of the tactile and muscular sensations which my hand would experience in passing over its side from corner to corner.—Let us remark the character of these re-excited images. If my glance has been a rapid one, they are not express ; they remain in the nascent state ; I am compelled to prolong my glance to call them up precisely and completely, to imagine the muscular sensations of my three steps, the muscular and tactile sensations of my hand, passed along the edge of the table. I only get at this by dwelling on it, by silently inquiring of myself *what it is I mean* by this distance and this form. Even when dwelling on it, I commence by imagining the first step I should take, the sensation which my hand would receive from the first corner ; these two images serve as type for the rest. In fact, my operation is the same as when in a written sentence I read the word *tree* ; if I read it rapidly, I simply understand it ; it does not call up express images in my mind ; it is necessary to weigh it, to reflect, in order to cause the image of a beech, an apple, or other tree to appear ; even then, it will be vague and mutilated ; at the most, I shall get a view of some lineaments of a colored form, the obliterated sketch of a green dome or pyramid ; it will

only be by dwelling strongly on it for some time that I shall cause images of trees to spring up sufficiently clear and numerous to be equivalent to the generic word which sums up and denotes them all.—Thus our optical sensations are, like our words, *signs*. Every retinal and muscular sensation has, like every word, its group of associated images; it represents this group; it replaces and denotes it; in other words, it is always associated with it, and never otherwise associated, so that in use and practice it is equivalent to it. In fact, when the sensation arises, the group is at hand, ready to revive. Give it a little time, and it will partially revive. Give it enough time, and it will wholly revive. It forms part of the train of the sensation; but, as the operations are rapid, it most usually remains in the background; the sensation alone occupies the stage. As the sensation is there for an instant only, and the train requires time to pass in procession, the train remains behind the scenes.—We know something of this world behind the scenes.\* The reader had a view of it when we pointed out the silent persistence of images, their latent existence, their rudimentary state, the obliteration they undergo, and the life they preserve, often for whole years, until the indistinct vibration, which was perpetuated in some only of the cells of the hemispheres, receives from some unforeseen circumstance a universal ascendancy, and becomes suddenly propagated through the majority of the chords of the cerebral instrument.

The better to comprehend their obliteration and the part they still play, though in this latent state, let us consider greater distances, and generally, the process by which distances are estimated.—In a geographical map we look at the myriametre traced at the foot, and applying compasses to this myriametre, we pass about the map, measuring in this manner if Paris is farther from Bourges than from Tours or Dunkirk.—At the outset of the operation we estimated the myriametre in muscular sensations, and found it equivalent to some walk we have been accustomed to take, to 12,000 paces, to two hours' walking. But, soon after, we forgot the

---

\* See part i. book iv. chap i. pp. 178–80.

muscular signification we attached to this expansion of the compasses; we left it behind us, in reserve; all we kept in mind was degree of expansion and its multiples; we directly compared a series of expansions to a series of expansions, a series of greater ones to a series of less. We follow the same process in all our estimations of quantities, and the spontaneous operations of our eye do but precede the artificial operations of our instruments.—In the first stages of our observation, as at the limit of our science, we prove a constant relation between two quantities, just now between our more or less numerous steps and the greater or less expansions of the compasses, at present between the more or less long and repeated muscular sensations of our limbs, and the muscular sensations which we receive from the greater or less convergence of our eyes, the greater or less flattening of the crystalline lens, the greater or less contraction of some one of the muscles which move the eyes, the greater or less movement of our body and head in some particular direction. The second quantity increases or decreases with the first, according to a fixed law.—This being settled, we take a standard of the second, just now a certain expansion of the compasses, for instance the expansion which measures the myriametre, now a certain muscular sensation of our optical apparatus, for instance, the muscular sensation which the eye must experience in order to have the retinal sensation of an object situated at thirty centimetres distance. At this moment, too, the standard and its signification, that is to say the expansion of the compasses and the recollection of our walk, that is to say again, the muscular sensation of the eye and the image of the muscular sensation of the arm carried thirty centimetres forward, are together in our mind. But a moment afterwards the standard alone remains; the image or the recollection to which it is equivalent becomes thin, and fades away; we simply observe that a certain expansion is greater than another, that a certain muscular sensation of the eye is stronger and more prolonged than another; we no longer perceive the signified quantities but only the significant ones.—This is enough; for, by means of the indicated association, the signified quantities remain within call, and their proximity is as good as



their presence. At any moment we can recall them, can observe that a certain expansion of the compasses, that is to say one of three times the extent of the first, would require of us three times as many steps, or six hours' walking, that a smaller muscular sensation of the eye would require a double extension of our arm.—We know how a map serves us on a walking tour; by applying to it compasses we foresee the length of our walks, and the amount of muscular effort we shall be compelled to expend. Our visual atlas is of the same use; by translating certain of its indications into the corresponding indications of the tactile and muscular atlas, we foresee the distance, the magnitude and duration of the muscular effort by which our limbs will reach some particular object.

VI. We see now how it is that a visual sensation, so short as to appear instantaneous, can give us the idea of very diversified and very great extension. This arises from its being equivalent to the very diversified and very long tactile and muscular sensations by which we should perceive this extension. It sums them up, and so becomes their substitute, and signifies them while replacing them.

But, even were we incapable of having this sensation, we should still contrive to represent to ourselves in combination, and as simultaneous, a great number of the parts of space.—I have questioned many blind persons as to this,\* their answer is unanimous, wholly precise and decided. No doubt the perception of a new object requires more time in their cases than in ours, since they are compelled to explore it in detail by touch. But, having done so, they think of the object, whatever it be, a sphere, a circle, or even a considerable space, for instance, a street, all at once, and represent it to themselves in mass. "All there is wanting to us," they say, "is what you call the idea of color; the object is to us just what an unshaded drawing or photograph is to you, speaking more precisely, *a combination of lines*. We conceive a whole group of diverging or intercrossing lines simultaneously, and that is to

---

\* At the Institut des Jeunes-Aveugles at Paris, thanks to the kindness of the Professors and Director of the establishment.

us figure." Above all, they expressly deny that in order to imagine a line or a surface, they require to represent to themselves the successive sensations of their hand passed in some particular direction. "That would be too long, and we have no need whatever to think of our hand: it is but an instrument of perception of which, after perception, we cease to think."

In fact, if, at the origin of the idea of distance, we find a longer or shorter series of muscular sensations of the arm or leg, it is *at the origin* only. It matters little whether these sensations appertain to one limb or the other, whether they are muscular or not; this is but a detail and an accessory; it is obliterated, we cease to attend to it. We leave aside, as the blind say, all the circumstances and intrinsic qualities of our sensations; we preserve only the essential part, and the essential part here, is that they form a series interposed between the two points whose distance we are estimating. Taken thus abstractedly, these sensations become, as it were, uncolored and neutral; they are any sensations whatever; we consider them not as to their quality but as to their quantity; what we observe in them is the greater or less duration of their series: nothing more. Henceforward, we are able to imagine them with great promptitude, and to compare series to series. Such is the process employed by a person born blind; he may, like Saunderson, become a geometrician, may conceive longer or shorter series, diverging according to such and such an angle; these are lines, and, by a combination of such lines, he conceives geometrical bodies. For our own parts, we avail ourselves of this process when we define lines by the motion of a point, the surface by the motion of a line, the solid by the motion of a surface, and when we estimate a line, a surface, or a solid by the greater or less prolongation of the muscular operation, which engenders its perception. Now we can imagine these movements with extreme rapidity; we may, then, thus, by these means alone conceive many lines, therefore a surface, and even an entire solid, almost in an instant.

But, fortunately, we have a second aid, the visual atlas, which is added in our cases to the tactile and muscular atlas. Thanks to it, we have at our disposal new series which may

be compared together, and whose elements succeed in us with prodigious velocity. These are the little muscular sensations of the eye, which are extremely short, and able, therefore, to denote, in an imperceptible portion of time, very great distances, and positions as numerous as various. They take the place of the muscular and tactile images corresponding to them, and, as they pass in a moment, it seems as if the much longer series of tactile and muscular sensations has also taken effect in a moment. Their muscular and tactile signification springs up with them, and we imagine that we perceive at once a number of distant and co-existing points.—The reader has already met with many operations of this kind; it is what happens with all abbreviatory substitutes. The muscular sensations of the eye serve us in sight as words do in abstract reasoning.\* When I contemplate the different views of an extensive landscape, these sensations alone are in my mind, just as, when I read a chapter on political economy or moral philosophy, there are words alone in my mind, and yet, in the first case, I believe that I directly perceive magnitudes and distances, as, in the second case, I believe that I directly perceive pure qualities and general relations.—To employ the expressions of Mr. Herbert Spencer, these little simultaneous or nearly simultaneous muscular sensations are to us “symbols of other tactile and muscular sensations, which were slowly successive. This symbolic relation, being far briefer, is habitually thought of in place of that it symbolizes: and by the continued use of such symbols and the union of them with more complex ones, are generated our ideas of visible extension—ideas which, like those of the algebraist working out an equation are wholly unlike the ideas symbolized; and which yet, like his, occupy the mind to the entire exclusion of the ideas symbolized.”†—Hence it follows that, in our present state, during the working of the optical substitutes, the image of the long muscular and tactile sensations they replace must be absent. Consequently, we do not now find it within us, even if we look for it; our perception of visible extension will no longer comprise any of the muscular and tactile sensations

---

\* See part i. book i. chap. ii.

† “Principles of Psychology,” first edition, p. 224.

of the limbs and hand. Such is, in fact, the conception we now have of visible extension; in this state, we no longer find anything in it to recall its origin. In truth, what is now within us is not the image of the original successive sensations of the hand and limbs, but their optical sign. The visual atlas, constructed by means of the muscular and tactile atlas, is wholly different from it; it is not a copy, but a reproduction on another scale, with other notations, far more convenient for use, comprising in one chart what is dispersed in the other atlas over twenty several maps, and presenting, at one glance, a group so vast that, in the other atlas, we should be obliged to arrive at it, discursively and slowly, over twenty different leaves.

This visual atlas has such great advantages over the other that we constantly, and almost exclusively, employ it.—In the first place it is, as we have seen, extremely abbreviatory for all distances of any magnitude. In an instant, by a simple diminution of the convergence of the eyes, we pronounce that one object is twenty paces further from us than another. In an instant, by a simple continuous movement of the eye, we pronounce that a particular surface is square or triangular. This frees us from the necessity of imagining in detail the long muscular sensation of twenty steps, the long tactile muscular sensation of the hand passed over the whole outline of the surface.—Thanks to this rapidity of optical operations, we can seize in a very short time, and by a perception which appears instantaneous, a whole entire object, a chair, a table, a person, and more, if the object be distant, a whole meadow, a group of trees, a building, the façade of a street.—You are placed at a window, you open your eyes, and at once, by means of a very small movement of the eyes and an imperceptible movement of the head, the whole landscape appears to you, with its different levels, meadows, woods, sky, clouds, with their innumerable details of form, relief, and shade. Your eye is at the converging point of the luminous rays which start from the objects—that is to say at the angle of the compasses formed by two divergent rays, as they reach the retina. Now, a very trifling distance, measured near the angle of the compasses, corresponds to an immense, and sometimes enormous distance measured at their points. This is how we es-

timate, at a glance, hundreds of metres, and sometimes of leagues; it seems to us at the time that all the sensations we had during this glance are simultaneous, and in this manner, all the external objects they reveal to us are perceived, so to speak, together; which renders far easier for us the task of recalling and comparing them; in short, of practising on them the various ulterior operations of which we have need.

On the other hand, very small distances and very minute objects are also within the province of sight. In this respect the skin, compared with the retina, is a coarse instrument, even at the places in which its sensibility is most delicate.—At the dorsal vertebræ, at the middle of the arm, of the thigh, of the neck, when two adjacent points are touched, we do not distinguish them as being two, unless they are from sixteen to twenty-four lines apart; at the palmar surface of the last joints of the fingers, it is sufficient for the points to be seven-tenths of a line apart; at the point of the tongue, where the power of discrimination is most perfect, a little less than half a line is a sufficient distance.\*—On the contrary, according to Weber and Volkmann, on the yellow spot, which is the most sensitive point of the retina, two brilliant specks may be distinguished when separated only by an interval of from .002 to .001 of a line.—In this way, the retina is a thousand or two thousand times as sensitive as the most sensitive organ of touch.—Add to this advantage the indications afforded by color. A level surface for instance, a printed or written page, affords one uniform sensation only to touch, and the same surface affords to the sight as many distinct sensations as there are black letters written or printed on the white ground. So the tactile and muscular atlas does not comprise images corresponding to very minute objects, to the form and proximity of two threads in a piece of fine muslin, nor images corresponding to the diversity of colored surfaces, to the presence, form, and movement of the various objects placed beyond the reach of our hand, like the clouds, the sky, and the stars; primitively, at least, these images were all absent from the tactile and muscular atlas; if they have

---

\*See the complete Table, Mueller, "Physiology" (tr. Baly), i. 701.

found an entrance, it has been but subsequently and approximately, by means of the reciprocal translation which we are able to establish between the two atlases.

We need not be surprised, then, at the enormous part played by the visual atlas in ordinary life. For our parts, to recollect, to imagine, to think, is to *see* internally; and to call up the more or less enfeebled and transformed visual image of things. So, too, the word *image* is borrowed from the history of vision; strictly, it only denotes the cerebral revival of the optical sensation; it is by extension that we have applied the same name to the cerebral revival of muscular and tactile sensations, of sensations of sound, taste, and smell.—By the same encroachment the visual atlas, being infinitely more extended and much more readily dealt with than the other, becomes our general resort; all our sensations are transcribed into it, and find a place in it, the muscular and tactile ones with the rest. In fact, I have internally the visual representation of my body, and even of the parts, like the back, which I have not seen; and when I contract a muscle, or undergo a contact, I localize the contraction and contact, not only by imagining the longer or shorter sensation, which would conduct my hand as far as the spot of contraction and contact, but, further, and above all, by imagining the visual form and color of the part affected. “It is on the right side, at the crown of the head, on the knee, between the bones of the left elbow.” When we mentally pronounce a judgment like this, we mentally see the colored form of the parts.—This extends so far that, usually, in order to represent to ourselves the movement of the arm which would be required to measure a distance, we make use, not of muscular images, but of visual images, and represent to ourselves, not the prolonged contraction of our arm, but the colored form of our arm passed through the air from one visible point to another.—And so, to estimate the distance of a sound, we represent to ourselves by visual images the space which surrounds us, and situate the sonorous trembling at a particular height, in a particular direction, at a particular point of distance or proximity, in the huge field surrounding our body and traversed by the glance of the external or the internal eye.

As to sensations of taste and smell, the two atlases come at once into play, in order to situate them; we have the visual representation, as well as the tactile and muscular representation of our nose and mouth. In fact, as to the inside of the mouth, it is the second representation which is of most service, since the tongue plays the part of the hand; for instance, we discern and imagine by tactile and muscular sensations only the movements which we must make to emit the various sounds and articulations of language. Here, sight and visual sensations do not intervene; it is later on, by the aid of physiology, that our eye takes account of the tongue, and other appendages which modify the sound proceeding from our larynx,\* it is then only that we can visually imagine the pronunciation of a guttural or dental.—And so, too, the tactile and muscular atlas is solely, or almost solely, employed to note the short movements of the trunk on its base, and sometimes all the movements of walking; for instance, when we mount, in the dark, a staircase with which we are not acquainted, all that we imagine is the regular recurrence of the same tactile and muscular sensations; the visual atlas of the staircase is wholly wanting, and the visual atlas of our legs and body is almost absent.—These are remnants or revivals of its primitive predominance; in such cases, we situate our sensations somewhat in the fashion of persons born blind; but here we have fragments only.

In fact, not only is the visual atlas almost entirely substituted for its rival, but, further than this, it has hindered its rival from acquiring all the perfection of which it is capable. Evidently, at present, as to muscular and tactile sensations, we have rough discrimination only; we can hardly distinguish their shades of difference, for want of being compelled to do so. Platner observed that the blind man, whose case he described, was far more skilful than we are in this respect, and this is true of all blind persons; with some of them the perfection of the sense of touch surpasses all imagination. “Saunderson, the blind mathematician,” says Abercrombie,†

---

\* This accounts for M. Jourdain's astonishment when he learned that, to say U, it was requisite to make a face.

† “Inquiry,” etc. p. 51.

"could distinguish, by his hand, in a series of Roman medals, the true from the counterfeit."—"Mention is made," says Bayle,† "of a blind organist who was very skilful in his profession, and who could readily distinguish all kinds of money and colors. He even played at cards, and was very fortunate, especially when it was his turn to deal, since he could recognize by touch the cards he gave each player.‡ Aldrovandus says that a certain Jean Ganibasius, of Volterra, an able sculptor, having lost his sight at the age of twenty, determined ten years after to attempt what he could in the way of his profession. He felt over very carefully a marble statue of Cosmo I., Grand Duke of Tuscany, and modelled from it a plaster one, which resembled Cosmo so much as to astonish everybody. The Grand Duke Ferdinand sent him to Rome, where he made a plaster statue resembling perfectly Urban VIII."—Joseph Kleinhaus, who died at Nauders (Tyrol) on the 10th July, 1853, had become blind with small-pox at five years old. He at first amused himself by carving wood to pass the time, then obtained lessons and models from Prugg; at twelve years old he carved a crucifix the size of life, and became a pupil of the sculptor Nissl, improved greatly and became celebrated. He is computed to have carved four hundred crucifixes, and a bust of the Emperor Francis Joseph.§—It is enough to see blind men read with their fingers books printed in relief almost as rapidly as we read books printed in black and white, to comprehend all the power of discrimination which our touch might have, but has not, acquired.\*—

---

† Bayle, cited by Garnier, "*Traité des Facultés de l'âme*," i. 354.

‡ If this be true, it must be owing to the painting on cards having differences of grain and relief corresponding to the different colors.

§ Schopenhauer, "*Les quatre racines du principe du raison suffisante*," p. 61.

\* "An analogous fact is observed in the habit acquired by the deaf and dumb, of understanding what is said to them by watching the motion of the lips of the speaker."—Abercrombie, "*Inquiry*," etc. 53.

I can myself mention a young man who became deaf when about four years old, and who, having very good eyesight, *saw* a conversation at a distance, which was inconvenient enough for persons who were whispering privately in a corner at the other end of the room. He could thus understand German and French, by the movement of the lips. Only it was necessary that the conversation should not contain many proper names which he was not acquainted with; for the visible movement of the lips showed him the consonants, and not the vowels.



Thus, in our cases, the tactile and muscular atlas has remained in a rudimentary state. This is why when we at present situate one of our sensations of touch, of sound, of smell, of taste, it is almost always through the visual atlas alone, or with its supplementary concurrence ; in other words, the image of an optical sensation is now incorporated with sensations which do not reach us by the eyes, and it is this agglutination which situates them in the places in which they appear to us.

VII. Here, then, are all our sensations situated, that is to say provided with an apparent position and seat, all, primitively, by the adjunction of a series of muscular images, determining the position, and, by the adjunction of a series of tactile images characterizing the seat, almost all, finally, by the adjunction of visual images, which have become equivalents of this series and signs of this group.—We are now able to explain our present conception of extension. Suppose a great number of these localized sensations to be simultaneously produced, and the points to which we refer them to

---

The hearing and other senses are capable of acquiring an equal delicacy.—“Dr. Rush relates of two blind young men, brothers, of the city of Philadelphia, that they knew when they approached a post in walking across a street, by a peculiar sound which the ground under their feet emitted in the neighborhood of the post ; and that they could tell the names of a number of tame pigeons, with which they amused themselves in a little garden, by only hearing them fly over their heads.”—Abercrombie, *ibid*.

When we add to these facts the cases of hyperæsthesia so common in somnambulism and hypnotism, we see that it is impossible to put a limit to the innate or acquired acuteness of our senses. As to this, see Braid, “*Neurhypnology*,” p. 62. “A patient who could not hear the tick of a watch beyond three feet when awake, could do so when hypnotized at the distance of thirty-five feet, and walk to it in a direct line, without difficulty or hesitation . . . Some will feel a breath of air from the lips, or the blast from a pair of bellows, at the distance of fifty or even ninety feet, and bend from it, and, by making a back current, as by waving the hand or a fan, will move in the opposite direction.”—These experiments have been repeated and varied by Dr. Azam of Bordeaux, “and the hearing,” he says, “attains such acuteness that a conversation may be heard on the floor below. The ticking of a watch is heard at twenty five feet distance.”—So with the smell, taste, sensations of heat, and the rest. “I have seen a person write correctly with a book placed between him and the paper ; I have seen a fine needle threaded in the same position ; have seen a person walk about a room with his eyes entirely closed and bandaged, and all this without any other real guide than the resistance of the air, and the perfect precision of the movements guided by the muscular sensations in their hyperæsthetic state.”—“*Annales Médico-psychologiques*,” 3<sup>e</sup> série, vi. 434.

seem to us at once distant and continuous; then, the whole sensation, composed of partial, coexistent, distinct, and continuous sensations, that is to say of such that between the position of one and that of another, we could not imagine any intermediate, will appear to us *extended*.—Let the reader be good enough to observe his own case; he will see that this is so with the sensations of heat and cold, which seem to us to occupy a whole limb, with the sensation of contact and pressure which we experience in laying our hand flat on a table, with the sensation of color which we experience when we keep the eye steadily fixed on a green leaf placed at six feet distance. In all these cases, the sensation seems extended. This arises from its consisting in a number of simultaneous sensations, which the education of the touch causes to appear as situated in distinct and continuous points.—Here there is a double error, first, because, as we have seen, sensations are situated in the sensory centres, and not in the nervous peripheries, next, because, as physiologists show, the nervous axes or cylinders, whose disturbance excites our sensations, form, at their terminations, discontinuous lines and surfaces. The extension of our sensation is thus, in two senses, an illusion.

From this illusion there springs another. With reference to sensations localized in points of our body, we conceive and affirm the existence of objects situated beyond our body, that is to say external, and we determine their situation by the situation of the sensation which reveals them to us. For instance, a sensation of smell reaches me, and I at once conceive and affirm a rose to be situated in the neighborhood of my nose. I experience a sensation of heat which I refer to my left leg; and I at once conceive and affirm some heated object, a current of hot air, a stove, a fire-place, as situated near my left leg.—The more determinate and precise the locality of my sensation, the more precisely do I determine the locality of the object. This is what happens with sensations of contact, and especially at the surface of the skin, and more particularly at the lips, the point of the tongue, the hand, the fingers, the tips of the fingers; \* at these parts

---

\* See Weber's Measurements, Mueller, "Physiology" (tr. Baly), i. 701.

the power of discrimination is very delicate, and two points separated by a line, or even half a line, give two distinct sensations. By means of such sensations, we are able to situate an object very exactly; their position is very precise; consequently, the position of the object is no less precise.—This position is still more precise in the case of sensations of color; consequently, in this case, the position of the object is still more precise.—If, now, we consider a sharply circumscribed portion of these very sensitive surfaces, and admit that, when all the nervous points capable of affording us a distinct sensation are disturbed at once, we may have a sensation apparently extended and continuous; we shall conceive and affirm the external object as extended and continuous. This is at present our usual proceeding. This is why, by means of a total sensation, composed of partial and simultaneous sensations, we perceive as extended and continuous the ground on which our foot is resting, the portion of the table on which our hand is extended, the distant object which our sensation of color denotes. We start from the extension and continuity of our sensation, to ascribe to the object a similar extension and continuity; now, the continuity and extension of the sensation being apparent only, that of the object can only be apparent. Consequently, the extension and continuity of bodies are illusions only; and, in fact, physicists arrive at conceiving atoms, if they exist, as separated by enormous intervals, in such a way that in a surface which appears to us continuous, the vacant part is far more extensive than the occupied part; going deeper still, they define bodies as a system of mathematical points, with relation to which effects increase or decrease according to distance.—At all events, there is nothing to prove that bodies are really extended and continuous; in this respect, our assertion is entirely gratuitous. Thus, the extension which we ascribe to bodies is, in fact, an apparent property of our sensation, a property which, by a natural illusion, we transfer to bodies. But this transfer is not, as Kant teaches, the effect of the innate and inexplicable structure of the mind; it is the effect of an acquired disposition, instituted in us by experience, and we have been

able successively to show the various steps of this acquisition.

Other consequences follow. By the position and extension we attribute to our sensations, our being itself seems to us situated, extended, circumscribed in a precinct. This precinct is attached to the personality, and henceforward, the idea I have of myself is inseparable from the idea I have of my body. In fact, this body is the only thing that accompanies me everywhere. It is the only thing which answers to my touch by a sensation of contact. It is the only thing which my will sets directly into motion. It is the only thing in which I place the sensations I attribute to myself. In all these respects it appears to me so tied up and confounded with myself, that, when I refer a sensation to any point whatever of the nervous surface, my being and my personality seem to me for the moment situated at the spot in question. Such is the present state.—Hence it follows that when I now touch a table, the object touched must appear to me not only as other than myself, but, further, as without me and without my sentient surface. It is thus opposed, not only to myself, but also to the enclosed space in which I situate my personality, and in this way, for the first time, it is really *external*.

In fact, it is this character which strikes us when we now perceive a body. We conceive it as *a thing beyond us*; to this first characteristic, the others attach themselves.—On moving my hand about in the dark, it meets with an unknown obstacle in a table; upon this sensation, I conceive and affirm beyond my hand *a thing beyond it*, which excites in me a continuous and extended sensation of resistance, and which, being capable, as I suppose, of exciting it again, presently and still later on, in others as well as in myself, thus possesses the permanent and general property of being resisting and extended. At the same time, the shades of my sensation and the accompanying sensations of uniform contact, cold and sound, add to my conception the idea of a conical form, of a metallic and sonorous substance, that is, of a bell.—Thus determined and qualified by the group of sensations it excites, *this thing beyond me* is opposed to me as a thing without, to a thing within.—The separation is still more readily effected

when the perception comes through the eyes; and observe that, at present, this is the most usual process. We have shown how, in sight, the sensation of the retina finds itself projected in appearance beyond our sentient surface, to become incorporated with the object which excites it, in such a way that color, which is an event of our being, seems to us a quality of the object. When I perceive this silver bell at three paces from me, the white shining patch in its centre, which appears to me to be three paces off, is a sensation of the retina transported from its seat by the education of the eye. In this case, our sensation itself appears to us as a thing beyond us; consequently the object to which we attribute it, and which, under the name of color, it seems to clothe, is opposed to our self and its precinct as a thing external and more or less distant.—Sensations apparently projected beyond the nervous surface in which we situate our personality, lodged in a determinate point of this outer region, detached from us by this projection, constituted apart as events foreign to us, erected into permanent qualities by the continuity and uniformity of their repetition, erected into qualities of a solid body by the presumed possibility of a sensation of contact and resistance at the spot in which we situate them: such are the visual, and really internal, phantoms which, when we open our eyes, seem to us external objects, and we now comprehend without difficulty how it is that, being compounds of the kind, they appear to us, not only as other than ourselves, but as situated *without* us.

VIII. Here we have the appearances, and it is time to inquire if there be any thing real corresponding to so many illusions. We have found that the objects we call bodies are but internal phantoms, that is to say fragments of the Ego, detached from it in appearance and opposed to it, though fundamentally they are the Ego under another aspect; that, strictly speaking, this sky, these stars, these trees, all this sensible universe which each of us perceives, is the work of each of us, or rather his emanation, or rather his creation, an involuntary creation, effected by him spontaneously without his consciousness of it, and extended to infinity around him like the shade of a little body whose outline goes on increas-

ing in proportion as it becomes distant, and ends by covering the whole horizon with its immensity.—We have then found that no one of our sensations is situated in that part of the body in which we place it, that many of them, though belonging to us, appear as foreign to us, that among these some appear as permanent qualities of a being other than ourselves, while they are in fact transient moments of our being.—Thus, illusion shows itself in all our judgments, whether they refer to the external or the internal world, and we are no longer astonished at finding the Buddhist Philosopher reduce the Real to momentary events of his Ego. But analysis, after destroying, is able to reconstruct, and in observing the manner in which our illusions are formed, we have already discovered how they lead us on to truths.

Let us first take the sensations which we still attribute to ourselves, but which we project from their cerebral seat to situate them in the organs, and in general, at some point of our nervous periphery—namely, those of taste, smell, contact, pressure, muscular contraction, pain, heat, and cold. No doubt, these sensations are not at the spot in which they seem to us situated; but there is usually found at this spot the commencement of the nervous disturbance which excites them. For, as a general rule, each variation in this disturbance and in its real position is represented by a proportionate variation in the sensation and its apparent position, so that, as a general rule, our false judgment results in the same conclusion as a true judgment. It serves us as well; it suggests to us the same provisions. If the nervous disturbance which excites the sensation of pressure increases in strength, the sensation of pressure increases in strength. If the nervous disturbance which excites pain actually changes place, the pain seems to change place. The differences of position which our ordinary judgment incorrectly supposes to exist between two sensations, are precisely the differences of position which physiological experiment correctly establishes between the starting points of the two corresponding nervous disturbances.—Thus our mind hits the mark, though its aim is bad, and what we erroneously allege of our sensations *applies* with an almost absolute and almost constant exactitude to

the nervous disturbance connected with them. Except in those rare cases in which the nervous trunks and centres enter spontaneously into action, this application is always correct. This is from its being the effect, not of a coincidence, but of a harmony. In fact, the sensation is almost always connected with the disturbance of the extremity of the nerve ; and this almost constant connection was necessary to establish in me the constant association of images by which I now situate the sensation in the neighborhood of the nervous extremity. Consequently if, on the one hand, this connection invariably leads me astray by making me invariably situate my sensation in a wrong spot, on the other hand it almost invariably retrieves the error, by almost invariably determining a disturbance of the nervous extremity. It has two consequences, the one unfailing and indirect, my mental illusion, the other direct and almost unfailing, the disturbance of the extremity of the nerve ; they are two streams starting from the same source ; that is why they correspond. If to the mental illusion there almost invariably corresponds the disturbance of the nervous extremity, it is from their both arising by virtue of the same law.

The same observation applies to sensations which we project beyond our sensible precinct, and which we consider to be events foreign to us, as for instance sounds, or qualities of objects foreign to us, as for instance colors.—No doubt it is erroneously that a particular sound, which is a sensation of my acoustic centres, appears to me to float in the air, at twenty paces to the right ; but to its regular or irregular sound corresponds, element for element, a vibration of the air which is propagated from this point, at this height, this distance, and in this direction.—No doubt, again, it is erroneously that the white and blue rays, which are a sensation of my optic centres, seem to me extended on the paper with which my room is hung ; but to these rays of color correspond, element for element, differences of structure in the surface of the paper, and consequently differences of aptitude to absorb or reflect the different luminous rays. Except in the rare cases in which the ear and eye have subjective sensations, the correspondence is perfect. So, here again, our

judgment, invariably false in itself, is almost invariably true by correspondence and coincidence. What we erroneously affirm of our sensations is found true of something else ; the variations and differences of the object coincide with the variations and differences of our sensations.—The fact is, that our sensations are adjusted to things, and the internal order to the external. Here, as before, the illusion of the sense proceeds from its education, and its education from the laws which connect the origin of a particular sensation to the almost constant presence of a particular external condition ; so that, at present, when the illusion is produced, the external condition is almost invariably present. The law which has resulted in exciting the illusion within us usually occasions the condition without us. Admirable mechanism, which deceives to instruct us, and leads us through error to truth.

The disturbance of the extremity of a little whitish fibre, the vibration of the particles of a gas, the special structure of an illuminated surface—these are the real equivalents met with under the illusion which displaces and disfigures our sensations. But these equivalents themselves are bodies considered in the aspect of a movement they undergo, or of a quality they possess.—There remains then for us to distinguish the sense and value of a deeper illusion—that which constitutes external perception, and by which we affirm the existence of bodies. Is there any thing real corresponding to this phantom which sensation excites in us, and which we term a body ? We have said that external perception is an accurate hallucination. In what does it differ from hallucination strictly so called, which is deceptive ?—Analysis has already replied. To this internal and transient phantom which appeared as a permanent and independent thing there usually corresponds, characteristic for characteristic, a permanent and independent Possibility and Necessity, the possibility of certain sensations under certain conditions, the necessity of the same sensations under the same conditions with the addition of a complementary one. What I am legitimately and truly entitled to assert when I touch this ivory ball, is a group of relations between certain conditions and certain sensations ; by virtue of these relations, every sentient being, who at



any moment of time shall place himself under the conditions in which I am, will have the sensation I have, and the other sensations I imagine. The law is a general one, independent of my presence, of my absence, of my existence. Its permanence causes me to imagine a metaphysical entity—substance. Its efficacy causes me to imagine a metaphysical entity—force. These are convenient symbols, but we must retain them in the state of symbols. Taken in this sense, we may say that to our phantom corresponds a substance, independent of us, permanent, possessed of effective force, capable of exciting in every sentient being a certain group of sensations, more generally still, capable of exciting and undergoing an event which we have recognized as the equivalent of our most important sensations, that is to say motion, or change of place.

But while availing ourselves of these phrases, we carefully preserve the recollection of their inner meaning. We remind ourselves that our external perception, reduced to what truth it contains, is but a general assertion, the enunciation of a law, a kind of *prediction*, valid for the past as for the future, the prediction of certain events, sensations, or equivalents of sensations, as possible under certain conditions, as necessary under the same conditions, with the addition of a complementary one. We announce that every sentient being, who shall touch or shall have touched the ball, will have or will have had the group of muscular, tactile, visual sensations which we ourselves had; that everybody which shall come or shall have come into collision with the ball, will lose or will have lost a portion of its motion. There is hallucination proper, when the thing announced is not accomplished, when the white spherical form, which appears situated three paces from me, does not excite in me or in others the muscular and tactile sensations on which I reckoned, when a body which passes through the spot at which it appears to me situated, does not, in spite of my expectation, undergo any diminution of its motion. But this case is very rare, and the agreement between the preliminary announcement and the subsequent effect is almost constant. This means that there is, in fact, an almost constant connection between the visual sensation of this

whitish spherical body on the one hand, and a certain group of muscular and tactile sensations on the other; the first is the indication of the second; when the sensation is given, the group is almost invariably possible; when the first is given, in almost every case, if there be added the complementary condition—the transport of the hand to the proper place—the second becomes necessary. Now my constant prediction is in my case the fruit of this almost constant connection. Consequently, the infallible springing up of the prediction supposes the almost infallible presence of the group, and the course of events, which, by its regularity, has created my attempt, finds, in this very regularity, cause to justify it.

All this mechanism is admirable, and the reader now sees the length of the elaboration, the perfection of the adjustment, which permit us to form, effectually and successfully, an act so usual, so short, so easy, as external perception. The operation resembles digestion or walking; apparently, there is nothing more simple; in reality, there is nothing more complex.—There is, in front of me, three paces off, a book bound in brown leather, and my eyes are open. A certain sensation of brown color rises in my optic centres; in other centres rise muscular sensations excited by the adjustment of my eye to the distance, by the convergence of the two eyes, by the direction of the convergent eyes; these sensations vary with the sensation of brown color, in proportion as the eye, in its movements, follows the outline and variously illuminated portions of the book. There are two series of sensations, whose position is in the box of the skull: these are the crude materials.—All the ulterior process consists in a coupling of images. Thanks to the associated image of the muscular sensations which would conduct the exploration of touch up to and along the book, the sensation of color, which belongs to us, ceases apparently to belong to us, and appears an extended patch situated three paces from our eyes.—Thanks to the associated image of the sensations of contact and resistance which our exploring touch would then experience, the patch seems to us a solid extension.—Thanks to the associated image of the sensations which would be experienced at any time by any being similar to ourselves, it seems to us that there

is at that spot, something permanent, independent, and capable of exciting sensations, and which we term matter.—Thus arises the internal semblance, composed of an alienated and wrongly situated sensation, of associated images, and, moreover, in the man who reflects, of an interpretation and a name which isolate and set apart a permanent character included in the group.—This semblance changes at every moment with the sensations which form its support. On each new support the associated images construct a new semblance, and the mind is filled with innumerable inmates, a transient population to which corresponds, each to each, the fixed population of the outer world.

## BOOK III.

## THE KNOWLEDGE OF MIND.

## CHAPTER I.

## THE KNOWLEDGE OF MIND.

I. HERE, then, we have reached the unextended centre, a species of mathematical point, by relation to which we define all the rest, and which each of us calls *I* or *me*. We revert to it at every instant of our life; a very intense contemplation, almost amounting to ecstasy, is requisite to detach us wholly from it, and to cause us to forget it for some minutes; even then, by a sort of rebound, we re-enter upon ourselves with greater energy; we mentally review all the foregoing scene, and say, mentally, twenty times in a minute: "Just now I was in such a place, I looked in such a direction, then in another, I had such an emotion, I made such a gesture, and now I am here."—Besides this, the idea of ourselves is comprised in all our recollections, in almost all our provisions, in all our pure conceptions or imaginations.—Moreover it is called up by all our sensations in any way strange or vivid, especially those of pleasure or pain, and we often forget the external world almost completely and for a considerable length of time, to recall some agreeable or interesting passage of our life, to imagine or desire some great good fortune, to observe in the distance, either past or future, some series of our emotions.—But this *ourselves*, to which, by a perpetual recurrence, we attach each of our successive events, is far more extensive than any one of them. It is drawn out before our eyes with certainty, like a continuous thread, backwards, over twenty, thirty, forty years, up to the most distant of our recollections, and further still, up to the beginning of our life, and it is drawn out too, by conjecture, forwards, into other indetermi-

nate and obscure distances. For each new link we add to it we review a longer or shorter fragment, a minute, an hour, a day, a whole year, many years, sometimes an enormous portion in the twinkling of an eye, and as if in a flash of lightning. This is why, when compared to our transient events, this Ego assumes a sovereign importance in our eyes.---We must now examine what idea we have of it, of what elements this idea is composed, how it is formed within us, why it is called up by each of our events, what thing corresponds to it, and by what adjustment this correspondence of the thing and idea is effected.

II. What do we understand by an Ego, in other words by a person, a soul, a spirit? When we conceive some living man, Peter, Paul, or ourselves, what idea is there within us, and of what elements is this idea composed?—What we affirm is, in the first place, a something, a being; I purposely employ the vaguest language, so as not to prejudice the matter. But, in pronouncing these words, we affirm nothing of this thing, except that it is; we say nothing of what it is, that question we reserve.—What we affirm is, secondly, that it is a permanent being; there is something in it which lasts and remains the same. I exist to-day, but I existed yesterday and the day before; and so with Peter and Paul. If both they and I have changed in some respects, in other respects they and I have not changed, and I conceive, in them as in myself, something which has remained fixed. But, in saying this, I do but affirm the permanence of something in them and me; I do not say what this something is; I state its durability, not its quality; that question we also reserve.—What we affirm is, thirdly, that this something is connected with a particular organized body; I have mine, Peter and Paul have each their own, and we mean thereby to say that, as a general rule, certain alterations of my body excite in me directly some particular sensations, and that certain events in me—emotions or volitions—excite directly in my body certain alterations; the same being the case with Peter, Paul, and their respective bodies. But this rule only states a constant relation between certain changes of a particular body and certain states of the unknown something; what that relation is,

still remains to be examined ; that question we again reserve. —After having stated its existence, its permanence, and its principal relation, we must now inquire into the qualities which determine it.

These qualities are its capacities and faculties. I am capable of feeling, of perceiving external objects, of recollecting, of imagining, of desiring, of willing, of contracting my muscles, and in this respect, Peter, Paul, and other men are similar to myself. Moreover, in addition to these capacities common to all men, I have others special to myself ; for instance, I am able to understand a Latin book ; this porter can carry a weight of 300 pounds ; here are precise capacities which determine the unknown something. Let us reunite in one group and one bundle all these capacities and faculties, common or special, which are met with in any one, and we shall know what he is, in knowing what he contains. The vague and empty sketch, which we had of the Ego or of the person, becomes limited and is filled out.

III. Here, then, we are led to inquire into what we mean by capacities and faculties. I have the capacity or faculty of feeling ; this means that I am capable of having sensations ; sensations of various kinds, of smell, taste, cold, heat, and, for instance, of sound. In other words, sensations of sound which, if they arise, will be mine, are possible. They are possible because their condition is given, that is, a certain state of my acoustic apparatus and of my sensory centres ; if this condition ceased to be given, they would cease to be possible ; I should no longer be able to hear sounds ; I should be deaf. —And so, a man has the faculty or power of perceiving external bodies, especially by sight ; this means that sensations of sight, which, if they arise, will be his, are possible. They are possible upon two conditions ; his optical and cerebral apparatus must be in the proper state, and the education of the sight must have associated in him with optical sensations the image of certain muscular sensations ; as these two conditions are given, his perceptions are possible ; if one or the other were suppressed, his perceptions would cease to be possible ; he would lose or would incompletely possess the faculty of sight.—So it is in all other cases, whether we consider a facul-

ty common to all men or a faculty special to an individual. I have the power or faculty of moving my limbs, and of retaining my ideas persistently. This means that this movement of my limbs and this persistence of my ideas is possible; the movement is possible because its condition—a certain state of my muscular and nervous system—is given; this persistence is possible because its condition—a certain equilibrium of my images—is given.—I have the faculty of understanding a Latin book, and my neighbor the porter has the faculty of carrying a load weighing 300 pounds; this means that if I read a Latin book, I shall understand it; that if the porter has a load of 300 pounds weight on his back, he will carry it. The first act is possible to me, because its condition—the knowledge of the Latin words—is given; the second is possible to the porter, because its conditions—the development of his muscles and the habitude of bodily exercise—are given. Suppress one of these conditions; the possibility disappears, and the faculty perishes, until the missing condition is re-established. Soften and waste away the porter's muscles by a month's low diet; he will no longer be able to lift his load. If paralysis benumbs the nerves of my arm, I shall no longer be able to lift that arm. If an hallucination prevents my sensory centres from receiving the impression produced on my retina by the rays emanating from the table; as long as the hallucination lasts, I shall be unable to perceive the table by sight.—On the other hand, cure the hallucination and the paralysis, and strengthen the weakened muscles; the possibilities, and with them the suspended faculties, will re-arise as they were before.

Thus, faculty and capacity are wholly relative terms; and here we fall again into a similar analysis to that which we effected with the properties of bodies. All these words are equivalent to that of *power*; and, whatever be the power, that of a dog which can run, that of a mathematician who can solve an equation, that of an absolute king who can cause heads to be cut off, the word never does more than state that the conditions of an event or of a class of events are present.—There is nothing more useful than the knowledge of such conditions; it permits us to foresee events, those of others as

well as our own. Consequently, we attach a great importance to these powers; they are to us the principal and essential part of things; we are tempted to form of them distinct entities, to consider them as a primitive foundation, a stable groundwork, an independent and productive source from which events flow.—The truth, however, is that a power is nothing in itself, except an aspect, an extract, a particularity of certain events, the particularity they have of being possible because their conditions are given. If these events are mine or a consequence of mine, the power appertains to me. In saying that I have such a power, I do but announce as possible such an event, sensation, perception, emotion, volition, which will, perhaps, form part of my being, and some other event, muscular contraction, carriage of a load, execution of an order, which will follow, sooner or later, a possible state of my being. But these events and states are supposed, not given; they do but form part of my possible being, they do not form part of my real being. One only of them will arise at any particular moment; the others, in unlimited number, will not arise. The others will remain on the threshold, or outside; this single privileged one will enter alone, and will alone form part of myself. I find, then, by way of real elements and positive materials, to constitute my being, nothing but my events and states, future, present, and past. What there is actually in me is their series or web. I am, then, a series of successive events and states, sensations, images, ideas, perceptions, recollections, previsions, emotions, desires, volitions, connected together, excited by certain changes of my body and of other bodies, and exciting certain changes of my body and of other bodies. And, as it is plain that my events, past, future, or possible, are all more or less analogous to the daily events which I can seize at the moment, or almost at the moment, at which they are produced, these last, the clearest and most near to us of all, are what I proceed to study to know what constitutes the Ego.

IV. Let us, then, consider one of these events, or groups of present events, some sensation of pain or pleasure, of contact, of temperature, of taste or smell, some tactile and muscular sensation, some preponderant image, some preponder-



ant mental word, some emotion, desire, or volition.—At the present moment I suffer from headache, or I taste a fine fruit, or enjoy myself by warming my limbs in the chimney-corner ; I imagine or recollect, I am vexed or enlivened by an idea, I decide on taking some step. These are the events I find within me ; active or passive, voluntary or involuntary, whatever be their shades, it is of no importance ; they constitute my present being, and I attribute them to myself. Now, all the events I attribute to myself have a common character ; they appear to me as *internal*.

Let us begin with the most frequent of all, that is to say the representations, ideas, and conceptions which we have of objects, and especially of external bodies : for instance, I represent to my myself an old time-piece in the adjoining room. Furniture, interiors of rooms, human or animal figures, trees, houses, streets, landscapes—it is representations of this class whose series composes the ordinary current of our thought. By a mechanism we have described, their hallucinatory tendency is checked : they are affected by a contradiction which negatives them as external objects ; they are thus opposed to external objects ; in other words, they appear internal.—So it is with every idea, sensible or abstract, simple or compound: For an idea is always the idea of some thing, and consequently comprises two phases, the first an illusory one, in which it seems the thing itself ; the second a rectified one, in which it appears a simple idea. This transformation it undergoes opposes to each other the two phases which constitute it ; we express this passage by saying that we re-enter upon ourselves, and that, from the object, we revert to the subject ; it is, then, the same event or group of events which, according to its successive states, constitutes, first, the apparent object, then the actual subject.—Thus the rectifying operation, by which an idea appears as an idea, is also the reflection by which this idea appears as something internal ; and the contradiction which negatives it as a fragment of the outer world gives it at the same time a position as a fragment of the inner world.

We must now observe that every idea, conception, and representation has a double face. On the one hand, it is a

cognition ; on the other hand, it is an emotion. It is agreeable, painful, surprising, startling, tender, consoling. Its energy, its weakenings, its intermittences, are precisely the energy, the weakening, the intermittences of the emotion. There is but one and the same fact with two aspects, one intellectual, the other affective and impulsive.—You are told that some one whom you left yesterday in good health has suddenly died, and this idea upsets you. You are told that a near relation is seriously ill, and this idea afflicts you. It excites a general shock, or kind of sharp pain, which continues, though growing feebler, and thus causes a lasting disorder. There is nothing strange in this long trouble, which starts from an idea and lasts over a series of ideas, seeming to us, like the ideas, internal ; in the desires and volitions which spring from it being similarly referred to within ; in the sequences and characters of the ideas being opposed, like the ideas, to the outer world, and incapable of finding a place there.

There remains for inquiry, why the sensations which we localize in our bodies also appear to us as internal, and are referred by us to ourselves.—To find the reason of this, it is sufficient to compare them with those equally belonging to us, and which nevertheless we do not attribute to ourselves, those of color and sound. We have seen the mechanism which projects these in appearance beyond our body ; if they are alienated from us, it is because they are projected out of our precinct. It is, then, because the others, those of contact, of pressure, of heat, of muscular effort, of local pain, of taste, and smell, are not projected beyond our body, that they are not alienated from us ; their position is the cause of their attribution ; we refer them to ourselves because our body, compared with others, has singular and special characters.—In fact, it is by its medium that we perceive other bodies and act upon them. Whether the action comes from us or them, it is always between them and us. In order for us to know other bodies, it is first necessary for one of the organs of our body to be disturbed ; in order for us to impress motion on other bodies, it is first necessary for one of the muscles of our body to be contracted. It is our first movable thing, and

first motive power ; with relation to other things, it is always *inside* ; with relation to it, other things are always *outside*. It is our immediate precinct, in such a way that, if we compare it to other things, it is *a within* and they are *a without*.—This is why the sensations of which we have been speaking, though placed by us in our organs, appear as internal, and are referred to self.—Such is our conception of the actual subject ; these are the present and real facts it comprises. That which I actually am, that which constitutes my real being, is a certain present real group of sensations, ideas, emotions, desires, volitions ; my conception of my actual being comprises these events only, and all these events, on analysis, present this common character, that they are pronounced internal, whether because, as ideas and sequences of ideas, they are opposed to objects and deprived of situation, or because their apparent position is met with in our body.

V. Now, at the preceding moment, the subject being wholly similar, contained events only of the same class ; the same observation is to be made for each of the anterior moments. And, in fact, when we consider any of these moments by recollection, we find they are all similar to the present moment ; just now, when in the other room, I felt cold, and walked, I looked at the clock, I foresaw, I desired, I willed, as at this moment. Consequently, my past, as my present events, have all this character of appearing internal.—In this way they form a chain, whose links, all composed of the same metal, appear at once united and distinct. For, according to the mechanism we have described and explained, on the one hand the image which constitutes a recollection seems projected backwards, and recedes beyond the repressive images or sensations, which separates it from them ; and, on the other hand, the same image, becoming precisely situated, seems to be joined by its posterior extremity to the anterior extremity of the repressive images or sensations, and is thus joined to them ; so that our events appear to us as *a continuous line of contiguous elements*. We pass without difficulty from one link to another ; according to the well-known law which governs the revival of images, the images of two successive sensations mutually tend to call each other up ; when, there-

fore, the image of some one of our anterior moments revives in us, the image of the preceding and that of the succeeding moment tend to revive by association and correspondence.

Not only do we pass by these means from one of our moments to an adjacent one ; but, by means of abbreviations which collect in one image a long series of moments, we pass from one period to another of our life. In fact, if, in order to recollect one of our somewhat distant events, it were necessary to call up the images of all our intermediate sensations, the operation would be of prodigious length ; strictly speaking, it would require as much time as elapsed between that event and the present moment. For the whole detail and duration of the intermediate sensations are reproduced in the images which conduct us backwards to that event ; it would thus require twenty-four hours to recall a sensation of yesterday. For this Nature has supplied a remedy in the obliteration which images undergo,\* and in the property possessed by certain prominent images of being the abbreviatory substitutes of the group in which they are included.—For instance, this morning I went into such a street, and such a house ; at present, if I recall my walk, numbers of details are missing ; many of my sensations do not revive. I do not see again the different figures of the houses, carriages, and passers-by, which I then saw ; nine out of ten of them are obliterated definitively and for ever ; of all these impressions there is but a remnant capable of reviving. Again, it almost always happens that, in ordinary life, I do not give it time to rise ; it would be necessary for me to dwell on it, to search in my memory. It is only when I search that I see again certain precise details, some shop, some interesting countenance, some striking part of the street. If I do not dwell on it, if I do not drive away supervening impressions and distractions, if I do not give my recollections time to become precise and complete, they almost all remain in the latent state ; that which survives and emerges is one fragment out of ten thousand, the vague representation of my progress at some moment in the street, of my arrival in the house, or of the at-

---

\* Part i. book ii, chapter ii.

titude of the friend I went to see.—But this is enough ; the shred which is preserved supplies the place of the rest ; I know by experience that by concentrating my attention upon it, I should revive several similar ones of the same series ; it is to me in future the summary representation of the whole.—So is it with the breakfast I had previously eaten, with the reading which occupied the first hours of the morning ; so that, with three abbreviatory substitutes, I remount in a moment to my getting up, that is to say to an incident separated by ten hours from the present moment.

The more distant the event, the greater is the obliteration of the images ; and the greater the obliteration, the more things does the abbreviatory substitute comprise.—My doings of yesterday or the previous day subsist in me only through some striking event, some visit I received, some domestic occurrence for which it was necessary to provide. If I recede still further, I perceive only, in the shipwreck an irremediable swallowing up of my innumerable anterior sensations, a few surviving images, my arrival at the country house I am staying in, the first green leaves of spring, a winter's evening at a particular house, the appearance of a strange town I visited a year ago. I may thus go back very far and very fast, and by springing from peak to peak, may reach in an instant things ten or twenty years distant.—Add to this the calendar, calculations, all the different means which we possess, and which children and savages do not possess, of measuring this distance. Thanks to an association of images, we place our events in the series of days and months with which the almanac furnishes us, in the series of years furnished by chronology. When this is effected, we render precise, by these auxiliary charts, the position which our various events occupy in duration with reference to one another, and are able, not only to review in a second our most distant events, but also to estimate the interval separating them from the present.

By this operation, more or less perfected, we embrace very long fragments of our being in an instant, and, so to speak, in a single glance. The distinct events whose succession has, during this interval, constituted our being, cease to be distinct ; they are obliterated by the abbreviations and the

speed ; nothing of the series survives, except a character common to all the elements traversed, the particularity they have of being internal. There remains, then, the idea of an internal something, of a *within*, which is, in this respect, opposed to all the without, which is always met with the same at all moments of the series, which, consequently, lasts and subsists, which, for this reason, appears to us of superior importance, and which attaches to itself, as accessories, the various transient events. This stable within is what each of us calls *I* or *me*.<sup>\*</sup>—Compared to its events, which pass away while it subsists, it is a substance ; it is denoted by a substantive or a pronoun, and it incessantly reverts to the most prominent place in oral or mental discourse.—Henceforward, when we reflect on it, we permit ourselves to be duped by language ; we forget that its permanence is apparent, that, if it appears fixed, it is because it is incessantly repeated, that it is in itself nothing more than an extract from internal events, that it derives from them all its being, that this borrowed being, detached by fiction, isolated by the oblivion of its connections, is nothing in itself and apart. If we do not undeceive ourselves by a rigid analysis, we fall into metaphysical illusion ; we are disposed to conceive it as a distinct thing, stable and independent of its modes of being, and even capable of subsisting after the series from which it is derived has disappeared.

Another metaphysical illusion comes in to complete its being and effect its isolation. We have classed its events and the facts which its events excite according to their resemblances and differences, and we have placed each group in a distinct compartment and under a common name—here sensations, there external perceptions, there, again, recollections, volitions, voluntary movements, and so on. Considering our present state, we know or suppose that the conditions of these events are present—in other words, that these events are possible ; we express this by saying that we have the power, capacity, or faculty of feeling, perceiving,

---

\* According to some, the word *I* (je, ich, ego, aham) comes from the root *ah*, to breathe, and denotes the inner breath ; according to others, it comes from the root *gha*, *ha*, which signifies *this one*, and by which a person speaking denotes himself to his listener.—Max Mueller, “The Science of Language.”

recollecting, willing, contracting our muscles. Besides these powers common to all men, each of us discovers in himself, by a similar experience, special powers peculiar to himself. Now, when we consider these powers, we find them all more or less permanent. They precede events, and, in general, survive events. They last intact during long years, some during our whole life. They thus form a contrast with transitory events, and seem the essential part of man. In this way their notion is attached to the notion of the persistent Ego; thereupon this Ego ceases to appear to us as a simple *within*; it becomes furnished, is qualified, and determined; we define it by the group of its powers, and, if we allow ourselves to slip into metaphysical error, we set it apart as something complete and independent, invariably the same under the flow of its events.

VI. Such is the notion of the Ego. Illusory in the metaphysical sense, it is not so in the ordinary sense; we cannot pronounce it void; there is something corresponding to it, something very analogous to that which, according to our analysis, constitutes the substance of bodies. This something is the permanent possibility of certain events under certain conditions, and the permanent necessity of the same events under the same conditions, with the addition of a complementary one, all these events having a common and distinctive character, that of appearing as internal. Thus we are entitled to say, while preserving exactly the meanings of our words, that the Ego is a force as bodies are—a force which, with relation to them, is a *within*, as they, with relation to it, are a *without*. These three words, force within, without, express relations only; nothing more; at all the moments of my life, I am a *within*, capable of certain events under certain conditions, and whose events under certain conditions are capable of exciting other events in itself or others. This is what endures in me, and this will be invariably the same at all the instants of my existence.—It is manifest that we have not here a primitive notion. It has precedents, elements, and a history, and we may reckon all the steps of the involuntary operation which results in forming it.

It is necessary, first, that we should have recollections and exact recollections. It is further necessary that, by the fixing of our recollections, our events should appear to us as a continuous thread. It is then necessary that, thanks to the abbreviations of memory, the particularities of our events should be obliterated, that a character common to all the elements of the thread should predominate, be disengaged, be isolated, and erected, by a substantive name, into a substance. It is further necessary that we should acquire the idea of the powers, capacities, or faculties of this substance, therefore, that we should classify our events according to their various kinds, that, by a more or less prolonged experience, we should discover their external and internal conditions, that, stating or presuming the presence of conditions, we should conceive these events as possible, and finally, that isolating this possibility, we should attribute it to ourselves, under the name of power, capacity, or faculty.—The idea, then, of the Ego, is a product ; many variously elaborated materials concur in its formation. Like every mental or organic compound, it has its normal form ; but, in order that it may attain this form, certain materials and a certain elaboration are required ; with a very slight change in the elements and derangement of the process, the form is deviated from and the final result is monstrous. Consequently the idea of self may deviate and become monstrous ; and, nearly as we are situated to ourselves, we may deceive ourselves in many ways respecting our self.

In the first place, certain foreign elements may introduce themselves into the idea we have of it. There are circumstances in which a series of imaginary events inserts itself in the series of real events ; we then attribute to ourselves what we have not experienced and have not done.—In the waking state, this occurrence is rare ; and seldom happens except with men whose imagination is over-excited. I have mentioned the story of Balzac, who described one day, at the house of Madame de Girardin, a white horse he intended to present to his friend Sandeau, and who, a few days afterwards, in the persuasion that he had actually given it, inquired of Sandeau about it. It is plain that the starting-point of an illusion like



this is a voluntary fiction ; the author of it is at first aware that it is fictitious, but finally forgets it.—With barbarous people, in uncultivated and childish minds, many false recollections thus take root. Men have seen a very simple fact ; gradually, when it is distant, in thinking of it, they interpret it, amplify it, provide it with details, and these imaginary details, becoming incorporated with the recollection, end by themselves seeming to be recollections. The majority of legends, and religious legends especially, are formed in this way.—A peasant, whose sister had died abroad, assured me that he had seen her soul the very evening of her death ; on inquiry being made, this soul was a phosphorescence produced in a corner on an old chest of drawers, where there was a bottle of spirits of wine standing.—The guide of a friend of mine at Smyrna declared that he had seen a young girl carried through the air in full daylight by enchantment ; the whole town had witnessed the miracle ; after fifteen hours skilful questioning, it became evident that all the guide recollected was having seen on that day a small cloud in the sky.—In fact, what constitutes recollection is the spontaneous recoil of a representation which becomes precisely fixed between certain links in the series of events which form our life. When this recoil and this fixing have become involuntary, when we no longer remember that they were at first purely voluntary, when finally no other representation is projected to the same spot and rises there to form an obstacle, the false recollection is taken for true.

All these conditions are met with in dreams ; this is why we have, when dreaming, not only false external perceptions, but also false recollections.\* I have noted many such in my own case ; only lately, I imagined myself to be in a drawing-room turning over an album of landscapes. The first of these pictures represented the Polar Sea, a great expanse of blue water, surrounded with icebergs. At this moment, I perceived

---

\* September 23, 1868. M. Maury cites many false recollections which he has had in dreams. "Le Sommeil," etc., p. 211, and p. 70.—See *ante*, p. 65 (part i. book ii. chap. i.), the story of the old man who attributed to himself the travels he had read, as well as those he had actually made.

the artist standing before me, and felt myself compelled to praise aloud the beauty of the work; I turned over the pages, and the pictures seemed to me to grow more and more wretched, and suddenly I recollected that, a year ago, I had had this album in hand, that I had even noticed it in a newspaper that my article, by no means a laudatory one, was of about thirty or forty lines on the third column of the second page. On this recollection, I felt so confused that I woke up. Now, observe that the whole dream was a fiction; but the recoil and fixing took place spontaneously without meeting a contradictory representation, in such a way that the imaginary article found itself affirmed.

So, again, there is nothing more common than false recollections in cases of insanity, and especially with monomaniacs. Such persons form a romance in accordance with their ruling passion, and this romance inserted in their life ends by composing in their eyes all their past life.—A woman whom I have seen at Salpêtrière, told, with perfect precision and conviction, a story according to which she was noble and wealthy. Her real name was Virginie Silly, and she called herself Eugénie de Sully. To believe her, her parents had purposely lost her seven or eight times, and her mother had finally sold her to a mountebank, with whom she remained two years. Before 1848, she had interviews with Louis Philippe and made reports to him on the Casino, the Chaumière, the Ranelagh, and the hospitals. “I was,” she said, “commisary-reporter to his Majesty, and the King gave me large sums.” Later on, when she was living in the Rue Poissonnière, the Emperor came to listen to her conversation from behind a screen, and caused her to be locked up. One of her uncles, a slave dealer in Chili, left her six millions; she has still a quarter of a million in the Bank. But she has been robbed of her papers and parchments, and in their stead has been left a false register of birth, according to which she is poor and of humble origin.\*—Another woman, in the service of M. Métivier, and the daughter of a porter in a public office,

---

\* From a note of a Lecture by M. Baillarger, at the Salpêtrière, in 1856. The Professor questioned the patients in the presence of his class.

being young and pretty, imagined that the minister frequently noticed her, and alleged that he had communicated with her through a procuress. On this, her lover, who was a clerk in the office, broke off the engagement. She married a workman, became pregnant, was confined, and, in the meantime, the minister died; she then announced that he had left her by will two hundred thousand francs. Her false recollections were so clear that her lover abandoned her, and her husband almost believed her.\*—In somnambulism and hypnotism, the patient who has become extremely sensible to *suggestion*, is subject to similar illusions of memory; he is told that he has committed such and such a crime, and his figure at once expresses horror and dismay. Ordinary recollections no longer present themselves, or are too feeble to exercise their ordinary power of repression; in the absence of the normal counterpoise, the simple conception becomes an affirmative conception, and the patient recollects murders which he has not committed.

Other cases present the inverse illusion. We then no longer deceive ourselves by addition, but by exclusion; instead of inserting in our series events which do not belong to us, we cast out of our series events which are really ours.—This is the error into which we fall respecting colors and sounds; its mechanism has been described. These, in themselves, are sensations, like those of heat or taste; but as they are repulsed from our nervous surface, they appear detached from us; by this alienation, sound appears as an external event, and color as a quality of a body other than ourselves.—This error is normal, and we have shown in what way it is useful. But there are others which are abnormal, and bring disturbance into all our conduct; these are the hallucinations termed *psychical*;† in such cases, the patient alienates and refers to others thoughts which are his own; he understands by *thought*, he hears “secret internal voices;” they speak to him “silently;” he sees “invisibly.” The wife of an English officer at Charenton spoke of a sixth sense by which she

---

\* See Leuret, “Fragments Psychologiques,” for an analogous case of a madman called Benoit (p. 64).

† Baillarger, “Des Hallucinations,” part i.

heard voices; it was "the sense of thought."—When we question such patients, they reply that the word voice of which they avail themselves is very inappropriate, and that they use it by way of metaphor, for want of a better word the voice has no tone, it does not seem to come from the outer world as in ordinary cases; mystics have already made this distinction, and oppose "intellectual speech and voices" which their soul seizes without the intervention of the organs of sense, to bodily voices which they perceive in the same way as in ordinary life. Blake, the poet and engraver, who called up the illustrious dead, conversed with them "soul to soul," and, as he said, "by intuition and magnetism."—It is easy to recognize that the ideas which such persons attribute to others belong to themselves. A person talking with Blake begged him to ask Richard III. if he professed to justify the murders he had committed during his life. "Your question," said Blake, "has already reached him. . . . We have no need of words. This is his answer, only it is somewhat longer than he gave it me, for you would not understand the language of spirits.—He says that what you call murder and carnage is all nothing; that in slaughtering fifteen or twenty thousand men you do no wrong, for what is immortal of them is not only preserved but passes into a better world, and the man who reproaches his assassin is guilty of ingratitude, for it is by his means that he enters into a happier and more perfect state of existence. But do not interrupt me, he is now in a very good position, and if you say anything more he will go." It is evident that Blake imputed his own theories and dreams to Richard III.; the person he imagined was an echo which sent him back his own thought.—A madwoman played incessantly at even or odd with an absent person whom she believed to be the prefect of police; before playing, she looked at the coins she had in her hand, and thus knew their number; the prefect, therefore, always guessed wrong, and never failed to lose; later on, she neglected her preliminary examination; and then, the prefect sometimes lost, and sometimes won.—It is evident that, at first, she herself fabricated, without suspecting it, the error she attributed to the prefect.

The starting point of these illusions is not hard to distinguish; we find it in the process of mind of the dramatic author, the novelist, of every person of lively imagination; in the midst of a mental monologue, there springs up an address, an answer, a kind of internal person rises and addresses us in the second person: "Rentre en toi-même, Octave, et cesse de te plaindre."—Now suppose that these addresses, these answers, while remaining mental, are wholly unforeseen and involuntary—a thing which often happens. Suppose they comprise strange and sometimes terrible ideas, that the patient cannot excite them at will, that he undergoes them, that he is beset by them.\* Suppose, in a word, that these discourses are well connected, indicate an intention, impel the patient in one or another direction, towards devotion or towards vice. He will be tempted to attribute them to an invisible speaker, especially if the religious atmosphere in which he lives, and his own special creed, authorize his fabricating such a speaker. The whole series which constitutes the Ego is thus cut into two parts, because the two partial series which compose it present distinct or even opposite characters. Sometimes, when the second has nothing extraordinary about it, the patient still attributes it to himself, and believes himself to be double. "I am led to believe," says a sufferer from hallucinations, "that I have always had within me a double thought, one of which controls the actions of the other." "There is," says another patient, "as it were a second myself who inspects all my actions and words, like an echo which repeats everything." A third, recovering from a fever, "believed himself formed of two individuals, one of which was in bed, while the other walked about; although he felt no appetite, he ate largely, having, as he said, two bodies to support."†—At other times, the second series is referred to another person, especially when the ideas it contains are out of proportion to those which make up the first

---

\* See the whole autobiography of Bunyan, the author of the "Pilgrim's Progress."—Also the eloquent and sublime conversations of Tasso with his familiar genius, recorded by Manso.—So again, the warnings given to Socrates by an internal voice.

† Griesinger, p. 93, and Baillarger, *op. cit.* passim.

series. Thus were formed the demon of Socrates, and the familiar genius of Tasso.—Usually, after a time, sensorial hallucination comes in to complete psychical hallucination. The internal mental voices become physical and external. “At first, according to patients, it was something ideal and like a spirit speaking in them; now, they actually hear speech;” the voices are clear or indistinct, deep or high, melodious or screeching. I have already mentioned the case of Theophile Gautier, and how, passing once before the Vaudeville, a phrase printed on the notice-board fastened itself upon his recollection, how, in spite of himself, he incessantly repeated it, how after some time it ceased to be simply mental, and seemed to proceed from a bodily throat, with distinct tone and accent; it revisited him thus, at intervals and unexpectedly, and this lasted several weeks. Suppose a mind preoccupied, beset with fears, assume that the voice pronounces, not only a single monotonous phrase, but a series of threatening and appropriate speeches, and we have the case of Luther at the Wartburg, when he disputed with the devil. The mental words have excited in the sensory centres of the encephalon corresponding sensations of hearing, and henceforth, detached in this double sense from the Ego, they are imputed to an interlocutor.

These illusions are partial only; there are total illusions, in which the series of our events is replaced by a strange series. Peter imagines himself Paul, and acts on the belief. Here again, the starting point of the error is in a well-known process of the mind, that of the novelist or author who puts himself in the place of his characters, adopts their passion, and experiences their emotions.—This operation is nowhere so clearly seen as in hypnotism; the attention of the patient is then limited and concentrated, and rests only on one series of ideas; this alone is developed; all others are benumbed, and, for the time, incapable of reviving; consequently ordinary recollections are missing and no longer exercise their repression; the illusion which, in the author and novelist, is upset at every moment, is now no longer checked and follows its course.\* “A. B. was asked his name, he answered rightly,

\* “*Annales Médico-psychologiques*,” 4<sup>me</sup> Série, vi. 428.—Dr. Hack Tuke, “*De la Foie Artificielle*.”

without hesitation. When hypnotized and in the state of coma (being capable of holding himself upright and in appearance wide awake, though with a strange wandering air as in somnambulism) it was strongly suggested to him that he was Richard Cobden. A few seconds afterwards he was asked his name. He answered at once, and without hesitation, 'Richard Cobden.'—'Are you perfectly sure of it?'—'Yes,' he answered.—Similar experiments tried with different names, on various other occasions, had always the same results.—During the state of normal wakefulness, the subjects experimented on gave their proper names as soon as they were asked. On the contrary, if during the fitting period of hypnotic sleep the name of a king was suggested to them, not only were they impelled to say that it was their name, *but they felt and acted in a way which manifested their conviction that they were kings.*"

This state, instead of being transient, may become fixed ; this is frequent in the asylums, and is often met with in periods of religious exaltation.—A quartermaster in Cromwell's army, James Naylor, believed himself God the Father, and was worshipped by many enthusiastic women. He was tried by Parliament, and sentenced to the pillory.—We find, in asylums, lunatics who believe themselves Napoleon, the Virgin Mary, the Messiah, or some other person. One of them named Dupré, a patient of Leuret, believed and said that he was at once Napoleon, Delavigne, Picard, Andrieux, Destouches, and Bernardin de Saint-Pierre.—A woman called Catherine, mentioned by Leuret, is no longer herself ; she does not call herself Catherine ; there is a rupture between her past and present ; she only speaks of herself in the third person, saying "the person of myself."—Others are transformed into animals. "There was a man of Padua," says Wier, "in 1541, who believed himself to be changed into a wolf, and ran about the country attacking and killing all he met. After many difficulties, they contrived to seize him. He said boldly to those who arrested him : 'I am really a wolf, and if my skin does not look like a wolf's skin, it is because it is turned and the hair is inside.'—In order to assure themselves of the fact, they wounded the wretched

man in different parts of his body, and tore off his arms and legs."—If the patient experiences false sensations, through hypnotism or illness, he may come to form the most eccentric ideas of his body, and therefore of his personality.—“Among a number of hypnotized women,” says Dr. Elliotson, “one imagined that she was made of glass, and was afraid that she might become broken; another that she was no bigger than a grain of wheat; another that she was dead.” And so, some insane persons are convinced that their body is made of wax, of butter, of wood, and act accordingly. Leuret mentions men who believe themselves changed into women, and women who believe themselves men.—A soldier whose skin had become insensible, believed himself to have been dead since the battle of Austerlitz, where he received a wound. “When he was asked as to his health, he said—‘You want to know how Father Lambert is? But there is no Father Lambert; a cannon-ball killed him at Austerlitz; what you see here is not him; it is a wretched machine made to look like him; you ought to ask them to make a better one.’”—In speaking of himself he never said *me*, but always *it*.\*

In short, the conception which I have of myself at any given moment is an abbreviatory and substitutive name, sometimes my name, sometimes the word *I* or *me*, both of them mentally pronounced. If I dwell on this name, it will, in the normal state, call up in me, by association, its equivalent, that is to say the series of my actual and interior events, joined with the numerous series of possible events of which I am actually capable. But this principal association, being an acquired one, may be lost; and so it is with the secondary associations which solder together in my mind the various fragments of the whole series. If an extrinsic fragment or an extrinsic series then comes to intercalate itself in the empty place, the patient will be mistaken about himself. We have just seen the principal conditions of this transposition.

---

\* Analogous illusions occur in dreams. M. Charma dreamed once that he was aide-de-camp to Henry IV.; another time that he was Voltaire.—Dr. Macnish dreamed that he was a pillar of stone, and saw all that passed around him.—De Quincey, the opium-eater, dreamed that he was the idol in a Brahminical temple, etc.



Sometimes the energy of the normal associations is weakened, as in sleep and hypnotism ; the link which binds my name to the word *I* is weakened ; consequently, a persistent suggestion is capable of substituting for my name that of another ; henceforward this name with the whole series of events of which it is the equivalent is called up in me as soon as the word *I* reverts mentally, and henceforward I am, in my own eyes, some other person—Richard Cobden, or Prince Albert. —Sometimes the energy of the normal associations is conquered by a greater force. The pure conception which, repressed by the series of recollections, was at first checked in its evolution, now accomplishes its development in accordance with its hallucinatory tendency. Incessantly repeated, with daily increased vividness, maintained by a ruling passion, by vanity, love, or religious scruples, sustained by false sensations ill interpreted, confirmed by a group of suitable explanations, it assumes a definite ascendancy, annuls contradictory recollections ; being no longer negatived, it is pronounced affirmative ; and the fiction, which was at first declared a fiction, seems a true story.—Thus, our idea of our person is a group of co-ordinated elements whose mutual associations, ceaselessly attacked and ceaselessly victorious, are maintained during our waking hours and reason, as the composition of an organ is maintained during health and life. But madness is always hovering near the mind, as illness is always hovering near the body ; for the normal combination is a victory only ; it results from and is renewed by the continual defeat of the contrary forces. Now, these last are always present ; an accident may give them the preponderance ; there is but little required to enable them to assume it ; a slight alteration in the proportion of the elementary affinities and in the direction of the constructing process would bring on a degeneracy. Morally or physically, the form we term regular may indeed be the most frequent, but it is through an infinite number of possible deformations that it is produced.—We may compare the silent elaboration of which consciousness is the ordinary result to the progress of the slave, who, after the games of the circus, crossed the length of the arena, among wearied lions and gluttoned tigers,

bearing in his hand an egg ; if he arrived safely, he received his freedom. So passes the mind through the confusion of monstrous deliria and yelling madness, almost always with impunity, to settle itself in accurate consciousness and exact recollection.

VII. How does it happen that the slave arrives so frequently at his destination ? Whence comes it that our present recollections almost invariably correspond to past sensations ; that the place we assign to these sensations is almost invariably that which they actually occupied ; that it scarcely ever happens that the chain of our events lets slip one of its own links or receives a link that does not belong to it ; that the group of past, present, and possible events, of which we compose our personality is, almost always, really the group of events which have happened to us, are passing within us, and which may occur to us ? By what adjustment is the almost invariable accordance of our thought and our being set up ?—It must be understood that we do not here undertake to demonstrate the veracity of memory ; the thing is impossible. In fact, such a proof would be reasoning in a circle ; for, if memory be accurate, it is through certain laws which accommodate the recollection to its object ; now these laws can only be obtained by us from the facts we observe and which we *remember* for the purpose of comparing them ; so that, in order to prove the fidelity of memory, it would first be necessary to admit the fidelity of memory. We do admit it and without much hesitation, if not upon a direct demonstration, at least after a host of innumerable confirmations, and as an hypothesis justifying the whole of the experience, verifications, and previsions of mankind.—This, when settled, is enough to explain it, and we have but to regard the described mechanism to comprehend the almost infallible accuracy of its working.

In the first place, what constitutes recollection is a present image which appears a past sensation, and which, by the repressive contradiction of present sensations, finds itself constrained to an apparent recoil. Now, we have seen that the sensation, after it has ceased, has the property of reviving by its image ; as a general rule, almost every clear and circumstantial image supposes an antecedent sensation ; so that, if

our judgment is invariably false in itself, it is almost invariably true by correspondence. We invariably deceive ourselves by taking the present image for a distant sensation; but, as a rule, the distant sensation was produced. If the image by its presence excites a constant illusion which forms recollection, on the other hand, it *compensates* this illusion by its origin, which is almost invariably an anterior sensation; if I may venture to say so, it rectifies, on the one hand, the error into which it leads us on the other.

Secondly, what situates the repulsed image before some particular sensation is the presence of that sensation or the recall of that sensation by its image. Now, as we saw in proving the laws which govern the revival of images, my present sensation tends to call up the image of the preceding sensation contiguous to it; and, in general, images of sensations which have been contiguous, tend to call each other up; whence it follows that the image of a past sensation tends to call up the images of the anterior and posterior sensations which were contiguous to it. Consequently, the abbreviatory image of a long series of sensations, operations, and actions, that is to say of a considerable fragment of my life, tends to call up abbreviatory images of the anterior and posterior fragments.—But we have shown that the posterior sensation, whether by itself or by its image, exerts on the image of the preceding sensation a contradiction which comes to an end when its commencement meets with the end of its antagonist, whence it happens that the repulsed image appears fastened by its end to the commencement of the image or sensation repulsing it. Consequently, when the image of a past sensation calls up the image of the posterior sensation and the image of the anterior one, it is repulsed by the first, it repulses the second, it connects itself by its end with the commencement of the first, by its commencement with the end of the second, and thus becomes *fixed* between the two. Whenever the three images come in to override on another, the two repulsions act in the manner indicated, the mechanism which situates them acts so as to arrange them in a line, as soon as the law of mutual evocation arouses them together. They thus contract, with relation to one another, an ap-

parent order which corresponds to the real order of the sensations of which they are the remains. The contiguity of two sensations, one preceding, the other following, the reciprocal calling up of the image of the one by the image of the other, the apparent joining of the two images, a joining such that, while both appear as sensations, the first appears anterior to the second: these are all the steps of the operation; hence we see that the *real date* of a sensation determines the *apparent date* of its image. Here again, the agreement is established by a correspondence.

As a general rule, not only does every precise and detailed image presume an antecedent sensation, but every precise and detailed image, which is joined, in appearance, to another posterior one, presumes that the sensation whence it was derived was joined in the same manner, but in reality, to the sensation which the other repeats. If its attachment, then, invariably excites an illusion by compelling the other to appear anterior, almost invariably does its origin—the sensation posterior to the sensation of which the other is the echo—repair this error.

Thus, the thread of our events is formed in our memory; at every moment we look back on a portion; a day never passes without our having frequently reverted back, and sometimes far back in the chain, sometimes, by means of abbreviatory processes, to events separated from the present moment by many months and many years. Associations so repeated are continually becoming more tenacious; our past is a line which we never weary of tracing over and refreshing with ink.—Classes become established among these events; they group themselves spontaneously according to their resemblances and differences; the most frequent, the acts of walking, grasping with the hand, lifting a weight, feeling, touching, smelling, tasting, seeing, hearing, recollecting, foreseeing, willing, are collected each under a name; we conceive them as possible to us, and these possibilities, incessantly verified and limited by experience, constitute our powers or faculties. There is no one of them whose presence, range, and limits may not at any hour be manifested to us, so that our idea is associated with the idea of self by links which are

hourly re-forged and strengthened.—Add to the recollection of my events and to the idea of my powers a last idea similarly renewed and strengthened at every moment by experience, that of the body which I call mine, and which is distinguished by sharply divided characteristics from all others, being the only one which answers to my touch by a sensation of contact, the only one whose changes excite sensations in me without an intermediate, the only one in which my will is capable of exciting changes without an intermediate, the only one in which the sensations I ascribe to myself appear to be situated. All this group of true ideas and exact recollections form a singularly solid network. It requires, then, a great accumulation of forces to tear from it any portion really belonging to it, or to insert in it any portion extrinsic to it.—In fact, these transpositions are rare; they are principally met with when an organic change, like sleep or hypnotism, loosens the meshes of the network, when an inveterate, predominant passion, fortified by psychical or sensorial hallucinations, at last wears away some thread of the tissue, substitutes another thread, and, gaining step by step, sets a fictitious web in the place of the natural web. But, as woven under ordinary conditions, the web is good, and its threads correspond, by their presence, by their diversities, by their apparent dates, by their connections, to the presence, the diversities, the real dates, the connections of the real facts; this is because the real facts themselves have woven it. The mind resembles a loom; every event is an impulse which sets it in action, and the fabric which issues from it, transcribes by its structure the order and kind of the impulses which the machine has received.

VIII. When, by the experiences of touch, of the educated sight, and the other senses, we have acquired a sufficiently precise and complete idea of our body, and there is associated to this idea that of a within or subject, capable of sensations, recollections, perceptions, volitions, and the rest, we make a further step. Among the innumerable bodies surrounding us, there are many which more or less resemble our own. In other words, if we explore them, they excite in us sensations of contact, resistance, temperature, color, and of tactile and

visual shape and size, nearly analogous to those which we experience when we take cognizance by the eye and hand of our own body. Thus the group of images by which we picture to ourselves these bodies is very similar to the group of images by which we represent to ourselves our own.—Consequently, in accordance with the law of the association of images, when the first group rises in us, it must, like the other, call up the idea of a *subject or within*, capable of sensations, perceptions, volitions, and other similar operations. This is the spontaneous suggestion or induction ; it is gradually confirmed and rendered precise by numerous verifications.—In the first place, we observe that this body moves, not always in the same manner, in correspondence to a mechanical impulse, but variously, without external impulsions, towards an end, seemingly directed by a purpose, just as our own body is moved and directed, which leads us to conjecture that in its case there are intentions, preferences, motive ideas, a will, as with us.\*—Secondly, and especially if it be an animal of a higher species, we see it perform a number of actions analogous to what we find in ourselves, such as crying, walking, running, sleeping, drinking, eating, all of which leads us to impute to it perceptions, ideas, recollections, emotions, desires, similar to those of which these actions are in our cases the effects.—Lastly, we put our conjectures to the proof. Having recognized in our own cases the antecedents and consequents of fear, pain, joy, and, in general, of some particular internal state, we reproduce for it these antecedents, or prove in it these consequents, and conclude that the internal and intermediate state, which, visible in our cases, is invisible in its case, must have been produced in its case as in our own. We know that, in our cases, a blow with a stick is the antecedent of a pain, and that a cry is the consequent of the pain. We strike a dog, and at once hear it give a cry ; between this con-

---

\* The child is angry with a balloon or tuft of down which floats about capriciously, and will not allow him to seize it.—In primitive times, men considered the sun, the rivers, as animated beings.—The savage takes a watch which ticks and whose hands move, for a little round tortoise.—A movement which appears spontaneous, invariably suggests the idea of a will, and especially if it appears to have an object.

dition of pain and this sign of pain, both of which we clearly perceive, we insert, by conjecture, a pain similar to what we should ourselves have felt in such a case.—Thanks to these suggestions and these continual verifications, the outer world which so far has been peopled with bodies only, is also peopled with souls, and the solitary Ego conceives and affirms around it a multitude of beings more or less similar to itself.

IX. All these cognitions are composed of the same elements joined together according to the same law. Whether it be a question of a body, of ourselves, of another animated being, whether the operation be termed external perception, act of consciousness, recollection, induction, pure conception, our operation is invariably a mass of which the molecules are sensations and images joined to images agglutinated into partial groups which mutually call each other up.—A couple is formed by the aggregation of two molecules; to this is attached another couple, to these combined, others combined, and so on, till at last the vast compound we term the idea of an individual, the idea of this tree, of myself, of this dog, of Peter, or of Paul, is established.—Take an ivory billiard ball at two paces distance. It excites in us a certain crude sensation of the retina and the muscles of the eye, which calls up the image of the muscular sensations of locomotion which would lead our hand two paces off, according to a certain outline; the compound is a patch of color with a certain shape, and situated in appearance two paces from us.—We reach forward our hand and feel the ball; it produces in us a certain crude sensation of cold, of even contact, of resistance, which calls up the image of the tactile and visual sensations which we should have if we were to look at or touch our right hand; the compound is a sensation of even contact, resistance, and cold, apparently situated in our right hand.—Now, whenever we have repeated the experiment, each one of these two compounds has always accompanied the other. Consequently, in any interval of time, however long and however divided it may be, we cannot imagine a moment in which, where one of the two compounds is given, the other cannot and must not also be given, so that the possibility and necessity of both last without discontinuity, during all the moments of the interval; this is

what we express by saying that there is in it something stable which is permanently tangible, resisting, and clothed with color.—To this compound so constructed are added the images of the distinct visual sensations, which the ball would excite in us, according to the differences of light and distance; from all these connected appearances, is formed the internal semblance which now springs up in us in the presence of the ball.—Add two other compounds, the image of the sensations by which we ascertain the changes which on certain conditions the ball undergoes, and the image of the sensations by which we ascertain the changes which the ball on certain conditions excites in any other body.—Such is the vast collection of intellectual atoms joined one by one and group to group, of which all the groups spring up, or are ready to spring up within us, when the crude visual sensation of the white form or the crude tactile sensation of smooth contact, cold, and resistance, is produced in us.

Now let us suppose the sensation to cease, and all that subsists of it to be the image with its appurtenances, that is to say a representation of the ball, and let us assume that a different sensation may rise at the same moment with its special train. By this attachment of a contradictory sensation, the representation of the ball appears something internal, a past event; and, in this manner, it arouses other analogous representations, in the midst of which it fixes itself in such a way as to constitute with them a line of internal events; this line is opposed to other groups, because all its elements present a constant character, which, being continually repeated, seems persistent, that is to say, the particularity of being a *within*, in opposition to the without; and this, later on, will offer to reflection and language the temptation to isolate it under the name of subject and Ego.—In this immense chain, each class of internal events, sensations, perceptions, emotions, each species of perceptions, of sensations, and emotions has its image associated with that of its conditions and of its internal and external effects; and this forms an infinite number of new couples, the two links of which draw one another into the light; so that we cannot imagine any pain without imagining its condition—a particular nervous lesion



—and without imagining its effect—a contraction or a complaint.—Now, by a necessary suggestion, when an external body presents the conditions and effects of our own, the group of sensations which represent it calls up in us a group of images analogous to those by which we represent to ourselves our own events; and this forms a last compound, the most extensive of all, since it comprises a body and a soul, with all their mutual connections and all the connections which join their events to the events of others.—Thus, in our mind, every compound is a couple; the couple of a sensation and an image; the couple of a sensation and of a group, or many groups of images; more complex couples, in which a sensation, combined with its train of images, contradicts a representation or group of images; couples, still more vast, in which a sensation, present with its train of images, repulses into the past the abbreviatory images of a considerable fragment of our life; couples, the most comprehensive of all, in which, by still more summary abbreviations, the sensation and images which represent to us all the properties of a body call up the group of images which represent to us all the properties of a soul. Each couple, if properly constructed, corresponds in our mind to a couple among events, and each, when its first term is precisely repeated by the present sensation, has, as its second term, a *prevision*.

What is the mechanism of this final operation, the most closely allied to practice, and the most important of all, since by its means we are enabled to act?—We foresee that the sun will rise to-morrow, that it will describe a certain curve in the sky, that it will set at such a spot, at such an hour, and even, with the aid of science, that in so many years it will undergo, at a particular moment, an eclipse of certain extent. Here, as in recollection, an image appears projected from the present; only, instead of being projected backwards on the line of time, it is projected forwards. When, this evening, I foresee that the sun will rise to-morrow, what I actually have in my mind is the more or less express representation of the sun at daybreak, of a golden disc rising in the eastern sky, of nearly horizontal rays which first illuminate the tops of the hills, all this summed up in a word, in a

reviving shred of visual sensation, in other words, in a present image. This image appears as a future sensation, and fixes itself by its anterior extremity on to the posterior extremity of the sensation of obscurity which I have at present, which situates it in a determinate point of the line of the future. Here is the crude fact ; to explain it, it is enough to refer to the operations of memory.—There are two sensations which have never failed to succeed one another in us ; on the one hand, the sensation of an obscurity of several hours ; on the other, that of a luminous globe rising in the eastern boundary of the sky. However far we may reascend into the past, the first has never been present to us without having been followed by the second, nor the second without having been preceded by the first. At whatever point of our past we may consider them, we always find them joined to one another in this same order. The constant repetition has created the tenacious habit which has produced the energetic tendency, and henceforward, when we represent to ourselves the couple, the first term perforce appears to us as anterior to the second, and the second as posterior to the first.—Now, at this moment, the first is a present sensation ; the second, then, must appear as posterior to the present sensation, that is to say, as future. In this manner, our prevision is the child of our memory. When given a couple of recollections in which the second term appears as posterior to the first, if the first is found to be repeated by the present sensation, the second cannot fail to appear as posterior to the present sensation, and to situate itself by so much the more in advance and more distant with relation to it, as there is a greater interval between the two terms of the primitive couple.

All our previsions, and consequently all our conjectures, are constructed in this manner. I wish to move my arm, and I foresee that it will move ; I shake a bell, and foresee that it will give a ringing sound ; I light a fire under the boiler of a locomotive, and foresee that the steam disengaged will move the piston ; I read and re-read attentively a piece of poetry, and foresee that I shall presently be able to repeat it by heart ; I address a question to my neighbor, and foresee that he will answer me. In all these cases, two successive

links, of the past, are, while preserving their reciprocal situation, transported out of their primitive position to be placed, the first in the present, the second at some point of the future, because we have ascertained, or believe that we have ascertained, a perfect resemblance between the first and our present state.

Now, in fact, the majority of these previsions agree with the events which are foreseen, and, in ordinary life, our expectation is scarcely ever mistaken. We do not perform an act without reckoning beforehand on its effect, and this effect scarcely ever fails to be produced. I have foreseen, before performing them, all the movements I perform with my body and limbs, and, a hundred thousand times to one, they are such as I have foreseen. I have foreseen, before experiencing them, the sensations of resistance, form, position, temperature, which will be given me by the somewhat familiar and not too distant objects which I perceive by sight, and, a hundred thousand times to one, they give me the sensation I have foreseen. I foresee, before ascertaining them, the changes which a particular modification of a certain ordinary body will excite in some other ordinary body, and, a hundred thousand times to one, these changes will take place exactly as I have foreseen them. Drinking, eating, sleeping, walking, reading, writing, speaking, singing, the carriage of the body, the exercise of an art, a profession, a trade, no one of these common actions is accomplished without the intervention of an innumerable multitude of necessarily correct expectations. The intelligent being, animal or man, supplies its wants, preserves its life, improves its condition, only by the exact accordance of its present prevision and the near or even distant future.—If this harmony sometimes fails, it is on account of the objects or circumstances in question being such that anterior observation has not furnished sufficient indications respecting them. But, as to common objects, this disagreement is infrequent, and, if the preliminary experience has been sufficiently extensive, it disappears entirely.—There are, then, a prodigious multitude of cases in which the event justifies the prevision, and, in all these cases, the couple formed by our thoughts is the exact counterpart of the couple formed by the

facts. Consequently, the mental law which connects our two thoughts is as general as the physical or moral law which connects the two facts.

But it is not from the outset that we recognize it as general; primitively, it acts within us without our distinguishing its character or measuring its range. The child and the animal foresee that this water will quench their thirst, that this fire will burn them; it is enough for this purpose that experience and custom have coupled in their minds a particular sensation and a particular representation; in their present cases, the sight of water invariably excites the image of quenched thirst, and the sight of fire invariably excites the image of burning. There is nothing more than this; what fills their whole mind at the moment is a certain visual perception joined to the image of a certain future sensation. So is it with the majority of our ordinary previsions; the adult and reflecting man is child and animal with respect to all his habitual and mechanical actions, and this is sufficient for his conduct and practice. —But he is capable of outstepping this state, and, in fact, by gradual degrees, he does outstep it. Not only is the mental law within him, but he observes that it is within him. Not only does he obey it, in the present case, but he ascertains that it holds good for all cases, present, past, and future. By means of signs, he extracts, denotes, and connects the two abstract terms of water and of extinguished thirst, the two abstract terms of fire and of burning. When this is effected, he considers, by aid of a formula, their couple in itself, excluding all the particular cases in which they are met with. When subjected to this operation, the couples which make up our animal thought assume a new aspect, and, beneath the flow of transient and complex events, we perceive the world of fixed and simple laws.

## BOOK IV.

## THE KNOWLEDGE OF GENERAL THINGS.

## CHAPTER I.

## GENERAL CHARACTERS AND GENERAL IDEAS.

HITHERTO we have only considered particular things, and the knowledge we gain of them; we have now to consider general things, and the ideas we have of them. For there are general things—I mean thereby things common to many instances or individuals; these are characters or groups of characters. Observe, for example, what is meant by the word *water*, or the word *drink*; water denotes a group of characters which is met with alike in a number of liquids, in that of wells, of rivers, of springs, of the sea; drink denotes a group of characters which is met with alike in a number of actions, in all those by which a man or an animal causes a liquid to flow into his mouth and stomach. So is it with the other words of the dictionary; each of them denotes a character or group of characters which is or may be present in many natural cases or individuals. Here we have a new object of knowledge. Just as there are in our minds thoughts corresponding to particular instances and individuals, so are there thoughts corresponding to general characters. These we call general ideas. They form in our minds couples, series, aggregates of various kinds, in short a vast complex edifice. We shall now examine of what elements this mental edifice is composed, how it is constructed, how its equilibrium is maintained, and under what conditions it corresponds to the real and natural edifice of things.

## § I. GENERAL IDEAS WHICH ARE COPIES.

I. General characters play a great part in nature. In the first place, strange as the paradox may appear, a general character is requisite to constitute an individual, a particular lasting thing. Whether it be a body or a mind, this stone or this man, there is a character connecting its various successive moments, a common character which we find alike in all of them. In the case of the stone it is, at every moment and during the whole duration of its existence, the possibility of exciting in us the same sensations of contact, resistance, and form, and of undergoing the same changes of position or structure under the same circumstances; in short, the incessantly renewed presence of the same sensible and physical characters. In the case of the man, it is the constant possession of the same aptitudes and the same inclinations, or, if the expression is preferred, the continuous action of the same brain.—This we have already seen; what lies at the foundation of the idea of self is the idea of a within in opposition to a without, all our events having this common character of appearing to us as internal, in opposition to others which appear to us as external. So again, what lies at the foundation of the idea of a particular body is the idea of certain invariably identical sensations, which may under certain conditions be obtained at any moment.—In short, without pushing the analysis very far, we perceive that existence is in its nature fragmentary, perpetually repeated, made up of an indefinite number of successive portions, just like the flame of a candle, which is a series of ethereal vibrations, or the course of a stream, which is a flow of continually renewed waters. In this immense flow of events—the world—series which are sharply divided from surrounding series, and whose elements are very similar to each other, form what we term particular and individual beings. Each of these beings is a kind of distinct vortex; its continuous repetition resembles permanence; in fact there is nothing permanent in it except its form, that is to say the group of characters common to all its moments. But, from the vanishing and the incessant diversity of all its constituent events, the group of its fixed characters acquires a capital im-

portance, and we legitimately consider it as the essential portion of the individual.

Let us now compare with one another a great number of individuals. It is a remarkable fact that, in spite of the separations of time and space, we find in an indefinite number of individuals, certain characters which are always the same. Six thousand years ago, the plants and animals of Egypt were similar to those of the present day; there are many kinds of plants and animals which have not varied throughout the enormous intervals of geological periods; from one end of the world to the other, at the present time and in epochs separated from the present by myriads of ages, the little mollusk whose shell forms chalk has had the same structure and same existence.—Nay more, many of our chemical bodies, hydrogen, iron, sodium, and others, are met with in the sun, thirty-five millions of leagues from our earth, and beyond that again in stars so remote that it takes several years for their light to reach us, and that their distance escapes all our measurements.—At this prodigious distance the stars are, like the earth, subject to gravitation: this is proved by the movements of double stars. Their light is subject to the same conditions as that of the bodies we burn; this is proved by studying the rays of the spectrum.—Lastly, no scientific man has any doubt that, in accordance with the laws of the conservation of force, movement must have always existed and must exist for ever.—And so, just as there are common characters whose continuous presence connects together the various moments of the individual, so are there common characters whose multiplied and repeated presence connects together the various individuals of the class. These characters are the uniform and fixed portion of dispersed and successive existence, and this alone would suffice to show us the interest we have in separating and seizing them.

But their importance appears still more clearly from another characteristic. We do not arrange them merely for the convenience of thought; they are not simple means of classification, instruments of technical memory. Not only do they exist in fact, without us, and often far beyond

the short range of our senses and our conjectures, but more than this, they are effective. Each of them, by itself and by itself alone, draws on with it another which is its companion, its antecedent or its consequent, and so forms a couple which we term a Law. Thus, in any animal whatever, the presence of *mammæ* implies that of *vertebræ*. In every plant with two cotyledons, the arborescent bark is formed of concentric layers. In all the layers of the atmosphere which become chilled below a certain point, the included vapor is precipitated as dew. Whenever two heavy bodies are in the presence of one another, they attract each other in the direct ratio of their mass and the inverse ratio of the square of their distance. If the vapor of sodium be burnt, its luminous spectrum presents a yellow ray at a determined point.—All these examples show us that general characters are not only the most widely distributed inmates, but also the most important agents of nature; not only have they the largest place, but the principal part and most decisive activity in the field of being.

We must now observe that they are not all equally general. Some are more so, others less; each of them is by so much the more general as it is less complex, and so much the less complex as it is the more general.—In fact, let us begin by considering the group of characters which persists in a particular being, in some man, through the successive moments of his life. This group is a very extensive one; we see this by the multitude of details we are compelled to give when we attempt to describe a human person or soul. But on the other hand, this group only corresponds with this man, and lasts, like him, for a short interval of time only.—Pass now from the individual to the race; the inverse happens; here, no doubt, common characters are much more extended in space, and last much longer in time, since they are met with in an indefinite number of contemporary individuals, and are repeated through an indefinite number of successive generations. But, on the other hand, they are themselves less in number, since necessarily the whole of the characteristics which distinguish each individual from the rest have been left on one side, and since the general type obtained by this



retrenchment is a remnant only.—The same observation is made on passing from the race or variety, that is to say from the Negro or the Indo-European, to the species, that is to say to Man.—Continue and follow out the classifications of Natural History, from the species to the genus, then to the family, to the order, to the sub-kingdom, and to the kingdom. At each step of the ladder, the type, impoverished on the one hand, enriched on the other, loses some of its preceding characters, and acquires new representatives; its elements are more restrained, but its province is more extensive; its contents decrease, while its extension increases.—For instance, the species is less durable than the genus. A particular species of animal, that of the megalosaurians, has perished, after having existed during a geological period, and the genus to which it belonged still subsists in other species which have since arisen, or which have survived; but the characters of the genus are but a fragment of those of the species, and the genus which survives in the modern saurians presents a portion only of the characters of the species which has disappeared.—The rule is everywhere the same. If we pass from organized and living matter to mineral and dead matter, then to mechanical matter, we see the group of characters common to various bodies reduce themselves, on the one hand, till they consist of one or two qualities almost absolutely simple, and become applicable, on the other, till they include all bodies real or imaginable.—Thus general characters arrange themselves in stages, one above the other, and in proportion as their presence becomes more universal, their contents decrease. At the lowest point is the momentary fact, absolutely singular and distinct, which forms the element of the rest; every moment, action, state, or fact, is thus a prodigiously complex datum, differing from every other, and having its special shade of character. This shade of character subtracted, there remains a cluster of characters common to a whole series of facts, and whose persistence forms the individual. If from this cluster we omit all personal characteristics, the remainder forms the race, that is to say a character present in the individual and in many others. An extract from this remainder is the genus, that is to say a character

present in many species; and so on.—By this series of suppressions we pass, from a curtailed remainder, to a remainder still more curtailed, and, at the same time, from a general datum to a still more general datum. At all these stages, the general character is an abstract character, and the more abstract as it becomes more general, and the more general as it becomes more abstract.

II. To these extracts or remnants, present at several points of time and space, correspond within us thoughts of a distinct kind which we term general and abstract ideas.—We have already shown in what these ideas consist.\* A general and abstract idea is a name, nothing but a name, *the significant and comprehended* name of a series of similar facts, or of a class of similar individuals, usually *accompanied* by the sensible, though vague, representation of some one of these facts or individuals. The analysis is one of great delicacy, and we have already performed it; but in such a matter we cannot accumulate too many examples, and I beg the reader will repeat the examination in his own case, choosing some very striking idea which he has recently acquired.—Here is one of my own, whose commencement I clearly recall. Some years ago I saw in England, in Kew Gardens, for the first time, araucarias, and I walked along the beds looking at these strange plants, with their rigid bark, and compact, short, scaly leaves, of a sombre green, whose abrupt, rough, bristling form cut in upon the fine softly lighted turf of the fresh grass-plat. If I now inquire what this experience has left in me, I find, first, the sensible representation of an araucaria; in fact, I have been able to describe almost exactly the form and color of the plant. But there is a difference between this representation and the former sensations, of which it is the present echo. The internal semblance, from which I have just made my description, is vague, and my past sensations were precise. For, assuredly, each of the araucarias I saw, then excited in me a distinct visual sensation; there are no two absolutely similar plants in nature; I observed perhaps twenty or thirty araucarias; without a doubt each one of them differed from the

---

\* Part i. book i. ch. ii.

others in size, in girth, by the more or less obtuse angles of its branches, by the more or less abrupt jutting out of its scales, by the style of its texture; consequently, my twenty or thirty visual sensations were different. But no one of these sensations has completely survived in its echo; the twenty or thirty revivals have blunted one another; thus upset and agglutinated by their resemblance they are confounded together, and my present representation is their residue only. This is the product, or rather the fragment, which is deposited in us, when we have gone through a series of similar facts or individuals. Of our numerous experiences there remain on the following day four or five more or less distinct recollections, which, obliterated themselves, leave behind in us a simple colorless, vague representation, into which enter as components various reviving sensations, in an utterly feeble, incomplete, and abortive state.—But this representation is not the general and abstract idea. It is but its accompaniment, and, if I may say so, the ore from which it is extracted. For the representation, though badly sketched, is a sketch, the sensible sketch of a distinct individual; in fact, if I make it persist and dwell upon it, it repeats some special visual sensation; I see mentally some outline which corresponds only to some particular *araucaria*, and therefore cannot correspond to the whole class; now my abstract idea corresponds to the whole class; it differs, then, from the representation of an individual.—Moreover, my abstract idea is perfectly clear and determinate; now that I possess it, I never fail to recognize an *araucaria* among the various plants I may be shown; it differs, then, from the confused and floating representation I have of some particular *araucaria*.

What is there, then, within me so clear and determinate corresponding to the abstract character common to all *araucarias*, and corresponding to it alone?—A class-name, the name *araucaria*, pronounced or mentally understood, that is to say a *significant* sound, which is *comprehended*, and is, in this way, possessed of two properties. On the one hand, as soon as it is perceived or imagined, it awakes in me the sensible representation, more or less express, of an individual of the class; this attachment is exclusive; it does not arouse in

me the representation of an individual of another class. On the other hand, as soon as I perceive or imagine an individual of the class, I imagine this sound itself, and am tempted to pronounce it ; this attachment again is exclusive ; the real or mental presence of an individual of another class does not rouse it in my mind, and does not call it to my lips.—By this double attachment it becomes incorporated with all the perceptions and sensible representations I have of the individuals of the class, and is incorporated with them alone. But it is not specially attached to any one of them ; it calls up all indifferently ; it is called up indifferently by all. Therefore, if they call it up, it is owing to what all have in common, and not owing to what each has specially ; therefore, again, it is attached to what all have in common and to that alone.—Now this something is precisely the abstract character, the same for all the individuals of the class. It is, then, to this character, and to this character alone, that the name, mentally heard or pronounced, corresponds ; which we express by saying that the name signifies and denotes the character. In this way the name is equivalent to the sight, experience, or sensible representation which we do not and cannot possess of the abstract character present in all the similar individuals. It replaces this character, and performs the same functions.—Thus we conceive the abstract characters of things by means of abstract names which are our abstract ideas, and the formation of our ideas is nothing more than the formation of names, which are *substitutes*.

How does a general and abstract name arise, and by what mechanism does it contract this double exclusive attachment to our sensible representations and special perceptions which gives it its signification and value?—There is here, as we have shown above, a single association of a certain class. We point out a dog to a very little child, and tell him, in the language of the nursery, imitating more or less happily the barking of the animal, “That is a *bow-wow*.” His eye follows the indicating gesture ; he sees the dog, hears the sound, and, after the apprenticeship of some repetitions, the two images, that of the dog and that of the sound, are, in accordance with the law of the association of images, permanently associated

in his mind. In other words, when he next sees the dog, he imagines the sound, and even, by imitative instinct, makes the sound, after some attempts. If the dog barks, he laughs and is delighted, he has a double inducement to utter the new and very striking animal noise of which he has as yet heard a human imitation only.—So far there is nothing original or superior; the brain of every mammal is capable of similar associations; a fox, when he seizes a rabbit certainly imagines beforehand the sharp quick cry of the rabbit; a sporting dog, who hears the cry of a partridge, certainly imagines the visual form of the partridge in the air, and, as to the instinctive reproduction of a sound when heard, there are the well-known cases of parrots and other kinds of imitative animals.

But there is this peculiar to man, the sound which has become associated in his case with the perception of some particular individual is called up again, not only at the sight of absolutely similar individuals, but also by the presence of individuals strikingly different, though in some respects comprised in the same class. In other words, analogies which do not strike animals, strike men.—The child says *bow-wow*, first to the house-dog, then, after a little, he says *bow-wow* to the terriers, mastiffs, and Newfoundlands he sees in the street.—A little later, and he does what an animal never does, says *bow-wow* to a pasteboard dog which barks when squeezed then to a pasteboard dog which does not bark, but which runs on wheels, then to the silent and motionless bronze dog which ornaments the drawing-room, then to his little cousin who runs about the room on all fours, then, at last, to a picture representing a dog.—Under these last circumstances, I saw a little boy two years old repeat the word *bow-wow*, some forty or fifty consecutive times, with extraordinary wonder, animation, and delight. He was held up to look at a shade placed over a light, and ornamented with black figures of dogs which were strongly illuminated. As the shade was turned round, and each new figure appeared, he cried *bow-wow* with an air of triumph; it was the enthusiasm of discovery; and every day it was necessary to repeat it. I determined to count his exclamations; one evening, in less

than three-quarters of an hour, he cried *bow-wow* fifty-three times in succession, and his curiosity was never wearied.—It with the aid of philologists we observe the primitive meanings of words in Latin, Greek, and German, and especially, in Hebrew and Sanscrit, we find at their origin a wholly similar operation :\* a very loose analogy, that is to say a very trifling resemblance between two facts, is sufficient for the name given to the first to be applied to the second.—At the present day, too, our most important discoveries are made in a similar manner. When Oken, coming across the skeleton of a sheep, conceived the skull to be a compound of flattened and consolidated vertebræ; when Goethe, observing petaloid stamens, conceived all the organs of a plant to be transformed leaves; when Newton, seeing an apple fall, conceived the moon to be a heavy body also tending to fall to the earth, they repeated the mental operation and experienced the delight of the little boy who saw the dogs on the lamp-shade and cried out *bow-wow*.—Between a vertebra and the skull, between the green leaf and a pistil or stamen, between the falling apple and the moon travelling through the sky, between the living barking dog and the little figure on the lamp-shade, the difference of appearance is enormous; it seems that the two representations differ all in all. And yet they have a common characteristic; thanks to this common possession, the name called up by the first has also been called up by the second, and henceforward corresponds to a very general and very abstract character.—All that distinguishes man from the animal, intelligent races from those of limited capacity, comprehensive and delicate from ordinary minds, is reduced to this faculty of seizing more delicate analogies, to this contagion, by which the name of an individual attaches to a more different individual, to the property of more dissimilar representations or perceptions to excite the same name. For, the more rare are the points of resemblance, the more individuals does the class contain; the more individuals does it contain, the more general and abstract is the charac-

---

\* Renan, "De l'Origine du Langage," pp. 125, 136. Max Müller, "The Science of Language."

ter to which the idea, that is to say the name, corresponds ; the more general and abstract is this character, the more place does it occupy in nature and the more individuals does it connect.—The discovery of relations between very remote objects, the detection of very delicate analogies, the extraction of common characteristics from very dissimilar objects, the formation of very general ideas, the isolation of very abstract qualities—these expressions are all equivalent, and all these operations are reduced to the calling up the same name by perceptions or representations whose resemblances are very slight, to the excitement of the sign by an almost imperceptible stimulus, to the mental appearance of the word *upon a summons of the slightest nature*.

By means of this aptitude, the child of fifteen months old learns, in two or three years, the principal words of ordinary familiar language.—Observe the profound difference separating this acquisition and the parallel acquisition which a parrot might make. The infant invents and discovers incessantly, and of its own accord ; there is no period of life in which his intelligence is so creative. The names suggested to him by his parents and the persons about him, are but starting points for his innumerable efforts ; hence his joy and trouble.—When once a name he receives is associated in his mind with the perception of an individual object, his mind acts as in the previous example ; he applies the name to the more or less similar objects which he recognizes as alike. This wholly spontaneous recognition appertains entirely to the child ; a parrot does not apply the name which is taught him ; in a bird's brain, it remains isolated ; in a child's brain, it becomes associated to the presence of a general character, which henceforth has only to appear in order to call it up. This is what the child does with words transmitted from *significant words*. There is not even need on all occasions for the words to be transmitted, with deliberate intention and by a human mouth ; sometimes the child seizes them in the involuntary sounds he utters, or in the accidental sounds he catches. "A member of my own family," says Mr. Lieber,\* "showed, in early in-

---

\* "Smithsonian Contributions to Knowledge," vol. ii. p. 15.

fancy, a peculiar tendency to form new words, partly from sounds which the child caught, as *to woh* for *to stop*, from the interjection *woh*, used by waggoners when they wish to stop their horses; partly from symphenomenal emissions of sounds. Thus, when the boy was a little above a year old he had made and established in the nursery the word *nim* for everything fit to eat. I had watched the growth of this word. First, he expressed his satisfaction at seeing his meal, when hungry, by the natural humming sound, which we might express thus, *hm*. Gradually, as his organs of speech became more skilful, and repetition made the sound more familiar and clearer, it changed into the more articulate *um* and *im*. Finally, an *n* was placed before it, *nim* being much easier to pronounce than *im*, when the mouth has been closed. But soon the growing mind began to generalize, and *nim* came to signify everything edible; so that the boy would add the words *good* or *bad*, which he had learned in the meantime. He now would say *good nim*, *bad nim*, his nurse adopting the word with him. On one occasion he said, *fie nim*, for *bad*, *repulsive to eat*.—There is no doubt but that a verb *to nim*, for to eat, would have developed itself, had not the ripening mind adopted the vernacular language, which was offered to it ready made.”—The initiative of the infant is further shown by the incorrect use it makes of our words by giving them a meaning which they have not for us, and which it invents. The same child had learned the words *Good Boy*, which he always pronounced together, and which formed one word for him. “One day, wishing to express the idea *Good Cow*, he said *Goodboy Cow* . . . . Similarly a little girl said to a man, *Doctor naughty girl*, because he had teased her.”—We may sum up the whole apprenticeship of a child by saying that it receives words, but creates their meanings, and that a series of continuous rectifications are required in order that the meaning it attributes to them may coincide with the meaning we attribute to them.

III. Suppose this process accomplished, and the infant arrived at the threshold of adult life. Here begins a new series of re-arrangements, additions and corrections, an indefinite series, carried on from generation to generation, and from



people to people—I mean scientific research.—It is here a question of making our general ideas correspond, no longer with the general ideas of other people, but with the general characters of things. As soon as we are seized with this desire, a primary need declares itself; there are blanks in our ideas; it is necessary to fill these blanks.—For instance, the notion an ordinary person has of the human body is very meagre and incomplete; he only knows it in the rough; to him it is a head, a trunk, a neck, four limbs, of certain color and certain form—that suffices him for practical purposes. But it is clear that the characters special to the human body are infinitely more numerous; such a notion represents some five or six only of the most obvious ones; we must add to it all those which prolonged and varied observation can discover.—The anatomist comes with the desire to see the details and the interior; he dissects, notes, describes, and draws. The text-book for beginners contains a thousand pages, and I cannot tell how many charts and volumes would be required to hold the figures and enumeration of all the parts which the naked eye discovers.—When the eye is aided by the microscope, this number is multiplied a hundredfold. Lyonnet did not find twenty years too much to describe the caterpillar found in willow trees.—Beyond our microscope, more powerful instruments would further increase our knowledge; it is evident that in this direction there is no limit to the research.—So, again, take an inorganic body, water; my idea of it is that of an inodorous, colorless, transparent liquid, fit to drink, which may become ice or steam; nothing more; this is all I know of the enormous group of physical and chemical characters or properties which accompany and constitute water. Physicists and chemists come with their balances, their thermometers, their electrical machines, their optical instruments, their retorts, their reagents, and, in their hands the five or six meshes which make up my idea become multiplied till they form a vast net. But this net, however we may imagine it enlarged, will never have as many meshes as there are characters in the object to which it corresponds; for the discovery of a new body will always be sufficient to add a new character to the object. At the beginning of the century, the

discovery of potassium and sodium showed that, in contact with certain metals, water was decomposed at the ordinary temperature; here was a new character. If we had here the unknown simple bodies which the rays of the spectrum now indicate to us among the stars, and if we could submit water to their action, it would most undoubtedly exhibit unknown properties, which would have to be added to the list.—Meanwhile, with every object, this list, fruitlessly lengthened, remains still open; and the idea we have of a species, a genus, in short, of any list of general characters, never comprises, and can never comprise, more than a limited fragment of their unlimited chain.

Nevertheless, this addition of new links is enough to introduce considerable changes into our ideas. As furnished by common experience, they were most frequently too wide or too narrow; scientific experience comes in to contract or extend them, to adjust their corrected dimensions to the real dimensions of objects.—Whilst the examination is made roughly and only bears on the outer aspects of things, we unite, under a single name and idea, fishes strictly so called and the unicorn fish, the dolphin, the cachalot, the whale. After a more minute and penetrating examination, we find that this idea is too wide; there is no type corresponding to it in nature; the organs of circulation and respiration, the skeleton and limbs, are not the same in fishes strictly so called and in the unicorn fish, cachalot, dolphin, and whale; these last are mammals; they must be taken from the class and set apart; when this operation is accomplished, my idea, reduced to proper limits, agrees with a natural group of characters actually connected and always met with in conjunction, those of the fish.—My idea of the mammal is correspondingly enlarged; it was too narrow as it only comprised terrestrial animals with four legs, and giving suck; I have added to it the cetacea, which swim, and the cheiroptera, which fly; henceforward, being enlarged and proportioned to the extension of the type, it is applicable to all the species which present the same group of characters, whatever be their difference of external appearance and habitation.

So it is in all the provinces of nature. As soon as pro-

found and prolonged analysis ascertains an ignored and important character in a species of objects, this species tends to leave its compartment and to enter another. It was necessary to burn the diamond to know that it was composed of carbon: and it is merely within the last hundred years that the formation of chemistry has enabled the classification of inanimate bodies.—Thanks to these processes, we have been enabled, in each department of nature, to place beings in more and more nearly natural classes, to arrange as in an army, under companies, battalions, regiments, and divisions, the enormous multitude of individuals, all animal forms, all vegetable forms, the hundred and twenty thousand species of plants, two hundred and sixty thousand species of animals, and, in the majority of cases, to determine the real and constant type which constitutes each species, each genus, each family, each order, each sub-kingdom.—We have not invariably succeeded in this; many of our divisions remain artificial, and are convenient only; others, provisional ones, await further researches to become definitive.\* In mineralogy, especially, there is as yet no real classification.—But for the majority of the species and genera of animals and plants, for the vegetable families of Jussieu, for the orders and three higher sub-kingdoms of Cuvier, the acquired general idea corresponds with an actually general thing, that is to say with a group of characters which involve or tend to involve one other, whatever be the individuals and circumstances under which one of them is given.

IV. At present, in addition to these general characters, there are others still more general, which appertain to the *elements* of the classified individuals, and which, spread universally under various disguisements, are, through their ascendancy, the regulators of the rest.—Hence it follows that of all general ideas, those corresponding to such characters are by far the most valuable.—We attain these characters, like the rest, by taking a general type already known, and by gradually removing from it a number of accessory characters

---

\* For instance, the sub-kingdom of zoophytes, the class of infusoria and that of entozoa.

so as to preserve only the most stable and most universal.—The idea of the leaf in botany is of this kind.\* It is now known that the various organs of a plant are nothing more than transformed leaves. Developed in spirals on the stem, they are drawn together at the summit in superposed horizontal verticils, whose various stages are the various parts of the flower. The impoverishment of the final vegetation has drawn them together, and other circumstances have consolidated and deformed them. Sometimes, one among them has become abortive; sometimes, two or more of them have become monstrous. But the original type is manifested by fixed relations, by sudden reversions, by a thousand incontestible characteristics; and the idea of the leaf, disengaged from all sensible impressions, purified, drawn by energetic abstraction far away from common experience, is nothing more than the almost geometrical idea of a cycle of vegetable elements, which preserve their primordial order under all imaginable forms and in all imaginable functions.—And so, in animals, through all the diversities of structure and function, we find throughout the whole class of mammalia the same type of skeleton, throughout the whole class of crustacea, as throughout the whole class of insects, the same type of segments, of mouth, and limbs; and this type is so tenacious that, in many species, we find, to evidence its presence, the subsistence or appearance of useless parts or dispositions; a suture, a set of teeth, a nail, a bony excrescence, transient or rudimentary organs render it visible by presenting its transitory memorial or surviving remnant.

Other still more general characters or groups of characters are met with under the name of chemical and physical properties of bodies, not only in the living, but also in the inorganic world. Here again, the process which forms the corresponding idea is the same.—Vulgar experience has discovered some property of a body—for instance, the power of amber to attract to it small and very light objects. Multiplied and precise experience multiplies and renders precise the circumstances and instances of this attraction. By de-

---

\* Auguste Saint-Hilaire, "*Morphologie végétale*," pp. 10, et seq.

grees, we let slip these variable characters to seize only on its fixed characters. We thus isolate a universal mode of action, that is, electric action, one determinate, purified, extended idea coincides with a force which operates or may operate in all bodies.—And so again, before the researches of the scientific men of the Renaissance, our idea of a heavy body was that of a body tending downwards, and impressing on us, when lifted, a sensation of muscular effort. In proportion to our discoveries this idea becomes more abstract.—In the first place, it is not necessary that such bodies should afford a sensation of resistance to the hand lifting them; for the air which sustains the mercury in the barometer is heavy. Further, it is not only in a downward direction that bodies fall; for, the earth being round, they fall at the antipodes in a different direction from what they do with us. Thus, all within our atmosphere falls, and falls toward the centre of our planet.—But, for a body to fall, it is not necessary that it should be comprised in our atmosphere; of the two movements which make up the whole movement of the moon, one is a fall towards us.—With two further steps, the purification of our idea is accomplished. It is not only bodies disposed about the earth which tend to fall to it: all the bodies of our solar system tend to fall towards one another. It is not only the huge heavenly masses which attract each other mutually; all their molecules, the most distant and the most nearly approaching, attract each other mutually according to the same law, in the direct ratio of their mass and the inverse ratio of the square of their distance.—Gravity, thus defined, is a character so persistent as to appear indestructible; each body preserves its own, always equal and intact, through all the changes of state we can make it undergo, and in all the chemical combinations into which it can possibly enter.

Such is the progress by which our general ideas are formed and adjusted to general things. These ideas pass through two states. First the idea rises with the sign; then it is gradually rectified. In fact, as we find it in current language, and as vulgar experience furnishes it, it corresponds imperfectly to its object.—On the one hand, it is incomplete and vague; in

other words, the general characters which it denotes are neither precise enough nor numerous enough. By more attentive observation and more varied experience, we determine the ascertained characters, and add on to them a row of new characters.—On the other hand it is not sufficiently purified and abstract; in other words, among the characters it denotes, there are accessory and accidental ones amalgamated with those which are important and fixed. By extended experience and multiplied comparison, we expel the parasitical and transient characters, so as to preserve those only which are intrinsic and stable.—Our idea has become adapted to its object, first by *addition*, then by *subtraction*.

## § II.—GENERAL IDEAS WHICH ARE MODELS.

I. Another class of general ideas presents other characteristics and is formed by another process. These are the ideas which compose arithmetic, geometry, mechanics, and in general, all sciences treating, like mathematics, of the possible and not of the real. We form these ideas without examining whether there are in nature objects which correspond to them, and for this we *construct* them.

Let us follow the detail of this construction, and see with what elements we fabricate these new ideas.—The most simple of all are those of arithmetic, which have numbers for their objects. Now we all know that every number is formed by unity added to itself; it is the notion of unity, then, which we shall first examine.—It comprises nothing mysterious, and its origin has nothing strange in it. We are not dealing here with the absolute and metaphysical unity which consists in the property of being indivisible, or rather, without parts, and which would be possessed, for example, by one of Leibnitz's monads. We deal simply with an office which any object whatever may fulfil, with the function it performs, with the part it plays, in contributing with others like it to form a collection. It is in this aspect alone that we consider it; therefore, twenty heaps of stones by a roadside are, in this sense, twenty units as much as twenty monads. The unity of each heap is nothing more than its aptitude for entering as a factor

into the total of twenty heaps, and into any other analogous total, greater or smaller. Consequently it is, like every aptitude, property, and capacity, nothing more than a general character of the object, and this character may be disengaged, extracted, and set apart by ordinary processes, that is to say by means of a name, and, in general, by means of a sign.—Moreover, there is no character more easy to set apart; for all objects and all events present it, since every object and every event contributes with other similar ones to form a collection which is its class. The materials, then, from which the notion of unity may be extracted exists in superabundance, and the first step of arithmetic may be made in all regions.

Let us, then, observe a series of objects or events, taking care to consider in each of them its capacity only to enter as a component in a collection. For this, let us purposely omit all its other characters; after this retrenchment, a row of poplars, a series of sounds, any other series or row, ceases to be a row of poplars, a series of sounds, a series or row of determinate objects or events; it is nothing more than a sequence, row or series of *ones* or *units*. Now in this point of view, all ones are the same one, and all series of ones are the same series; for the characters which distinguish individuals from one another, and series from one another, having been excluded, the individuals can no longer be distinguished from one another, and the series can no longer be distinguished from one another. Here, then, we have an abstract series composed of abstract units.—To observe this series more conveniently, men have substituted for it a sensible series of very manageable objects, sometimes of little pebbles, sometimes the ten fingers of the two hands.\* Nothing is easier than to raise, successively, one by one, the fingers of the closed hand, or to lower, successively, one by one, the fingers of the open hand.—Nothing is easier than to add pebbles, one by one, in such a way as to make a heap, or to take away pebbles, one by one, in such a way as to unmake the heap. And as, by

---

\* Calculation is derived from *calculus*, a little pebble. The Roman numerals I, II, III, V, X, are rude drawings representing one or many fingers, one or both hands.—Our system of numeration by tens was originated by the fact of our having ten fingers.

taking away or adding one or more pebbles, by raising or lowering one or more fingers, we can *visibly* alter the total of the collected pebbles or of the lifted fingers, it is easy, not only to fabricate in this way various *visible* totals, but also to observe *with our eyes* how these totals are made and unmade.\* We make them progressively, as to pebbles, by adding a pebble to the first pebble and so on, as to the fingers by raising a finger in addition to the first finger, and so on. We unmake them progressively, as to pebbles, by removing a first pebble and so on, as to the fingers by lowering a first finger and so on.—These are the primitive substitutes; each finger or pebble visibly replaces an abstract unit: the different groups of visible fingers or pebbles replace the different groups of abstract units, and, in proportion as a visible finger or pebble is added to the group of visible fingers or pebbles, a pure unit is added to the group of pure units.

At present, in the place of these already convenient substitutes, we substitute other still more manageable ones, the various sounds which constitute our names of number. For a lifted finger, we say one, for two fingers lifted, two, for three fingers lifted, three, and so on up to ten. In this way, the name *one* replaces a lifted finger, and therefore an abstract unit. So, again, each one of the following names replaces a group of lifted fingers, and therefore a group of abstract units. So, finally, when we pass from a name of number to the following name, a finger is lifted to add to the preceding group of lifted fingers, an abstract unit is added to the preceding group of abstract units, and the name of number expressed replaces the group of units which replaced the preceding one, together with an additional unit. In other words, each name of number is equivalent to the group denoted by the preceding one, with the addition of one.†—So as not to encumber

---

\* See the very elegant and very delicate analysis of this mental process in Condillac's "Langue des Calculs."

† As to the primitive meaning of our nouns of number see Bopp, "Comparative Grammar" (tr. Breal) ii. 221. *Tri* (three) means "exceeding"—i. e., the two inferior number.—our probably means, three *plus* one; five, four *plus* one; ten, twice five.—A hundred certainly means, ten times ten.—A thousand probably means, many, a great number.



our memory, we reduce these names to what is strictly necessary. When we get beyond ten, we say eleven, twelve,\* thirteen,† and so on, till we get to nineteen.—After nineteen, as the following number is equivalent to twice ten, well-constructed languages revert to the word two, modifying it suitably, and similarly modifying the names of the following numbers, so as to make them express three times ten, four times ten, and the sequence of decades up to ten times ten.‡ The decades thus form units of a second order, capable, like simple units, of being counted up to ten.—Arrived here, we give their total the name of hundred, and this new total forms a unit of the third order, capable in its turn of being repeated up to ten hundred, or a thousand, a unit of the fourth order.—The previous operation, repeated on this new unit, leads us up to ten thousand, thence to a hundred thousand, thence to a million, and so on, so that with eleven names, arranged in a certain order, we can represent precisely an enormous group, such for instance as the collection of two million, three hundred and twenty-seven thousand, six hundred and forty-eight units.

An expression like this is a very abbreviatory substitute; for it may be pronounced in less than a second; nothing shorter has been found in the matter of sounds. But, when written for the eyes, it occupies a line and a half, and requires sixty-seven characters; this is a great deal, and, in this respect, it may be improved.—For written names, we substitute more simple characters, which, instead of replacing nouns of number directly, and numbers themselves indirectly, replace numbers directly. These characters are called ciphers; it is arranged that a cipher placed to the left of another denotes units of an immediately higher order, that is to say, ten times as great; we compose a list of nine distinct ciphers to represent the nine first numbers; we add to this list a zero to represent the absence of unity or number, and then, instead of sixty-seven characters, we need employ seven only to represent a collection of 2,327,648 units.

---

\* In Latin, undecim, duodecim.

† In Latin, tredecim. In German, zwölf, dreizehn, derived from zwei, drei.

‡ In German, Zwanzig. In Latin, triginta, quadraginta, quinquaginta, etc. In old French, septante, octante, nonante.

Thanks to these abbreviatory notations, we construct a prodigious quantity of compounds which are numbers. For this, it is enough to arrange the ciphers or to utter the names, recollecting the meanings which our convention has imposed on them.—Let us now observe the characters of the idea so constructed. When we read and understand one of these groups of signs, for instance, 2,327,648, we do not consider whether nature furnishes an object corresponding to our idea. Is there anywhere a group of real units to which this collection of mental units is, feature for feature, adapted? This is a question we set aside; we pay no heed to it; our idea has been constructed for its own sake.—And yet there is a possibility of this mental construction coinciding with some real construction. For to the elements of which my idea is constructed, there correspond elements included in things. In fact, what I call unity, is the aptitude to enter into a collection. Now there is no natural individual or actual event which may not so enter; whether it be a body or a mind, an external or internal modification, as soon as we perceive a fact or thing, we put it in its class, that is to say with others similar to it; moreover, as soon as the object is conceived by us, it spontaneously calls up in us, without our desiring it, and solely by the law of association of ideas, other more or less similar objects. Together they form a group of more or less similar data, each of them having the character of being a distinct datum among many other analogous ones. In this manner, and in this narrow sense, it is a unit among many other units.—There are, then, collections of units in nature, as there are collections of units in the mind. In fact, there are a certain number of planets about the sun. There are, at this moment, a certain number of men, animals, and plants, living on the earth. During this year, the earth or any other planet, has advanced a certain number of kilometres in its orbit. During this year, a certain number of persons have died in France. Whilst my mind performs its additions and subtractions, nature performs hers. I fabricate in advance a long series of distinct moulds, arranged according to their increasing dimensions; nature fabricates, or has fabricated with her various clays all that is required to fill them;

and the thing contained is adjusted to what contains it, first, because the mental elements of the one were fashioned upon the real elements of the other, next, because the artificial structure of the containing thing happens to correspond with the natural structure of the thing contained.

II. This is the character common to all the ideas we construct; they are *preliminary outlines*; when we form one of them, we have no real thing in view to which we attempt to make our thought conform; and nevertheless, our thought is found to conform to one or more real things as yet unknown, which, when known, will manifest this conformity.

Not that the adaptation is always exact; there are cases in which it is approximate only. Of this kind are geometrical ideas. Let us first search for the elements with which we construct them; we all know that they are few in number, and we readily see from what experiences we extract them.—Take any body observed by the senses, this stone, this piece of wood. It has, as limit, one or more outer parts enclosing its inner part; and these outer parts by which it terminates are its surfaces. But each of these surfaces is itself terminated by one or more limits which are called lines, and each of these lines is itself terminated by two limits which are called points.—So far there is no difficulty; each of these limits, surface, line, or point is a character of the body, a character isolated by abstraction, considered apart, and, moreover, general, that is to say common to many bodies, or rather, universal, that is to say common to all bodies. We detach this character and denote it by means of symbols, which are sometimes the names of surface, line, and point, sometimes a class of sensible objects, very manageable, and selected to take the place of all the rest, the real surface of a black board or white paper, the slender trace left on the paper or board by a stroke of ink or chalk, the little dot left by the momentary touch of the pen or chalk.—The dot being very small we are disposed to pay no attention to its length and breadth, though real; by this omission we involuntarily make abstraction of them, and have no difficulty in treating the dot as a point.—The trace being very thin, we are not disposed to trouble ourselves about its breadth, though real;

by this omission we cut it away, and come, without difficulty, to consider the stroke as a line.—The board and the paper being very flat, and level to the eye and hand, we experience no sensation to remind us of their thickness; by this omission we suppress it, and are led to consider the board and paper as true surfaces.—In this way the board, the narrow stroke, the little spot of chalk, become convenient substitutes. They are sensible and special things, but they replace wholly abstract and general limits, in the same way as, just now, in arithmetic, pebbles and fingers replaced pure units.

To these elements so represented, add another movement; it is also met with in the majority of bodies we perceive; we are, then, capable of detaching it from them. When once these data are extracted, it is sufficient to combine them in different ways to obtain all geometrical compounds. In addition to this, by a still further reduction, we find that the point and movement are sufficient elements for the reconstruction of the two other kinds of limits which we have termed the line and surface, and further, of the solid body, from which we have drawn, with the ideas of surface and line, those of point and movement.—In fact, imagine a point, that is to say the limit of a line, and assume that it moves; the continuous series of positions it occupies forms a line. Assume this line to move; the continuous series of the positions it occupies forms a surface. Assume this surface to move; the continuous series of the positions it occupies forms a solid body, *at least, in a geometrical point of view*. And the substitutes we have adopted for the point, line, and surface, render this construction sensible to us. By prolonging this little dot of chalk, we see a slender trace produced. By causing this whole trace to move in a mass, we see a greater or less surface produced. By mentally causing the surface of the board to recede, we see the whole solid board produced.—From this general construction, let us pass to special ones. Let there be two points; if the first moves towards the second, and towards the second only, the line it describes is straight.—If, during an appreciable fragment of its movement, it moves towards the second point, and then, during other equally appreciable fractions, towards a third, a fourth, etc., the line it

describes is broken, or composed of distinct straight lines.—If at each instant of its movement it moves towards a different point, the line it describes is curved. Such are the different species of lines.—Next, if two straight lines start from the same point, and move, each towards a different point, they diverge from one another, and this greater or less divergence is called an angle. If the two angles which the second line makes to left and right with the first are equal, they are called right angles, and we say that the second line is perpendicular to the first. Such are angles.—With straight lines cutting each other in pairs, and forming certain angles, we construct all triangles, all quadrilaterals, and generally, all polygons.—If we submit a curve to the condition of having all its points at an equal distance from some other anterior point, we have circumference.—“The plane surface, or plane, is generated by a straight line perpendicular to another, and turning about it while always passing through some one point in it.”\* With planes terminated by certain polygons and forming certain angles by their mutual inclination, we construct all polyhedra.—By the revolution of the semicircle about its diameter, of the rectangle about one of its sides, of the right angled triangle about one of the sides containing the right angle, we form the sphere, the cylinder, the cone; by sections of the cone, we form the ellipse, parabola, and hyperbola; by various combinations of the primitive elements, and of these first compounds, we form all possible species of lines, surfaces, and solids, sometimes so complex that imagination cannot form them, and that, if nature or art were to furnish instances of them, the most attentive eye could not contrive precisely to distinguish all their characters.

Are there in nature physical constructions conforming to these mental constructions?—And first, are there in nature surfaces, lines and points? Yes, certainly, at least as far as our senses are concerned; for, to our senses, a body has surfaces which are the limits in which it appears to be contained, a surface has its lines which are the limits by which it seems circumscribed, a line has its points which are the limits by

---

\* Duhamel, “De la Méthode dans les sciences de raisonnement,” 2<sup>me</sup> partie, 12.

which it seems to be terminated, or by which we may interrupt it.—Are there in nature surfaces, lines, and points which move? Yes, since bodies move and their limits accompany them in their movement.—Next, are there in nature points, lines, and surfaces, which, in their motions and combinations, rigorously conform to the conditions enunciated in our constructions? In other words, are there perfect straight lines, right angles, squares, circles, planes, polyhedra, round bodies?—As far as we can judge, nature does not furnish us with such. When we arm our eye with a powerful microscope, we find inflections in what seem the straightest lines, roughness in the smoothest planes, irregularities in the most regular forms. A cannon-ball appears to advance in a straight line; theory shows us that it begins to fall the moment it leaves the cannon. The planets seem to describe an ellipse; observation and the calculations of their perturbations prove that this ellipse is not exact.—In short, when we compare the work of nature and the work of the mind, we prove that their conformity is not entire; the first approximates to the second; that is all. Usually, this coincidence is remote enough, but, even in the most favorable instances, it fails in some point; we might say that the real substance attempts to mould itself on the mental form, but that the imperfection of its material hinders it from copying rigorously the prescribed shape.

There is a reason for this impotence; and, if we take cases whose theory is constructed, we are able to explain it. The cannon-ball would advance continuously in a straight line, if gravity did not cause it to descend towards the ground. The planet would describe a perfect ellipse, if the variable proximity of the other planetary bodies did not intervene to alter the regularity of its curve. If the ball deviates from its straight line and the planet from its ellipse, it is through other perturbing directions being added to the simple direction followed by the ball, to the two simple directions according to which the planet travels. Consequently, if the real construction is but approximately adjusted to the mental construction, it is owing to the first being more complex and the second simpler. Disencumbered of its accessory elements, and reduced to its principal elements, the first would pre-

cisely copy the second ; and in fact, it does approximate to it in proportion as its ulterior or accessory elements become feeble, and leave greater ascendancy to its primitive or principal element.—Thus, in geometry, as just now in arithmetic, our preliminary outlines have a function and a value. Though constructed on their own accounts, they have a relation with things. In a certain sense they are exact, and, with a complementary operation, they may become so. The divergence we observe between them and the facts may disappear, and does in fact disappear in two ways.—We have seen it disappear by an abstraction, that is to say by the mental omission of certain elements of the facts ; in this way, the *reduced* facts are adjusted to the outlines.—It may also disappear by an inverse process, that is to say by the introduction into the outlines of the elements omitted in their preliminary construction ; to the consideration of the principal or primitive directions, we add those of the perturbing directions, whether ulterior or accessory, and, in this way, the *completed* outlines will be adjusted to the facts.

III. Other elements, fashioned like the preceding ones on the general characters of natural objects, combine with the preceding ones to form new outlines. We may consider movement, not only as having the effect of describing a line, but in itself. Daily, beneath our eyes, a prodigious quantity of bodies are at rest or in motion, so that in this point of view experience furnishes us with all the materials necessary to enable us to isolate the two elementary ideas of *rest* and *motion*.

Take a body in motion ; it passes from one point to another while describing a line ; we have many occasions of observing that, according to circumstances, this same line is described in more or less time, and we thence draw a new elementary idea, that of *velocity*.—Take a body passing from rest to motion ; in the majority of cases, we discover that something has been altered in it or in its surroundings, and after a certain number of experiences we ascertain, or believe that we ascertain, that this internal or external alteration is always followed by the movement of the body. Whatever be this condition of motion, the import of another body, the

attraction of a magnet, electric repulsion, whether it appear to reside in the moved body or in another, is of no importance ; we call it *force*, without forming any previous conclusion as to its nature, and we mean nothing more by this name than a condition whose presence is sufficient to excite the motion, a condition which is met with in an infinite number of various circumstances, and which, when detached and isolated by a mental fiction, thus becomes wholly general and abstract. In this state of purity, it is defined only by its relation with the movement it excites. Therefore, if in the movement it excites we find a character susceptible of magnitude, the force will be susceptible of magnitude ; now, we have just seen that this character is velocity. In this manner, we speak of a force as double or triple another ; and we thereby mean nothing more than a condition whose presence is enough to excite in the same body, surrounded by the same circumstances, a movement, twice, thrice, four, etc., times as rapid as the first.

When this is settled, we can take a step in advance. Among the bodies we examine, there are some which appear to us homogeneous, that is to say composed of particles all of which are perfectly similar, except in the difference of their position in the body ; such, for instance, is a measure of pure water, a piece of refined gold. From this indication of experience, we have no difficulty in conceiving an absolutely homogeneous movable body, analogous to a pure geometrical solid, divisible therefore into two halves, each composed of the same number of exactly similar particles. Now, take a force which impresses a certain velocity on the block formed by the half of these particles ; as, by definition, these two halves are absolutely similar and may be substituted without inconvenience for one another, it will require a force absolutely similar and capable of being substituted without inconvenience for the other, that is to say, in short, an equal force, to impress the same velocity on the block formed by the other half, consequently two forces, each equal to the first, that is to say a double force, to impress the same velocity on the block formed by the two halves. Thus arises our last elementary notion, that of *mass*, which is found to be a quan-



tity like velocity, and henceforward, we measure force in two ways, either by the magnitude of the mass on which it impresses a certain velocity, or by the velocity which it impresses on a certain mass. With these elements, denoted by means of lines, ciphers, and words, we are able to construct an infinite number of different mental compounds, to conceive, first, a movable body at rest, or to which no force is applied, then, a movable body at rest to which a force is applied, then, by a further complication, to imagine a movable body to which are applied two or more equal or unequal forces, which impel it in the same line, in the same or in contrary directions, or which impel it in different lines, etc. By this operation, the science of mechanics acquires similar outlines to those of geometry, and the facts conform to the outlines in the first case in the same manner and in the same degree as in the second.

One of the most simple of these intellectual combinations is that of a movable body at rest and remaining at rest for an indefinite period ; for, in this case, there is no idea of a new state introduced.—Another, which is fellow to it, and almost equally simple, is that of a body in motion which moves on in a straight line with uniform velocity, and that indefinitely ; for, to form this conception, requires a minimum of mental elements. In the first place, there is no simpler line than the straight line, since, when the starting point is given, all required to determine it is a single second point, whilst for every other line, broken or curved, many or an infinite number of such points are required. Secondly, it is more simple for velocity once given to subsist invariably with the same magnitude ; for in this way, no new magnitude is introduced. Lastly, it is more simple for the movement, once given, to subsist indefinitely ; for in this way, no new state is introduced.

Now it is an admirable thing that the bodies of nature, however different they may be, however different may be the real forces by which they are set in motion, or the real circumstances in which they happen to be at rest, all tend to conform to this double conception. We assure ourselves of this by experience ; real matter is inert, and indifferent to rest or

motion. In order for a body at rest to move, the intervention of a force is required; if this intervention is wanting, it remains indefinitely at rest, and its tendency to persist in its state is so thoroughly inherent to all its particles, that, according to the magnitude of its mass, it requires a force of corresponding magnitude to impress on it the same velocity.—On the other hand, in order that a body in motion may stop, or change its velocity, or deviate from a straight line, there is also required the intervention of another force. This stone which I cast in the air, this ball driven from the cannon by the explosion of powder, would continue their route indefinitely, the one towards the stars, the other along a tangent to the earth, in a straight line, with the initial velocity, if gravity and the resistance of the air did not intervene to bend the straight line, to diminish the velocity, and finally, to arrest the movement. As far as we can judge by observation, there is no particle of matter, at rest or in motion, which, taken by itself and with the abstraction of all perturbing solicitations, does not conform itself to this conception.

Let us now introduce a new condition, the simplest we can, into our mental compound; let us suppose the initial force, instead of acting at the first instant only, to continue to act during the whole duration of the movement, and consequently the velocity of the movement to increase uniformly. By a coincidence almost as beautiful as the preceding one, we find that this kind of motion is that of all falling bodies.\*—Lastly, let us imagine a body, subject to this kind of motion, and to uniform rectilinear motion besides. The coincidence is no less surprising; to our intellectual construction corresponds a real movement, similarly composed in all

---

\* “‘When a stone falls,’ says Galileo, ‘if we consider the matter attentively, we shall find that there is no addition, no increase, of the velocity more simple than that which is always added in the same manner,’ that is, when equal additions take place in equal times. From this law, thus assumed, he deduced that the spaces described from the beginning of the motion must be as the squares of the times; and again, assuming that the laws of descent for balls rolling down inclined planes, must be the same as for bodies falling freely, he verified this conclusion by experiment.”—Whewell’s “History of the Inductive Sciences,” ii. 30, citing Galileo. ‘Dial. Sc.’ iv. p. 91.

respects, with respect to the curve traced, with respect to the alternately increasing and decreasing velocities, that of the planets about the sun. Thus it is that the mathematician prepares beforehand moulds which the physicist will subsequently proceed to fill.—There are three conditions requisite for these moulds to have a chance of agreeing with things. It is first necessary for the mental elements with which they are fabricated to be traced in exact accordance with the elements of real things; for then the elements of our mould will be found in nature.—It is then necessary for them to be very general, and, if possible, universal, for the more general they are, the more considerable will be the number of individuals or instances in which they will be found, and if universal, they will be found in all.—Lastly, it is necessary for the combinations we give them to be as simple as possible; for there is the more chance of our finding them in nature, since a minimum of elements and conditions is then sufficient for their production.

IV. It will be understood that this process may be applied to all classes of objects, since, in all classes of objects, we meet and isolate general characters capable of being combined with one another. In fact, we suppose perfect solids, that is to say bodies absolutely rigid, and such that, all their parts being indissolubly connected, one particle cannot be displaced without displacing all the rest, in such a way that the reciprocal position of their particles is never altered in any way. And so, we assume the existence of perfect or absolutely fluid liquids, such that no one of their particles has the least adherence to the adjacent ones, and that all can move with perfect freedom about one another. So finally, we conceive water or oxygen as absolutely pure, platina or lead as free from all alloy, without being sure that nature ever furnishes, or art has ever obtained, objects such as we conceive.—Among mental types so constructed, there are some which are more particularly interesting to us; they are those to which we *desire* that things should conform, and in this case the need of conformity becomes for us a spring of action. We construct the Useful, the Beautiful, and the Good, and we so act as to approximate things, as far as possible, to these constructions.—For instance,

when we find rough unhewn scattered stones, we imagine them hewn, transported, and piled up, in the spot in which we wish to live, and, in conformity with the idea of the wall so constructed, we actually construct the real wall which is to shelter us from the weather.—We survey the men who live around us, we are struck with a certain general form appropriate to them; we observe, sometimes in one, and sometimes in another, higher degrees of the external signs of some quality or disposition beneficial to the individual or the race, agility, vigor, health, sagacity, or energy;\* we gradually collect these different signs; we take pleasure in contemplating a human form in which the characters we consider most important and most valuable are manifested by a deeper and more universal print, and if an artist be found in whom this group of conceived conditions results in an express image, a sensible representation, an internal half-sight, he takes a block of marble and hews out the ideal form which Nature has not been able to display to us.—Finally, when we survey the different motives which impel men to wit, we observe that the individual acts most frequently with a view to his personal benefit, that is to say through interest, often with a view to the benefit of another person whom he loves, that is to say, through sympathy, very rarely with a view to the general good, with complete abstraction of his interests or of his sympathies, with no more regard to himself or his friends than for any other individual, without any other intention than that of being useful to the community present or future, of all sentient and intelligent beings. We separate this last motive, we desire that it should have an ascendancy in all human deliberation, we praise it loudly, we inculcate it on others, we sometimes strive to give it the empire over ourselves. We have thus constructed the idea of a certain moral character, and, in fact, on occasion, at a considerable distance, we adapt our actual character to this model.—Thus arise works of industry, art, and virtue, with the object of filling or diminishing the interval which separates our conceptions from things.

---

\* I have worked out this analysis in detail in "*La Philosophie de l'Art*," and in "*L'Idéal dans l'Art*."

## CHAPTER II.

## THE COUPLES OF GENERAL CHARACTERS AND GENERAL PROPOSITIONS.

I. HITHERTO, in general ideas, we have studied only the general ideas themselves and the manner in which they are formed, sometimes by extraction, sometimes by construction, sometimes when, after detecting a common character in many similar facts or individuals, we have conceived it apart by means of a sign, and have, by a series of additions and rectifications, caused the comprehension and extension of our idea to coincide with the comprehension and extension of the character it denotes; sometimes when, after distinguishing and conceiving apart certain very simple general characters, we have combined ideas thus acquired so as to form of them mental compounds, which are preliminary moulds to which the real compounds have a possibility of being found to conform, or preliminary models to which we desire to make the real compounds conform.—A second investigation remains to be effected. In nature, general characters are not detached from one another; whatever be the character we have noted, we never fail to find it connected with some other. In fact, the one involves the other, or at least tends to involve it. Sometimes it is the first which involves the second, sometimes the second which involves the first, sometimes each of them involves the other. In all these cases, the two characters form a *couple*, and this couple is termed a law. To conceive a law, is to connect together two general ideas, in other words, to form a general judgment, in other words again, to mentally enounce a general proposition. We shall now examine how it is we arrive at connecting these ideas, at forming these judgments, at mentally enunciating these propositions.

II. Let us first consider these couples or laws in them-

selves. Every piece of iron exposed to damp becomes rusted. Every crystal capable of scratching any other body whatever is a diamond, that is to say a crystal of pure carbon. All bodies immersed in a liquid lose a portion of their weight equal to the weight of the liquid they displace. In every polygon, the sum of the internal angles together with four right angles is equal to twice as many right angles as the figure has sides.—Here are laws; each of them consists in a couple of general and abstract characters which are connected. On the one hand, the property of being iron and of being exposed to damp, on the other, the formation of the chemical compound termed rust; on the one hand, extreme hardness, and on the other, the property of being a crystal of pure carbon; on the one hand, the amount of weight lost by the immersed body, and on the other, the equal quantity of the weight of the displaced liquid; on the one hand, the sum of the internal angles of the polygon together with four right angles, on the other hand, the equal sum of twice as many right angles as the figure has sides: it is evident that all these data are general characters, that is to say characters common to an indefinite number of individuals or cases; that all these data are abstract characters, that is to say extracts considered apart; that all these data are connected characters, that is to say such that, the first being given, the second is also given.—There is nothing more advantageous to the human mind than this structure of things; we discern at once that our chief attempt must be to discover connections similar to the foregoing ones; for there is no better means of extending and increasing our knowledge. When once the law is discovered, the first character becomes the indication of the second; in future it will be sufficient for us to ascertain the presence of the first; we may then, blindfold and without inquiry, assert the presence of the second. In fact, at present, it is sufficient for us to know that this piece of metal is iron, and exposed to damp from water, steam, or fog, to foresee that, in some hours or days, it will be covered with rust. It is sufficient for us to collect the water which has run from the full vessel and to weigh it, to know beforehand the weight lost by the immersed body. It is sufficient

for us to count the sides of the polygon, to take two from their number, and multiply the remainder by two, to know beforehand the number of right angles contained by the polygon. It is sufficient for us to observe that a given crystal scratches the hardest bodies, to enable us to declare that when burnt it will furnish carbonic acid.—Owing to these established connections, an anatomist who opens a human body, is able to describe beforehand the color, form, structure, and disposition of the nervous cells and arterial network which his microscope will show in a particular part of a particular organ. Owing to these established connections, an astronomer is able to predict the duration, time, and magnitude of the eclipse, which, a century hence, will hide the sun from the inhabitants of some particular country.

These very valuable connections are of many kinds.— Sometimes the two connected characters are *simultaneous*. Two cases then present themselves.—Either the first character may involve by its presence the presence of the second without the presence of the second involving that of the first. Thus, when the sum of the digits of a number is divisible by nine, the number itself is divisible by three, but the converse is not true; when an animal has mammæ, it has vertebræ, but the converse is not true. In this case, the link joining the two characters is unilateral or simple.—Or again, the first character may involve by its presence the presence of the second, and the presence of the second may involve in its turn the presence of the first. Thus, in every polygon, three sides are always accompanied by a number of angles equal to two right angles, and conversely; in every mammal, incisor teeth invariably accompany a short digestive tube and carnivorous instincts, and conversely. In this case, the link joining the two characters is bilateral and double.—Sometimes, of the two connected characters, one termed the antecedent *precedes*, and one termed the consequent *follows*; the first is then termed the cause of the second, and the second the effect of the first. Then again two cases present themselves.— Either the first character may excite by its presence the existence of the second, and the second, in its turn, may require, for its production, the preliminary presence of the first.

Thus, every movable body to which are applied two divergent forces of which one is continuous will describe a curve ; and a movable body in order to describe a curve requires the previous application of two divergent forces of which one is continuous. In this case, the link joining the two characters is bilateral or double.—Or again, the first may excite by its presence the existence of the second, without the second requiring for its production the previous presence of the first. Thus, every series of vibrations of certain velocity transmitted to the auditory nerve by the surrounding medium excites in us the sensation of sound ; but this sensation may arise spontaneously in our sensory centres, without the previous vibration of an external body or a surrounding medium. In this, which is the most usual case, the link of the two characters is unilateral or simple ; it is the most important case and the one which we shall examine with most attention ; we can reduce the others to it, and we usually express it by saying that the cause produces the effect.

III. It now remains to be seen in what the connection of the two characters consists. Is there any virtue or secret reason which is resident in the one and involves or evokes the other ? This question we reserve ; we shall discuss it later on. At present, the words connection, link, implication, excitement, requirement are nothing more than abbreviatory metaphors. When we say that the antecedent gives rise to the consequent, we are not thinking of the mysterious link by which metaphysicians connect cause and effect, nor of the intimate and incorporeal force which certain philosophers insert between the thing producing and the product. “The only notion,” says Mill, “of which induction has need, may be attained by experience. We learn by experience that there is in nature an invariable order of succession, and that each fact is always preceded by another fact. We call the invariable antecedent, cause, and the invariable consequent, effect.” No other foundation underlies these two words. We wish simply to say that, at every time and place, the application of heat will be followed by the dilatation of bodies, that at every time and place, the vibration of the external body transmitted by the surrounding medium to the healthy auditory nerve



will be followed by the sensation of sound. "The real cause is the series of conditions—the whole of the antecedents without which the effect would not arrive. . . . There is no scientific foundation for distinguishing between the cause of a phenomenon and the conditions of its happening . . . . The distinction drawn between the patient and the agent is purely verbal . . . . The cause is the sum of negative and positive conditions taken together; the whole of the circumstances and contingencies of every kind, which, once given, are invariably followed by the consequence." Philosophers are mistaken when they think that they discover in our will a different type of causation, and assert that we there see efficient force in act and exercise. Nothing of the sort is to be found there; but there as elsewhere, we find constant successions only. We do not find fact invariably engendering fact, but fact invariably accompanying fact. To quote Mill again: "Our will produces our bodily actions, as cold produces ice, or as a spark produces an explosion of gunpowder." There, as elsewhere, we find an antecedent—the resolution which is a momentary character of our mind, and, there as elsewhere, a consequent—the muscular contraction which is a momentary character of one or more of our organs; experience connects them and enables us to foresee that the contraction will follow the resolution, just as it enables us to foresee that the explosion of gunpowder will follow the contact of the spark.—More precisely still and whatever be the two characters, simultaneous or successive, momentary or permanent, the link by which the first involves, excites, or supposes the second as its contemporary, consequent, or antecedent, is nothing more than a peculiarity of the first considered alone and apart. This means that the one possesses, in itself, the property of being accompanied, followed, or preceded by the other; that is all. In other words, it is sufficient for the one to exist for the other to be its companion, precursor, or successor. As soon as the one is given, no other condition is required; the circumstances may be of any kind; it does not matter. Whether it be given in a particular individual with a particular group of other characters, at a particular time or place, is a matter of indifference; the property it possesses does not

depend on circumstances, nor on the individual, nor on the surrounding group of other characters, nor on the place, nor on the time; taken apart and in itself, isolated by abstraction, extracted from the various media in which we meet with it, it possesses this property. This is why, into whatever medium we transfer it, it preserves this property. If it possesses this property at every time and place, this is because it possesses the property of itself and by itself alone; if it possesses this property without exception, this is because it possesses the property without condition. If all triangles enclose angles together equal to two right angles, it is because the abstract triangle has the property of enclosing angles together equal to two right angles. If every piece of iron exposed to damp becomes rusted, it is because iron taken apart, in itself, and submitted to damp taken apart, and in itself, possesses the property of becoming rusted. If the law is universal, it is from its being abstract.—There is nothing surprising in this constitution of things. It is no more strange to find companions, precursors, and successors in the case of a general character than in that of a particular individual or a momentary event. No doubt in the infinite dispersion and remediless flow of being, these sorts of characters are the only elements which are everywhere the same and which always arise the same: but they do not exist outside individuals and events, as Plato taught, nor in a world other than our own; for they are the characters of the events and individuals which compose our world. They are, like individuals and events, forms of existence, and differ only from individuals and events by being more stable and more widely spread forms. For this reason, we must expect to discover that they too have accompaniments, precedents, sequences, peculiarities, personal properties, and, to succeed in this, we have only to observe them apart.

It is precisely in this that the difficulty lies. For how are we to observe apart a character which, being an extract, is only met with and can only be met with in a particular case or individual, that is to say in company with other characters? How can we contrive to study in nature iron in itself exposed to damp in general, and to ascertain that, in this state of abstraction, it has rust in general as a consequence?

How can we contrive to detect the abstract triangle which is neither scalene, nor isosceles, nor right angled, to measure its abstract angles which are neither equal nor unequal, and to prove that, in this strange state, their sum is equal to two right angles?—From the question thus presented, an answer follows. When once the obstacle is clearly determined, we are usually able, if not to suppress it, at least to evade it. Two artifices of method lead us to our end. We have distinguished two kinds of general characters. The first are real, and the general ideas which correspond to them, for instance, those of iron, of damp, and of rust, being formed by extraction, become by degrees adjusted to them; they are the object of the experimental sciences; and their connections are discovered by the *inductive road*. The second are possible only, and the general ideas which correspond to them, for instance, those of the triangle, the angle, parallel lines, being formed by combination, are outlines only, to which certain real things have a possibility of being adjusted; they are the object of the constructive sciences, and their connections are discovered by the *deductive road*.—Let us follow these roads in turn, and attempt to observe the successive stages of the mind in traversing them.

## § I. LAWS CONCERNING REAL THINGS.

I. Here, in the first road, our starting point is the already explained acquisition of general ideas. In fact, the child of fifteen months old, who already repeats and applies certain general names, has but to associate two of them in order to form a general proposition, and this is what happens when an object which calls up in him a name also arouses in him another name. He then attempts his first lisping, verbless sentences:—nice soup, naughty cat, etc. The mechanism of this junction is very simple, and here animal thought leads naturally to human thought.—When a dog sees in a trench or pit a flowing inodorous, uncolored, clear liquid, this perception, by virtue of anterior experience, excites in him by association the image of a sensation of cold, and the perception joined to the image form in him a couple. In the case

of the child, owing to the names he learns and understands, the same perception further calls up the word *water*; the same image further calls up the word *cold*, and the two words *water*, *cold*, associated by contiguity, form a second superadded couple.

Now later on, when the child reverts to and dwells on these two words, he finds that the first excites in him an indefinite series of anterior experiences, that of the water-bottle, the well, the spring, the rain, the river, and that in each of these representations the word *cold* is called up as well as the word *water*. He then observes that they form a couple through all the procession and all the review; this he expresses by saying that all waters are cold. Somewhat later on, he omits the differences of the various representations and preserves the couple itself alone; this he expresses by saying that water is cold. In this manner, he enounces, mentally or aloud, his first general propositions and his first abstract propositions.—By degrees, as he grows older, he learns new words; he applies them to the old couples of representations which former experience has already established in him, and to the new couples of representations which incessant experience daily establishes in him; thus, arise new couples of understood words, that is to say, of ideas.—It is between eighteen months and five or six years old that the greater part of this process is accomplished; it is continued, later on and up to adult life, but with fewer acquisitions. The child thus forms a number of judgments on the objects and facts familiar to him. “Sugar is nice. Fire burns. A blow hurts. Cats scratch. Cows eat grass. A person who speaks harshly is angry.”—At first, when given an individual or event of a certain class, he formed only one of these general judgments respecting it; soon he forms two, three, four, then ten, twenty, a hundred, and so on. Seeing a bounding form, with which the name cat is associated in his mind, he says, first, that the cat scratches; later on, he will say that it mews, that it climbs on the roofs, that it catches mice, and so on.—It is the same with all other class names; each of them ends by calling up a considerable number of general judgments, and each is capa-

ble of calling up an indefinite number of them. Each of them thus, by its more or less ample escort, sums up our more or less ample experience, and being the product of our experience, affords its measure.

General judgments of this kind and of this origin are sufficient for practice. Children, savages, and uneducated persons form few others, and few others are made use of in ordinary conversation. Many men and many nations never go beyond this. But we are capable of going beyond it, and of passing from ordinary propositions to scientific propositions. Experience at its commencement led us to the first; prolonged experience leads us to the second. For on applying our primitive judgment to new instances, we find it inexact. The child at first concluded that all waters are cold; if he puts his hand into a kettle just taken from the fire, he changes his opinion and no longer attributes cold to water, except of a certain temperature. A gardener who has never left his province, considers that all swans are white; if he is taken to the Zoological Gardens and shown the black Australian swans, he will no longer attribute whiteness except to a certain variety of swans. A student of botany thinks that all plants with an arborescent bark arranged in concentric layers have two cotyledons; when shown the dodder and two or three other kinds, he sees that the preceding law is almost universal, but not universal.—By degrees, owing to such corrections, our general judgments become adjusted to things. To the couple of abstract ideas associated in our minds, there corresponds, line for line, a couple of abstract characters associated in nature; henceforward, in every new instance we observe, our proposition receives a new justification, and the law enounced no longer meets with exceptions.—At the expiration of a very long time, after numbers of correspondences thus verified, men of certain races and of certain civilizations—for instance, modern Europeans—have ended by believing that this is so in every case, that such is the constitution of things, that the whole of nature is governed by laws, that all its course is uniform, that in every time and every place, in the moral as well as in the physical world, when any character is given, there is necessarily another

which is connected with it. Is this supposition true? Have we here a wholly universal law? We shall inquire into this later on.—Meanwhile, we are able, from the vast number of ascertained laws within us and about us, to admit that it is so for our little universe, or at all events to avail ourselves of it on occasion as an instrument of research, to discover the unknown character which we suppose to be attached to the known character, remembering that we have in every case to verify our success or failure by the conformity or divergence of the supposition we have admitted and the subsequent facts. Thus it is we inquire, and our different modes of inquiry in this route are the different processes of scientific *Induction*.

II. We begin then with an hypothesis, but with a very probable hypothesis, warranted by a multitude of precedents, and capable, moreover, of being invalidated or confirmed after we have availed ourselves of it, therefore as well selected as possible to put us in the right road, and to warn us off the wrong road if we happen to be led into it; this hypothesis being that a character, taken apart, has an influence; by itself and by itself alone, it involves something else, either contemporary, antecedent, or consequent; it is sufficient for it to be given for one or more other characters to be also given.

Observe this word it is *sufficient*. It is the key of the door; for it puts in our hand a property of the unknown character, a kind of distinctive mark, by means of which we shall recognize it; since the fact of the presence of the other is sufficient to give us this, we shall recognize by this characteristic that it is present in all the cases in which the other is present; in none of these cases can it fail. This is its special sign, and, so to speak, the ticket which denotes it from all other things. Hence a first method, termed by Mill *The Method of Agreement*. We collect many cases in which the known character is given; according to what has just been said, the unknown character is met with in them all; in other words, it is common to them all, and is, therefore, found comprised in the portion which is common to them.—Here, we choose cases as dissimilar as possible, and take away their differences. The

greater and more numerous their differences, the smaller will be the common remnant left by the elimination; as this remnant is the only common part, it necessarily comprises the character we are in search of, and if after this elimination there remains a single character only, this single character is necessarily the character we are in search of.

Thus, take all animals with *mammæ*, and especially the most widely different ones, the whale, the bat, the monkey, the horse, the rat, the *ornithorynchus*, and exclude their differences. After this enormous elimination, there will only remain a small number of common characters, double circulation, the circumscription of the lungs by a *pleura*, the property of bringing forth the young alive; either this entire group or some element of it, among others the last, is evidently the character we are in search of; in fact, the last invariably accompanies the possession of *mammæ*.—Let us collect a number of oils as different as possible, of alkaline substances as different as possible, and combine them; here is the known antecedent. Now let us seek for the known consequent, and, for this, let us compare together their different products. If we set aside their differences, we shall find one common character only, that of being a soap; this, then, is the character which is connected as consequent to the presence of the given antecedent.—Let us now take a known and well-defined consequent, the sensation of sound.\* To find its antecedent, we collect many cases in which a healthy ear perceives a sound, the sound produced by a bell, by a string which is pinched or rubbed by a bow, the sound of a beaten drum, of a horn which is blown, the sound of the human voice, the sound heard when the head is under water, or on putting the ear to a beam which is slightly struck, etc. After a long examination, we discover that all these cases agree, as far as we can judge, in one single point, which is the presence of a reciprocating movement, in other words, of a vibration of the sonorous body, comprised between certain limits of slowness and rapidity, and propagated through a medium to the auditory organ. This

---

\* Ordinary Sound, that is to say, excited by an external antecedent, and not the subjective sound excited by a spontaneous state of the auditory organ.

transmitted vibration, then, is the antecedent we are in search of.

Such is the first method ; by it we exclude the differences of the cases in question, which sets apart their resemblances. It requires as preliminary, the collection of many cases in which the known character is given. It adopts as a guide, the necessary presence of the unknown character in all cases in which the known character is found. It has for its auxiliary, the greatest possible difference of appearance between the cases. It has for its object, the severance of their agreements. It has, as its effect, the isolation of a remnant, which is, in whole or part, the character we are in search of.

We have only to invert this method to possess another, termed by Mill *The Method of Difference*. Let there be a known character, and take two cases ; the first in which it is given, the second in which it is not given. Since, by its presence alone, it introduces an unknown character, when absent it will not introduce this ; this character which it would have introduced, will be wanting, and, therefore, will not be found in the second case. Here is a new property of the unknown character, a second distinctive characteristic, by means of which we shall be able to discover it ; we shall recognize it by the mark, that, being present in the first case, it is absent in the second.—Here we choose two cases as similar as possible. Since it is present in the one and absent in the other, it cannot be one of the characters in which they are alike, and must necessarily be one of the characters in which they differ. Let us exclude, then, all the characters in which they are alike ; the remainder is the sum of their differences ; and it is in this remainder that the character we are in search of is necessarily comprised. But this remainder is very small, since we have chosen the two cases as much alike as possible ; if, therefore, this remainder consists in one single character, this character is necessarily the one we are in search of.

Thus, take a known character, extreme hardness, or the capacity of scratching all other bodies. We take two bodies as much alike as possible, one in which the character is present, the other in which it is absent ; one of these bodies is a diamond which is pure carbon ; the other is purified carbon ;



or, better still, let one body be a particular diamond, the other the same diamond burnt and reduced to the state of cinder. Chemical properties, weight, component molecules, many characters, and those the most important of all, are exactly alike in the two cases. We eliminate them, and have as residue a group of characters which are present in the diamond and absent in the piece of coke, brilliancy, transparency, octohedric form, crystalline structure. It is this whole group, then, or an element of this group, and especially the last, which is the character we are in search of; in fact, the other elements of the group are nothing more than various aspects of the last, and in carbon, crystalline structure invariably accompanies extreme hardness.—Again, when given the sensation of sound, let us select two cases, one in which it is produced, the other in which it is not produced, and let us select them so very similar as to differ in a very small number of characters only, and, if possible, in one character alone. For this purpose, let us repeat the same case twice, and introduce or suppress on the second occasion a single well-defined circumstance; this added or excluded circumstance, being the only difference separating the two cases, will be the character we are in search of. For instance, in the case of the continuous sound produced by a vibrating tuning-fork, we touch lightly the little blades, this stops their vibration, and the sound at once ceases. In the case of a bell struck by its clapper, we put it under the receiver of an air-pump and exhaust the air, and the sound at once ceases. In the case of the silent tuning-fork, we press it and suddenly let go the blades, which restores their vibration, the sound at once recommences. In the case of the clapper silently striking the bell, we let the air into the receiver, the sound at once recommences. Here the only circumstance in turn introduced or suppressed among the antecedents of the sound is the rapid reciprocating movement in the case of the tuning-fork, and the presence of the elastic medium in the case of the bell. This double circumstance, then, is the only character by which the case in which the sound is present, differs from the case in which the sound is wanting, hence it follows that it is the antecedent we are in search of.

Such is the second method; by it we exclude the resemblances of the cases considered, and so set apart their differences. It requires as preliminary the selection of two cases distinguished, one by the presence, the other by the absence, of the known character. It adopts as a guide the necessary absence of the unknown character in all the cases in which the known character is absent. It has, for its auxiliary, the greatest possible resemblance between the two cases. It has, for its object, the severance of differences. It has as its effect the isolation of a remnant, which is, in whole or part, the character we are in search of.

These two methods suggest a third, termed by Mill, *The Method of Concomitant Variations*. To the two marks by which we make discovery of the unknown character, it adds a new one. We have recognized it by the characteristic of its presence whenever the known character is present, and by the characteristic of its absence whenever the known character is absent; we can also recognize it by the characteristic that, whenever the known character varies, the unknown character also varies in a corresponding manner. In fact, in one aspect or another,\* the known character may be considered as a sum of degrees, each of which taken apart has its influence; for if each taken apart had no influence whatever, we might successively suppress them all up to the last, and, therefore, suppress the character itself, without suppressing its influence; we might also add them all, one after another, up to a certain limit, and, therefore, reconstitute the character itself as fully as we pleased, without re-constituting its influence. Now these two suppositions are contrary to the notion of the character as we have assumed it. Thus, from

---

\* For instance, in the corresponding variations which the form of the teeth, the structure of the condyle, the length of the intestines, and the arrangement of the limbs, undergo in different species, the observed organ becomes more or less fitted or unfitted for carnivorous or herbivorous life; the degree of fitness for carnivorous life being lowered in proportion as the degree of fitness for herbivorous life increases. In this double sense, an organ may be considered in the aspect of its quantity, and may present a sum of greater or less degrees. Hence, the methods of Cuvier for determining unknown organs from their dependence with relation to known organs.

this very notion, we may conclude that every variation of the known character involves a variation of the unknown character, and on this indication, may seek for the unknown character.

For instance, take a known character, the progressive retardation, and consequent final extinction, of the movement of the pendulum. We cannot construct a pendulum to oscillate for ever, and consequently cannot find a second case in which the known character is absent. For this impracticable case of absence of retardation, we substitute a number of practical cases of diminished retardation. We diminish more and more the obstacles the pendulum meets with, and find that its retardation is proportionately diminished. When the friction at the point of suspension is reduced as much as possible, and when the surrounding air is exhausted as much as possible, it takes thirty hours, instead of some minutes, for the movement to stop. In proportion as the obstacles approach the degree at which they would vanish, the retardation approaches the degree at which it would vanish. As far as we are able to judge, there is, between the first case in which the pendulum ceases to oscillate after a few minutes, and the other cases in which it continues its oscillation for a longer and longer time, one difference only, which is that, in the first case, the obstacles are greater, and that, in the others, they are less; the presence, then, of an increase in the obstacles is the antecedent of an increase in the retardation.—But this does not as yet prove that, were there no obstacles, there would be no retardation. For it might happen that the diminution of the antecedent and the diminution of the consequent did not proceed at the same rate; perhaps, in proportion as the resistance is diminished by one half, the retardation is diminished only by a fourth or other smaller fraction; this would be the case, if the retardation had two causes, one of which was a property inherent to the motion itself, that is to say a tendency to cease after the lapse of a certain time, the other appertaining to the circumstances, that is to say to the resistance of the surrounding bodies. In this case, the complete suppression of the obstacles would only diminish the retardation, without wholly

suppressing it; the pendulum would oscillate sixty hours and more, but would finally stop.—We must prove, then, that the retardation diminishes at the same rate as the resistance, and that every degree added to or taken from the resistance corresponds to an equal degree added to or taken from the retardation. This is effected by the two methods already described, though seeking, no longer the antecedent of the retardation, but the antecedents of two of its diminutions or augmentations measured beforehand, and through discovering, by the extraction of agreements or differences, that these antecedents are two precisely equal diminutions or augmentations introduced into the sum of the resistances presented by the surrounding obstacles. When this is established it becomes proved that, when the resistance ceases, the retardation ceases.—This is a proposition which we were just now unable to establish by experience: but now we have no need to establish it by experience; the gap is filled up; we may dispense with observation; we have its equivalent. Thanks to this equivalent, we know now that the case in which the motion is retarded, and that in which it is not retarded, differ only in one character, namely, the resistance opposed, in the first case, by obstacles; hence it follows that this resistance is the antecedent we are in search of.—Such is the third method which, compounded of the first and second, is a substitute for the second, and which is often of higher value than they are, from its determining, not only the quality, but also the quantity, of the unknown character.\*

All these methods employ the same artifice, that is to say the elimination or exclusion of characters other than the character we are in search of. Let us take a known character; it is accompanied, followed, or preceded by ten others. Which one or more of these ten are so connected with its presence, that its presence is sufficient to give them as its companions, antecedents, or consequents? All the

---

\* Mill, after describing this method, indicates a fourth, which he terms *the Method of Residues*. It is but another case of the Method of Differences, and is but rarely employed. The three which we have explained had their first origin in Bacon's "Tables of Presence, Absence, and Degrees."

difficulty, and the only possible solution, lie here. To resolve the difficulty and effect the solution, elimination is required, that is to say the exclusion, amongst the ten characters, of those which are not thus connected with the presence of the known character. But, as we are not able actually to exclude them, and as, in nature, the character we are in search of is always hidden in a crowd of others, we collect cases which by their diversity entitle the mind to clear away this crowd. We look for indications which may enable us to distinguish between the character we are in search of and superfluous characters. We find three of these indications, and apply them; for greater security, we apply all three of them successively in order that they may correct one another. When the expulsion is accomplished, what remains is the character we are in search of.

In some cases these eliminating processes are ineffectual, namely, in those in which the consequent, though produced by a concurrence of antecedents, cannot be reduced into its elements. Methods of isolation are then impracticable; and, as we can no longer eliminate, we can no longer perform induction.—Now, this grave difficulty presents itself in nearly all cases of motion; for nearly every motion is the effect of a concurrence of forces, and the respective effects of the different forces are found so mixed up in it that we cannot separate them without destroying it, and it seems impossible to know what part each force has in the production of the movement. Take a body acted on by two forces whose directions form an angle; it moves along the diagonal; every part, every moment, every position, every element of its movement is the combined effect of the two impelling forces. The two effects are so intimately combined that we cannot isolate either of them to refer it to its origin.—To perceive each effect separately, we should have to consider the motions turned in another direction, that is to say to suppress the given movement and replace it by others. It is the double consequent of a double antecedent, and, as we cannot isolate one or other of its two parts, we cannot isolate one or other of the two parts of its antecedent. Neither the usual method of Agreement or of Difference, nor the subsidiary

methods of Residues or of Concomitant Variations, all of which are decomposing and eliminative, can serve us in a case which by its nature excludes all elimination and all decomposition.—We must therefore evade the obstacle, and here it is that *the Method of Deduction*—the last key to Nature—comes in. We commence by borrowing a process from the sciences of construction; we leave the effect, we set to work beside it, we study other simpler cases; we examine various analogous effects or consequents, we connect each to its cause or antecedent by the processes of ordinary induction; then, we form a *construction*. We mentally collect many of these antecedents or causes, and we conclude, from their known consequents or effects, what must be their total consequent or effect. We then verify if the total effect given is exactly similar to the total effect predicted, and, if so, we attribute it to the combination of causes we have fabricated.—Thus, to discover the causes of the motion of the planets, we establish, by simple inductions, first, the law connecting the motion in direction of the tangent with a force of initial impulsion, then, the law connecting the fall of a body towards another with the accelerating force of gravity. From these two laws obtained by induction, we deduce, by calculation, the various positions and velocities which a body would assume, under the combined influences of an initial impulsion and accelerating gravity, and, after verifying that the observed planetary motions coincide exactly with the foreseen motions, we conclude that the two forces in question are actually the causes of the planetary motions. “To the Deductive Method,” says Mill, “the human mind is indebted for its most conspicuous triumphs in the investigation of Nature. To it, we owe all the theories by which vast and complicated phenomena are embraced under a few simple laws.”—It is only a derivation of the preceding methods; for it starts from a property of the antecedent obtained by those methods. This property is that of being sufficient, that is to say of exciting, by its presence alone, a certain consequent. Therefore, if it be present, the consequent will arise; and, if another antecedent obtained in the same way is also present, its consequent will similarly arise; so that the whole conse-

quent will be mixed and double.—If now the whole consequent observed coincides in all its parts with the whole consequent predicted, we shall say with certainty that the double antecedent supposed is sufficient to cause it to arise, and we shall be able to assume that, in the case in question, this double antecedent in fact exists.—In truth, this will only be a supposition or hypothesis; but it will be the more probable in proportion as the total consequent, being more complex and more multiplex, further limits the number of hypothesis capable of accounting for it; and it will be wholly certain when, as is the case with the motion of the planets, we can demonstrate that no other combination of forces could produce it, that is to say that the double antecedent assumed is not only possible, but alone possible, and therefore, real.

These are the rules: an example will make them clearer; there is one in which we shall see all the methods in exercise—Dr. Well's theory of Dew. I shall cite the exact words of Mill and Herschel.\* They are so clear that we must give ourselves the pleasure of considering them. We must begin by separating dew from rain, and the moisture of fogs, and by defining it as "the spontaneous appearance of moisture on substances exposed in the open air, when no rain or *visible* wet is falling." What is the cause of the phenomenon we have thus defined, and how was that cause discovered?

In the first place, "'we have analogous phenomena in the moisture which bedews a cold metal or stone when we breathe upon it; that which appears on a glass of water fresh from the well in hot weather; that which appears on the inside of windows when sudden rain or hail chills the external air; that which runs down our walls when, after a long frost, a warm moist thaw comes on.' Comparing these cases, we find that they all contain the phenomenon which was proposed as the subject of investigation. Now, 'all these instances agree on one point—the coldness of the object dewed, in comparison with the air in contact with it.' But there

---

\* Mill, "Logic," 4th edition, i. 451-8, citing from Sir J. Herschel, "Discourse on the Study of Natural Philosophy."

still remains the most important case of all, that of nocturnal dew: does the same circumstance exist in this case? 'Is it a fact that the object dewed *is* colder than the air? Certainly not, one would at first be inclined to say; for what is to *make* it so? But . . . the experiment is easy: we have only to lay a thermometer in contact with the dewed substance, and to hang one at a little distance above it, out of reach of its influence. The experiment has therefore been made; the question has been asked, and the answer has been invariably in the affirmative. Whenever an object contracts dew, it *is* colder than the air.'

"Here then is a complete application of the *Method of Agreement*, establishing the fact of an invariable connection between the deposition of dew on a surface, and the coldness of that surface compared with the external air. But which of these is cause, and which effect?—or are they both effects of something else? On this subject, the Method of Agreement can afford us no light: we must call in a more potent method. 'We must collect more facts, or, which comes to the same thing, vary the circumstances; since every instance in which the circumstances differ is a fresh fact: and especially we must note the contrary or negative cases, *i. e.*, where no dew is produced:' a comparison between instances of dew, and instances of no dew, being the condition necessary to bring the *Method of Difference* into play.

"Now, first, no dew is produced on the surface of polished metals, but it *is* very copiously on glass.' Here is an instance in which the effect is produced, and another instance in which it is not produced. . . . But, as the differences between glass and polished metal are manifold, the only thing we can as yet be sure of is, that the cause of dew will be found among the circumstances by which the former substance is distinguished from the latter. . . . To detect this particular circumstance of difference we have but one practicable method—that of *Concomitant Variations*. 'In the cases of polished metal and polished glass, the contrast shows evidently that the *substance* has much to do with the phenomenon, therefore let the substance *alone* be diversified as much as possible, by exposing polished surfaces of various



kinds. This done, a *scale of intensity* becomes obvious. Those polished substances are found to be most strongly dewed which conduct heat worst ; while those which conduct well, resist dew most effectually.' Hence we conclude that the deposition of dew is in some way connected with the power which the body possesses of resisting the passage of heat.

“ ‘ But, if we expose rough surfaces instead of polished, we sometimes find this law interfered with. Thus, roughened iron, especially if painted over or blackened, becomes dewed sooner than varnished paper ; the *kind of surface*, therefore, has a great influence. Expose, then, the *same* material in very diversified states as to surface,’ (that is, employ the Method of Difference to ascertain concomitance of variations,) ‘ and another scale of intensity becomes at once apparent ; those *surfaces* which *part with their heat* most readily by radiation, are found to contract dew most copiously.’ Hence we conclude that the deposition of dew is also in some way connected with the power of radiating heat.

“ ‘ Again, the influence ascertained to exist of *substance* and *surface* leads us to consider that of *texture* : and here, again, we are presented on trial with remarkable differences, and with a third scale of intensity, pointing out substances of a close firm texture, such as stones, metals, etc., as unfavorable, but those of a loose one, as cloth, velvet, wool, eider-down, cotton, etc., as eminently favorable to the contraction of dew.’ Looseness of texture, therefore, or something which is the cause of that quality, is another circumstance which promotes the deposition of dew ; but this third cause resolves itself into the first, viz., the quality of resisting the passage of heat ; for substances of loose texture ‘ are precisely those which are best adapted for clothing, or for impeding the free passage of heat from the skin into the air, so as to allow their outer surfaces to be very cold, while they remain warm within.’

“ It thus appears that the instances in which much dew is deposited, which are very various, agree in this, and, so far as we are able to observe, in this only, that they either radiate heat rapidly or conduct it slowly : qualities between

which there is no other circumstance of agreement, than that by virtue of either, the body tends to lose heat from the surface more rapidly than it can be restored from within. The instances on the contrary, in which no dew, or but a small quantity of it, is formed, and which are also extremely various, agree (as far as we can observe) in nothing except in *not* having this same property." We can now revert to our previous inquiry, as to whether the coldness was the cause of dew, or its effect. "This doubt we are now able to resolve. We have found that, in every such instance, the substance on which dew is deposited is one which, by its own properties or laws, would, if exposed in the night, become colder than the surrounding air. The coldness, therefore, being accounted for independently of the dew, while it is proved that there is a connection between the two, it must be the dew that depends on the coldness; or, in other words, the coldness is the cause of the dew.

"This law of causation, already so amply established, admits, however, of efficient additional corroboration in no less than three ways. First, by deduction from the known laws of aqueous vapor when diffused through air, or any other gas. . . . It is known by direct experiment that only a limited quantity of water can remain suspended in the state of vapor at each degree of temperature, and that this maximum grows less and less as the temperature diminishes. From this it follows, deductively, that if there is already as much vapor suspended as the air will contain at its existing temperature, any lowering of that temperature will cause a portion of the vapor to be condensed, and become water. But, again, we know deductively, from the laws of heat, that the contact of the air with a body colder than itself, will necessarily lower the temperature of the stratum of air immediately applied to its surface; and will therefore cause it to part with a portion of its water, which accordingly will, by the ordinary laws of gravitation or cohesion, attach itself to the surface of the body, thereby constituting dew. This deductive proof has the advantage that it accounts for the *exceptions* to the occurrence of the phenomenon, the cases in which, although the body is colder than the air, yet no dew is deposited; by show-

ing that this will necessarily be the case when the air is so under-supplied with aqueous vapor, comparatively to its temperature, that even when somewhat cooled by the contact of the colder body, it can still continue to hold in suspension all the vapor which was previously suspended in it: thus in a very dry summer there are no dews, in a very dry winter no hoar-frost.

“The second corroboration of the theory is by direct experiment, according to the canon of the Method of Difference. We can, by cooling the surface of any body, find in all cases some temperature at which dew will begin to be deposited. We can, it is true, accomplish this only on a small scale; but we have ample reason to conclude that the same operation, if conducted in Nature’s great laboratory, would equally produce the effect.

“And finally, even on that great scale we are able to verify the result. The case is one of those rare cases, as we have shown them to be, in which Nature works the experiment for us in the same manner in which we ourselves perform it; introducing into the previous state of things a single and perfectly definite new circumstance, and manifesting the effect so rapidly that there is not time for any other material change in the pre-existing circumstances. ‘It is observed that dew is never copiously deposited in situations much screened from the open sky, and not at all in a cloudy night; but *if the clouds withdraw even for a few minutes, and leave a clear opening, a deposition of dew presently begins, and goes on increasing.*’ . . . The proof, therefore, is complete, that the presence or absence of an uninterrupted communication with the sky causes the deposition or non-deposition of dew. Now, since a clear sky is nothing but the absence of clouds, and it is a known property of clouds, as of all other bodies between which and any given object nothing intervenes but an elastic fluid, that they tend to raise or keep up the superficial temperature of the object by radiating heat to it, we see at once that the disappearance of clouds will cause the surface to cool; so that Nature, in this case, produces a change in the antecedent by definite and known means, and the consequent follows accordingly: a

natural experiment which satisfies the requisitions of the Method of Difference."

## § II. LAWS CONCERNING POSSIBLE THINGS.

I. We see that this process is of considerable length; for it requires the collection, selection, and comparison of many instances. Further than this, it usually happens that the more general the law, the more time is required to obtain it; for it requires the preliminary discovery of many partial laws; Newton, Geoffroy, Saint-Hilaire, Dalton, Faraday are but the successors of many others, and the most extensive inductive law we are acquainted with, that which states the Conservation of Force, is of yesterday's discovery.\* Again, however well-established and verified one of these laws may be, if we wish to apply it outside of the little circle of space and short fragment of duration to which our observations are limited, it becomes probable only. It is not absolutely certain that the Law of Gravitation continues to hold good, beyond the furthest nebulae of Herschel. It is not at all certain that, in the sun, hydrogen and oxygen preserve the chemical affinity which we find they have here with us. It is possible that the intense temperature in the sun, that some unknown circumstance beyond the furthest nebulae, may intervene to alter or annul these laws. Consequently, on considering the proposition enouncing it, we find, on the one hand, that its acquisition is tardy, on the other, that its application is limited.

II. Such are the distinctive characteristics of the general proposition whose component ideas, being formed by extraction and gradually adjusted to the general characters of real things, are bound to correspond with their object.—Very different are the distinctive characteristics of the general propositions whose component ideas, being formed by construction, are not subject to a similar obligation. Such are the ideas of arithmetic, of geometry, of pure mechanics, of all

---

\* See, as to the order of these discoveries, the valuable work of Dr. Whewell, on the "History of the Inductive Sciences."

the mathematical sciences, and, more generally, of all the deductive sciences. The propositions of these sciences are not merely probable, but certain beyond our little world; at all events, we believe it to be so, and, moreover, are unable to believe or conceive that it is otherwise. Even beyond the furthest *nebulæ*, two facts or objects added to three facts or objects of the same class make five facts or objects of the same class; if a triangle be found there, its angles are, as with us, together equal to two right angles; if a body be impelled by two forces whose directions form an angle, it will move, as with us, along their diagonal. At all events, whatever effort we may make to conceive the contrary, we cannot do so; the two component ideas of the proposition, once well understood, form in our mind an indissoluble couple whose terms, in themselves, refuse separation.—Besides, the most general of these propositions are the ones which are first discovered; for it is by their means that we prove the less general ones. Looked at geometrically, the idea of a solid is less general than that of a surface, and that of a surface less general than that of a line, since the solid is constructed with surfaces, and the surface with lines, whence it follows that we find, mentally at least, if not in nature, the surface without the solid, and the line without the surface, but never the solid without the surface, or the surface without the line; so that the surface occurs more frequently than the solid, and the line more frequently than the surface. Now we all know that, to establish propositions relating to solids, we must first establish those relating to surfaces, and that, to establish propositions relating to surfaces, we must first establish those relating to lines.—Finally, among the most general of these propositions, there are certain ones, called axioms, which we do not demonstrate, and by which we demonstrate the rest. We fix them at the head of every science, like hooks from which the other propositions may depend. These others are so many links, forming one or more chains; each link in them is hung from the one preceding it, and sustains the one succeeding it; but the supports which bear the whole are two, three, or four expressed or implied propositions, placed at the summit. If we do not demonstrate them, it is because

we pronounce them evident in themselves ; at least, it seems to the attentive reader that he requires no proof to admit them, but that it is enough for him to understand them. As soon as the two component ideas of the proposition are clear to his mind, they become mutually attached there, and form a couple ; this reciprocal consolidation is instantaneous ; every one sees at first sight that, among all the lines drawn from one point to another, the straight line is the shortest. So, too, in every other deductive science, there are certain primitive ideas which, once present in the mind, become fitted to one another as speedily, with as invincible a link, with as uncontested authority. Here, indeed, are propositions fashioned in a strange way, and these are what we are now about to examine.

III. For propositions of this kind, there are two kinds of proof: the one, experimental, inductive, approximative, and slow ; the other analytical, deductive, precise, and short ; it is this last of which we avail ourselves in all the sciences of construction.—The better to mark out the characters and contrasts of these two kinds of proofs, the reader must allow me to make a supposition. Take a proposition closely bordering on an axiom, that truth of elementary geometry that, in every triangle, the sum of the angles is equal to two right angles. Let us imagine a man not a geometrician, and incapable, by the structure of his brain, of becoming one, but very patient, very precise, and very skilful at induction. I put in his hand a semicircle divided into minutes and degrees so as to measure angles ; I trace before him a number of triangles ; I teach him to trace others, and I ask him to investigate whether, in all these triangles, the sum of the angles is not equal to a certain number of right angles.—For several days, he applies his semicircle to the angles of three or four hundred triangles ; in each case, he observes by his semicircle the magnitudes of the three angles, and, by adding their values, invariably finds that their sum amounts to  $180^{\circ}$ , that is, to two right angles. This interests him, and he attempts to discover the partial laws of which this law, obtained by the collection of agreements, is the total.—He first takes triangles having one right angle ; the sum of the other two angles is then equal to one

right angle, and it will be easier to find the circumstance which causes this equality. He goes to work again with his semicircle, and proves that, as the first of these two angles approaches a right angle in magnitude, the second of them differs from a right angle in magnitude, so that the diminution of the one is compensated by the augmentation of the other, and that, by means of this perpetual compensation, the sum of the two angles is always equal to a right angle.—He then takes other triangles having an angle of the same magnitude; then, measuring this angle, he calculates by subtraction the value which the two other angles must together have to form with it a magnitude equal to two right angles. Then applying once more his semicircle, he proves that, whenever the first of these two angles approaches the required amount, the second proportionately differs from it, in such a way that, the loss being equal to the gain, the sum of the two angles is always equal to the required magnitude.—Thus, in all triangles, when one angle is given, the diminutions or augmentations which one of the two remaining angles may undergo are compensated by equal augmentations or diminutions of the other remaining angle; and compensated in such a way that the total magnitude of the two remaining angles is the magnitude requisite to form with the given angle a number of angles equal to two right angles.—When this is effected, our inquirer has found a fixed connection between the values of the second and third angle, another fixed connection between the sum of these values and the value of the first angle, and, by these two connections, he explains the whole value of the three angles. But he has reached his limit, he can go no further. Besides this, after all these measurements, additions, subtractions, and recapitulations, he has grounds of doubt; he must ask himself whether the triangles he has drawn are absolutely perfect, if the divisions of his semicircle are strictly equal, whether, in applying his semicircle to the angles, he has made the lines of division coincide exactly with the sides of the angles. Let him use a powerful microscope; he will find that in very few cases are these conditions fulfilled, and he must suppose that, if the microscope were more powerful, he would not find them fulfilled in any case. Therefore, all

he can affirm is that, in triangles apparently perfect, the sum of the three angles is apparently equal to two right angles.—Now, let the geometrician come in; he draws one triangle only; in fact, he does not busy himself with this or any other figured triangle; his object is any triangle whatever; he expressly tells us this; to him, the apparent figure is but a means of more readily effecting a mental construction; his eyes follow on the board or paper ideal lines, to which the physical marks do but approximately correspond. He completes his mental construction and his apparent figure, by drawing through the vertex of the triangle and parallel to the base, on the one hand, an ideal line, on the other, a physical mark, so that between this mark and line there is a rough correspondence. Having completed his mental construction, he resumes his definitions of the triangle and of parallel lines, he observes their elements, he follows with his finger these elements in the approximating mark, he finds in one or more of them the property he is in search of, and thus proves the theorem by the analysis of his definitions.

Axioms are analogous theorems, but we dispense with their proof, either because it is very easy or because it is very difficult. In other words, they are *analytical* propositions, the subject of which contains the attribute, either, in a very evident manner, which renders the analysis useless, or, in a very hidden manner, which renders the analysis almost impracticable. Hence there are two kinds of axioms, which border on one another by transitions.

At the foot of the scale are some which seem insignificant; this arises from the required analysis being completely effected; the terms of the attribute are found before-hand in the terms of the subject; the reader does not find the proposition instructive; he says that he has been told the same thing twice over. Such are the celebrated metaphysical axioms of *identity* and *contradiction*.—The first may be thus expressed: if, in an object, there be a certain datum present, that datum is present.—The second may be formulated thus: if, in an object, there is a certain datum present, that datum is not absent; if, in an object, there is a certain datum absent, that datum is not present.—As the words, *present* and *not ab-*



*sent*, *absent* and *not present* are synonymous, it is plain that in the axiom of contradiction as well as in the axiom of identity, the second half of the phrase repeats a portion of the first; it is a repetition; we have manœuvred without gaining ground.—Thence we get a third metaphysical axiom, that of the *alternative*, less empty than the preceding ones; for a short analysis is required to prove it; we may enounce it in these terms: in every object, a particular datum is either present or absent.—In fact, suppose the contrary, that is to say, that the datum may be neither absent nor present in the object. Not absent, means that it is present; not present, means that it is absent; the two together mean, then, that the datum is at once present and absent in the object, which is contrary to the two branches of the axiom of contradiction, to the one which says that, if a particular datum is present in an object, that datum is not absent, and to the other which says that if a particular datum is absent from an object, that datum is not present.—Let us now resume the axiom of the *alternative*, and observe the attitude of the mind which comes across it for the first time. It is implied in a heap of propositions, which we explicitly admit, because we impliedly admit the axiom. For instance, some one tells us that every triangle is equilateral or not; every vertebrate animal is a quadruped or not. Without examining any triangle or any animal, we necessarily recognize that these propositions are true; the *alternative* is inevitable and cannot be evaded. And yet, in most cases, we have not the proof at hand. We have not made the foregoing analysis; we could not show, as has been shown above, the series of links by which the proposition is reduced to the axiom of contradiction. We have not disengaged and followed, as just now, the very abstract ideas which, by their delicate and continuous network, fasten together the two elements of the proposition. What does this mean, except that, in the absence of a clear view of this consolidation you have a confused sentiment of it, and that the connection exists between the two elements of your thought without your being able to fix precisely on the points of connection?—We see daily this effectiveness of latent ideas; we feel that a certain person could not have acted in a particular way, that certain

conduct would be inopportune, that a certain action is right or blamable, and most frequently we cannot say why; nevertheless, there is a why, a secret reason; this reason is an idea, an idea included in the total conception which we have formed of this person, this conduct, this action; it exists in the total conception like a segment not marked out in a circle, like a grain of lead in a pound of lead; it is active in the conception just as its associated elements; together they form a mass which, coming in contact with another mass, shows sometimes an affinity resulting in union, sometimes a repugnance resulting in separation. Later on, by reflection, we disintegrate this mass; by means of abstract words, we isolate its component ideas; we find one among them which explains to us the involuntary junction or insurmountable incompatibility of our two conceptions.—That there are some demonstrating ideas included in the terms of the preceding axiom, we cannot doubt, since we have just detected them and arranged them in proof. That undetected ideas may and must act in the latent state to unite or sever two conceptions in which they are included, is certain, since we are daily witnesses of the fact. We may conclude, then, that the mental consolidations and repulsions proved respecting the preceding axiom, have as their cause the concealed presence of the latent ideas which we just now detected, and we may conjecture that, in all similar axioms, it is the same cause which produces the same effect.

IV. It would be too long, and moreover useless, to analyse them all. Let us apply ourselves to those which are the most fruitful, and which serve for the construction of whole sciences.—At the head of arithmetic, algebra, and geometry, are inscribed the two following axioms: if equal magnitudes be added to equal magnitudes, the wholes are equal; if equal magnitudes be taken from equal magnitudes, the remainders are equal.—No doubt we may form these two propositions by ordinary induction, and, most probably, it was in this manner that they were first established in our mind. Take two flocks, each of twenty sheep, in separate inclosures; they may be increased or diminished in number; they are, then, magnitudes. I drive fifteen sheep into the first inclosure,

and fifteen other sheep into the second ; I then count the two flocks so increased, and find that, in each field, there are thirty-five sheep. I then take seventeen sheep from the first inclosure, and seventeen others from the second ; I then count the two flocks so diminished, and find that, in each field, there are eighteen sheep.—As often as I have performed similar operations, under similar conditions, upon any number of any kind of animals, or, more generally, upon any collection of any distinct objects or facts, I have verified that the result was similar. The same observation is made when the collection is no longer composed of natural individuals, like a sheep, a pebble, or of facts naturally distinct, like a sound, a blow, a sensation, but of artificial individuals, like a metre, a litre, a gramme, or of facts artificially divided, like the successive parts of a continuous movement. For instance, here are two vessels in each of which are six litres of water ; I pour three litres of water into the first, and three litres of water into the second ; I then measure the two quantities of water so increased, and find, in each vessel, nine litres of water. I then draw five litres of water from the first vessel, and five litres from the second, and find there is left, in each vessel, four litres of water.—Each of these cases is an experiment. A child does the same with marbles ; if he has counted two large equal heaps, and adds to them two little heaps which he has also counted and found equal, and finds, on counting, that the whole heaps are equal, this will be a discovery for him, and I imagine that he will be as much delighted at it as a physicist who has observed for the first time some unknown phenomenon.—After many similar experiments, we are able inductively to conclude, by the method of Agreement, that equal magnitudes added to equal magnitudes give equal sums, and that equal magnitudes taken from equal magnitudes give equal remainders. For if sometimes, as in the experiment made with vessels of water, the sums or remainders are not rigorously equal, we may legitimately attribute this inequality to the inaccuracy of our preliminary measures or the awkwardness of our subsequent manipulation, since the more accurate our measures and the more skilful our manipulation, the smaller does the inequality become.—

Besides, to strengthen our conclusion, we have at hand another inductive method, that of Difference. As soon as we suppress the equality of the primitive magnitudes or of the added magnitudes, the equality of the obtained *wholes* disappears. As soon as we suppress the equality of the primitive magnitudes, or of the magnitudes taken away, the equality of the subsisting *remainders* disappears. These two first equalities, then, are the antecedent of the third, as the third is the consequent of the two first; and we have a couple in which the two terms, obtained like cooling and dew, are connected, like cooling and dew, without exception and without condition.

But the two axioms thus formed may also be formed in another manner. In fact, let us lay aside experience, let us close our eyes, and shut ourselves up in the confines of our own mind; let us examine the terms which make up our propositions; let us attempt to find out what it is we mean by the words magnitude and equality, and let us see what mental constructions we form, when we fabricate the idea of a magnitude equal to another.—Here we must distinguish between artificial magnitudes in which the units are natural, and natural magnitudes in which the units are artificial. Let us examine them in turn, and first as to natural magnitudes which we also term collections.

Take a collection of similar individuals, some flock of sheep, or a collection of abstract units, some mental group of pure units, pictured to the eye by the same sign many times repeated. We call these collections magnitudes; and, if we give them this name, it is because, they are capable of becoming greater or smaller, while retaining their nature; we mean to say by this that we may, in fact or by thought, add to the flock one or more sheep, add to the group one or more units, take from the flock one or more sheep, take from the group one or more units. Let us now compare one of these collections with another analogous collection\* and make correspond, in thought or otherwise, a first object of the first with a first object of the second, a second with a second, and so on, till

---

\* Duhamel, "De la Méthode dans les Sciences de Raisonnement," i. 3.

one of the two be exhausted. Two cases present themselves. Either the two collections are exhausted together; the number of sheep is then the *same* in the first and in the second flock, the number of units is the *same* in the first and in the second group; and in this case we say that the two magnitudes are *equal*. Equality, then, means presence of the same number.—Or one of the two collections is exhausted before the other; the number of sheep is then different in the first and second flock, the number of units is different in the first and second group; and in this case we say that the two magnitudes are *unequal*. Inequality, then, means presence of two *different* numbers.

Now, for these kinds of magnitudes, we are able to prove the axiom. Let there be two equal magnitudes to which we add equal magnitudes. According to the foregoing analysis, this means that the first collection contains a certain number of individuals or of units, that a certain number of them is added to it, that the second contains the *same* number of individuals or of units as the first, that the *same* number of them is added to it as to the first, that, in the two cases, the same number is added to the same number, and that, therefore, the two final collections contain the same number added to the same number, that is to say, the *same total number* of individuals or of units, whence it follows, from the definition, that the two sums or final magnitudes are equal magnitudes.—And so again let there be two equal magnitudes, from which we take two equal magnitudes: according to the same analysis, this means that the first collection contains a certain number of individuals or of units, that a certain number of them are taken from it, that the second contains the *same* number of individuals or of units as the first, that the *same* number of them are taken from it as from the first, so that in the two cases the same number is diminished by the same number, and that, therefore, the two final collections contain the same number diminished by the same number, that is to say, the *same remaining number* of individuals or units; hence it invariably follows, from the definition, that the two remainders or final magnitudes are equal magnitudes.

From artificial magnitudes, let us pass to natural. The

most important of these are the geometrical, since they serve as measures for all the rest: times, velocities, forces, masses, etc. These geometrical magnitudes are lines, surfaces, solids; and, if we term them magnitudes, it is because they may become greater or less; we mean to say that, in fact or mentally, we may add a line to a line, a surface to a surface, a solid to a solid. Let us now compare a line with a line, or a surface with a surface, and apply, in thought or otherwise, the second to the first, taking care in doing so not to alter the second in any way. Here, as before, two cases present themselves.—Either the second coincides exactly and completely with the first, so as to become absolutely confounded with it; in this case, the two lines form only one and the *same* line; we then say that the two magnitudes are equal. To say, then, that two magnitudes are equal, is to say that after the application, in other words, when omission and abstraction are made of the two distinct positions, the two lines, surfaces, etc., are the *same*.—Or else, the second line does not exactly and completely coincide with the first; in which case the two lines, not being confounded, remain *different*, we then say that the two magnitudes are unequal. To say, then, that two magnitudes are unequal, is to say that after the application, in other words, when omission and abstraction is made of their two distinct positions, the two lines, surfaces, etc., are different.

Now we can also prove the axiom for these kinds of magnitudes. Let there be two equal magnitudes added to two equal magnitudes. According to the foregoing analysis, this means that a certain primitive line, surface, etc., is given, that a complementary one is added to it, that a second primitive line, when its distinct position is omitted, is the *same* as the first line, that to it is added a complementary line, the *same*, except as to its distinct position, as the other complementary line, that in the two cases, when abstraction is made of the distinct positions, the same line is added to the same line, and that, therefore, the two completed lines are the same line added to the same line, that is to say, the *same total line*, hence it follows, from the definition, that the two sums or total magnitudes are equal.—And so again, let two equal magnitudes be taken from two equal magnitudes. According to

the same analysis, this means that a certain primitive line, surface, etc., is given, that a portion of it is cut off, that a second primitive line is, when its position is omitted, the *same* as the first, that from it is cut off a portion, which, except as to its distinct position, is the *same* as the other portion cut off, that, in the two cases, when abstraction is made of the distinct positions, the same line is taken from the same line, and that, therefore, the two diminished lines are the same line diminished by the same line, that is to say, the *same remaining line*, hence, it follows, from the definition, that the two remainders or final magnitudes are equal.—We might demonstrate in the same way a third axiom, which is true of natural magnitudes as well as of artificial, that is to say, that two magnitudes each of which is equal to a third magnitude are equal to one another.

Let the reader take the pains to examine the artifice of this proof. By thought, and with the auxiliary confirmation of sensible facts, we make two artificial magnitudes correspond, feature for feature, or we make two natural magnitudes coincide, element for element; if this correspondence or coincidence are absolute, the idea of equality arises in us. We have watched its birth and distinguish its foundation; it comprises a more simple element and is reduced to the idea of *sameness*; in fact, in a certain aspect, when what it is necessary to omit is omitted, the two magnitudes become *the same*. Consequently, in the inverse aspect, when what it is necessary to add is added, the same magnitude is transformed into two *equal* magnitudes. Cut away from the two magnitudes their distinctive characteristics, from the two equal artificial magnitudes the property of belonging to two distinct collections, from the two equal natural magnitudes the property of having distinct positions; they become *the same magnitude*. Conversely, take the same magnitude twice and attach it successively to two distinct collections or to two distinct positions; it will be transformed into *two equal magnitudes*. Under the word *equal* dwells the word *same*; here we have the essential word; this is the latent idea included in the idea of equality. When severed and followed through several intermediate propositions, it reduces the axiom to an analytical proposition.

By means of it we connect the attribute to the subject ; we see the idea present in both ; but, before we saw it there, we had a presentiment that it was there ; it was actually there, and evidenced its presence by the constraint it exercised on our affirmation ; though not detected, it performed its office ; We felt indeed that two magnitudes being equal might, by that alone, be substituted for one another, that, therefore, the augmentation or diminution undergone by the second might be substituted for the corresponding augmentation or diminution undergone by the first. We divined with certainty, but without the power of stating the matter precisely, that in the two data and in the two operations, there was *something of the same* ; the analysis has only isolated this same thing, and has shown us in a distinct state the virtue it possessed in us in the latent state.

V. There are twelve axioms of this kind at the commencement of Euclid's geometry ; many of them are reduced to preceding ones ; others, comprising the ideas of whole, of part, of greater, of less, are easily demonstrated from the preliminary definition of these terms.\* The last and more important ones deserve to be studied apart ; they are the ones concerning the straight line and parallel lines. Let us first observe that the usual definition of the straight line is a bad one : we say that it is the shortest which can be drawn from one point to another. This is not a primitive property, but a derived property ; we do not, in conceiving it, watch the generation of the line ; we do not possess the elements of the mental construction ; we do but hold one of its consequences. Besides, "this definition† reduces a notion to others which we do not possess and which are much less simple than the first. What in fact do we understand by a line being less short or greater than another ? It is that this line is made up of a part *equal* to the first and of a remainder of some kind. Now, two equal lines are those which may coincide, and con-

---

\* Read as to this, Duhamel, op. cit. ii. 3-6.—Equal angles are defined by the coincidence of their sides ; the perpendicular by the equality of the two adjacent angles it makes ; the right angle by the perpendiculars, which form its sides.

† Duhamel, op. cit. p. 7.



sequently, equality cannot be conceived between two lines whose figure does not admit of superposition," which is the case with the straight line referred to the other indefinitely numerous broken or curved lines with which it would be necessary to compare it in order to verify that it is shorter than any of them. This is not the way in which the acute and subtle Greek analysts have defined the straight line; Euclid does not admit at the outset that it is the shortest line between two points; he proves it later on, by comparing triangles of which it forms a side, which prove it to be shorter than any broken line, then, by extending the case of the broken line to that of the curve which forms its limit.—We must seek then for another definition, and, according to our custom, watch its construction. Now we constructed it by considering two given points, and by observing the line described by the first point when it moves towards the second and towards the second only, as opposed to the line described, when, before moving towards the second, it moves towards another or several other points, which produces a broken line, or, towards an infinite series of other points, which produces a curved line. We thus see that, in the straight line drawn from a point, the whole line, that is to say the straight line itself, being solely and completely determined by its relation with one second point alone, all its characters, whatever they may be, known or unknown, are solely and completely derived from the relation it has with this second point alone.

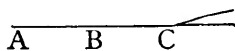
Hence, two consequences, one relating to the whole line, the other relating to its various parts.—If we start from the same first point, and trace another line which also moves towards the same second point, and towards this only, this second line does but exactly repeat the first; for all its characters, like all those of the first, are completely and solely derived from the relations which, like the first, it has with this second point alone; hence we see that the characters of the two lines, whatever they may be, known or unknown, are all absolutely *the same*, in other words, that these two lines are confounded together and form but one.\* this we express in

---

\* An entirely analogous demonstration shows that two circumferences whose radii are equal become confounded into one single one.

various ways, by saying that between two points we can only draw one straight line, that two points are sufficient to determine the interposed straight line, that two straight lines having two points in common coincide in all their intermediate extent, and from this, we easily deduce that two straight lines which cut one another cannot enclose a space.\*—So much for the whole line; let us now consider its various parts. Since the entire line described is completely and solely determined by its relation to the second point and derives thence all its characters, each of its constituent portions is solely and completely determined by the same relation and also derives thence all its characters, excepting one, namely—the property of being one particular portion and not another, situated at some spot or other of the line, at its commencement, its middle, or its end. Consequently, if we make abstraction of this particularity, all the portions of the line have exactly the same characters, in other words, they are the *same*. Let us effect this abstraction, and, for this, suppress the particular position of a fragment of the line, by taking it from the spot at which it is, for instance the end, by transferring it elsewhere, for instance to the beginning, and there applying it to the whole line. It will be confounded with the portion on which it is applied, and the two fragments will make one only. Hence it follows that any portion of the straight line, taken from its position and applied to any other portion of the whole line, will rigorously coincide with the portion to which it is applied.†

When this is settled, we know the relation of *any* portion *whatever* of the straight line to *any* other portion *whatever* of this same line, and are consequently able to follow it, beyond the two points through which we have drawn it, up to an infinite distance. In fact, take a straight line A B, prolong it to any distance beyond the point B, put in such a way that it remains straight, that is to say in accordance



\* This last proposition is the 12th axiom of Euclid.

† An analogous demonstration shows that, in the same circle or in equal circles, any arc transferred from its place, will exactly coincide with the portion of circumference on which it may be placed. This arises from the circumference being, like the straight line, a uniform line.

with the preceding condition, in such a way that any one of its portions may coincide with any other of its portions, therefore with all those which are comprised in its prolongation. Now, suppose a second straight line traced from A to B, and also prolonged to any distance; we have already proved that between A and B it will coincide with the first, but we must further prove that, beyond B, however far we may prolong it, it will coincide with the prolongation of the first line. For, let us assume that at some point or other it ceases so to coincide, and that, on leaving the point C, for instance, it diverges above or below the first; then let us take a portion of the line drawn common to the two lines, A B for instance, and apply it to the first line, at the point C, so that it may extend beyond that point in both directions. Since the first line is straight, this portion will coincide on both sides of C with a fragment of the first line to which it has been applied. Since the second line is assumed to be straight, this same portion must also coincide on both sides of C with the fragment of the second line to which it has been applied. But this is contradictory, since beyond C, the second fragment diverges from and ceases to coincide with the first. There is, then, a contradiction in the second line being straight and ceasing to coincide with the first. Its divergence excludes its straightness, and its straightness its divergence. If it has ceased to coincide with the first, it is from its having ceased to be straight; in order for it to remain straight, it must continue to coincide with the first; in order for it always to remain straight, it must always continue to coincide with the first. Consequently, two straight lines which have two points in common coincide throughout all their extent, to whatever distance they may be prolonged; or again, two points are sufficient completely to determine in a straight line, not merely the portion joining them, but also the whole entire line prolonged to any distance in both directions.

“The definition and properties of the straight line,” said D’Alembert,\* “are the stumbling-block, and, so to speak, the scandal of elementary geometry.” If I am not mistaken, we

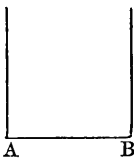
---

\* *Mélanges*.—*Eclaircissements sur les Eléments de Philosophie*, v. 207.

have now seen that this scandal may disappear, and that the assumed axioms are theorems capable of proof. According to D'Alembert, parallel lines present an analogous difficulty. It is rash, no doubt, to approach an obstacle which great minds and specialists have pronounced unsurmountable or unsurmounted ; but here, happily, it is less a question of discovering a demonstration than of analyzing a construction ; we are doing the work of psychologists rather than of geometers ; we are simply searching for the inner secret process by which, beneath the accessory and insufficient testimony of the eyes, we base the unshakable conviction of the mind.—How do we form the notion of two parallel lines ? The usual method is, to erect a perpendicular at any point of a straight line lying in a plane, and another perpendicular at another point ; these two perpendiculars are said to be parallel to one another.\*—Now, what is there primitive in this construction ? Nothing, except that we suppose two straight lines, each of them perpendicular to a third line, denoting by the name perpendicular the straight line which, standing on another straight line, makes the adjacent angles equal to one another ; it is from this construction that all the properties of parallels must be deduced.—Now, what are these properties ? We perceive that, in these two perpendiculars compared to one another, there is something the *same* ; in fact, each of them forms with the base the two same right angles ; and, in consequence, one of the two with its angles, applied to the other, will coincide completely with the other and its angles. They are, then, except in one circumstance alone—their position at two different points of the base—the *same* ; and this partial identity, provided we know how to follow it, must be manifested by precise consequences.—Let us conceive the whole portion of the base intercepted by their feet to mount, with uniform motion, remaining rigid and in such a way that one of its elements traces, in rising, a perpendicular to the base. Since it is a straight line, all its elements are similar ; except in their distinct position, they are, as we have seen, the *same* element :

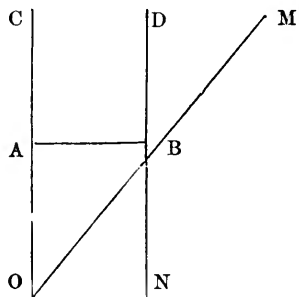
---

\* D'Alembert proposes another construction, very analogous, but somewhat less simple.—Op. cit., p. 202.

hence, it follows that, in their common ascent, they will all of them trace similar straight lines—that is to say, the *same* with the exception of their distinct position ; hence, it finally follows that, as one of these lines is perpendicular, all the rest will be. This is why, if the extremity A traces a perpendicular in its ascent, the extremity B will trace another, and the line A B will, in its ascent, have traced two perpendiculars at A and B. But since it is always the same line A B  which ascends, it will be everywhere the *same* at all points of its course, and as it is this line which measures the distance of the two perpendiculars, this distance will always be the same at all points of the course. Hence it follows that the distance of the two perpendiculars invariably remains the same, and has as its measure the portion of the base intercepted by their feet ; hence it follows, *à fortiori*, that the two perpendiculars, having a distance invariably between them, will never meet.

This is, in my opinion, the secret mental operation which sustains and clears up the evidence of our senses, when we prove, or imagine that we prove, by the eye that the two perpendiculars will always maintain the same distance from one another. We have better reason for admitting this, than the approximately equal durations of the sensations experienced through our ocular muscles. We have no need to apply repeatedly the same measure to one of the perpendiculars, to note with a pencil the distance indicated by the first measurement, to compare it with those indicated by subsequent measurements, and to verify, by recapitulation, that all the measurements agree in indicating equal distances. The mind admits this equality on the spot, but because it has itself created the equality, it creates the equality by causing *the same* intact line to ascend, and also to descend ; it is vaguely conscious that, at the commencement and conclusion of its construction, this line is the *same* ; this is the silent reminiscence which is added to the suggestion of the eye and anticipates the verifications of the measure, to render useless the employment of the measure, and to confirm, by stronger evidence, the insufficient testimony of the eye.

Such is not the case with the second principal proposition relating to parallel lines, and which is termed Euclid's postulate. It is in fact a postulate, and not an axiom. It



consists in saying that, if a line M B cuts obliquely the first parallel D N, it will also meet the second parallel O C.—We have no difficulty in seeing the necessary and sufficient condition of this meeting. It is necessary and sufficient for the cutting line when prolonged beyond B to become suf-

ficiently distant from the first parallel for a perpendicular N O, erected from its meeting to a point N, to be equal to A B the distances of the two parallels. Will the line cutting the first parallel become sufficiently distant from it for this?—We have no difficulty in showing that its distance increases in proportion as it is prolonged; for if, at any moment, this distance were to diminish or to cease to increase, any two subsequent points taken upon the line would be at an equal distance from the first parallel line, and, as two points are sufficient to determine a straight line, the cutting line would be confounded with a third parallel passing through these two points, which is impossible, since, by the previous proposition, two parallels cannot meet, and since, by hypothesis, our oblique line meets the first parallel. In proportion, then, as the cutting line is prolonged, it becomes more distant from the first parallel, and the perpendicular which measures this distance is a continually increasing magnitude.—But our question still subsists. Will this increasing magnitude ever, in fact, increase sufficiently to equal a very great magnitude, and especially, any magnitude of any extent we please, as the distance of the two chosen parallels may be? Reduced to these precise terms, the proposition leaves us in a certain hesitation; no doubt, at first sight, seeing an oblique line sensibly inclined, and two parallels moderately distant, we decided that the oblique line, having met the first, would meet the second; the point of junction was at no great distance; we could perceive it with our eyes, or note it beforehand by imagination; on these indications, we

have inductively concluded with a show of truth that, however small may be the degree of inclination, and however great the distance, the proposition will invariably be true. But, if we suppose the distance equal to the line which joins a fixed star to the earth, and the inclination simultaneously reduced to the hundred millionth part of a second, our eyes no longer avail us, our imagination fails, and we are disturbed. We become still more so, if we recollect that we may further increase the distance and diminish the inclination beyond these enormous figures, and so on indefinitely. We become still more unsettled when we observe that certain magnitudes increase indefinitely, without ever being able to attain a certain limit, that however enlarged and swollen, they invariably remain below a given magnitude, that the series  $1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{16}$  etc., always remains less than 2, and that perhaps our perpendicular is in the same position.—We must employ a more delicate analysis. Let us attempt it. We have here no difficulty in observing that the point N becomes distant from the point B in proportion to the diminution of the angle made the oblique line with the first parallel. We further observe that, the angle remaining the same, the point N becomes distant from the point B in proportion to the increase in the distance of the parallels; then, combining these observations, we conclude that B N is a magnitude whose variations depend on the variations of two other magnitudes. It would be necessary to give precision to this double dependence, and for this purpose to seek a fixed relation, not between the three magnitudes, but between their parts, elements, or fractions. In other words, it would be necessary to find in what proportion B N would be increased by halving the angle, and then, in what proportion B N would be increased by doubling the distance of the parallels, and consequently, in what compound proportion the halving the angle and simultaneous doubling the distance would together increase B N. If we could determine exactly this relation, not only should we be able to affirm that, the angle being diminished as much as we please, and the distance increased as much as we please, the oblique line would always meet the second parallel; but more than this, when given the angle and the distance, we should be

able to say what would be the length of B N, and consequently, to mark on the second parallel the precise point at which the oblique line would meet it.—Unfortunately, the trigonometrical formulæ which lead us to this are themselves founded on the supposition that the oblique line meets the second parallel. We are unable, then, to avail ourselves of them, and Euclid's postulate remains a postulate, that is to say a proposition which we are willing to admit by tolerance, but which we are not forcibly compelled to give our adhesion to, and it is the opinion of the greatest authorities among geometers, that the various demonstrations which have been attempted, though sufficient to induce our assent, have not the analytical rigor appertaining to theorems and to axioms strictly so called.

VI. The reader now sees how axioms are formed. Not only is the experience of the eyes or imagination an indication only, but moreover, this indication may, in certain cases, fail; just now we were unable, either with the external or internal eye, to follow the prolongation of the two parallel lines beyond a certain distance; so again, we may cite a figure such as the regular myriagon, which we have never seen drawn, which we cannot draw in imagination, and as to which we can, nevertheless, form certain definite judgments. Beneath the process of the external or internal eye, there is a silent mental process, the repeated or continuous recognition of a circumstance which, supposed in the primitive construction, persists or reappears, always *the same*, at the various successive moments of our operation. When, after having erected my two perpendiculars on a base, I follow them indefinitely in imagination without being able to admit that at some point or other of their course they approach one another, it is because, involuntary and unawares, I carry with them the portion of base intercepted by their feet, and because, at every moment of the transit, this base, which is always the same in my mind, makes itself vaguely recognized by my mind as being always the same.—But though reason may be the real fabricator of the final conviction, the indication furnished by the senses is of great value. For the testimonies of the eye and the imagination antici-



pate and confirm the conclusions of the analysis ; we are led to the axiom by a preliminary suggestion, and we are maintained in it by a subsequent verification. The sensible evidence serves as introduction and complement to the logical evidence, and it is by means of this agreement that arithmetic, geometry, and even algebra, having immediately found their axioms, were of such early growth.—This was not the case with mechanics. In this science, the axioms do not concur with the inductions of experience ; at least, they do not concur with the inductions of ordinary experience. For instance, axioms tell us that matter is inert, incapable of spontaneously modifying its state, of passing from rest to motion when it is at rest, and from motion to rest when it is in motion. Now, we are daily seeing bodies passing from motion to rest or from rest to motion, and as it seems, spontaneously, and without the appreciable intervention of a new condition. A projected stone, an oscillating pendulum, finally stop, and we are tempted to believe that they stop of themselves ; a mixture explodes, an apple falls from the tree, without our senses detecting the new circumstance which has been added to the former state and has thus produced the new. Throughout the whole of antiquity and of the middle ages, philosophers recognized tendencies to rest or motion, various in various bodies, the tendency downwards in the falling stone, the tendency upwards in air and fire which rise, the tendency to perfect circular movement in the revolving stars, the abhorrence of a vacuum, etc. It was at the Renaissance only, with Stevinus and Galileo, that mechanics commenced ; and, most probably, the cause of this long delay was the disagreement of ordinary induction and of pure reason. In place of leading us to the axiom, experience turned us from it ; instead of confirming it, experience denied it. We had no assistance in forming it, and if we could have formed it, observation, as then practised, would have been sufficient to upset it. We have ended by forming it, and experience, better directed, is now found to be in accordance with it. Further than this, it has been so well directed, and, in certain cases, as that of Borda's pendulum, is found so conclusive that, according to many authors, induc-

tion is the only real proof of the axiom ; they look on the principles of mechanics as propositions analogous to the principle of attraction, established like it by pure induction, limited like it by the small circle and small duration of the world our observation can attain, incapable like it of being applied beyond this except by conjecture, and, like it, simply probable, when our rashness wishes to extend their empire over all portions of space, or to all moments of time.

For ourselves, we are inclined to think, with Leibnitz and D'Alembert, that among the principles of mechanics, are many which are not merely truths of experience, but also *analytical* propositions. In order to show this, let us closely examine our constructions.—Take a movable body moving uniformly in a straight line for as short a time as we please, and traversing as short a space as we please ; this is what we may term its initial, or primitive movement ; will it continue to move, and, if so, what will be its movement ?—However short may be the time first elapsed, for instance, the millionth part of a second, and however small may be the space first traversed, for instance, the thousandth part of a millimetre, we can consider successively two halves in this time and two halves in this space. As, according to our supposition, the movement has been rectilinear, the second two-thousandth of a millimetre described will be in a straight line with the first. As, according to our supposition, the movement has been uniform, the space traversed in the second two-millionth part of a second is the same in magnitude with that traversed in the first. Hence two consequences follow. Neither the direction nor the velocity of the body have been changed. The direction it had during the first fraction of space has remained *the same* during the second. The velocity it had during the first fraction of time has remained *the same* during the second. Whether the fraction be the second or first, matters not ; the character which forms their difference has had no influence on the movement ; as regards the movement, this character has been *indifferent* and, if I may venture to say so, *null*.—But, among the similar fractions of ulterior space and consecutive duration, we may conceive one immediately following our second fraction, after the second two-thousandth of a milli-

metre of traversed space, a third one, after the second two-millionth of a second of time employed, a third one. This third, taken in itself and compared with the second, differs from it only as the second differs from the first; it comes after the second as the second comes after the first; nothing more. Hence it follows that, since the character by which the second differs from the first, that is to say the property of coming after it, has had no influence on the movement, the character by which the third differs from the second, that is to say the property of coming after it, will have no influence on the movement; as regards the movement, this character will also be *indifferent and null*, and, as during the second moment the body continued its uniform and rectilinear movement, so during the third moment, without the introduction of a new influential character, it will continue its uniform and rectilinear movement. The same reasoning will apply to the fourth, the fifth, and succeeding moments, and so on to infinity.

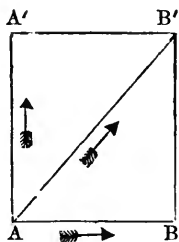
Reduced to these terms, the proof is rigorous. It is wholly founded on two observations: one being that two equal and contiguous portions of space, like two equal and successive portions of time, are exactly the same, excepting this difference, that the second is after the first; the other being that, if this difference has not, in one instance, had any effect upon the movement, this same difference will not, in a second instance, have any effect upon the movement, on condition that, in the second instance, it is absolutely *the same*, and that no other new and influential difference has intervened. For this we provide, by assuming that the third fraction of time and space repeats the second absolutely and in all respects: that, no disturbing character being met with in the second, no disturbing character will be met with in the third; that in the third space and third instant, as in the second space and second instant, no foreign and influential character has been added to arrest, alter, hasten, or retard the movement; that, the little space first traversed being empty, the infinite space remaining to be traversed is also empty; that, the short duration first elapsed having presented no modifying event, the infinite duration which

remains to elapse will not present one. In short, we conclude from a place to a different place, and from an instant to a different instant, with authority and certainty, when this difference, having manifested its absolute want of influence, may be considered as null with reference to the movement, and when, every other influential difference being excluded by hypothesis, the two places and two instants become rigorously *the same* with reference to the movement.

The reader sees without difficulty that an analogous and still more simple reasoning applies to the case of a body at rest; for we have not then to take account of space, but simply of time.—Let a body be at rest during a time as short as we please; as this time is divisible into two halves, we shall demonstrate as before that, the body having remained during the second half in the same state as during the first, the character by which the second half differs from the first, that is to say the property it has of coming after it, has had no influence on this state; hence it follows that a third equal fragment, cut off from consecutive duration, will not have any influence, unless there be made to intervene some new influential circumstance, some foreign effective event. This is why the primitive rest will be maintained, so long as this exclusion is maintained, and however short may be the initial state, the body at rest, as well as the body impressed with a uniform rectilinear motion, will tend to persevere indefinitely in that state.

Observe the restricted range of the axiom, when thus demonstrated and understood. It does not in any way establish that a body impinged on by another will assume a uniform rectilinear movement, nor that a body impressed with a uniform rectilinear movement may lose it under the force of an impact, and will then remain indefinitely at rest; these truths are matters of induction and experience. We are elsewhere, in the pure region of abstract truths; we no longer know whether, in fact, there be any movable bodies at rest or in motion; we do but extract and follow out the consequences included in an initial supposition or construction.—This is why simple analysis has been so far sufficient and will also be sufficient to demonstrate two other capital propositions of mechan-

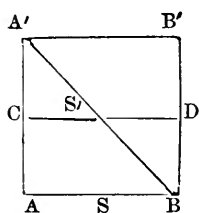
ics. Take an inflexible straight line  $AB$ ; suppose it to move altogether and in such a way as always to remain parallel to its first position; after a certain time it becomes  $A'B'$  parallel to  $AB$ , and we assume this time to be a second. Now suppose that, during this movement of the whole line, a movable point, situated at  $A$ , is itself directed in a straight line



towards the point  $B$ , in such a way as to traverse, also in a second, that is to say in the *same* lapse of time, the straight line  $AB$ . We thus assume for  $A$  two simultaneous and different movements, the one common to it with the other points of the line  $AB$ , the other special to itself.—Observe that we do not know if things happen thus in nature. There is nothing to prove that our mental combination has, or even can have, its counterpart in real combinations. We might imagine a state of things in which, from the very fact of a body moving in one direction, it would be impossible for a portion of that body to move at the same time in another direction. But we have not here to trouble ourselves with what the laws of real things permit or deny; we suppose, in our movable body, the independence of two simultaneous movements taking place in opposite directions, reserving a verification later on by experience as to whether the facts do or do not adjust themselves to this conception.—From our two hypotheses, what follows? By the first it is admitted that the straight line  $AB$ , mounting towards  $A'B'$ , becomes, at the end of a second,  $A'B'$ , and that thus, at the end of a second, the point  $B$  arrives at the point  $B'$ . By the second, it is admitted that the movable point situated at  $A$  is transferred from  $A$  to  $B$ , also in a second, without the ascent of  $AB$  interfering in any way with this movement of translation. This ascension, then, is *indifferent and null* with respect to the translation, and the movable point travels along  $AB$  in motion, as it would along  $AB$  at rest. Hence it follows that, at the end of a second, it has arrived at the extremity of  $AB$  in motion, just as it would have arrived, at the end of a second, at the extremity of  $AB$  at rest. But, at the end of a second, the extremity of  $AB$  in motion is  $B'$ ; therefore, at the end of a

second, the movable point is at  $B'$ . Hence we see that having started from the angle of the parallelogram it has reached the opposite angle.

We have now to enquire what line it has described in this transit. Two cases may present themselves, that of uniform motion, and that of motion which is not uniform. We shall only examine the first, the simplest of all: in this case, the velocity of  $A B$  has remained the same throughout all its ascent, as also the velocity of the movable point  $A$  throughout all its translation. Consequently, at the end of half a second,



$A B$  is found to be exactly in the middle of its whole transit, that is to say at  $C D$ , and at the end of the same half second, the movable point  $A$  is found to be exactly in the middle of its whole transit, that is to say at  $S$ . But as  $A B$  has mounted in the meantime to  $C D$ , the point  $S$  belonging to it has mounted with it, and is to be found at  $S'$ , the middle point of  $C D$ , as  $S$  is the middle point of  $A B$ . Very

simple geometrical considerations show that this point  $S'$  is on the diagonal, that is to say on the straight line joining  $A$  and  $B'$ . By subdividing the divisions of the second, we should prove in the same way that all the other successive positions of the movable point are likewise on the diagonal, hence it follows that the line it describes in its whole double movement of ascension and translation is the diagonal.—Hence, a very important consequence: our movable body which would have described the line  $A B$  in a second, and the line  $A A'$  also in a second, likewise describes in a second the diagonal  $A B'$ . Since, then, the times employed are the same, and the spaces traversed are different, the velocity of the compound movement will not be the same as the velocities of the component movements, it will be represented by the diagonal, and they will be represented by the two sides of the angle, these three lines being the measure of the spaces traversed in the unit of time. Now, we have measured force by the greater or less velocity it impresses on the same movable body. Suppose now two forces applied to the preceding movable body, one which, if acting alone, would make it traverse the

line A B in a second, the other which, if acting alone, would make it traverse the line A A', also in a second; apply them both together to the movable body; we have just seen that it will traverse the diagonal in a second. Hence it follows that the resulting force, estimated by the impressed velocity, is to the component forces, estimated also by the impressed velocity, as the diagonal is to the two sides of the angle. Therefore the diagonal measures the resulting force with reference to the component forces, just as it measures the compound velocity with reference to the component velocities.—It is now sufficient to insert, in the measurement of forces, the second element of force, mass, and we have already shown how this idea is connected with the idea of velocity.\* When we have done this, we possess all the essential axioms of mechanics, and we have formed them, as all other analytical propositions are formed, by the simple analysis of the mental combination in which they were included in a latent state.

VII. Other less fruitful axioms are also worthy of demonstration by reason of their immense range, and the prodigious power they seem suddenly to confer on the human mind. These are the ones relating, not to particular times compared with other times, nor to particular spaces compared with other spaces, but to the whole of time and the whole of space. With reference to a given moment, duration is infinite in the future and the past, and we may picture it by a straight line which starting from a given point is infinite in both directions. With reference to a given point, space is infinite, in three dimensions; first, in length, which we picture by supposing a point which moving in a straight line generates in two directions an infinite straight line; then in breadth, which we picture by supposing this infinite straight line by moving in a direction perpendicular to its own to generate on both sides an infinite surface; lastly, in depth, which we picture by supposing this infinite surface by moving in a direction perpendicular to itself to generate on both sides an infinite geometrical solid.—These are propositions which we cannot prevent ourselves from holding to be true,

---

\* Part ii., Book iv., Ch. i., p. 420 *ante*.

and thereupon our imagination gives itself scope; we represent to ourselves time and space as two infinite, uniform, indestructible receptacles. In the one are included all real events, in the other, all real bodies. However long may be a series of real events, for instance, the sequence of changes which have occurred since the origin of our solar system, however vast may be a group of real bodies, for instance, the collection of all the stellar systems to which our telescopes can reach, the receptacle extends still further; however we might increase the series or the group, it would always extend beyond them, and the reason is that the receptacle has no limits. We remain startled, and ask ourselves by what marvellous operation of the mind we have been able to discover so marvellous a property.—But our astonishment is diminished when we observe that the same property is met with in all magnitudes, and is at an end when we find that it is comprised in the definition of magnitude.—Take the simplest of all magnitudes, a collection of individuals or units, as small as we please, that is to say containing two units. To construct it, I have supposed two precisely similar units, that is to say the same unit repeated; I have then added the second to the first, 1 to 1, supposing the second unit to be the same before as after the adjunction, in other words, that the second 1, when added, remains intact and absolutely such as before. Since the second 1 is the same as the first, I may, when it is alone, perform on it the operation which I have just performed on the first, and therefore add to it 1. Since the second 1, after its adjunction to the first, remains absolutely such as it was before, I may add 1 to it when it is added to the first, just as I added 1 to it when it was alone. I may then add 1 to  $1 + 1$ , that is to say to 2, just as I have already added 1 to 1. An analogous reasoning shows that we may similarly add 1 to 3, then to 4, to 5, to 6, and in general, to any number whatever. Thus every adjunction we effect generates the possibility of another similar adjunction; hence it follows that the series of numbers is absolutely infinite. There is no number, however enormous, which may not be comprised in this series; it is, as regards imaginable numbers, what duration is with regard to real or imaginable



events, what space is with regard to real or imaginable bodies, a boundless receptacle in which every determined or determinable number comes necessarily to find a place, sometimes above, sometimes below, but always in a precise spot, without ever the number, swollen as enormously as we please, ceasing to be contained by the series like a thing enclosed by things *beyond* it.

So much for collections which are artificial and discontinuous magnitudes; the same reasonings applies to times, lines, surfaces, solids, which are natural and continuous magnitudes. Take any portion whatever of the straight line  $AC$ ; the first notions of geometry show us that it may be divided into two equal straight lines,  $AB$ ,  $BC$ , the second of which, if applied to the first, intact and without alteration, will coincide with it exactly; therefore, except as to its position following the first, it is the *same* as the first, and moreover, by hypothesis, it is the *same* as before its translation. Since the second line is the same as the first, I may, when it coincides with the first, perform on it the same operation as upon the first, and therefore prolong it, like the first, by a line equal to itself. Since the second line is the same, now as before its translation, I may before translating it, that is to say when it still prolongs the first, prolong it, like the first, by a line equal to itself. I may, then, prolong  $ABC$  by  $CD$  just as

I prolonged  $AB$  by  $BC$ . An analogous  
 $\overline{A \quad B \quad C \quad D \quad E}$  demonstration shows that we can similarly  
 prolong  $ABCD$  by  $DE$  and so on, however great may be the line so constituted. Every prolongation we effect, then, generates the possibility of another equal prolongation, whence it follows that the series of prolongations is absolutely infinite.—The reader readily perceives that, with the necessary changes of words, this analysis becomes equally applicable to surfaces, solids, times, and rigorously demonstrates the infinity of time and space.—All the artifice of the proof consists in observing two elements of a given magnitude, and remarking that they are the *same* except as to their difference of position in the magnitude, that this difference is itself *indifferent*, that is to say of no effect and without any influence on their nature, that, there-

fore, the increase given to the first element by the second may be given to the whole by a subsequent third element, and in general, to every other analogous whole by a subsequent element. What creates the infinity of the series, are the properties of its elements. So again, it is by comparing together the elements of infinite series that we compare together such series themselves. This is the process by which I know that the infinite series of even numbers is equal to the infinite series of odd numbers, and that each of them is half of the infinite series of numbers. This is the process by which I know that the infinite surface comprised above a straight line between two perpendiculars a metre apart, is equal to the infinite surface comprised by the same perpendiculars when prolonged below the line, and that these two infinite surfaces taken together are two-thirds of the infinite surface comprised above the line by two perpendiculars three metres apart. Thus, when we study the axioms which removes all limit from the possible increase of any magnitude, and which sets out this magnitude when infinitely increased, as a permanent receptacle in which every limited magnitude of the same kind must necessarily find its place and something *beyond* it, we find only, as in the other axioms, an analytical proposition. It has been sufficient in every case for us to examine attentively our mental construction, to detect in it conditions which are understood, the *latent identity* of one datum and another, the *latent indifference* of a character which seemed to separate the two data, identities and indifferences which we did not perceive at first, since our supposition had not expressly enunciated them, but which were nevertheless tacitly included in our hypothesis, and which, before they were brought to light, revealed their secret presence by the invincible inclination they impressed on our belief, and by the complete evidence with which they enlightened our judgment.

VIII. We now see how it is that the contraries of axioms and their consequences are not only incredible but inconceivable; it arises from their being contradictory; in this sense, axioms and their consequences are necessary truths. There is no question of greater importance in psychology,

for no question has more important consequences in philosophy. In fact, these kinds of propositions are the only ones which are applicable, not only to all observed cases, but to all cases, without possible exception; hence it follows that, on their value, depends the reach of human knowledge. But their value depends on their origin; it is essential, then, to know whence they spring, and how they are formed. To this, two original and still existing schools give two opposite answers. Let me be understood to speak only of doctrines which hold a place on the world's stage, and of philosophers who have constructed their doctrines without other care than that for truth.—Of the two principal answers, the first is that of Kant. According to him, these propositions are the work of an internal force, and the effect of our mental structure. It is this structure which effects the connection between the two ideas of the proposition; if the idea of straight line, that is to say of a certain direction, is joined in my mind to the idea of the least distance, that is to say of a certain magnitude, it is not because this direction and this distance are in themselves connected, it is because my intelligence is fashioned in a certain way, and, being so fashioned, cannot avoid establishing a connection between the two ideas which it has of this distance and of this direction. In fact, the two data taken in themselves are of different kinds; there is no point of real connection between them. Consequently, the invincible mutual attachment which I observe to exist between them in my mind finds its explanation, not in their intrinsic nature, but in the mental medium into which they have been introduced. My mind has not ascertained their connection, it has constructed it. We must admit, then, that these propositions reveal to us a necessity of our mind, and not a connection of things. In the narrow circle to which our experience is confined, we may, indeed, establish by induction, that the corresponding sensible data are approximately connected; but to affirm that in every place and at every time these abstract data are connected and necessarily connected, is what is not allowed us; we have no right to impose on facts a connection which belongs only to our ideas, nor to set up an infirmity of the subject as a law of objects.

Starting from the opposite view, Stuart Mill arrives at a similar conclusion. According to him, these propositions have as their cause an external force, and are, like other truths of experience, the summed-up impression left on our mind by things. Considering two sensible lines sensibly perpendicular to a straight line, we verify by an infinity of readily effected measurements that they remain equally distant from one another. Further, we observe that, the more exactly they are perpendicular, the more exactly equal are their distances. Hence it follows that, if they were rigorously perpendicular, their distances would be rigorously equal. From the equality of these distances on our paper, we conclude by induction that, far beyond our paper and at an infinite distance, they would still remain equal. If the contrary supposition is inconceivable, it is owing to our imagination exactly repeating our vision while giving it greater range; the internal eye does but add a telescope to the external eye; therefore, we cannot imagine the two perpendiculars other than as we see them; we cannot, then, prolong them mentally, without representing them to ourselves as still equally distant.—Hence it follows that the truths termed necessary, having the same origin as the truths of experience, are subject to the same restrictions and the same doubts. By the axiom as to parallel lines just as by the law of the movement of the planets, we prove the constant association of two data, which are, in fact, constantly associated in nature; but this association is not a connection, it is merely a concurrence. Taken in themselves the two data are nothing more than incidents which coincide; there is no internal necessity in them which assembles them in a necessary couple. Perhaps, beyond our little world, they are found disconnected; at all events, we have no right to affirm that beyond it they are in all places and in themselves, connected. A mind constructed upon another model than ours might perhaps readily conceive varying distances between our two perpendiculars. It may be that, beyond the nebulae of Herschel, none of our laws are true, and there may even be no law which holds good.—We are, then, inevitably driven back from the infinite; our faculties and our assertions can in no way attain to it; we remain

confined in a very small circle ; our mind cannot carry itself beyond the range of its experience ; we cannot establish any universal and necessary connection between facts ; perhaps, indeed, no such universal and necessary connection exists.—By following out this idea to its full extent, we should arrive at the conception of the universe of events and beings as a simple collection or heap. There would be no internal necessity for their connections or existence. They would be pure data, that is to say, things accidentally existing. Sometimes, as in our system, they would be found assembled in such a way as to bring about regular recurrences ; sometimes, they would be so assembled that nothing of the sort would occur. Chance would be, as Democritus taught, at the foundation of all things. Laws themselves would be derived from it, and would only be derived from it, in certain places. It would be with beings as with recurring decimals, which, according to the hazard of what may be their two primitive factors, sometimes expand in regular periods, and sometimes not, and which generate their successive ciphers, sometimes according to a law, sometimes without following any law.

Here are two high conceptions, and the powerful minds which formed them are worthy of all admiration and respect ; but we must examine the foundation on which they are built, and, in my opinion, this foundation is not solid.—According to Kant, there is no necessary connection between the two data ; if there is an invincible connection between the two corresponding ideas, its cause lies, not in the structure of the data, but in the structure of our mind. We recognize, with Kant, an invincible connection between the two ideas. But between the two data, which are the objects of these ideas, and to which he refuses any intrinsic connection, we have discovered an intrinsic connection ; for the first, in a latent manner, contains the second, from which it follows that the contents being inseparable from what contains them, the unsurmountable connection between our ideas is indestructible between their objects.—According to Stuart Mill, whether there be a connection between the two data or not, we are incapable of knowing it ; for the two data are connected by induction alone ; and all induction can prove be-

tween them is that they are constantly found together, that is to say, an association of fact. We admit, with Mill, that at the outset and in many minds they are only connected by induction; but we have proved that they may also be otherwise connected. We can represent two perpendiculars upon a straight line by imagination, but we can also conceive them by reason. We can consider their sensible image, and also, in addition to their sensible image, their abstract definition. We can study them ready constructed and generated, but we can also study them during their construction and generation, in their factors and their elements. We can watch their formation and detect the ascension of the base which generates them, just as we can watch the formation of the cylinder and detect the rectangle by whose revolution it is described. From this construction we extract the included properties, and thus form by analysis the proposition we at first formed by induction.—Thanks to this second process, the range of our mind is extended infinitely. We are no longer capable only of relative and limited knowledge; we are also capable of absolute and unlimited knowledge; in axioms and their consequences we hold data, not only accompanying one another, but such that one includes the other. If, as Mill teaches, they only accompanied one another, we should be driven to conclude with him that this might not always be the case; we should see no internal necessity for their junction; we should simply state it as a fact; we should say that the two data being isolated in their nature, circumstances might be found in which they would be separate; we should only affirm the truth of axioms and their consequences relatively to our world and our mind. But since, on the contrary, the two data are such that the first includes the second, we establish by that alone the necessity of their junction; the first, wherever it may be, will involve the second, since the second is a part of itself, and since a datum cannot be separated from itself. There is no place between the two for a circumstance to intervene to disjoin them; for they are but one thing in two aspects. Their connection, then, is absolute and universal, and the propositions which concern them do not permit of doubts, limits, conditions, or restrictions.—In truth, these proposi-

tions are hypothetical; all they affirm is that, if the first datum be anywhere met with, and especially in nature, the second datum cannot fail to be also met with there, by consequence and correspondence. It remains, then, for us to prove that there are, in fact, equal magnitudes, artificial and natural straight lines, lines perpendicular to a straight line, bodies motionless or moving for a very short time at least uniformly in a straight line, movable bodies possessed of constant velocities in different directions, homogeneous substances exactly divisible into equal portions, in short, real data conforming to our mental constructions. To show this, it is necessary and sufficient for experience to intervene; in fact, in many cases, in astronomy, optics, acoustics, it ascertains that certain existing things present the required characters, or at least tend to present them, and would present them, if we could effect upon them the proper eliminations. In all these cases the necessary propositions are *applicable*, and the real data have the intrinsic connection which Kant and Mill deny them.—Thence follow vast consequences, and a view of the foundation of nature, the essence of laws, and the structure of things opposed to those of Kant and Mill.

## CHAPTER III.

## THE CONNECTION OF GENERAL CHARACTERS, OR THE EXPLANATORY REASON OF THINGS.

## § I. NATURE OF THE EXPLANATORY INTERMEDIATE.

I. WHEN we have ascertained a connection between two data, possible or real, it often happens that this connection is explainable, and we are then able, not only to affirm that the two data are connected, but also to say *why* they are connected. Between the two data which form a couple, there is found another, an intermediate one, which, being connected on the one side with the first, and on the other side with the second, produces by its presence the connection of the second and first, in such a way that this last connection is derived and presupposes, as conditions, the two preliminary connections whose effect it is. In this case we conceive the two preliminary connections by two preliminary propositions which we term *premises*, and we conceive the derived connection by a derived proposition which we term *conclusion*.—Nothing can be more important than this intermediate datum, since it is the one which, by its insertion between the two data, consolidates them into a couple. We must attempt to find out in what it consists, how we discover it, where we ought to search for it. When this is done, we shall have no difficulty in comprehending the formation of the two premises into which it enters, and of the conclusion which results from them.

II. There is a case in which we know all this, that of individual objects subject to known laws. For instance, Peter is mortal ; the two lines drawn on this slate perpendicularly to a third line are parallel : here are couples of data in which the first member is not general, but an individual, particular, determined object.—Moreover, these objects are subject to



known laws ; we know that all men, among whom is Peter, are mortal, that all straight lines perpendicular to another straight line, among which are the lines on our slate, are parallel.—Now, in this case, the explanatory intermediate which connects the enounced property to the individual object is the first term of a general law : if Peter is mortal, it is because he is a man, and because every man is mortal ; if our two lines are parallel, it is because they are perpendicular to a third, and because all straight lines perpendicular to a third straight line are parallel. But *man* is a character included in Peter, an extract from him, more general than he is ; so *perpendicular to a third* is a character included in our two lines, an extract from them, more general than they are.—Hence we see that, in the case of individual objects subject to known laws, the intermediate which connects the enounced property with each object is a character included in it, more abstract and more general than it is, common to it and to other analogous objects, and which, involving by its presence the property enounced, draws this property with it in each of the individuals to which it appertains.

Let us now inquire in what this intermediate consists, when it is a question, not of connecting a property to an individual object, but of connecting a property to a general thing. In other words, from the explanation of facts, let us pass to the explanation of laws, and, for this purpose, let us examine some of the laws of which the *reason* and the *why* are now discovered.—In the seventeenth century, after the experiments of Galileo and Pascal, it was known that all terrestrial bodies tend to fall towards the earth, and, after Copernicus and Kepler, it was understood that the earth and all the other planets tend to fall towards the sun. Newton came and proved that the two tendencies are the same ; gravitation is common to celestial, as well as to terrestrial, bodies, and, more generally, to all bodies. From that time it was known *why* terrestrial bodies tend to fall towards the earth, and *why* the planets tend to fall towards the sun. The weight of the first, and the centripetal tendency of the others, had as *reason* a property common to both ; the two laws were cases only of a third and more extensive law. From the group of characters

which constitute a terrestrial body, Newton retained one only, the property of being a mass with reference to another mass; he eliminated the rest. From the group of characters which constitute a planet, he retained one only, the property of being a mass with reference to another mass; here again he eliminated the rest. He had, then, derived from the two groups a general and abstract property, more general and more abstract than either of them, contained in each of them like a part in a total, like a fragment in a whole, like an element in a sum. Instead of connecting, like his predecessors, weight to the first whole group, and centripetal tendency to the second whole group, he connected the weight and the centripetal tendency to an element found alike in both of them.—By this brilliant example, we see in what the intermediate datum furnishing the *reason* of a law consists. Given the object subject to the law, this datum is one of its characters, a character comprised in the group of characters which constitute it, a character included in it, more abstract and more general than it, in short, an extract to be extracted.—Let us follow out the series of *whys*, and we shall see that such is indeed the nature and position of the *because*s, or alleged reasons.—Why does this stone tend to fall? Because at the surface of the earth all stones, and more generally still all solids, or liquids opposing any resistance to our muscles, tend to fall.—Why do all these solids or liquids tend to fall? Because all masses at the surface of the earth, whatever they may be, solid, liquid, or gaseous, tend to fall.—Why do they tend to fall? Because not only at the surface of the earth, but still further distant, as we have proved in the case of the moon, in all our solar system, as is the case with the planets and their satellites, with comets and the sun, far beyond again, as happens with the double stars, every mass, as soon as it is in relation with another mass, tends to approach it.—Why this strange tendency? Physicists\* are at present inquiring if it

---

\* "L'Unità delle forze fisiche, saggio di Filosofia Naturale," by Père Secchi.—M. Lamé has examined and adopted an analogous hypothesis.—See the development of the whole hypothesis in "La Physique Moderne," by M. Saigey, especially p. 146.

cannot be reduced to a continuous impulsion, to the pressure exercised by an ether. If we could succeed in proving that this ether in fact exists, and that the density of its successive layers about a heavy body goes on increasing as the square of the line which represents their distance from the body, the supposition presented would become a demonstrated truth, we should have an additional *because*; we should detect in a gravitating body a character still more general and more abstract than gravitation, a property wholly mechanical, that by which a body follows an impulsion, and receives a new velocity at each new impulsion. Now this last explanatory character would have the same characteristics and the same position as the rest. It would, then, like the rest, be a portion, an element, *an extract from the preceding one*, and would, like the rest, be found in the preceding one, in which it is included.

III. Let us now look at those laws in which the explanatory intermediate seems at first sight of a wholly different kind.—Every vibrating body whose vibrations are comprised within certain known limits of slowness and velocity excites in us the sensation of sound. Why so? Because its vibrations have, among other characters, the power of being propagated through the surrounding medium up to our acoustic nerve; in fact, take from them this property, which we do by the suppression of the medium and by setting the body in a vacuum, the vibrations continue, but, as they cease to be propagated, the sensation is no longer produced. Thus the reason which renders these initial vibrations actually sonorous, is the possibility they have of being propagated, a property included in them and more general than they are, since it is met with elsewhere, for instance, in the vibrations of the luminous ether. Here again the two data, antecedent and consequent, are connected through the medium of a character comprised in the first, and it is the first which we must study *with all its circumstances* to extract from it the element which is the reason of the law.—Now, why does the vibration of the body, when propagated through the medium up to the acoustic nerve, excite in us the sensation of sound? Because it possesses, among other characters, the power of propagating itself further still, along the acoustic nerve, up to the acoustic centres

of the brain ; in fact, take away this property, which we find effected when the subject is deaf, and which we can effect by paralysing the brain with chloroform ; the vibration will be propagated as far as the acoustic nerves, or even as far as their central termination ; but, as it does not reach or does not disturb the cerebral centres, it will not excite the sensation of sound. Thus the reason which renders vibrations propagated up to the acoustic nerve actually sonorous is the possibility they have of being propagated beyond it up to the cerebral centres, a property included in them, and more general than they are, since it is met with elsewhere, particularly in the luminous vibrations transmitted to the retina, and, in general, in all the disturbances which external bodies impress on our sensory nerves. As before, the two data, antecedent and consequent, are connected through the medium of a character comprised in the first, and it is the first, I mean the vibration already propagated up to the nerve, which we must study *with all its circumstances*, to ascertain in it and detach from it the possibility of a further and complete propagation which is the reason of the law.

We see that, in this law, the intermediate datum is a character of the first datum, which is the vibration ; just as, in the preceding law, gravitation is a character of the first datum, which is the planet.—In fact, between the two cases there is an important difference. In the first, the explanatory character is one of *the least stable* elements of the antecedent ; whether the vibration be propagated or not, does not depend on itself, but on many superadded conditions, sometimes present, sometimes absent ; it requires to meet with a favorable medium, an uninjured nerve, a healthy brain ; if these circumstances are absent, it cannot be propagated ; it may, then, exist without being propagated ; this will happen if the surrounding medium is wanting, or if the nerve or cerebral centres are in an abnormal state. In the second case, on the contrary, the explanatory character is one of *the most stable* elements of the antecedent ; even were the planet to be shivered into fragments and to fall upon another, its fragments would still tend towards the sun, and towards every mass with which they might be in relation.—But this difference of the two

cases in no way alters their fundamental resemblance, and in the first, as in the second, the explanatory intermediate, stable or unstable, is a *more general character*, comprised with others in the antecedent, and which must be looked for in the group in which it occurs, that is to say in the first of the two data of the law.

IV. In the law associating the sensation with the vibration, the intermediate is composed of two *successive* intermediates, the power of the initial vibration to propagate itself up to the nerve, and the power of the propagated vibration to propagate itself up to the brain. In other laws, the intermediate is equally multiplex, but the intermediates of which it is composed are *simultaneous* and not successive.\* Besides the cases in which the reason is a series of reasons, there are cases in which it is a group of reasons.—For instance, the earth describes a particular orbit about the sun. Now the reason which determines this orbit is a sum of distinct reasons, one of which is the initial impulsion, or tangential force, with its quantity in the case in question, another gravitation or the centripetal force, with its quantity in the case in question, and the last, the distance from the earth to the sun at a fixed time and place. In these instances, if we ask the why, the answer is a sum of *because*s; here especially there are three united reasons, three explanatory characters, three intermediate data, each of which, taken apart, is more general than the total antecedent, and which, included in it, concur by their assembled influences to determine the curve in question.—Hence an important consequence. Suppose a law in which the first datum is a whole, a compound of distinct parts, an assemblage of data separable in fact, or at all events mentally separable; it is evident that the explanatory intermediate will be, as in the preceding case, a sum of intermediates which we have here to seek out and detect, one by one, in the various separable data of which our first datum is the whole.

Such is the case with numbers and geometrical compounds. Every number, written according to our ordinary system of numeration, in which the sum of the digits is di-

---

\* See, on all these points, the fine chapter in Mill's "System of Logic," book iii., chap. xii., "Of the Explanation of Laws of Nature."

visible by 9, is itself divisible by 9. Every convex polygon contains a number of angles which, together with four right angles, are equal to twice as many right angles as the figure has sides. Here are two laws in which the first datum is a sum of separable data; in fact, the written number is nothing more than the sum of its units of various orders, and the polygon is nothing more than the sum of its parts; hence it follows that the explanatory intermediates must be sought for in the units of various orders which make up the number, and in the parts which make up the polygon.—Let us first observe the number; the units of various orders which form its elements are already detached, prepared, and presented for analysis, and, to detect them, we have only to consider the digits representing them. Now it is easy to see that in every number the sum of the units of the second, third, fourth order, etc., is divisible by 9, with a remainder equal to the digit representing it; that, therefore, the sum of these sums is divisible by 9, with a remainder equal to the sum of the digits which represent it; that consequently the entire number itself is divisible by 9, with a remainder equal to the total sum of the digits which represent it; hence it follows that if the whole sum of the digits is itself divisible by 9, the remainder disappears, and the entire number, divided by 9, leaves no remainder.—Here the explanatory intermediate is a character included in all the elements of the number, except the first, and common to all the units represented by a digit placed to the left of the first; this character so repeated compels every number to be divisible by 9, with a remainder equal to the sum of its digits, and consequently, renders it divisible by 9, on the single condition that the sum of its digits is divisible by 9.

Let us now take the polygon; when it is presented to us, the portions of surface which form its elements are not yet distinct and separate; we are compelled, then, to create them, and for this, to effect divisions and trace lines; a construction must precede the analysis. We take any point in the interior of the polygon; from this point we draw straight lines to all its angles; we thus replace the polygon by a group of triangles whose number is equal to that of its sides.

Now, in each of these triangles, the two angles at the base, together with the angle at the vertex, are equal to two right angles; therefore, if we take all the triangles, and if, adding together all the angles at their bases, we further add all the angles at their vertices, we shall have as many times two right angles as there are triangles, that is to say sides in the polygon. But these angles at the bases are precisely the angles of the polygon; so that the angles of the polygon, if we add to them the angles at the vertices, are equal to twice as many right angles as the polygon has sides. Now we know independently that the angles at the vertices are together equal to four right angles; hence it follows that the polygon contains a number of angles which, together with four right angles, are equal to twice as many right angles as there are sides.—Here the explanatory intermediate is a character comprised in all the elements of the polygon, that is to say common to all the triangles of which it is the whole; this character, thus repeated, compels every polygon to contain a number of angles which, estimated in right angles and increased by a constant number of right angles, is double the number of its sides.

But it is not only in arithmetical and geometrical compounds that intermediates of this kind occur. Take a carnivorous animal like the tiger, or a ruminant animal like the ox. A number of precise laws connect each of its organs, and each fragment of each of its organs, with the rest. The naturalist who dissects one organ, knows beforehand what he will find in the others; from the external appearance, he predicts the internal structure, and can delineate the form of the stomach, the brain, the heart, the skeleton, before he has laid them bare. If he is asked why, in this animal, a particular portion constructed in a particular way involves some other portion, he can answer: his predecessors, from Galen to Cuvier and Richard Owen, have discovered an explanatory intermediate which, common to all these very various parts, is the principal reason of their structure and relations. This intermediate is the property of being *useful*; each organ performs a function which contributes, with the rest, to a total effect; therefore, it is appropriate to its func-

tion ; therefore, it is determined by its function. But this function is itself determined by the others which contribute with it to the total effect ; hence it follows that the organs determine one another with a view to a total effect. In other words, the organs reconcile their characters in such a way as to reconcile their functions, and they reconcile their functions in such a way as to maintain the circuit of loss and reparation which forms the life of the individual and the succession of individuals which forms the race.—Consequently, a particular kind of teeth involves a particular kind of intestines, and conversely. If we find an intestine fitted to digest flesh only, and raw flesh, the animal has jaws constructed to devour its prey, claws fitted to seize and tear it, teeth fitted to cut and divide it, a system of motor organs fitted to catch it, senses capable of perceiving it at a distance, the instinct to hide itself in order to surprise it, and a liking for flesh. “Hence follows,” says Cuvier, “a certain form of the condyle in order that the jaws may fit together like scissors, a certain volume in the crotaphyte muscle, a certain depth of the fossa which receives it, a certain convexity of zygomatic arcade through which it passes, and a host of characters of the skeleton, the articulations, and the motor muscles. . . . The form of the tooth involves that of the condyle, that of the omoplate, that of the talons, just as the equation of a curve involves all its properties, and just as, by taking each property separately as the base of a particular equation, we should rediscover the ordinary equation and all the other properties, so the talon, the omoplate, the condyle, the femur, and all the other bones, taken separately, give the tooth, and are conversely given by it.”—This is so true that, in the same animal, the metamorphosis of one organ involves an appropriate metamorphosis of the rest. The tadpole, which is not carnivorous, requiring a very long canal to digest its food, has an intestine ten times the length of its body ; when changed into a carnivorous frog, its intestine is but twice the length from mouth to anus. The voracious larva of the cockchafer has an œsophagus, a vast muscular stomach, surrounded with three crowns of little cæcums, a small intestine, an enormous large



intestine three times the size of the stomach, and filling up the whole posterior third of the body: when it has become a cockchafer and more temperate, all that remains of this apparatus is a slender canal destitute of enlargements.—By this discovery of the explanatory intermediate, the face of the animal world is entirely changed. Before, we had descriptive anatomy only; we knew that in fact certain characters accompanied one another; but we did not know why they accompanied one another. They were then simply in juxtaposition; they are now necessarily connected; in addition to their constant concurrence, as we ascertain their obligatory connection. Every organ, and further, every physical or moral element, of the living animal, comprises, included in itself, a property repeated in all the others, that is to say the particularity of tending to harmonize with the rest, in such a way as to concur with them in a certain final and total effect; and this common intermediate explains not merely a prodigious number of characters in the animal, already enumerated by descriptive anatomy, but also an infinite number of other more delicate and intimate characters which our scalpels and microscopes are too clumsy to have yet attained.

We may now form an idea of the intermediate.—Take a law, or a couple of data connected together. What is their link? Whence comes their consolidation? What is the reason, the *because*, the interposed condition, which connects the second to the first? The reader has just followed this intermediate, and finds it reappear, always alike, under its different forms.—Sometimes it is simple, like the force of gravitation, which explains the fall of heavy bodies.—Sometimes it is multiplex; composed of many intermediates. Two cases then present themselves.—Either the components are successive—as is, with the sonorous vibration, the power of propagating itself in the surrounding medium, and then the power of propagating itself along the nerve as far as the cerebral centres; or else the components are simultaneous—as are the characters which combine to direct the earth in its course round the sun. Here again we must make a distinction.—Sometimes the simultaneous intermediates are of different kinds; as are, in the preceding case, the tangential

force, the centripetal force, and the given distance from the earth to the sun. Sometimes the simultaneous intermediates are of the same kind, and are reduced to the same intermediate repeated in all the elements of the object. This last case is itself divisible into two branches.—Either the elements in which the intermediate is repeated are similar, like the units of the number, or the triangles of the polygon; or they are dissimilar, like the organs of the animal.—But simple or multiplex, composed of successive or of simultaneous intermediates, of different intermediates, or of the same intermediate repeated, of the same intermediate repeated by similar elements, or of the same intermediate repeated by dissimilar elements, the explanatory intermediate is always shown to us as a character or a sum of characters *included* in the first datum of the couple, *more general* than that datum when they are considered apart, and *accessible* to our grasp, from being comprised in it and separable from it, by our ordinary processes of isolation and extraction.

V. When once the intermediate is detected and represented in the mind by a corresponding idea, it effects within us an internal process which we term demonstration. Take one of the above-mentioned laws: every planet tends to approach a central mass with which it is in relation—the sun. This law is a couple of two data, one, which is the planet, the other, which is the tendency of the planet to approach the central mass, and the intermediate connecting them is a general datum, common, not only to all the planets, but to all bodies situated at their surfaces and to an infinite number of other bodies; I mean the property of being a mass, every mass having this character that it tends to approach the central mass with which it is in relation. Let us compare these three data with one another.—The first, the planet, contains the intermediate, that is to say the property of being a mass; it contains the intermediate as one of its characters among many others; with relation to the planet, the intermediate is an extract only. The planet, then, is more complex than the intermediate, and the intermediate is more abstract, that is to say more general, than the planet. On the other hand, this intermediate contains the last datum, the tendency to

approach the central mass ; it contains this datum as one of its characters, among many others ; with relation to the intermediate, this datum is an extract only. The intermediate, then, is more complex than the last datum, and the last datum is more abstract, that is to say more general, than the intermediate.—Thus the first datum of the law contains the intermediate, which contains the second. In another aspect the first datum is more complex than the intermediate, which is more complex than the second. In another aspect again, the second datum is more abstract and general than the intermediate, which is itself more abstract and more general than the first datum.—Having settled this, let us associate the three data in pairs ; we shall have three couples of data, or laws. Every planet is a mass ; now every mass tends to approach the central mass with which it is in relation ; therefore, every planet tends to approach the central mass with which it is in relation, that is to say, the sun.—Of these three couples, the first associates the first datum and the intermediate ; the second associates the intermediate and the second datum ; the third associates the first datum and the second, and is found to be the law which required demonstration.—If we conceive the three couples in this order, we have three propositions corresponding to them and composed of three ideas, associated in pairs, as the three laws are composed of three data associated in pairs. Of these three ideas, the first, which is more comprehensive than the second, contains the second, which is more comprehensive than the third, and which contains the third, and the mind passes from the most comprehensive to the least comprehensive by means of the third, which is of medium comprehension.\* Of these three propositions, the two first, being preliminary, are termed *premises*, and the third, being consecutive, is termed *conclusion*. The two premises are composed, one, of the first idea, the most comprehensive of all, associated to the second, which is of medium comprehension ; the other, of the second idea, which is of medium comprehension, asso-

---

\* In my opinion, it is in this order, according to comprehension and not according to extension, that the terms should be arranged. In this way, reasoning becomes an analysis, and not a logical trick, like the ordinary syllogism.

ciated to the third, the least comprehensive of all ; and finally, the conclusion is composed of the first idea associated to the third, that is to say of the most comprehensive idea associated to the least comprehensive. Three propositions of this kind assembled in this order constitute a syllogism, and the syllogism, according to the saying of Aristotle, becomes a scientific demonstration, when, as in the preceding case, the intermediate by which it connects two data is the explanatory reason† of their connection.

## § II.

I. Let us leave to logicians the task of following out in all their details the properties of the syllogism, and the necessary relations of its propositions or terms ; these are but the curiosities of science ; the essential thing for the mind is to know what are the special characteristics and exact position of the explanatory intermediate, so as to be able to seek for, find, and recognize it. From its nature and situation, as we have ascertained them, we can arrange a general method of inquiry. Let us examine this method successively in the sciences of construction and in the sciences of experience.

Take a law of arithmetic, of algebra, of geometry, or of pure mechanics ; the proposition which expresses it is termed a theorem ; and this proposition affirms that a particular datum constructed by the mind—a number of any kind, a multiplicand, a square, a square root, a triangle, a sphere, an ellipse—comprises a particular property. It is here a question of demonstrating the theorem, that is to say of distinguishing in the first datum an intermediate which comprises the property enounced.—We have, then, to decompose the first datum so as to extract from it the intermediate, and it is this decomposition which, later back, when dealing with axioms, we termed *analysis*. In the Sciences of Construction, it can always be accomplished ; there is no internal obstacle which prevents our detecting the intermediate ; it is included in the first datum as constructed by our mind. In fact, the

---

\* δὲ αἰτιῶν καὶ ποτέρων. "Posterior Analytics," book i. chaps. ii. iv. vi. *αἰτία* signifies not merely the cause, but the *because* demanded. These second Analytics of Aristotle are very superior to the first, and are still worthy the attention of students of special sciences.

combination we have fabricated is purely mental; it is not bound to correspond to a real combination. It differs in this from the other mental combinations by which we conceive real objects; it runs no risk, as they do, of presenting blanks, of passing by any important character included in the real object, of omitting the explanatory intermediate which connects the enounced property with the real object; freed from this obligation, it is exempt from this risk. Once formed, it is complete, and whatever be the ideal object—number, square, straight line, figure, geometrical solid, velocity, mass, force—if the definition furnished is well constructed, the object is entirely and exactly expressed by it.\* For, by hypothesis, there is nothing more in the ideal object than what we have put into it, and all we have put into it are certain elements grouped in a certain order, and expressed, together with their order, by the definition. Now, if this group has a property, it is through the medium of some character included in its elements or in their mode of assemblage, as expressed by the definition; hence it follows that the explanatory and demonstrative intermediate connecting the property to the group will be found by analyzing the terms of the definition.

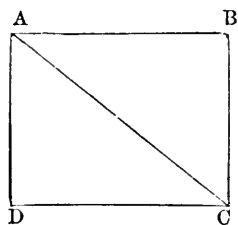
Such is in fact the method employed in the Sciences of Construction. All the theorems are demonstrated by *analysis*, by the analysis of the terms of the definitions. We have already seen this in those first theorems with whose demonstration we dispense, and which we term axioms. We have defined equal magnitudes, the straight line, parallel lines, velocity, force, mass, and have found that the properties attributed by the axioms to each primitive compound are connected with it through the interposition of some latent, but inherent character, enclosed and concealed in its definition.

So it is with the later theorems concerning more complex compounds. Here, too, the explanatory and demonstrative intermediate is a character, more frequently a series of characters, included in the definition of the compound.—We all know how a theorem of geometry is demonstrated, as for instance, that which says that the opposite sides of a parallelo-

---

\* See part ii., book iv., chap. i., pp. 409 *et seq.*

gram are equal. We refer back to the definition of the parallelogram and find that it is a four-sided figure of which the opposite sides are parallel. As this double property is included in the definition, we extract it by analysis, and have the first of the intermediates we are in search of.—We analyze this, and on referring back to the properties of parallel lines,



we find that, if we draw the diagonal A C, the two angles B A C, D A C, are equal to the two A C D, B C A, each to each, being alternate angles ; which gives us a second intermediate.—But, on the other hand, the diagonal has formed triangles as well as angles ; we then analyze this third inter-

mediate, and, on referring back to the properties of triangles, we observe that the two triangles are equal, as having a common side, the diagonal, comprised between two angles equal each to each ; hence it follows that A B is equal to D C, and A D to B C.—Thus, the first intermediate—the parallelism of each couple of opposite sides—is derived from the definition ; the second—the equality of the two alternate angles which the diagonal forms with each couple of parallel lines—is derived from the first ; the third—the equality of the triangles which the diagonal forms on each side with the parallel lines—is derived from the second, and finally, the equality of the opposite sides of the parallelogram is derived from the third. The definition, then, contains the first intermediate, which contains the second, which contains the third, which contains the fourth, which contains the property enounced. This forms, as it were, a series of boxes enclosed in one another ; the largest is the first definition, and the smallest the last attribute ; each larger box encloses a smaller one, and we cannot get at any one box till we have opened in turn all those enclosing it.—Observe the difficult part of the operation. Each intermediate contains many characters in addition to the one which we extract and which leads us up to the property enounced ; we must not fall into error, and overlook the right one, to extract another. In other words, and to continue the comparison, every larger box contains, in

addition to the smaller box in which we shall at last find the property enounced, several other smaller boxes which it would be useless to open; we must set our hand, then, on the right box, and if there are, as in the preceding case, five boxes to open, we must five times consecutively have the tact to make a proper choice.—Besides this, it is common to find boxes which do not open readily, a skilful turn of the key is required; we have been compelled to make a construction, to add a line to the figure, to draw the diagonal. And this turn of the key has, in opening one lock, opened by correspondence a second; in fact, this well chosen diagonal has not only given the two pairs of alternate internal angles—it has also given two equal triangles. In this lies the talent of the geometrician; he must, by a prompt instinct, or by numerous trials, successively open, without a mistake, the series of useful boxes, and must find out the appropriate turn of the key.

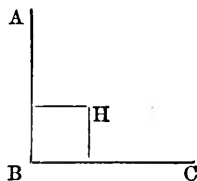
Let us now follow his steps: he begins by constructing very simple compounds, the single straight line, the straight line cutting another, the straight line perpendicular to another, two parallel straight lines. According to the process we have just seen, and through an intermediate, or arrangement of intermediates included in the definition of the compound, he connects with it several properties.—Then, combining together his primitive compounds, he constructs ulterior compounds, triangles, quadrilaterals, and polygons, by means of two, three, and more straight lines cutting each other in pairs; the circle, by a straight line turning about one of its extremities; the plane, by a revolving perpendicular which while revolving remains perpendicular to the straight line with the relation to which it was at first perpendicular; after this polyhedra, by planes terminating in polygons; the sphere, by a semicircle revolving about its diameter, etc. To these new compounds, he connects new properties by means of new theorems. What intermediates does he employ?—They may be recognized at a glance; they are the already demonstrated properties of the preceding compounds. The more complex compound has simpler compounds as its factors, and the properties of its factors, introduced into it with those factors, are the intermediates by which we connect to it the proper-

ties with which it is itself furnished. Just now we saw that the properties of the parallelogram were attached to it through the properties of the two pairs of parallel lines which form its elements. We should see in the same way that the properties of the sphere are attached to it through the properties of the revolving semicircle which generates it, and, in general, that the properties of any compound are attached to it through the properties of the simpler compounds which are its factors.—In this way, each new compound is a larger box into which we put several smaller boxes, with all they contain. In the one we term parallelogram, we put two pairs of parallel lines cutting each other. In the one we term circle, we put an infinite number of equal straight lines, having one common point. In the one we term sphere, we put an infinite number of equal semicircles having a common diameter, and the properties of the large box so constructed are attached to it through the properties of the smaller boxes which it contains with their contents.—Hence it follows that the ultimate reason, the ultimate *because*, the ultimate explanatory and demonstrative intermediate, which connects a property to any geometrical compound, recedes from box to box, and from containing to being contained, in proportion as we pursue it from the sphere to the revolving semicircle, from the revolving semicircle to the revolving line, from the revolving line to the simple line—that is to say, from the compound to its factors, from them to their factors, and so on, to allow itself to be seized at last in the primitive factors—that is to say, in the little elementary boxes in which it is included. Arrived here, we have in hand the ultimate reason of the geometrical law. It is given, in all the sciences of construction as in geometry, by the axioms; and the axioms give it, because they enounce the properties of the primitive factors.

Let us carefully consider this expression; the *ultimate* reason of a law. The laws we have discovered in the sciences of construction are of enormous number, and this number increases daily. Now the ultimate intermediates which explain and demonstrate them are the properties of five or six primitive factors, enounced by a dozen axioms, which are themselves, as we have seen, cases or applications only of the



axiom of identity. From this single source, spread out into a dozen rivulets, flow the innumerable streams and waves of science. Such is the value of the primitive factors or elements, when they are as simple, as abstract, and as general as possible: from their laws are derived the laws of their less general and less abstract compounds, and so on, from stage to stage, by a gradual descent, without ever a failure of continuity, between stage and stage, from the highest wave to the lowest level. It is, then, to the primitive factors that the principal efforts of our method should be directed.—Hence a new way of considering magnitudes, and especially geometrical magnitudes. Take a straight line, or curved lines, and those principally among curves, which we were unable in the beginning to define except by the nature of the solid from which they are derived, as was the case with the sections of the cone—that is to say the ellipse, parabola, and hyperbola, and with other still more complex curves. Each of them has a form, and, when once the line is drawn, we see this form in the concrete. But the line is made up of primitive factors or *elements* which are its points, and its form is but a whole, the whole of the distinct positions occupied by its distinct points. Hence it follows that there is a reason, a *because*, an intermediate to explain and demonstrate all the properties we can ascertain in the line and its form, and that this intermediate is met with in the elements of the line and of its form—that is to say, in the various points possessed of distinct positions of which the line and form are but the total.—Now, how do we determine the position of a point? Among other means, there is a very convenient one, which consists in taking in a plane two fixed axes A B, B C, which cut one another at a known angle, in drawing to the point, lines parallel to these axes, and in giving the lengths of these parallels. These two lengths, which we term co-ordinates, are magnitudes which, when compared together, present a certain relation. Here, then, we have the position of the point defined by the mutual relation of two auxiliary magnitudes.—Instead, now, of a single point, let us suppose a continuous series of



points—that is to say a line, such that this relation may be *the same* for all its points; the line and its form will be wholly defined, and defined by a character common to their elements.

Thus, to confine ourselves to the simplest examples, if, the two axes being given, the line in question bisects the angle between them, all the points of the bisecting line have this common character that, for each of them, one of the two co-ordinates is equal to the other. If the line in question is a circumference, and the two axes are perpendicular to one another and pass through the centre of the circle, all the points of the circumference have this common character that, for each of them, the sum of the squares of the two co-ordinates is equal to the square of the radius. This constant relation, which is everywhere maintained through all the pairs of co-ordinates, gives rise, when ascertained, to an equation; for the bisecting line, the first co-ordinate  $x$  added to the second co-ordinate  $y$  is equal to  $2x$ ;  $x + y = 2x$ ; similarly, for the circumference  $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$ .—This formula is what is termed the equation to the line; there is one for the ellipse, for the parabola, the hyperbola, for every curve, for every surface. There is a branch of geometry which makes an analysis in this way of a line or a surface, and on decomposing it into its elements, discovers in these elements an algebraical character common to them all; this science is termed analytical geometry. From the character expressed by the equation, we derive all the properties of the line; in other words, in order to attach the properties to the line, we find an intermediate, a reason, a *because* included in the equation which is the definition of the line.

We see how important is the consideration of the elements; in fact, it has been necessary to gain a true notion of magnitude, and to give to mathematics all their scope; it is this study which, under the name of infinitesimal calculus, constitutes the higher portion of the science. Instead of comparing two magnitudes taken in the mass, we compare the infinitely small increments of the two magnitudes, increments which are their component factors and their primitive elements. “It would be wrong,” says a philosophical mathe-

matician,\* "to take this second mode of expression for nothing more than a conventional abbreviation, a form of language, apparently more convenient because more usually employed. It is, in fact, more convenient, but simply because it is the natural expression of the mode of generation or extinction of magnitudes, *which increase or decrease by elements smaller than any finite magnitude*. Thus, when a body cools, the relation between the elementary variations of the heat and time is the true reason of the relation which is established between the variations of these same magnitudes when they have acquired finite values. This last relation, it is true, is the only one which can fall directly under our observation, and, when we define the first by the second through the intervention of the idea of limit, we conform to the conditions of our human logic. But, once in possession of the idea of the first relation, we conform to the nature of things, by making it the principle of explanation of the value which observation assigns to the second relation. This is why the notation of infinitesimal quantities, imagined by Leibnitz, constitutes an invention of capital importance which has marvellously increased the power of mathematics as an instrument, and the field of its applications to natural philosophy."

In all directions, the same conclusion springs up. In the sciences of construction, every theorem which enounces a law is an analytical proposition. Of the two data whose connection forms the law, the second is connected with the first, obscurely or clearly, directly or indirectly, by a third datum, reason, explanatory and demonstrative intermediate, which is contained in the first datum, and itself contains a series of subsequent intermediates enclosed in one another. Finally, if we inquire into the ultimate reason of the law, the ultimate intermediate, the ultimate *because*, after which every question is at an end, because the supreme explanation is furnished and the demonstration complete, we find that it is *a character included in the definition of the factors or primitive elements* of which the first datum is but the collection and the total.

\* Cournot, "Traité de l'Enchaînement des Idées Fondamentales," i. 87, and "Traité Élémentaire du Calcul Infinitésimal," i. 82.—"In this respect we may truly affirm that infinitely small quantities exist in nature."

II. We come now to the sciences of experience. Here the resources are fewer and the difficulties greater.—Let us take one of the laws examined above—namely, that cooling produces dew, that is to say the liquefaction and deposition of the watery vapor in the surrounding air.—Of the two data, cooling and liquefaction, whose couple forms the law, the first, according to the theory expounded, must comprise an explanatory character by whose intervention it is connected to the second. It is necessary, then, to decompose it in order to derive from it this intermediate.—But I am unable to effect this decomposition; the analysis which had entire grasp of mental combinations has not an equal grasp of real combinations. Having constructed the first, I know all they contain, since, by supposition, they contain nothing but what I have put in them. Not having constructed the second, I do not know all they contain, and to the portion of knowledge I possess, I must add by further discoveries the various portions I do not possess.—What is this cooling of watery vapor? At the time I establish the law by induction, I am ignorant of this. All I know of it is, that it is a change of state, occurring in the vapor, which excites in me the sensation of cold. This change is in itself unknown to me; all I know of it is one of its effects, and this I only know through a sign. We have now, with the aid of this sign and other indications, such as the variations of the thermometer, to study this change, to ascertain its intrinsic properties, and, for this purpose, again to employ induction.—Now, we discover by induction that cold applied to a body in whatever state, gaseous, liquid, or solid, *tends* to bring its molecules mutually together, and in fact does always bring them together, except in some exceptional cases, in which the tendency is neutralized by certain contrary tendencies which the bringing together may sometimes develop.\* Here is a first explanatory intermediate, included in the characters of the chilled body and set apart by induction.—Now other inductions establish that a solid, liquid, or gaseous body is a system of molecules placed apart and possessed of attracting

\* For instance, the maximum of density, or of the bringing together the molecules of water, is found at  $4^{\circ}$  degrees (centigrade), and not below.

and repelling forces in relation to each other; that in proportion to their mutual proximity, the mutual proportions of the attracting and repelling forces are changed and reversed; that, during a first period—the gaseous state—the attracting forces may be considered as annulled by the enormous amount of the repelling forces, which explains the force of tension in vapors and gases; that at the end of this period, when the molecules are sufficiently proximate, there comes an epoch of equilibrium between the attracting and repelling forces, an epoch differing according to the different constitution of the different bodies; that, during this stage, repulsion and attraction being almost neutralized by one another, the molecules which have neither mutual attraction nor repulsion suffer themselves to be readily disjoined, put forth no effort against what contains them, group themselves in a surface parallel to the horizon; in short, are fluid and present the sensible characters which constitute the liquid state, instead of the sensible characters which constitute the gaseous state; that later on, beyond this second period, when the molecules are again brought still closer, an epoch is presented in which the attracting forces have not only equality but marked ascendancy, an epoch differing according to the different constitution of the different bodies; that, during this third stage, the grouped molecules offer a more or less energetic resistance to forces attempting to detach them from the system, and, instead of the sensible characters which constitute the liquid state, present the sensible characters which constitute the solid state. Hence it follows that when a certain period is passed, the gas, whose molecules are brought sufficiently together, must become liquid, and the watery vapor must become water. Now we know independently by induction the limit at which this period comes to an end in the case of watery vapor; it is a particular degree of the thermometer for a particular quantity of watery vapor suspended in the air. Here is the second intermediate required.—If the cooling produces liquefaction of the surrounding vapor, this arises from its bringing the molecules of vapor together beyond a certain limit; if, beyond this limit, the approximating molecules arrive at the liquid state, this is because, when this limit is

passed, the excess of the repelling over the attracting forces ceases without being turned in the contrary direction, and in consequence of this equilibrium, the molecules cease to have any noticeable mutual adherence or repulsion, which is precisely the liquid state. Approximation of molecules, equilibrium between the attracting and repelling forces of the molecules after a certain degree of approximation—these are the two intermediates by which the first datum of our law—cooling, is attached to the second—liquefaction, and the approximation is a property of the molecules of the chilled vapor. Equilibrium is a property of these molecules when brought sufficiently close. And finally, the liquid state as our senses perceive it, is a property of the equilibrium so attained.

Thus the first datum of the law contains among its characters the first explanatory intermediate, which contains the second, which contains the second datum of the law. Plainly, this enclosure is similar to that which we have already observed in the demonstration of the theorems.—No doubt, we have not here obtained the intermediates by the same method as before. It has not been sufficient for us to consult our conception of a cooling body; there were too many gaps in it; it taught us nothing except that the body which excites a sensation of cold in ourselves and a lowering of the mercury in the thermometer undergoes an unknown alteration. Experiments and an induction were required to discover this alteration, which consists in an approximation of molecules. And so, it was not enough for us to consult our conception of a body whose molecules approximate; here again there were too many gaps, it taught us nothing as to the effects of approximation. The great induction of Newton was required to enable us to recognize that the attraction of the molecules increases in the inverse ratio of the squares of their distances, whence it follows that, when a certain degree of proximity is passed, the attracting forces must form equilibrium with the repelling forces; and the inductions of other physicists were necessary to ascertain what degree of cooling induces this degree of proximity between the molecules of watery vapor.—But, if the processes of discovery have been different, the

structure of things has been shown to be the same. In the experimental law as in the mathematical theorem, the first datum is a large box which, through a series of gradually diminishing boxes, encloses as its final contents the second datum. Only, in the experimental law it is not sufficient, as in the mathematical theorem, to set the hand each time on the proper box and to open it; we do not find the box at hand, in the mind; we must go els. where, beyond the mind, and seize it where it is, that is to say in nature, and derive it thence with a great array of experiments and inductions. When this is effected, we transfer it into the mind, we fix it there in its place in the box from which it was missing, and when, by these excursions, we have thus procured all the necessary boxes, we have only to open them in their order, to pass uninterruptedly, as in a theorem, from the first to the second datum of the law.

Let us now consider those of the experimental sciences which are in a very advanced state, applied mechanics, physical astronomy, optics, acoustics, in which many of these boxes have been discovered and enclosed. Between the real compounds, of which these sciences treat, and the ideal compounds, of which the sciences of construction treat, the analogy is striking.—Take some of these real compounds, the motion of a cannon-ball impelled with a certain initial velocity along a tangent to the earth, the orbit described by Venus or some other planet, a certain succession of sonorous or luminous waves. Each of these compounds has its properties like the parallelogram or the sphere, and the proposition connecting some property to it, like the theorem connecting some property to the parallelogram or sphere, enounces a general law. Now, in this compound, as in the parallelogram or sphere, there are factors or more simple compounds which, introduced into it, have brought with them their characters; and if the compound possesses the property indicated by the law, it is owing, as in the parallelogram or sphere, to the isolated or combined characters of its factors. If the cannon-ball has a certain range, describes a certain curve, and undergoes a certain diminution of velocity, it is owing to the combined presence of a particular initial impulsion, of terrestrial attraction and the

resistance of the air. If two luminous rays are in places extinguished by one another, or if two continuous sounds are at times pushed by one another, it is owing to the velocities of the two series of propagated waves which, in certain places and at certain times, interfere with and annul one another.—Hence it follows that, in the experimental as in the geometrical law, the properties of a more complex compound are connected with it through the intervention of properties of its factors or more simple compounds, that so it is with each of these factors, and that therefore, if we seek the ultimate intermediates, the ultimate reasons, the ultimate explanatory and demonstrating characters which establish the law, we shall see them recede, from the more complex to the less complex compounds, to permit themselves to be seized at last in certain very simple factors or primitive elements whose properties they are.

In fact, in each of the sciences we have mentioned, there are some very general laws corresponding to axioms; these give, like axioms, the ultimate reason of the established law, and they give it because, like axioms, they enounce the properties of the primitive factors. Such, for instance, is the principle in applied mechanics, that if a body loses or acquires a certain quantity of motion, the same quantity is acquired or lost by some other body. Such are the two principles on which astronomy is founded, the one which attributes to the planetary bodies of our system a tendency to move in a straight line with a uniform velocity along the tangent to their orbits, the other which attributes to them a tendency to fall towards each other and towards the central mass, a tendency in proportion to their masses and inversely as the squares of their distances. Such is, in acoustics and optics, the assumption of elastic media, through which waves of certain lengths are propagated with certain velocity in the direction of their primitive impulsions, or in a direction perpendicular to those impulsions.—From these laws there flow, as from so many axioms, a prodigious number of partial laws; and the only difference separating sciences so constructed from the mathematical sciences, is that as, in these last, the axioms have been obtained by construction, we can mount by analy-



sis higher than the axioms, to the principle of identity, which is their common source, while in the former, the fundamental laws having been obtained by induction, to mount above them we must again have recourse to induction, which to-morrow perhaps we may be able to effect, but which to-day we are unable to effect, and which compels us provisionally to consider them as primitive, until further discoveries place over them more general laws, and so depose them from the first to the second rank.

III. The same arrangement is found in the other less advanced branches of experimental science, in the theory of heat, of electricity, of chemical, vital, and historical phenomena. Here, too, the particular laws which we first attain, and which enounce the properties of the more complex compounds, find their explanation and demonstration in the more and more general laws which we subsequently attain, and which enounce the properties of more and more simple factors. Accordingly as we consider the different branches, we find that the operation, which is everywhere similar, has been pushed to greater or less distances; experimental science, as a whole, thus resembles a cathedral commenced in various points at once. Its pillars are of unequal height, some almost completed, others half built, others again scarcely provided with their first stages. But they all indicate by their gradual diminution and converging directions, that a loftier arch must finally reunite them.

Now this constant convergence shows us in what direction to apply our efforts, and what subsequent labor is required to continue the edifice. We have just seen that the properties of a compound are connected with it by intermediates, which are the properties of its factors, components, or elements; this is the universal rule. These elements, then, are what it is principally necessary to discover, and it is to their properties that we should direct our whole attention. The more readily, therefore, these elements fall under our observation, the more readily shall we explain and demonstrate the properties of the compounds formed by their assemblage. —This is precisely the case with the most complex compounds of all, those which are the object of the natural and

historical sciences. And I venture also to assert, that the philosophical and higher portion of science is nowhere more advanced than here. A living body, plant or animal, is a society of organs; now, each of these organs is sufficiently large to be grasped by our senses, measured by our instruments, detailed by our descriptions, pictured by our drawings. It lends itself directly to study, and compared with those analogous to it, manifests properties which, joined with those of its associates, explain the character of the body whose elements they are.—There are two properties common to all the organs of a living body. One of them, mentioned above,\* and explained at length by Cuvier, is the property of being *useful*, which imposes on the organ the obligation of its characters harmonizing with those of all the other associated organs, in such a way as to bring about some total and final effect, that is to say to render possible a certain kind of life, carnivorous, frugivorous, insectivorous, in the water, in the air, or on land, in presence of certain prey and certain enemies, in short, in a certain medium; we have indicated the infinite consequences of this property of every organ; they are so numerous and so certain that anatomists have reconstructed fossil animals from some of their fragments. There is a second property, discovered by Geoffroy Saint-Hilaire, and still more fruitful in consequences, that of *holding a place in a plan*. By the first, the organ is an instrument which fulfils an office; by the second, it is a part appertaining to a type. In this respect, whatever be the secondary modifications imposed on it by its passage from one animal to a different one, and its consequent adaptation to a new usage, it remains fundamentally the same; it is never transposed; we find it always in the same place, and it shows itself through all the elongations, consolidations, impoverishments, changes of part, and even losses of employment, which it has undergone in its deformed, transformed, and atrophied state. The same group of anatomical articulations supplies the arm and hand in man, the wing in the bat, the paw in the cat, the leg in the horse, the fin in the seal; the natatory bladder of the fish is the respiring lung of the mammal. We often

---

\* Part ii, book iv. ch. iii. p. 495.

find in birds a little useless bone on the border of the wing, furnished, when they are young, with a nail, without use, except as representing a degraded finger ; the crawling boa has vestiges of limbs, and we find in the slow-worm a rudimentary shoulder, sternum, and pelvis ; the same slow-worm has, in its youth, two small projecting tubercles, the surviving and temporary remnants of stunted hinder limbs. A part, then, has the property of exciting by its presence the presence of a whole system of parts, arranged according to a fixed pattern, which gives us the rough framework of the whole animal, and has, besides, the property of determining by its structure and function, the structure and function of the other parts which gives us the whole structure and group of the functions of the complete animal. In this way, two properties common to the elements of the group explain nearly all the characters of the group, and philosophical anatomy furnishes the reason of the laws which descriptive anatomy had ascertained.

And so, in those human societies whose fixed or changing characters are the subject-matter of history, the elements, which are readily seized, enable us to comprehend the whole. For these elements are the human individuals of whom a society at any given epoch is the collection only, and we have no difficulty in detecting their common characteristics. By means of existing records, and by the exact processes of methodical reconstruction, we are at present able to suppress the distance of time so as to represent to ourselves by more or less numerous specimens, the Frenchman or Englishman of the seventeenth century or of the Middle Ages, the ancient Roman and even the Hindoo of the Buddhist epoch, to picture to ourselves his life, private, public, industrial, agricultural, political, religious, philosophical, literary, in short, to construct the descriptive psychology of his moral and mental state and the circumstantial analysis of his physical and social medium, then, to pass from these elements to still simpler elements, to discern the aptitudes and tendencies which were found effective and preponderant in all the processes of his mind and heart, to note the general conceptions which determined every detail of his ideas, to mark the gen-

eral inclinations which determined the directions of all his actions ; in short, to distinguish the primordial forces which, present and in action at each moment of the life of each individual, impress on the total group, that is to say on the society and the age, the characters which observation has recognized there.\* Wherever we are able thus to isolate and observe the elements of a compound, we can, from the properties of the elements, explain the properties of the compound, and, from a few general laws, can deduce a host of particular laws. This is what we have done here ; we have first descended by degrees to the ultimate elements of cognition, to ascend thence stage by stage up to our simplest cognitions, and thence, still by degrees, up to more complex ones ; in this scale, each step possesses its characters by the intervention of characters which were manifested in the lower steps.

This is why, when, in this progressive decomposition, we arrive at compounds in which our consciousness, senses, and instruments are unable to discover simpler elements, explanation is at a standstill and is reduced to conjectures. On our road we have met with sensations, those of touch, smell, and taste, in which we have been unable to distinguish elementary sensations, and all that analogy permits us is to conceive that there are such. A similar limit is created by a similar difficulty in the other experimental sciences.—By means of the microscope, physiologists and embryogenists have resolved living tissues into anatomical elements, little bodies which are most frequently cells of various forms and variously grouped ; but they have not grasped the elements of the cell, they are ignorant of their properties, at least, they are not at present ignorant of them ; in the liquid formless pulp which becomes organized into a little cell furnished with a nucleus, they are unable to distinguish the particles and *à fortiori* to distinguish their properties. At the most, they conjecture that these elements are chemical molecules of ex-

---

\* I have attempted to apply this method in many historical essays, and have explained it in the preface to "Essais de Critique et d'Histoire," and in that to "Histoire de la Littérature Anglaise."

treme complexity, and that their mutual reactions group them in a certain visible form.—So again, chemists and physicists establish by their experiments that the ultimate particles of a homogeneous body are molecules or little masses exactly alike, that, if the body is simple like oxygen, each molecule is simple and consists entirely of oxygen; that, if the body is compound like water, each molecule is composed of two or more little elementary masses, one of which is oxygen and the other hydrogen. But as to these molecules, no one has seen or can see them; we are ignorant of their form, their weight, their distance, their mutual situation, the magnitude of the attracting and repelling forces which maintain them in equilibrium, the amplitude and velocity of the vibrations which we suppose they have about a supposed centre of oscillation. At the most, following these indications, we conclude that, from these unknown properties, are derived the known properties of the whole body, the greater or less affinity it has for some other body, the reaction it excites or undergoes, the property it has of combining with some other body in definite and invariable proportions, the equivalence of a certain weight of the first and a certain other weight of the second to combine with the same weight of a third, etc.

In face of elementary sensations, living cells, chemical molecules, ethereal atoms, the scientific man is in the position of a short-sighted person before ant-hills of various kinds; his dull sight can only attain effects of the mass, changes of the whole, the entire form of the edifice; the little workmen escape him; he does not see them labor. He can take a quarter or half of one of their constructions, can upset it with its inhabitants on another, can observe, first, an agitation, a confusion, then an abatement, an arrangement, and a new development; nothing more. As he is a skilful handler of experience and induction, he has finally recognized that there are in each heap invisible inhabitants, and in each different heap different inhabitants, that certain mixtures succeed better than others, that it is always necessary to preserve certain proportions, that after the mixture the new edifice presents characters which are not manifested in either

of the two unmixed heaps. But he would require far more piercing eyes to discover the economy of the two primitive constructions, the instinct of their ants, the dealings set up between the two associated populations, and the final economy of the subsequent edifice which they together construct. Assume that, in these societies of molecules we term bodies, the inhabitants and materials are one and the same thing; the comparison will be exactly applicable.

Thus, at a certain limit, our explanation is at a standstill, and though, from age to age, we push it further on, it is possible that it may always stop before a certain limit. If ever we know exactly the form, distance, magnitude, and weight of molecules of oxygen or sodium, as well as the amplitude and velocity of their oscillations, we shall perhaps be in face of a system analogous to our solar system, a kind of vortex whose roughly similar elements require a further decomposition, and whose properties only admit of explanation by the wholly different properties of their elements—so again, with the elements of their elements, and so on, up to infinity. For magnitude is always relative; there is nothing to prevent our molecules from having as elements different molecules as small with relation to them as they themselves are with relation to a planet, and so on, without truce or termination. In this case, the successive layers of more and more simple factors would differ as the successive digits of a non-recurring decimal.—Perhaps, on the other hand, at a certain point of decomposition, all difference between the compound and the factors is at an end, and the properties of the compound are nothing more than the sum of those of its factors, just as the whole weight of a body is nothing more than the sum of the weights of its molecules; in which case the limit would be attained, since, knowing the properties of the compound, we should thereby know the properties of its final elements. In this case, the successive layers of more and more simple factors would be similar, after a certain limit, as are, after a certain limit, the successive digits of a recurring mixed fraction.—But whether the properties of the compound and its factors are similar or different is of no importance; and we invariably direct our observations or conjectures to the proper-

ties of the factors. The structure of things, then, is the same in the sciences of experience as in those of construction, and, in both, the explanatory and demonstrative intermediate which serves as a link between any property and any compound is *a character*, or *a sum of characters*, different or similar, *included in the elements of the compound*.

IV. There remains a surplus of requirement special to the experimental sciences. When we construct by thought some number, some polygon, or some cylinder, we have not to explain its origin; it does not in fact exist in nature; it is possible only, and not real. Perhaps indeed, with a nature constituted like that which we observe, it is not possible; but this is unimportant. We suppose its elements combined in the required manner, and explain by their properties the properties of the construction thus effected, without encumbering ourselves with the inquiry as to the forces by which they were themselves assembled. It is enough for us that the compound is given; we do not inquire why it is given.—Things do not happen thus when real compounds are in question. We are bound to explain their properties by the properties of their elements, and further, to explain the concurrence of their elements. Then come in questions of origin, the most curious, but most difficult, of all. For, as this concurrence is in most cases of very great antiquity, and can have had no witnesses, we can neither observe it directly nor know it by tradition, and are reduced to conjecture it from present concurrences, which are but approximately similar, and are sometimes entirely wanting. All the experimental sciences have thus their historical chapter, more or less conjectural, according as more or less precise indications, more or less correct analogies, more or less complete records, permit our mental reconstruction more or less exactly to replace the missing evidence of our consciousness or our senses.

For instance, there is a question for the astronomer, as to the formation of the various planets, for the geologist, as to the formation of the successive strata of the outer crust of the globe, for the mineralogist, to discover how the different rocks were formed, for the naturalist, to know how our species of plants and animals were formed, for the historian, to de-

tect the formation of the successive epochs of one and the same human society, and the different traits of a national character. They all start from an anterior state denoted by converging indications, or attested by transmitted records, and from this probable or certain state they deduce, according to existing laws, the following state, then the next following state, and so on, up to the existing state.

Thus Laplace assumes that our system was at first an immense nebula extending round a central nucleus;\* that this vast atmosphere, becoming condensed as it cooled, was divided into concentric zones of vapor similar to the rings of Saturn; that, by a subsequent condensation and cooling, these zones became collected into planets, which were first gaseous, then liquid, then solid; and, from this gradual condensation, combined with the law of gravitation, he deduces, by a marvellous adjustment, the principal characters and even the singular peculiarities which our system nowadays presents.—Taking up this supposition at the point where Laplace left it, geologists trace with probability the thickening of the terrestrial crust, and explain, from epoch to epoch, with gaps becoming gradually fewer, the deposition and superposition of the strata, their partial upheavals, their erosions, their ruptures, the present disposition of our continents and seas, by the prolonged play of the mineral or organic forces in the midst of which we are now still living.†—At their side, their allies, mineralogists and chemists, see that rocks and amalgams similar to those which the earth presents are formed under their hands and eyes, by slow actions, by prolonged heat, by continued compression, by molecular additions,‡ and from the processes they now observe in their little artificial laboratories, they draw conclusions, with fitting precautions, as to the analogous processes by which the amalgam and the rock were formed of old in the great laboratory of nature.

---

\* "Exposition du Système du Monde," ii. 425.

† See, as to this, Lyell's "Principles of Geology."

‡ Crystals of granite have been found at Plombières, in the concrete on which the Romans built. They have been formed there by the infiltration of water for eighteen hundred years.—M. Daubrée and M. de Sénarmont have produced in their laboratories a great number of natural compounds.



Here come in the naturalists. Darwin starts with a fundamental character common to all the species of animals and vegetables, the struggle for life, from which there follows the destruction of all individuals less properly adapted to their medium, the exclusive survival of the individuals best adapted to their medium, the privilege these have of propagating the race, the successive acquisition of useful characters, the transmission to descendants of all the accumulated treasure of useful characters, and finally, through this, the progressive modification of the species, the gradual perfectionment of the organs, and the slow adaptation of the individual to its definitive medium.—Provided with this existing law, he explains, by its former presence, the assemblage of the organs of which Geoffroy Saint-Hilaire and Cuvier had ascertained the properties.—By one of these properties the organ is a part in a plan and in a type; that is, the legacy of a common ancestor. All mammals are descended from a mammal\* “which had its limbs constructed on the existing general pattern which we now find throughout the whole class.” All insects are descended from an insect “which had an upper lip, mandibles, and two pair of maxillæ, these parts being perhaps very simple in form.” If the type is found to be the same throughout so many different species, it is because all these species repeat, by virtue of inheritance, the characteristics of their common progenitor.—By the other of these properties, the organ is a useful instrument which brings its structure and function into harmony with those of the others, in such a way that the different species can subsist in their different media; this is because, owing to continuous selection, the common pattern bequeathed by the common progenitor is modified, here in one direction, there in another, so as to accommodate its details to the differences and changes of the medium. The same parts of the same limb become thin and elongated in the bat—shortened and soldered in the whale, so as to be fitted for flying in the first case, and swimming in the second. If the type varies from species to species, it is because circumstances

---

\* Darwin, on “The Origin of Species,” p. 435.—See, as to the theory of evolution as a whole, the very bold, precise, and most suggestive work of Herbert Spencer, “Principles of Biology.”

have varied from group to group, and the variety of circumstances has produced the variety of acquisitions.—When this is settled, we are capable of tracing mentally through the immense duration of geological periods, from the protococcus and amœba up to man, the formation, addition, and assemblage of the parts which now constitute an organized body. It is a living edifice in which selection has superimposed, from species to species, and upon a common type transmitted by inheritance, useful differences. Just as, in a house, the carpenters and masons first construct the walls and lay down the floors, after which come joiners, painters, and upholsterers to arrange the apartments. We see that the second set of workmen has succeeded to the first, to resume and complete the commenced construction. And so, many generations of ancestors have successively labored to construct each of our species. One of these generations, the primitive and most ancient of all, has established the most general type which is common to all animals of every subkingdom, articulate or vertebrate. The second, a later one, issuing from this last, has superimposed differences which constitute the class—that is to say the bird, the fish, or the mammal. Then has come the third, which starting with the mammal, has elaborated the transmitted work and formed families—that is to say the cetacea, the cheiroptera, the ruminantia, the carnivora, the primates. Then, finally, have the descendants of the primates, by their distinct developments and increasing divergencies, constituted genera, the gorilla, the orang-outang, and man, the latter being distinguished from the rest by a particular conformation of limbs, and a more delicate structure of the brain.

Here comes in the historian : he takes a people at a given moment. By the combined influence of the former state and of hereditary aptitudes and faculties, he explains the social, intellectual, and moral state at the given moment ; by the combined influence of this new state and of the same hereditary aptitudes and tendencies, he explains the social, intellectual, and moral state at the later moment, and so on, either by reascending the course of time from the contemporary epoch up to the most ancient beginnings of history, or by de-

scending the course of time from the most ancient beginnings of history down to the contemporary epoch.—We may conceive that in this prodigious evolution, which extends from the formation of the solar system to that of modern man, the gaps are great and numerous; this is in fact the case, and our materials for filling them are often reduced to conjectures. A history like this is a torn, blotted book, in which some chapters, the last especially, are almost entire, in which, of other earlier ones, there subsist but two or three scattered pages, in which, of the earliest chapters, the titles alone remain.—But every day a new discovery restores a page, and the sagacity of scientific men has detected some portion of the general thought. Thus it is that, within the last fifteen years, we have rediscovered the traces and marked the successive advances of the human race preceding our geological epoch; and an entirely recent law, that of the conservation of force, derives by transformation all existing forces from the primitive forces which the nebula of Laplace comprised in its earliest state.\*

From all these great fragments of rigorous or approximative explanation, a universal truth is manifested: that the question of origins is no more mysterious than that of characters. When given a compound, its properties are explained by the properties of its united elements. When given this union, it is explained by the properties of these same elements and by the antecedent circumstances. It is, like so many others, an effect only, and, like all the others, it has as reason the combined presence of a group of fixed with a group of changing conditions.—To form the planet, there was a fixed state, the gravitation of the gaseous molecules carried round the central nucleus, and a changing condition, the progressive cooling and consequent gradual condensation of these same molecules.—To form the species, there was a fixed condition, the transmission of an older general type, and changing conditions, the new circumstances which, selecting the subsequent ancestors, added to the type the characters of the species.—To form a particular historical epoch, there was a

---

\* See, as to this, Helmholtz, "*Mémoire sur la Conservation de la Force*" (tr. Pérard), pp. 31-34 *et seq.*

fixed condition, the maintenance of the national character, and a changing condition, the new state in which the nation happened to be placed on emerging from the preceding epoch.—Hence it follows that, in questions of origin, as in other questions, there is an explanatory and demonstrative intermediate, that the re-union of the elements has its reason of existence, just as the characters of the compound have their reason of existence, that it is, like them, a product, and that all the difference between the two products consists in this, that, as the first is historical and the second not historical, the first comprises a factor more than the second, namely, the influence of the historical moment, that is to say of the preliminary circumstances and the antecedent state.

### § III.

I. Let the reader now collect and glance over the conclusions to which we have just arrived; he will find that they converge, and will be led by their convergence, towards a universal law of a higher order, which governs every law. Take any couple whatever of any data whatever; as soon as they are actually connected, there is a reason, a *because*, an intermediate which explains, demonstrates, and necessitates their connection.—This is true for cases, or couples of particular data, just as for laws strictly so called, or couples of general data; there is a reason for the fall of this leaf which has just come to the ground, and for the gravitation of all the planets towards the sun, for this night's dew, and for the liquefaction of all vapor, for the beat of the pulse I feel at this very moment in my wrist, and for the presence of any function or apparatus in any living being.—It is true for the laws in which the first datum is a more complex compound, as for the laws in which the first datum is a more simple compound; there is a reason for the total acts of a human society, and for the individual acts of its members, for the properties of a chemical compound, and for the properties of its constituent substances, for the effects of a machine, and for the effects of its wheelwork.—It is true again for the laws concerning mental compounds as for the laws concerning real compounds; there is a reason for the properties of

the ellipse or cylinder as for the properties of water or of granite.—It is true again for the laws governing the formation of a compound as for those by which it possesses its characters; there is a reason for the formation, as well as for the properties, of a planet or of a species.—But the most remarkable point is, that it is true for the laws whose explanation is still wanting as for those whose explanation we now possess. There is a reason for the attraction which all masses exercise on one another, for the properties of oxygen, for the formation of a living cell, for the origin of our nebula. At all events, we believe this. We cannot show this reason, but we are persuaded that it exists; we anticipate it by a bold affirmation as to our future discoveries, and even as to discoveries which perhaps we shall never make.

Besides this, we indicate beforehand the position and principal characteristics of the intermediate which still escapes us.—We assume that if two masses attract one another, it is by virtue of a simpler and more general character, included in the group of characters which constitute these masses, such as would be an incessantly repeated impulsion superadding at every moment an effect to the preceding effect, which we express by saying that attraction is a force whose action is not momentary but continuous, which enables us to conceive the velocity of the falling mass as the sum of all the velocities acquired since the first moment of its fall, which has led some physicists to explain the attraction of two masses by the continuous impulsion of a surrounding ether.—We assume that if oxygen presents such or such characters, it is by virtue of simpler and more general characters appertaining to its elements, and consisting of the masses, distances, and internal movements of its component atoms.—We assume that if a formless liquid becomes organized into a cell, it is owing to the mutual reactions and previous state of the very complex particles of which it is the aggregate, and that if our nebula formerly sprung into being, it was due to the forces of its molecules, and to the influence of a previous state which we cannot, even by conjecture, represent to ourselves.—In our view, not only does the explanatory and demonstrative intermediate exist in all these couples, though it may elude

our grasp; but further, it is a simpler and more general character than the first datum of the couple, it is included in that datum and appertains to its elements, and the properties of that datum, as well as its origin, have as their ultimate reason of existence the characters and previous state of its ultimate elements.

On these indications, our thought flies off to extend this structure of things beyond our world and history, throughout the two gulfs of space and time, beyond all the distances to which imagination can attain, beyond all the confines which numbers or quantities, fruitlessly swollen and heaped together, can denote to the pure reason. Are we justified in acting thus? And what motives can we allege to authorize a supposition which anticipates, not only all future experience, but all possible experience, and involves in the immensity of its forecast the immensity of the universe?

II. Two series of cases confront us, a considerable one made up of all the facts and laws whose reason we know, another prodigiously disproportioned and infinitely greater, since it is infinite and made up of all the facts and laws whose reason we do not know. Here are two indications, one positive, the other negative, one favorable to our supposition, the other seemingly unfavorable.—But this unfavorableness is apparent only. For if, when we know the reason of a fact or law, we can conclude its existence, we cannot, from our ignorance of it, conclude its absence. This reason may exist, though unknown, and, in fact, if we look back on the past states of our knowledge, we find that on many occasions it existed, though unknown. We see daily, in proportion as science becomes extended and precise, the first series increasing at the expense of the second, and analogy leads us to believe that cases still comprised in the second are similar to those which have ceased to be comprised in it. The further our extended experience drives back our horizon in time and space, the more explanatory reasons do we add to our store. It is sufficient to examine the history and nature of experimental science to recognize that, if there were or still are voids in this store, it never arises from the explanatory reason failing or having failed in things, but always from

its failing or having failed in our minds. It was existing in nature; but scientific men were imperfectly instructed, and had not yet discovered it. It now exists in nature; but we are unable, and perhaps shall never be able, to detect it there. The gap arises not through its absence, but through our ignorance or impotence, and the fault is not in things, but in ourselves.—If in Kepler's days the motion of the planets could not be explained, it was because gravitation was then unknown. If, at present, we are unable to explain why pure carbon, according to its different states, furnishes, with the same molecules, compounds as different as the diamond and graphite, it is because we do not know the velocities and masses of its molecules, and so cannot define their various states of equilibrium. To detect the explanatory reason, as we have defined it, certain conditions are required, and if these conditions are not fulfilled, the reason may indeed be present, we shall not be able to distinguish it. To detect the reason explaining the characters of a compound like graphite, it is necessary that we should know the properties of its elements, the molecules of carbon. To detect the reason which explains the origin of the first organic compound, it is necessary that we should know, besides the properties of its elements, the primordial circumstances in which they were assembled. This is why we shall be unable, while these preliminaries fail us, to know the explanatory reason. So long as they are attained by simple conjecture, it will be attained by simple conjecture, and we shall be at a greater or less distance from it, according as we are a greater or less distance from them.—Hence it follows that our ignorance of it is never an indication of its absence, from which it follows that we have no ground to suppose its absence, at any period even for events which preceded the origin of our nebula, or at any place even beyond the furthest points of the visible firmament. That our experimental science has gaps is incontestable: but its structure is sufficient to account for them, and it is against all the rules of hypothesis to account for them by the arbitrary and useless addition of an unascertained cause to the ascertained cause which is sufficient.

Excluded on one side, presumptions are compelled to turn

to the other. As there is no choice except between the presence and absence of the explanatory reason, the chances, when no longer in favor of its absence, become in favor of its presence, and the balance inclines towards the other scale.—It would incline further still in this direction if we could point out sciences free from the conditions imposed on experimental science, and thereby finding an explanatory reason for all their laws. For such a contrast would afford room for the belief that the gaps of experimental science have the conditions to which it is subject, not only as their *sufficient*, but also as their *single* cause; from which it would follow that experimental science, when freed from these conditions, would thereby fill up these gaps, and that the explanatory reason, being everywhere discovered, would exist everywhere.—Now this is precisely the contrast presented by the sciences of construction when compared with the sciences of experience. In the first, all the explanatory and demonstrative intermediates which connect any property to any compound, from the first to the last, are known and therefore exist; there is not one of their laws which does not manifest, and which therefore does not possess, its *because* and its reason.—It is to be presumed, then, that if we could employ in our experimental sciences the processes we employ in our sciences of construction, we should arrive at the same discoveries, and that just as every law in the last has its reason of existence, so has every law in the first.

This probability becomes stronger still, when we observe that the laws of the second may be discovered, like the laws of the first, by the inductive method, and that if we follow this method in the second as in the first, the reason of the law then remains unknown though present. Consequently, the inductive process is the sole cause of our ignorance in this case: hence it follows with all probability that in other cases, that is to say in the experimental sciences, it is still the sole cause of our ignorance, and that, in other cases as in this, the explanatory reason is always present, though it may always elude us.—In fact, suppose, as we did before,\* the case of a man of very exact and very patient mind,

---

\* Part ii, book iv., chap. ii, p. 451.



very skillful at induction, but capable of induction only ; we request him to ascertain the number of right angles to which the angles of any quadrilateral are together equal. Let us assume this time that he has at hand a number of perfect quadrilaterals, that his instruments of measurement are perfect, and that he applies them with perfect exactness. By a series of inductions similar to those we have described, he will finally discover that the angles of every quadrilateral of whatever kind, trapezium, parallelogram, rhombus, rectangle, or square, are together equal to four right angles ; but his knowledge of quadrilaterals will stop here, that is to say at the point attained by the most advanced branches of our experimental science. He will ascertain a law which will be inexplicable to him, just as some chemical or physical law is inexplicable to us. He will have connected to every quadrilateral a constant property, the equality of its angles to four right angles, as we connect to every white crystal of carbon a constant property, octohedric structure. But he will not have discovered, any more than ourselves, the intermediate which necessitates the connection. In his case, this intermediate is a property of the two elementary triangles of which the quadrilateral is the possible sum. In our case, this intermediate is a property of the elementary molecules of which the white crystal of carbon is the real sum. He will miss his intermediate, then, as we miss ours, by a defect of method, which can be remedied in his case, but which cannot be remedied in ours. We have, then, every ground for belief that if, like him, we could apply a remedy, and if to inductive experience we could add, in our case, as in his, deductive analysis by way of supplement, the attained intermediate would manifest its presence in our case as it does in his.

We thus arrive at considering the sciences of construction as a preliminary copy, a reduced model, an indication revealing to us what the sciences of experience might be, an indication similar to the little waxen edifice which architects construct beforehand with a more manageable substance, to represent on a small scale the proportions and total aspect of the great monument they are in process of erecting, and which perhaps they will never complete.—In fact, if we look

at the ideal and the real world, we perceive that their structure is similar. In the first, as in the second, there are elements and compounds, elements of elements and compounds of compounds, objects capable of being classified, species, genera, and families, families of lines and surfaces ranged beneath one another according to the degree of their equations, less general laws explained by more general laws, and a number of other characteristics no less essential, and common to both. Therefore, the two orders are analogous.—But, besides, all the materials of the first are found in the second. For we have seen that numbers, lines, surfaces, solids, motions, velocities, forces, exist, not only in the mind, but also in nature; it is in nature that the mind discovers them, and from nature that it extracts them. All its special work consists in combining them in its own way, without troubling itself to inquire whether there are in nature real outlines which adapt themselves to the mental outlines, whether there is any actual sphere or ellipse corresponding to the ideal sphere or ellipse.—There remains, then, a single difference which separates our artificial compounds from natural compounds; the first are more simple, and the second more complex; Euclid's straight line is simpler than the imperceptibly bent line which a ball describes in the first metre after it leaves the cannon; the slightly indented ellipse described by a planet is more complex than the geometrical ellipse. For this reason we study the mental compound before the real compound, and the knowledge of the first leads us to the knowledge of the second. Herein lies the whole secret of the services which the sciences of construction render to the sciences of experience; thus it is that the first have their application in the second. Given two compounds, one mental, the other real, they become adapted to one another with this difference, that the second comprises supplementary and perturbing elements in addition to the elements which constitute the first, and this renders the first simpler, and the second more complex. We take account, by turns, of this general adaptation and this subsidiary difference. We discover by the sciences of construction, the properties of the first compound, the geometrical straight line or ellipse; then, on ac-

count of this general adaptation, we attribute them provisionally to the path of the bullet or the planet's ellipse; and thus obtain ideas which are almost, but not wholly, exact. Having done this, on account of this subsidiary difference, we gladly introduce into our ideas the supplementary and perturbing elements in nature which bend the path of the ball or indent the planet's ellipse. Thus, from the provisional path and ellipse, which were too simple, and therefore approximate only, the mind passes gradually to the definitive path and ellipse which, while growing complicated, become exact. By this progressive rectification, our idea, which was at first rigorously adjusted to the ideal compound only, finally becomes rigorously adjusted to the real compound. It was in a science of construction that it took its origin, and it is in a science of experience that it finds its use.

Hence follows a consequence of capital importance, that at every place and time, outside our history and world, as well as in our history and world, the theorems are capable of being applied. In fact, it is sufficient for this that the real compounds, whether near or distant, should enter into our mathematical outlines, and they necessarily enter them, when they have number, situation, or form, when they possess motion, velocity, or mass, when they are subject to forces, that is to say to any conditions of motion. Stuart Mill, then, is wrong to say that "in distant parts of the stellar regions, where the phenomena may be entirely unlike those with which we are acquainted, it would be folly to affirm confidently the prevalence of any law, general or special," and that, "any one accustomed to abstraction and analysis, who will fairly exercise his faculties for the purpose, will, when his imagination has once learnt to entertain the notion, find no difficulty in conceiving that in some one, for instance, of the many firmaments into which sidereal astronomy now divides the universe, events may succeed one another at random, without any fixed law; nor can anything in our experience, or in our mental nature, constitute a sufficient, or indeed any, reason for believing that this is nowhere the case."—No doubt it is possible that bodies do not there attract one another. But there, as with us, if, through the application of any force, a

body takes, for a time as short as we please, a uniform rectilinear motion, it will tend to continue it indefinitely ; for, the axiom being necessary, as soon as the first of its two data exists in fact, the second cannot fail to exist in fact.—And moreover, whatever be the body and whatever be its motion, if this motion be regarded in a purely mechanical aspect, it will, there as with us, be necessarily wholly determined by the magnitudes and directions of the forces whose effect it is ; so that, there as with us, it will be found by the solution of a mechanical problem, and will only resist solution, if the complication of its elements be so great that our formulæ are not yet sufficiently advanced to comprehend them ; for, not only, as we have seen, are the sciences of construction, being necessary, universal, but again, their application is thereby universal. Indeed real compounds, so far as they are formed of the same elements as mental compounds, are subject to the same universal and necessary laws, and nature, in this aspect, is nothing more than applied arithmetic, geometry, and mechanics.

It remains to be seen whether nature is not more than this. Now, as far as we can judge, and according to recent discoveries, all changes of a body, physical, chemical, or vital, are reduced to movements of its molecules ; and so again, heat, light, chemical affinities, electricity, gravity itself perhaps, all forces producing these changes and producing movement itself, are reduced to movements. Hence it follows that in visible nature there are nothing but bodies in motion, bodies motor or movable, motor and movable in turn, motor when their preliminary motion is the condition of the motion of another, movable when their consecutive motion is the effect of the motion of another ; which reduces all corporeal change to the passage of a certain quantity of motion transferred from the motor to the movable body, an operation which, as we are assured, takes place without gain or loss, so that at the end of the circuit, the expenditure is exactly covered by the receipt, and the final force is found to be equal to the initial force.—If this admirable reduction were true, first for our world, and then besides for all beyond our world, not only all our physical, chemical, and physiolo-

gical problems, but further all problems concerning any actual body whatever, would be at bottom pure mechanical problems. Observable compounds would differ in nothing, except complication, from constructed compounds ; and just as the formation, properties, alterations, and transformations of every mental compound, whether arithmetical, geometrical, or mechanical, have their reason of existence, so would there be a *reason of existence* for the formation, properties, alterations, and transformations of every real compound.

III. We have here considerable probabilities, and may sum them up by saying that there is no analogy to authorize our supposing the absence, in any case, of the explanatory reason, while many analogies lead us to suppose its presence in all cases. Still we have here probabilities only, and must examine whether the enounced principle has no better support. On commencing any new inquiry, scientific men assume the principle, and indeed, are compelled to do so ; for, without it, as we have seen, they could not perform induction.\* Given any phenomenon, they invariably assume beforehand conditions forming its reason of existence and whose reunion is sufficient to produce it, so that the phenomenon cannot fail in any of the cases in which these conditions are reunited. "There is an absolute determinism," says Claude Bernard,† "in the conditions of existence of natural phenomena, as well for living, as for inanimate bodies. . . . When the condition of a phenomenon is once known and fulfilled, the phenomenon must invariably and necessarily be reproduced at the will of the experimenter. . . . Phenomena can never contradict one another if they are observed under the same conditions ; if they exhibit variations, this necessarily depends on the intervention or interference of other conditions which cloak or modify these phenomena. Hence there is room for attempting to know the conditions of these variations ; for we could not have the effect there, without a cause. This determinism thus becomes the basis of all scientific progress and criticism. If, on repeating an experi-

---

\* Part ii. book iv. chap. ii. p. 434, *ante*.

† "Introduction à l'étude de la Médecine Expérimentale," pp. 115 *et seq.*

ment, we find discordant or even contradictory results, we ought never to admit real exceptions or contradictions, for this would be anti-scientific ; we must simply and necessarily conclude that there are differences of conditions in the phenomena, which may or may not here explain them. . . . As soon as the laws are known, we cannot have exceptions. . . . We must forcedly admit as an axiom that, in identical conditions, every phenomenon is identical, and that as soon as the conditions are no longer the same, the phenomenon ceases to be identical." We see that the words *necessarily, forcedly, axiom*, are here employed.—Helmholtz employs equivalent expressions.\* According to him, we cannot otherwise conceive the world. Our eyes cannot perceive extension except as colored ; and so, our intelligence cannot conceive facts except as explicable. There is nothing conceivable by us except what is explicable, just as there is nothing visible by us except what is colored. The internal eye has, like the external, its innate structure from which it cannot be set free, and which imposes on all its conceptions a necessary character. Helmholtz seems here to believe that this constraint has for ultimate cause, the structure of our mind.—With him and Claude Bernard, we recognize the constraint as a fact ; but we do not conceive its ultimate cause to be in the structure of our mind ; for we have already seen many analogous necessities of belief. There is one such for each of the axioms of mathematics ; they all exert on our mind the same ascendancy as the axiom of explanatory reason ; and still, we have demonstrated them ; we have shown that they have a foundation in things, that they are valid, not only for us, but in themselves, that their empire is absolute, not only over our intelligence, but also over nature, that if the two ideas by which we conceive them are forcedly connected, it is because the two data which constitute them are also forcedly connected, and that, if the constraint experienced by our mind in their presence has, as first cause, our mental structure, it has, as ultimate cause, the adjustment of our mental structure to the structure of things. It is probable, then,

---

\* "Physiologische Optik," p. 455.

that this great axiom is of the same nature as the rest, and that analysis will, as with the rest, be sufficient to demonstrate it.

Take a couple of actually connected data, one subject or less general, the other attribute or more general. We express the same thing by saying that the subject possesses the attribute. This attribute may be more or less transitory or permanent; for instance, in this falling drop of rain, the fall is an entirely momentary and transitory attribute, since it is at an end when once the drop has touched the earth; the chemical structure is a more permanent attribute, since a chemical combination or decomposition is needed to destroy it; weight is an entirely permanent attribute, since there is no known circumstance which can suppress it.—Here, as in all true propositions, the subject possesses the attribute, whether transitory or permanent, and, as we see, the attribute is more general than it, that is to say, common to other subjects than it.—I say now that there is *an explanatory reason* for this possession of the attribute by the subject, and, by explanatory reason, is meant, as we have shown, one or more characters of the subject, included in it like a fragment in a whole, more abstract and more general than it, and which, being themselves connected to the attribute, connect the attribute to the subject. This, then, amounts to saying that the attribute is not connected to the whole entire subject itself, but to one or more abstract and general characters of the subject.

To demonstrate this proposition, let us analyze in turn the attribute and the subject. We have said that the attribute is common to the subject and to others. This means that it is the *same* in the subject and in others. Thus the fall, the chemical structure, the weight, are the same in one drop of rain and in its neighbors. Thus the equality of the opposite sides is the same in this parallelogram and in all parallelograms, in the right-angled parallelogram and in the parallelogram whose angles are not right. Therefore, to say that the subject possesses an attribute common to it and to others, is to say that other subjects, real or possible, possess the same attribute as it. The equality of the opposite

sides is the same in my parallelogram and in this other one; the chemical structure is the same in my drop of rain and in this other one. In other words, taken in itself, with the omission and suppression of the distinct subjects in which they reside, the equality of the opposite sides of my parallelogram is confounded with the equality of the opposite sides of the other, and the chemical structure of my drop of rain is confounded with the chemical structure of the other, just as a particular triangle, when detached from the position it occupies, and transferred by superposition upon some other, coincides with the other and is absolutely confounded with it.

Let us now consider the subject. What we call a subject, a distinct subject, is a sum or reunion of characters which do not all occur rigorously the *same* in any other subject, however similar we may imagine it. This drop of rain, even if we suppose it to have a form, volume, temperature, and internal structure, exactly the same as the one next to it, or following it, further possesses characters which are not possessed either by the one next to it or the one following it, namely, its situation in time with reference to those preceding it, and in space, with reference to those surrounding it. This parallelogram, even if we suppose its sides precisely the same in length and its angles exactly the same in expansion as the sides and the angles of the other, possesses in addition at least one character which the other does not possess, namely, its particular position in space, on my paper, or on this board. The analysis is the same, if in this place of an individual subject, as this drop of rain or this parallelogram, we consider a more or less general subject, like the parallelogram in itself or water in general. Water is liquid like mercury, and the parallelogram has its opposite sides equal like the regular hexagon; but water compared with mercury, just as the parallelogram compared with the regular hexagon, is a distinct subject, which, being distinct, forcedly possesses, like this drop of rain, one or more characters by which it is distinguished from every other more or less similar subject with which it is compared.

Here, then, we arrive at this conclusion, that our subject, being distinct from another subject, is *not the same*, and



nevertheless, possesses the *same* attribute. Let us replace the terms by their definition. Distinct subject, signifies sum or reunion of characters of which one or more are absent in the other subject; it is to this sum or reunion that the attribute directly or indirectly appertains. Hence three possible hypotheses, and three hypotheses only.—Either the attribute appertains directly to the sum of reunited characters; or it appertains indirectly, that is, by appertaining to that portion of the sum which is composed of characters absent in the other subject, or by appertaining to the other portion. Now the two first hypotheses are contradictory.—In fact on the one hand, the attribute cannot appertain to that portion of the sum which is composed of the characters absent in the second subject; for then it would not appertain to the second subject, in which those characters are wanting; now, by definition, the attribute belongs to that subject.—On the other hand, the attribute cannot belong to the sum of the united characters; for then it would not belong to the second subject, in which this reunion is wanting; now, by definition, it belongs to that subject.—These two suppositions being excluded, the third alone remains. Hence it follows that the attribute belongs to that portion of our subject which is composed of characters present in it and in the second subject, that is to say common to both, that is to say, general. Hence it also follows that it appertains solely to a portion of our subject, in other words to a fragment, to an extract, to an abstract included in our subject; which is what had to be proved.\*

---

\* We have just demonstrated the axiom by means of the notion of *identity*; we can also demonstrate it by means of the notion of *indifference*; and this second demonstration is well suited to the particular form under which the axiom has been presented by Claude Bernard.

When given a subject under certain circumstances, take a second subject exactly similar to the first, and in circumstances exactly similar to the first circumstances, so that there may be no difference between the first and second case but that of time or place. Let us further assume that this difference is *indifferent*, that is to say, without influence or any event which occurs in the first subject, and that, in relation to this event, it may be considered as *null*.—This supposition is not always true; the time and position have often an influence; the same heavy body falls more quickly in the second minute than in the first; the same pendu-

The axiom, thus demonstrated and understood, is readily seen to reduce itself to the enunciation of the consequences of a mental construction. Just as with other axioms, it develops a pure supposition; this it develops by detecting *something the same* in the two data it connects, and it is reduced to the principles of identity, of the alternative, and of contradiction. So again, it lays down no datum as real; all it establishes is an outline to which real data may adapt themselves. It does not affirm that there are in fact distinct subjects, nor that two or more distinct subjects possess in fact the same attribute. Experience alone can instruct us as to this.—But, when experience has instructed us, and when, on considering all the propositions of our experimental sciences, we find throughout nature distinct subjects possessed of the same attribute, then the axiom applies: being demonstrated like a geometrical axiom, it has the same range, and, like a geometrical axiom, it extends its empire, not only over all fragments of duration and extension which are accessible to our observation, but beyond and to infinity, to all points of duration and extension in which two distinct subjects present the same attribute.

Hence follow vast consequences, and first of all the proof of the principle on which induction rests. We had only supposed it true, provisionally and by analogy;\* we had only assumed that a general character invariably indicates the presence of another general character to which it is connected; we are now able to demonstrate this presence.—A gen-

---

lum oscillates differently at the bottom of a mine and at the summit of the adjacent mountain.—But subsequent experiences intervene to confirm or contradict our supposition, and, whether confirmed or contradicted, we shall learn something by it. Meanwhile, let us consider it as a pure mental construction, and see what follows from it. Since, by supposition, the difference of the two cases has no influence or is *null*, the second case is absolutely and rigorously confounded with the first, and may be substituted for it as legitimately as any triangle may for another equal and similar triangle; therefore, the event which occurs in the first subject will also occur in the second, or, to use Claude Bernard's expression, "in identical conditions, phenomena are identical."—The reader will observe the analogy of the axiom thus enounced and proved with the above demonstrated axioms of mechanics.

\* Part ii. book iv. ch. ii. p. 434 *ante*.

eral character is an attribute, the same in several distinct subjects. Now, according to the axiom, it does not appertain to such or such a distinct subject directly, but to all indirectly by the intermediate link of a portion common to them, and which, in this respect, is a general character; in this way, it supposes the presence of another general character to which it belongs; thus, its presence is *sufficient* to guarantee to us the presence of this other.—Moreover, this other character to which the first appertains is general; in other words, the first appertains to the second, whatever be the subject, whatever the medium, whatever the place, whatever the moment; in other words again, the presence of this other is sufficient to involve, and therefore to guarantee to us, the presence of the first.—Thus, in general, the presence of the one, which is already known, is *sufficient* to guarantee to us the presence of the other, which is as yet unknown, and which we are attempting to discover. Now, we have seen that on this *sufficiency* are founded all the processes of elimination, the methods of agreement and difference, of which induction is composed.

On the other hand, take any subject considered at two successive moments, and in which some particular attribute is the same at both moments, that is to say common to the two moments, and consequently, general. After what we have just said, this attribute has its condition, which is a character common to both moments of the subject; and, as its condition is sufficient to involve it, while its condition persists, it will itself persist. Consequently, if, in fact, at the third moment it ceases to exist, this is because its condition has ceased to exist; hence it finally follows that the suppression of a character has, as condition, the suppression of another character. Now every alteration in a subject is the suppression of one of its characters, so that every alteration has a condition, which we express by saying that it has a *cause*, and that this cause is another alteration. Here we have the axiom of causality; considered with reference to the axiom of explanatory reason, it is a consequence and an application of that axiom. That axiom has many others. Leibnitz, who termed it Principle of Sufficient Reason, constructed

from it all his idea of the universe. And, in fact, it is by this axiom that we arrive at the highest conception of a general aggregate, at the idea of one necessary whole, at the persuasion that *existence* is itself explainable. For, since existence is a general character, and the most general of all characters, we must conclude from our axiom that it has, like every general character, its condition or explanatory reason, other than itself. Mathematicians assume nowadays that real quantity is only a case of imaginary quantity, a special and singular case, in which the elements of imaginary quantity present certain conditions which are wanting in the other cases. May we not similarly assume that real existence is only a case of possible existence, a special and singular case, in which the elements of possible existence present certain conditions which are wanting in the other cases? With this assumption, may we not inquire into these elements and these conditions? We are here on the threshold of metaphysics.

We will not enter; we are here concerned with cognitions alone. The reader has seen how they are formed, and by what adjustments they correspond to things. They have, as materials, sensations of various kinds, some primitive and excited, others spontaneous and reviving, attached to one another, counterbalanced by one another, purposely organized by their connections and their antagonism, composed of elementary sensations smaller than themselves, these again of still smaller ones, and so on, till their differences are finally effaced and permit us to divine the existence of wholly similar infinitesimal elements whose various arrangements explain their various aspects.—Thus in a cathedral, the ultimate elements are grains of sand agglutinated into stones of various forms, which, attached in pairs, form masses, whose thrusts oppose and balance each other; all these associations and all these mutual pressures being co-ordinated in one grand harmony. Such is the simplicity of the means, and such the complication of the effect, and both the simplicity and the complication are as admirable in the mental as in the real edifice.

Bair 79 95 96 118  
122 257 259 281  
314

Mill on belief 186 257  
259 261 2 273  
281













3 0112 063006347